ARITHMETIC COMPACTIFICATIONS OF INTEGRAL MODELS OF SHIMURA VARIETIES OF ABELIAN TYPE

PEIHANG WU

Abstract. In this paper, we construct good toroidal and minimal compactifications in the sense of Lan-Stroh for integral models of abelian-type Shimura varieties. We start with finding suitable types of cusp labels and cone decompositions which are compatible with those of the associated Hodge-type Shimura varieties. We then study the action of $\mathbb{Q}$-points of the adjoint group on boundary charts and toroidal compactifications of Hodge-type integral models. In particular, we extend the twisting construction of Kisin and Pappas to boundary charts. Finally, up to taking refinements of cone decompositions, we construct an abelian-type toroidal compactification as an open and closed algebraic subspace of a quotient from a disjoint union of Hodge-type toroidal compactifications and construct minimal compactifications with a similar method. Furthermore, we show results on nearby cycles of these compactifications and verify Pink's formula when the level at p is an intersection of n quasi-parahoric subgroups.

Contents

Introduction 2
Organization of the paper 7
Acknowledgments 8
Notation and Conventions 9
1. Characteristic zero theory 11
1.1. Boundary charts in characteristic zero theory 11
1.2. Boundary mixed Shimura varieties of Hodge type 15
1.3. Compactifications and connected components 18
1.4. ZP-cusps 25
2. One-motives and the theory of degeneration 39
2.1. Siegel moduli 39
2.2. 1-motives 41
2.3. Theory of degeneration 50
2.4. Boundary mixed Shimura varieties of Hodge type, continued 63
2.5. Toroidal compactifications of integral models of Hodge type 68
3. Twisting constructions 70
3.1. Twisting abelian schemes 70
3.2. Twisting degenerating families 74
3.3. Twisting 1-motives 80
3.4. Some actions of the adjoint group on toroidal compactifications 85
4. Toroidal compactifications of integral models of abelian type 89
4.1. Deligne's induction for boundary components 89
4.2. Construction of strata and compactifications by quotients 97
4.3. Main theorem on toroidal compactifications 116
5. Minimal compactifications of integral models of abelian type 131
5.1. Minimal compactifications of integral models of Hodge type 131
5.2. Construction of minimal compactifications 133
5.3. Main theorem on minimal compactifications 137

5.4. Pink's formula 138
5.5. Nearby cycles 141
Appendix A. Comparison with PEL-type cusp labels 144
A.1. PEL-type Shimura varieties 144
A.2. PEL-type cusp labels 144
Appendix B. Isogenies 146
B.1. Quasi-isogenies 146
B.2. Polarizations 147
List of symbols in the first two sections 148
References 149

Introduction

In this paper, we will study the Shimura varieties associated with abelian-type Shimura data and construct compactifications of certain integral models associated with them.

To recall the definitions, a pair (G, X) of a connected reductive $\mathbb{Q}$-group G together with a $G(\mathbb{R})$-conjugacy class of homomorphisms $\mathbb{S} := R_{\mathbb{C}/\mathbb{R}}\mathbb{G}_m \to G_{\mathbb{R}}$ is called a *Shimura datum* if it satisfies [Del79, 2.1.1.1-2.1.1.3] (see also [Mil05, Def. 5.5]). Choosing a neat open compact subgroup $K \subset G(\mathbb{A}_f)$, the complex double coset space $\mathrm{Sh}_K(G, X)(\mathbb{C}) := G(\mathbb{Q})\backslash X \times G(\mathbb{A}_f)/K$ uniquely algebraizes to a complex algebraic variety $\mathrm{Sh}_K(G, X)_{\mathbb{C}}$ by [BB66] and [Bor72]. Furthermore, by the works of Shimura, Deligne, Milne, Borovoi and others, the inverse system of algebraic varieties $\{\mathrm{Sh}_K(G, X)_{\mathbb{C}}\}_K$ with varying neat open compact subgroups K canonically descends to an inverse system of algebraic varieties $\{\mathrm{Sh}_K(G, X)\}_K$ over a number field (called the *reflex field*) $E(G, X)$ contained in $\mathbb{C}$, such that the Galois action on special points is given by a certain reciprocity law of the class field theory.

Abelian-type Shimura varieties and their integral models are important in number theory, and there are interesting problems and applications related to them. For an abelian-type Shimura datum (G_2, X_2), the weight cocharacter and the center of the reductive group are more complicated than those of a Hodge-type Shimura datum; more precisely, the Axioms (SV4), (SV5) and (SV6) in [Mil05, Sec. 5] are not satisfied in general. To study an abelian-type Shimura variety, one can study a Hodge-type Shimura variety associated with it first; the two varieties are related by a quotient over geometrically connected components and by an *induction construction* of Deligne [Del79].

Let p be a prime number. Let (G_2, X_2) be an abelian-type Shimura datum. By definition (see, e.g., [Kis10, Intro.]), it is associated with a Hodge-type Shimura datum (G_0, X_0). Assume that $K_2 = K_{2,p}K_2^p$, where $K_{2,p}$ is an open compact subgroup of $G_2(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ and K_2^p is a neat open compact subgroup of $G_2(\mathbb{A}_f^p)$. When G_2 is quasi-split and unramified at p and $K_{2,p}$ is hyperspecial, it was shown by Kisin and Kim-Madapusi that $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_2}(G_2, X_2)$ extends to a *smooth integral model* $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}$, and $\mathcal{S}_{K_{2,p}} := \varprojlim \mathcal{S}_{K_{2,p}K_2^p}$ is *canonical* in the sense that it satisfies *the extension property* (see [Kis10, 2.3.7] and [KMP16]). When $p > 2$ and $K_{2,p}$ is parahoric, Kisin, Pappas, and Zhou showed that $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{2,p}}(G_2, X_2)$ extends to an integral model $\mathcal{S}_{K_{2,p}}(G_2, X_2)$, which satisfies a weaker extension property and has a *local model diagram* (see [KP18] and [KPZ24]). Moreover, these integral models $\mathcal{S}_{K_{2,p}}$ are canonical in the sense that they satisfy the *conjecture of Pappas and Rapoport* (see [PR24, Conj. 4.2.2], [DvHKZ24] and [DY25, Thm. 4.10]).

Background on compactifications. Shimura varieties are not proper in general, and they admit smooth and projective toroidal compactifications and projective minimal compactifications over reflex fields (see [BB66], [AMRT10] and [Pin90]). In many occasions, studying the integral models of these compactifications is very beneficial.

It is conjectured that smooth integral models of Shimura varieties of abelian type have toroidal and minimal compactifications with the same properties mentioned above extending those over the reflex fields (see [Mil92, Conj. 2.18]). Such compactifications of smooth integral models were constructed by Chai and Faltings [FC90] in the Siegel-type case, by Lan [Lan13] in the PEL-type case and by Madapusi [MP19] in the Hodge-type case.

In fact, one can expect a similar story for more general integral models. Let us fix a prime number p and continue with the conventions above. As before, (G_0, X_0) by definition admits an embedding (called Hodge embedding in this paper) $\iota : (G_0, X_0) \hookrightarrow (G^\ddagger, X^\ddagger)$, i.e., an injective group homomorphism $G_0 \hookrightarrow G^\ddagger := \mathrm{GSp}(V, \psi)$, which induces an embedding from X_0 to the union of Siegel upper and lower half-spaces $X^\ddagger := \mathbb{S}^\pm$. Suppose that we choose a self-dual lattice $V_{\mathbb{Z}_p}$ of $V_{\mathbb{Q}_p}$ and an open compact subgroup $K_{0,p} \subset G_0(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ such that $K_{0,p} \subset K_p^\ddagger := \mathrm{Stab}_{G^\ddagger(\mathbb{Q}_p)}(V_{\mathbb{Z}_p})$. Let K_0^p be a neat open compact subgroup of $G_0(\mathbb{A}_f^p)$ contained in a neat open compact subgroup $K^{\ddagger,p}$ of $G^\ddagger(\mathbb{A}_f^p)$. Set $K^\ddagger := K_p^\ddagger K^{\ddagger,p}$ and $K_0 := K_{0,p}K_0^p$. Let E_0 be the reflex field of (G_0, X_0). Let $\mathcal{O} := \mathcal{O}_{E_0,(v)}$ for a place $v|p$. Let $\mathcal{S}_{K_0}$ be the normalization of $\mathcal{S}_{K^\ddagger,\mathcal{O}}$ in $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_0} := \mathrm{Sh}_{K_0}(G_0, X_0)$, where $\mathcal{S}_{K^\ddagger}$ is the integral model of $\mathrm{Sh}_{K^\ddagger}(G^\ddagger, X^\ddagger)$ over $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$ constructed as a moduli space of polarized abelian schemes with level structures. Then $\mathcal{S}_{K_0}$ is a quasi-projective normal scheme that is flat over $\mathcal{O}$, and its generic fiber is Sh_{K_0}. For a choice of Hodge embedding

$$(G_0, X_0, K_{0,p}) \hookrightarrow (G^\ddagger, X^\ddagger, K_p^\ddagger)$$

such that $K_p^\ddagger \cap G_0(\mathbb{Q}_p) \neq K_{0,p}$, or a choice of open compact subgroup $K_{0,p}$ beyond quasi-parahoric subgroups, the scheme $\mathcal{S}_{K_{0,p}} := \varprojlim_{K_0^p} \mathcal{S}_{K_0}$ is *not* canonical in the sense of satisfying the extension property or the conjecture of Pappas and Rapoport.

Despite this, since [Lan16] and [MP19], it has been understood that there are good toroidal and minimal compactifications associated with reasonably defined integral models of Shimura varieties of Hodge type, even when the integral models are not constructed with (quasi-)parahoric level structures or with any definition of canonicity mentioned above.

In fact, Madapusi proved that *all* Hodge-type integral models with hyperspecial or (quasi-)parahoric levels studied in [Kis10], [KP18], [KPZ24], [PR24] and [DvHKZ24] have good toroidal compactifications, and his results can also be applied in a broader context beyond quasi-parahoric levels with minimal restrictions on $K_{0,p} \subset K_p^\ddagger$ (see [MP19, Sec. 3.1]). Let $\Sigma^\ddagger$ be a smooth admissible rational polyhedral cone decomposition for $(G^\ddagger, X^\ddagger, K^\ddagger)$. By [FC90] and [Lan13], there is a smooth toroidal compactification $\mathcal{S}_{K^\ddagger}^{\Sigma^\ddagger}$ for $\mathcal{S}_{K^\ddagger}$. Let Σ_0 be the cone decomposition for (G_0, X_0) induced by $\Sigma^\ddagger$. Define $\mathcal{S}_{K_0}^{\Sigma_0}$ to be the normalization of $\mathcal{S}_{K^\ddagger}^{\Sigma^\ddagger}$ in Sh_{K_0}. Madapusi showed that $\mathcal{S}_{K_0}^{\Sigma_0}$ has the right properties as a toroidal compactification, that is, $\mathcal{S}_{K_0}^{\Sigma_0}$ has a good stratification and the complete local rings of $\mathcal{S}_{K_0}^{\Sigma_0}$ at its boundary points are complete localizations of toric torsors, which can be explicitly described by integral models of mixed Shimura varieties (see [MP19, Thm. 3.4.3 and Thm. 4.1.5]). The generic fiber of $\mathcal{S}_{K_0}^{\Sigma_0}$ is $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_0}^{\Sigma_0}$, the toroidal compactification of Sh_{K_0} associated with the cone decomposition Σ_0 by Pink's characteristic 0 theory [Pin90]. Similar results were also proved by Lan in [Lan16] when (G_0, X_0) is of PEL type.

Hence, one expects that, for all abelian-type Shimura data, a good compactification theory should exist for integral models defined in an appropriate way with arbitrary levels at p.

Main results. Let Σ_2 be an admissible rational polyhedral cone decomposition for $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_2} := \mathrm{Sh}_{K_2}(G_2, X_2)$. Denote by $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_2}^{\Sigma_2}$ the toroidal compactification of Sh_{K_2} associated with Σ_2 by Pink's theory. Denote $E_2 := E(G_2, X_2)$. Fix any place $v_2|p$ of E_2. The main goal of this paper is to construct good toroidal compactifications $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}^{\Sigma_2'}$ over $\mathcal{O}_{E_2,v_2}$ associated with suitable refinements Σ_2' of Σ_2 based on Madapusi's results in the Hodge-type case.

The main results can be stated in the following compressed form. The readers will find precise statements in Theorem 4.39.

Theorem A (Theorem 4.39)**.** *Assume that $K_{2,p}$ is an open compact subgroup of $G_2(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ and K_2^p is neat open compact in $G_2(\mathbb{A}_f^p)$. Let $K_2 = K_{2,p}K_2^p$. Let $v_2|p$ be a place of E_2 over p.*

For any admissible cone decomposition Σ_2 for (G_2, X_2) and K_2, there is a refinement Σ_2' of Σ_2, which can be made smooth and/or projective, such that there is a proper normal flat model $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}^{\Sigma_2'}$ over $\mathcal{O}_{E_2,v_2}$ extending the toroidal compactification $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_2}^{\Sigma_2'}$ constructed by Pink in [Pin90]*. The compactification $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}^{\Sigma_2'}$ has a good stratification, which extends the stratification obtained from Pink's theory from the generic fiber to the integral model.*

There is an open dense subscheme $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}$ in $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}^{\Sigma_2'}$ extending Sh_{K_2}, and the reduced complement D of $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}$ in $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}^{\Sigma_2'}$ is a relative effective Cartier divisor. The complete local ring of $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}^{\Sigma_2'}$ at any point x of D is isomorphic to a complete local ring of a toric scheme. These toric schemes are constructed from finite quotients of the toric schemes associated with certain integral models of boundary mixed Shimura varieties of abelian type.

When G_2 is quasi-split and unramified at p, and $K_{2,p}$ is hyperspecial, the towers of integral models of boundary mixed Shimura varieties mentioned in the last paragraph can be constructed to satisfy the extension property. In this case, $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}^{\Sigma_2'}$ and its strata are defined over $\mathcal{O}_{E_2,(v_2)}$.

We can also construct a minimal (i.e., Satake-Baily-Borel) compactification $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}^{\min}$ for $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}$. More precisely,

Theorem B (Theorem 5.15)**.** *There is a normal projective model $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}^{\min}$ over $\mathcal{O}_{E_2,v_2}$ (or over $\mathcal{O}_{E_2,(v_2)}$ if G_2 is quasi-split and unramified at p, and $K_{2,p}$ is hyperspecial) extending the minimal compactification $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_2}^{\min}$ of Sh_{K_2} over E_2. There is a proper surjective morphism $\oint_{K_2}^{\Sigma_2'} : \mathcal{S}_{K_2}^{\Sigma_2'} \to \mathcal{S}_{K_2}^{\min}$ with geometrically connected fibers, under which the stratifications on the source and the target compatibly extend the stratifications on the generic fibers.*

As the aforementioned works [Lan16] and [MP19] by Lan and Madapusi, our results also allow the level at p to be arbitrarily high (and low). More precisely, to apply our results, one can pick an open compact subgroup $K_{2,p}$ and choose n Bruhat-Tits stabilizer subgroups $K_{2,p}^i$ containing $K_{2,p}$ from possibly distinct apartments (which means that $K_{2,p}$ can be any proper open compact subgroup of $\cap_{i=1}^n K_{2,p}^i$), then a good compactification theory can be established by the constructions in this paper. Note that the compactifications and their stratifications obtained will depend on the choice of the set of Bruhat-Tits stabilizers, since in our article the models of the compactifications and stratifications at level $K_{2,p}K_2^p$ are constructed by taking relative normalizations from the models at level $(\cap_{i=1}^n K_{2,p}^i) \cdot K_2^p$, and the choice of the latter level structure can be flexible.

Remark. *Since the integral models of compactifications in this paper have good stratifications, one can take the open dense strata (i.e., the interiors) of compactifications to get integral models of Shimura varieties.*

In particular, this paper constructed integral models of abelian-type Shimura varieties with quasi-parahoric level structures at $p > 0$. In a forthcoming work joint with Shengkai Mao (see Remark 5.24), we show these models are canonical integral models in the sense of Pappas and Rapoport. In fact, we show that p-adic shtukas admit "canonical extensions" to integral models of toroidal compactifications of abelian-type Shimura varieties.

Another advantage of our results is that we have proved that the compactifications of abelian-type integral models also satisfy (a slightly generalized version of) the qualitative descriptions of good compactifications in the sense of Lan-Stroh (see, e.g., [LS18b, Prop. 2.2]). The only difference is that the "Γ_σ" in the notation of *loc. cit.* is in general not trivial in our case. In other words, in the

Hodge-type or PEL-type case, the formal completions at the boundary can be described by (integral models of) mixed Shimura varieties defined by some irreducible mixed Shimura data, while for the abelian-type case, those completions are (also explicitly) described by *finite quotients* of (integral models of) those mixed Shimura varieties (see Remark 4.40). Hence, one can immediately extend many results from the Hodge-type case to the abelian-type case, once the arguments to prove them only involve a good description of the boundary.

As an application, we generalize the nearby cycle results in [LS18c] to the abelian-type case at all levels.

Proposition (Proposition 5.21 and Corollary 5.23)**.** *Fix a prime $l \neq p$. Let $\mathcal{V}$ be a lisse $\overline{\mathbb{Q}}_l$-sheaf associated with an algebraic representation ξ of G_2^c on a finite-dimensional $\overline{\mathbb{Q}}_l$-vector space V_ξ or a finite $\mathbb{F}_l$-sheaf equipped with an action of an open compact subgroup $G_2^c(\mathbb{Z}_l)$.*

Assume that the projection of K_2 into $G_2^c(\mathbb{Q}_l)$ factors through $G_2^c(\mathbb{Z}_l)$. Then there are natural isomorphisms induced by adjunctions that are equivariant under the actions of the absolute Galois group $\mathrm{Gal}(\overline{\eta}/\eta)$:

(1) $R\Psi_{\mathcal{S}_{K_2}^{\Sigma_2}} RJ_{\eta,*}^{\Sigma_2}\mathcal{V} \xrightarrow{\sim} RJ_{\bar{s},*}^{\Sigma_2} R\Psi_{\mathcal{S}_{K_2}}\mathcal{V}$ and $J_{\bar{s},!}^{\Sigma_2} R\Psi_{\mathcal{S}_{K_2}}\mathcal{V} \xrightarrow{\sim} R\Psi_{\mathcal{S}_{K_2}^{\Sigma_2}} J_{\eta,!}^{\Sigma_2}\mathcal{V}$; similar results also hold for minimal compactifications.

(2) $R\Psi_{\mathcal{S}_{K_2}^{\min}} J_{,\eta,!*}^{\min}\mathcal{V}[d] \xrightarrow{\sim} J_{\bar{s},!*}^{\min} R\Psi_{\mathcal{S}_{K_2}}\mathcal{V}[d]$.

As another application, we prove Pink's formula when the level at p is an intersection of n quasi-parahoric subgroups.

Proposition (See Proposition 5.19 for details)**.** *Fix a positive integer n. Fix n Bruhat-Tits stabilizer subgroups $K_{2,p}^i$ of $G_2(\mathbb{Q}_p)$. Let $K_{2,p}$ be an open compact subgroup of $G_2(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ such that $\cap_{i=1}^n K_{2,p}^{i,\circ} \subset K_{2,p} \subset \cap_{i=1}^n K_{2,p}^i$. Then Pink's formula holds for the minimal compactification $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}^{\min}$ constructed as the relative normalization from the integral model of the minimal compactification at level $\cap_{i=1}^n K_{2,p}^i$, where the latter one is constructed as in Case (*STB_n*) for $\{K_{2,p}^i\}_{i=1}^n$.*

Method. From the definition of abelian-type Shimura data, we make the following construction.

Lemma (See §1.4.4)**.** *There is a connected reductive group G and two Shimura data (G, X_a) and (G, X_b), such that $G^{\mathrm{der}} = G_2^{\mathrm{der}}$, such that X_a and X_b differ only by a homomorphism from $\mathbb{S}$ to $Z_{G,\mathbb{R}}$ (which we denote by $(G, X_a) \sim (G, X_b)$ below to refer to this similarity), and such that there is a diagram*

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & & & (G_0, X_0) \\ & & & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \pi^b} \\ (G_2, X_2) & \xrightarrow{\pi^a} & (G, X_a) & \sim & (G, X_b) \end{array}$$

where π^a is an embedding such that $\pi^a(G_2^{\mathrm{der}}) = G^{\mathrm{der}}$ and π^b is a map whose kernel is the kernel of the central isogeny $G_0^{\mathrm{der}} \to G^{\mathrm{der}} = G_2^{\mathrm{der}}$.

This is a variant of the construction in [Del79]. For the topic of this paper, we found some advantages of doing the construction above: First of all, since the difference between the descent data of the objects associated with (G, X_a) and (G, X_b) is essentially induced by a central homomorphism $c : \mathbb{S} \to Z_{G,\mathbb{R}}$ (which is explicitly determined by the reciprocity law mentioned above) and since there is a direct map $(G_0, X_0) \to (G, X_b)$, we do not need to break up the integral model of $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_0}(G_0, X_0)$ into geometrically connected components to construct strata and compactifications for (G_2, X_2).

Secondly, to construct integral models with the strategy above, we do not rely on certain parahoric $\mathbb{Z}_p$-group schemes associated with G, G_0 and G_2 to construct the groups used in the induction construction. This gives us the flexibility we need in order to find suitable integral models when the level structure is arbitrary.

Another advantage is that the morphism from (G_2, X_2) to (G, X_a) is an embedding. By choosing a suitable level $K \subset G(\mathbb{A}_f)$, one can show that the morphisms induced by $(G_2, X_2) \hookrightarrow (G, X_a)$ between compactifications and strata are also embeddings. In particular, results for (G_2, X_2) can be immediately deduced from those for (G, X_a).

Let us now sketch some crucial steps in this article.

Cusp labels and cone decompositions. Let (G, X) be any Shimura datum. For each cusp label representative Φ (see [Pin90] and [MP19]), Pink associated with Φ a $\mathbb{Q}$-subgroup P_Φ (which is denoted by P_1 in [Pin90]), which is a normal subgroup of the admissible $\mathbb{Q}$-parabolic Q_Φ associated with Φ (see [Pin90, Def. 4.5 and Prop. 4.6]).

Note that there is in general no direct map between P_Φ's for (G_0, X_0) and (G_2, X_2) since there is no morphism from (G_0, X_0) to (G_2, X_2). To address the issue, let ZP_Φ be the identity component of the group generated by the center Z_G of G and the group P_Φ. We use the following weaker equivalence relation to create coarser classes of cusp labels.

Definition (Definition 1.28)**.** *Let Φ_1 and Φ_2 be two cusp label representatives. Then we say $\Phi_1 \preceq \Phi_2$ if there are $q' \in ZP_{\Phi_2}(\mathbb{A}_f)$ and $\gamma \in G(\mathbb{Q})$ such that $\gamma P_{\Phi_1}\gamma^{-1} \subset P_{\Phi_2}$, $P_{\Phi_1}(\mathbb{Q})\gamma X^+_{\Phi_1} = P_{\Phi_2}(\mathbb{Q})X^+_{\Phi_2}$ and $\gamma g_{\Phi_1} \equiv q' g_{\Phi_2}$ modulo K.*

A stratum defined by the equivalence relation above is actually a disjoint union of some strata in Pink's definition; by considering this kind of disjoint union, we can uniformize the construction of strata and mixed Shimura varieties for (G, X_a) and (G, X_b).

Remark. *In fact, this is an example of an alternative definition of boundary components, where the mixed Shimura data produced are not irreducible (see* [Pin90, Rmk. 4.11] *and §1.1.1).*

More specifically, we can find cone decompositions as follows:

Proposition (Proposition 1.47)**.** *We can choose a common cone decomposition Σ for both (G, X_a) and (G, X_b), such that Σ induces a cone decomposition Σ_2', which is a refinement of Σ_2 that can be made smooth, projective, or both smooth and projective, and such that Σ also induces cone decompositions Σ_0^α for (G_0, X_0) under the pullback of $\pi^b(\alpha)$ for each α in an index set $I_{G/G_0} := \mathrm{Stab}_{G(\mathbb{Q})}(X_0)\pi^b(G_0(\mathbb{A}_f))\backslash G(\mathbb{A}_f)/K$.*

Construction. We now have obtained the following diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & & & (G_0, X_0); \Sigma_0^\alpha \\ & & & & \downarrow \\ (G_2, X_2); \Sigma_2' & \hookrightarrow & (G, X_a); \Sigma & \sim & (G, X_b); \Sigma. \end{array}$$

Note that one cannot get a good theory if one applies Deligne's induction construction directly to toroidal compactifications; one reason is that one cannot choose smooth cone decompositions for general level K_2 if cone decompositions over all geometrically connected components of the Shimura variety $\mathrm{Sh}(G_2, X_2)$ are chosen the same. Hence, we first construct the toroidal compactification $\mathcal{S}^\Sigma_K(G, X_b)$ of (G, X_b) as a disjoint union of certain quotients of Hodge-type toroidal compactifications associated with possibly different cone decompositions Σ_0^α. We then construct $\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma_2'}_{K_2}$ as an open and closed algebraic subspace of $\mathcal{S}^\Sigma_K(G, X_a)$. The latter one is isomorphic to $\mathcal{S}^\Sigma_K(G, X_b)$ after a possibly ramified normalized base change to a ring $\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}$, but the ramification of this normalized base change is controlled by c and the intersection of the center $Z_G(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ and the level group $K_p \subset G(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ at p. For example, this (normalized) base change is unramified if $Z_G(\mathbb{Q}_p) \cap K_p$ contains the parahoric subgroup of $Z_G(\mathbb{Q}_p)$.

We can show the following statement:

Proposition (Corollary 4.55). *After taking the normalized base change to $\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}$, $\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma_2'}_{K_2',\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ is an open and closed subspace of $\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma}_{K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}(G,X_b)$, and $\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma}_{K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}(G,X_b)$, equipped with the log structure defined by the complement of $\mathcal{S}_{K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}(G,X_b)$ in $\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma}_{K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}(G,X_b)$, admits a finite Kummer étale cover of disjoint union of Hodge-type toroidal compactifications $\mathcal{S}^{\mathrm{TOR}}_{K_0,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}} := \coprod_{\alpha\in I_{G/G_0}} \mathcal{S}^{\Sigma_0^\alpha}_{K_0^\alpha,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ (with $K_{0,p}^\alpha$ chosen depending on K_p). The induced map between interiors $\coprod_{\alpha\in I_{G/G_0}} \mathcal{S}_{K_0^\alpha,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}} \to \mathcal{S}_{K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}(G,X_b)$ is finite étale.*

Note that we show the statement above for any choice of (G_0,X_0) attached to (G_2,X_2) that satisfies a condition on reflex fields (see [KP18, Lem. 4.6.22 (3)]).

There are two main difficulties in the quotient construction.

The first difficulty is to find certain $\mathscr{A}$- and $\mathscr{A}^\circ$-type groups for mixed Shimura varieties, with which one can construct integral models of toroidal compactifications and integral models of boundary mixed Shimura varieties as (disjoint unions of) quotients. Here we have to use a method that is different from [Kis10] and [KP18] since we should construct the integral models and describe them at every finite level K_pK^p instead of describing at level K_p with K_p a parahoric subgroup. An important input to achieve this is constructing a collection of integral models $\{\mathcal{S}_{\gamma K_{\Phi_0^\alpha}}\}$ such that the whole $G^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})$ acts on it. In Section 4, our proof of this crucially relies on the canonicity results in [Kis10], [KMP16], [PR24], [DY25] and [DvHKZ24] and a detailed computation of the level groups associated with the boundary components in [Mao25a]. Even though there might be other ways to obtain this, the advantage of this approach is that we can establish a stronger statement along the way on how the construction of the toroidal compactification $\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma_0^\alpha}_{K_0^\alpha}$ is independent of the choice of Hodge embedding with prescribed formation.

The second difficulty is to show that the integral models of boundary mixed Shimura varieties are correct torus torsors. To do this, we use twisting of 1-motives to give an explicit moduli description of certain actions following the idea of Kisin in [Kis10]. The main result on twisting can be described as follows:

Proposition (Proposition 3.24). *Let $G_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$ (resp. $Z_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$) be the closure of G_0 (resp. Z_{G_0}) in $G^\ddagger_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$. Let $G^{\mathrm{ad}}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} := G_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}/Z_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$. For any $\gamma \in G^{\mathrm{ad}}_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})_1$ and any cusp label representative $\Phi = (Q, X_0^+, g^\ddagger)$ as in [MP19], there is a twisted cusp label representative Ψ defined as $\Psi := (\gamma Q\gamma^{-1}, \gamma(X_0^+), \gamma g^\ddagger\gamma^{-1})$, such that the action*

$$\gamma^{-1} : \mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi}(\mathbb{C}) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Psi}(\mathbb{C}),$$

sending $\wp = [(x, \mathbf{p}g^\ddagger)]$ to $\wp^\gamma = [(\gamma(x), \gamma\mathbf{p}g^\ddagger\gamma^{-1})]$, extends to a twisting construction between 1-motives

$$(\mathcal{Q}, \boldsymbol{\lambda}, [u]_{(K_\Phi)^{g^\ddagger}}) \mapsto (\mathcal{Q}^\gamma, \boldsymbol{\lambda}^\gamma, [u^\gamma]_{(K_\Phi)^{g^\ddagger\gamma^{-1}}}).$$

This action is compatible with twisting of abelian schemes on $\mathcal{S}_K$ constructed by Kisin [Kis10] and Kisin-Pappas [KP18], under the isomorphism of formal completions in [MP19, Thm. 4.1.5 (5)] *for Hodge-type Shimura varieties.*

With this, we show that the integral model of the boundary mixed Shimura variety associated with ZP_Φ for any cusp label representative Φ of (G,X_a) is a torus torsor when $K_p \cap Z_G(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ contains the parahoric subgroup of $Z_G(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ (see Lemma 4.25, Lemma 4.26 and Proposition 4.30). Then we extend this result to arbitrary level structures essentially by using an explicit description of the torus part of the Siegel-type boundary mixed Shimura varieties (see §4.3.2).

Organization of the paper. In Section 1, we review Pink's characteristic 0 theory for canonical models of toroidal compactifications of mixed Shimura varieties. Subsequently, we introduce a definition of coarser cusp labels, which helps us with finding compatible choices of cone decompositions

for (G_0, X_0) and (G_2, X_2). This selection of cusp labels and cones also enables us to construct $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}^{\Sigma_2}$ as the pullback of some quotient in later steps. Some group-theoretic lemmas are established along the way.

In Section 2, the main goal is to review the theory of degeneration of abelian schemes developed in [Mum72], [FC90] and [Lan13]. The main difference is that we review it in the language of 1-motives (cf. [Str10] and [MP19]); some propositions are recorded for later use.

In Section 3, we extend Kisin-Pappas' construction of twisting abelian schemes up to prime-to-p isogenies to the twisting of 1-motives and semiabelian schemes with additional structures. We then explain that the twisting constructions on the interior $\mathcal{S}_{K_0}$ and on the boundaries are compatible and induce an action on toroidal compactifications.

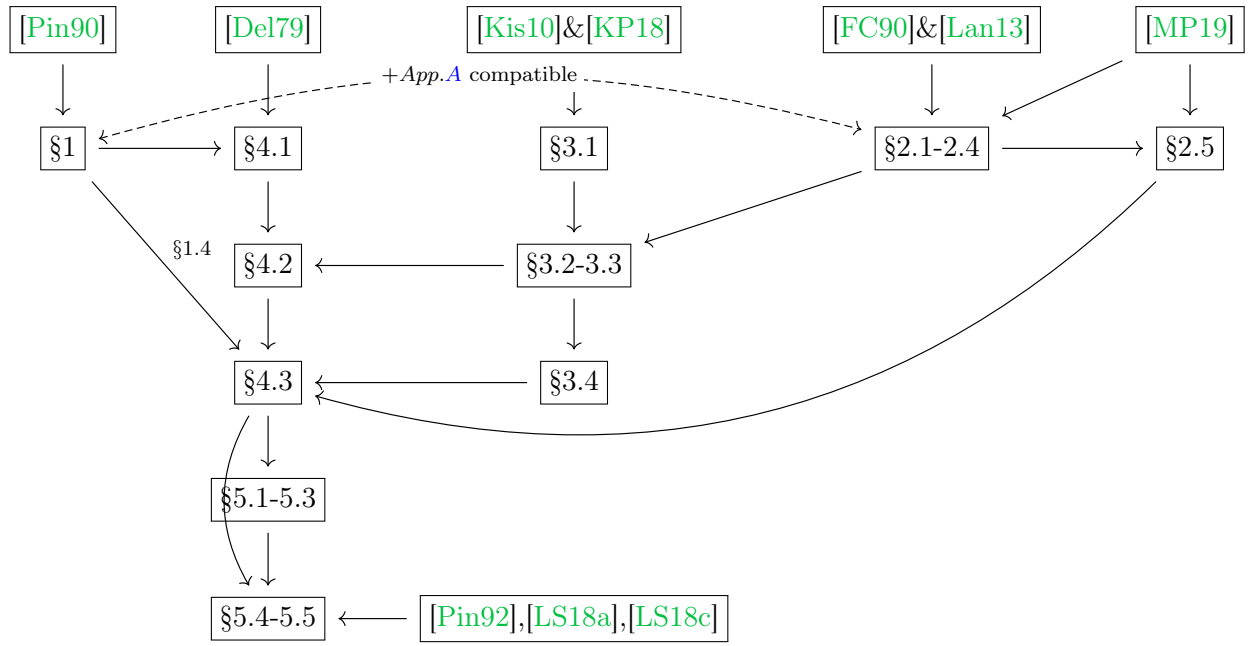
In Section 4, we first generalize Deligne's induction to construct boundary mixed Shimura varieties associated with $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_2}^{\Sigma_2'}$. We then construct $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}^{\Sigma_2'}$ as the "subquotients" described above and present the main theorem (see Theorem 4.39).

To complete the construction of a good compactification theory, we also construct the minimal compactification $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}^{\min}$ of $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}$. We finish the paper by proving Pink's formula and by showing that the adjunction morphisms of nearby cycles are isomorphisms (see Section 5).

§1.4, §3.3, §3.4, §4.2 and §4.3 are the main technical subsections of this paper.

A list of symbols appearing in the first and the second sections is attached as an appendix for the convenience of the readers.

Here is a diagram showing the rough relationships among all sections and many key references in the literature. We apologize to the readers that we are not able to exhibit all the references we have used or to describe all the details within one diagram for now.



Acknowledgments. This is a major revision of my dissertation submitted to the University of Minnesota in August 2024. I am very grateful to my academic advisor Kai-Wen Lan for his guidance. I would like to thank him for pointing out many errors in the preliminary drafts of this paper and providing invaluable advice on doing and writing math. He also encouraged me to generalize the results to Case (STB_n) ($n > 1$) and its deeper levels in this revision. I would like to thank Shengkai Mao for many fruitful discussions throughout the years.

Part of this work was presented at the Morningside Center of Mathematics in October 2024, and I am very grateful to Xu Shen for his invitation. Moreover, I want to thank Pol van Hoften, Kentaro

Inoue, Kai-Wen Lan, Yu Luo, Shengkai Mao, Georgios Pappas, Xu Shen, Sug Woo Shin, Liang Xiao, Alex Youcis, Zhiyu Zhang, and Yihang Zhu for their interest and encouragement during the preparation of the paper and many helpful communications.

Notation and Conventions.

General notation.

- In this article, all rings have identities. We fix a prime number p.
- Let $\square$ be either $\{p\}$ or $\emptyset$. For example, if $\square = \emptyset$, $\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)} = \mathbb{Q}$, $\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^{\square} = \widehat{\mathbb{Z}} = \varprojlim_{n\in\mathbb{Z}_{>0}} \mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}$, and $\mathbb{A}_f^{\square} = \mathbb{A}_f$, the finite adeles over $\mathbb{Q}$; if $\square = \{p\}$, $\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^{\square} := \varprojlim_{n\in\mathbb{Z}_{>0} \text{ and } p\nmid n} \mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}$ and $\mathbb{A}_f^{\square} = \mathbb{A}_f^p$ the finite adeles away from p.
- In the notation "$\otimes_R$" for tensor products over a commutative ring R, we will omit the subscript "R" when $R = \mathbb{Z}$, or when R is clear in the context.
- **(Conjugation)** Let G be a group acting on a set S. Let S_1 be a subset of S. We denote the image in S of the action of $g \in G$ on S_1 by ${}^gS_1$ (resp. S_1^g) if the action of G is a left action (resp. right action). In particular, let K be a subgroup of a group G and let $g \in G$ be any element in G, then we write ${}^gK := gKg^{-1}$ and write $K^g := g^{-1}Kg$.
- Let E be a number field and let v be a place of E. We denote by $\mathcal{O}_{E,(v)}$ the localization of $\mathcal{O}_E$ at the prime corresponding to v and by $\mathcal{O}_{E,v}$ its completion. We write the subscript of E_v out to avoid multiple subscripts in the notation.
- Let $\mathcal{F}$ be an fppf sheaf of B-modules on a scheme S. Let A be a B-algebra. Denote $\underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_A\mathcal{F} := (\underline{\mathrm{End}}_S\mathcal{F} \otimes_B A)^{\times}$. Let C be an A-algebra, and let T be an object in S_{fppf}, we can form $\underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_A(\mathcal{F}(T))(C) := ((\underline{\mathrm{End}}_S\mathcal{F})(T) \otimes_B C)^{\times}$, the group of C-valued automorphisms of $\mathcal{F}|_T$. To save the notation, we denote $\underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_A(\mathcal{F})(A)$ by $\underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_A\mathcal{F}$, which is a sheaf of A-modules. We will omit A in the above notation if $A = \mathbb{Z}$.

Notation related to Shimura varieties and compactifications.

- For a connected reductive group G, we denote by G^{der} the derived group (resp. G^{ad} the adjoint group) of G. For an algebraic group G over $\mathbb{R}$ or $\mathbb{C}$, denote by G° the identity component of G. For a Lie group $\mathscr{H}$ over $\mathbb{R}$ or $\mathbb{C}$, denote by $\mathscr{H}^+$ its identity component. So it makes sense to write $G(\mathbb{R})^+$ or $G(\mathbb{C})^+$. We will also use the symbol $G(\mathbb{R})_+$ to denote the pullback to $G(\mathbb{R})$ of the identity component $G^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{R})^+$ under the natural homomorphism $G(\mathbb{R}) \to G^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{R})$. Let $G(\mathbb{Q})? := G(\mathbb{R})? \cap G(\mathbb{Q})$, where $? = {}^+, {}_+$. Let $G^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{R})_1$ be the subgroup of $G^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{R})$ that stabilizes $X \hookrightarrow X^{\mathrm{ad}}$, that is, the image of $G(\mathbb{R})$ in $G^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{R})$. Define $G^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})_1 := G^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{R})_1 \cap G^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})$, etc.
- **(Sign conventions)** We follow Pink's sign conventions for Hodge and weight cocharacters (see [Pin90, Ch. 1]), and the class field theory isomorphism (see [Pin90, 11.3]). The Hodge cocharacter $\mu_{\mathbb{C}}$ is defined such that $z = (z, 1) \in \mathbb{G}_m(\mathbb{C}) \subset \mathbb{S}(\mathbb{C})$ acts on $V_{\mathbb{C}}^{-1,0}$ by z. The split torus $\mathbb{G}_{m,\mathbb{R}}$ is embedded into $\mathbb{S}$ by $i_w : \mathbb{G}_{m,\mathbb{R}} \hookrightarrow \mathbb{S}$, $r \in \mathbb{R}^\times \hookrightarrow \mathbb{C}^\times$. Let $V_{\mathbb{R}}$ be an $\mathbb{R}$-vector space. Suppose there is a map $h : \mathbb{S} \to \mathrm{GL}(V_{\mathbb{R}})$. Define the weight cocharacter ω to be $\omega : \mathbb{G}_{m,\mathbb{R}} \xrightarrow{i_w} \mathbb{S} \to \mathrm{GL}(V_{\mathbb{R}})$. We say that h has weight $-n$ if $\omega(r)$ sends $v \in V_{\mathbb{R}}$ to $r^n v$. Moreover, we choose the class field theory isomorphism $\mathrm{rec}_E : \mathrm{Gal}(E^{ab}/E) \cong \pi_0(\mathbb{G}_m(\mathbb{A}_E)/\mathbb{G}_m(E))$ such that, for any non-archimedean place v of E_v with a uniformizer π_v, and any finite abelian field extension L/E such that L/E is unramified at v, $(\cdots, \pi_v^{-1}, \cdots)$ corresponds to (arithmetic) Frobenius of $\mathrm{Gal}(L/E)$.
- **(Subgroups)** Let G be a linear algebraic group over $\mathbb{Q}$. A subgroup Γ in $G(\mathbb{Q})$ is called a congruence subgroup if it is of the form $\Gamma = G(\mathbb{Q}) \cap K$ for some open compact subgroup $K \subset G(\mathbb{A}_f)$. A subgroup Γ' of $G(\mathbb{Q})$ is called an arithmetic subgroup if it is commensurable with (any congruence subgroup) Γ.

Assume that G is connected reductive. We call an open compact subgroup K_p of $G(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ a Bruhat-Tits stabilizer subgroup if K_p is the group of $\mathbb{Z}_p$-points of a Bruhat-Tits stabilizer group scheme $\mathscr{G}$. Denote by K_p° the parahoric subgroup associated with K_p, i.e., the $\mathbb{Z}_p$-points of the parahoric group scheme $\mathscr{G}^\circ$ associated with $\mathscr{G}$. An open compact subgroup $K_p'' \subset G(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ is called a quasi-parahoric subgroup (associated with K_p) if $K_p^\circ \subset K_p'' \subset K_p$.

- **(Neatness)** Let G be a linear algebraic group over $\mathbb{Q}$. Let $\square = \{p\}$, or $\emptyset$. Following Pink's convention, we say an open compact subgroup $K^\square \subset G(\mathbb{A}_f^\square)$ is **neat** if, for some (and for any) faithful representation $i : G \hookrightarrow \mathrm{GL}(V)$ and any $g = (g_\ell)_{\ell \notin \square} \in K^\square$, the intersection
$$\bigcap_{\ell \notin \square} (\overline{\mathbb{Q}}^\times \cap \Gamma_\ell)_{\mathrm{torsion}}$$
is trivial. In the intersection above, Γ_ℓ is defined to be the group generated by the eigenvalues of g_ℓ in $\overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell^\times$.

  If $K^\square$ is neat, then for any $g \in G(\mathbb{A}_f)$ and any open compact subgroup $K \subset G(\mathbb{A}_f)$ such that the projection of K to $G(\mathbb{A}_f^\square)$ is $K^\square$, the intersection $gKg^{-1} \cap G(\mathbb{Q})$ is a neat (congruence) subgroup. See [Pin90, pp.12-13]. *Although neatness will be assumed throughout the paper, we will re-emphasized it when this assumption is crucial in the argument.*
- (**Extension property**) Let $\mathcal{O}$ be a Dedekind domain with fraction field K and let X be an $\mathcal{O}$-scheme. Following [Kis10], we say that X has the extension property if, for any regular and formally smooth $\mathcal{O}$-scheme S, any morphism $S \otimes_{\mathcal{O}} K \to X$ extends to a morphism $S \to X$.
- (**Cones**) Let $\mathbf{E} \cong \mathbb{G}_m^n$ be a split algebraic torus over $\mathbb{Z}$. The rational polyhedral cones in this paper are *closed*, i.e., a rational polyhedral cone σ in the cocharacter group $X_*(\mathbf{E})_\mathbb{R}$ is a subset determined by $\sigma = \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} v_1 + \cdots + \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} v_m$ for $v_i \in X_*(\mathbf{E})_\mathbb{Q}$ and $1 \leq i \leq m \leq n$. This convention coincides with those in [Pin90] and [MP19]. The σ in [Lan13, Def. 6.1.1.5] is written as σ° in this paper. Here, σ° denotes the interior of the closed cone σ. The closure $\overline{\sigma}$ in *loc. cit.* is written as σ in this paper.

  Let $\mathcal{T}$ be an $\mathbf{E}$-torsor over a scheme $\mathcal{S}$. Denote by $\mathcal{T}(\sigma)$ the twisted (relatively) affine torus embedding and by $\mathcal{T}_\sigma$ the σ-stratum (see [Pin90, 5.2], [Lan13, Sec. 6.1.2] and [MP19, 2.1.17]). These two terms defined in [Pin90, 5.2] and [Lan13, Sec. 6.1.2] are the same because the definitions of $\sigma^\vee$ and $\sigma^\perp$ remain the same for the two different definitions of σ.
- When writing an embedding of (integral models of) Shimura varieties, we often omit the reflex fields. That is, $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_1}(G_1, X_1) \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Sh}_{K_2}(G_2, X_2)$ means $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_1}(G_1, X_1) \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Sh}_{K_2}(G_2, X_2) \otimes_{E(G_2, X_2)} E(G_1, X_1)$. We will also omit the reflex fields when saying relative normalizations. That is, the relative normalization in $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_1}(G_1, X_1)$ of $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}(G_2, X_2)$ in fact means the relative normalization in $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_1}(G_1, X_1)$ of $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}(G_2, X_2)_{\mathcal{O}_{E_1(G_1, X_1), (v_1)}}$ or $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}(G_2, X_2)_{\mathcal{O}_{E_1(G_1, X_1), v_1}}$.

1. Characteristic zero theory

This section has two main goals. The first one (see §1.1 and §1.3) is to review and summarize some key definitions and theorems in Pink's thesis [Pin90]. See also a summary of it in [MP19, Sec. 2.1]. The second one (see §1.4) is a preparation for our main construction in Section 4. Namely, we shall introduce our strategy of passing from Hodge-type Shimura data to abelian-type ones, and we shall explain how to make a good choice of cone decompositions.

1.1. Boundary charts in characteristic zero theory.

In §1.1, we collect some definitions and results in [Pin90] and [MP19, Sec. 2.1] due to Pink and Madapusi.

1.1.1. Let P be a connected linear algebraic group over $\mathbb{Q}$. Let W be the unipotent radical of P and let U be a normal subgroup of W and P. Let $\mathcal{X}$ be a $P(\mathbb{R})U(\mathbb{C})$-homogeneous space together with a $P(\mathbb{R})U(\mathbb{C})$-equivariant morphism $\hbar : \mathcal{X} \to \mathrm{Hom}(\mathbb{S}_{\mathbb{C}}, P_{\mathbb{C}})$. The triple $(P, \mathcal{X}, \hbar)$ is called a **mixed Shimura datum** if it satisfies the conditions listed in [Pin90, Def. 2.1]. We will omit the morphism $\hbar$ in the notation of a mixed Shimura datum when $\hbar$ is clear in the context. We denote $\hbar(P, \mathcal{X}) := (P, \hbar(\mathcal{X}))$.

When $W = 1$, the triple is called a **pure Shimura datum**. We do not omit the word "pure" to distinguish it from the usual definition of Shimura data as in [Del71b], [Del79] and so on. In other words, if $(P, \mathcal{X}, \hbar)$ is a pure Shimura datum, $\hbar(P, \mathcal{X})$ is a Shimura datum in the sense of *loc. cit.*, but $(P, \mathcal{X}, \hbar)$ itself is a Shimura datum if and only if $\hbar$ is a homeomorphism.

Let P' be a normal $\mathbb{Q}$-subgroup of P. Define $T := P/P'$ with a canonical quotient map $\phi : P \to T$. As in [Pin90, Prop. 2.9], there is a canonical **quotient mixed Shimura datum** $(T, \mathcal{Y})$ of $(P, \mathcal{X})$ by P', and a canonical **quotient morphism**, which we abusively denote by $\phi : (P, \mathcal{X}) \to (T, \mathcal{Y})$. In fact, there is an isomorphism $\mathcal{Y} \cong T(\mathbb{R})\phi(U(\mathbb{C}))/\phi(\mathrm{Stab}_{P(\mathbb{R})U(\mathbb{C})}(x))$ for any $x \in \mathcal{X}$. Sometimes we will abusively write $\mathcal{Y}$ as $\mathcal{X}/P'$, although $\mathcal{Y}$ is not a quotient of $\mathcal{X}$ in general. In particular, if T is a torus, $(T, \mathcal{Y})$ being a mixed Shimura datum implies that $\mathcal{Y}$ is finite and discrete. Hence, $\phi(\mathrm{Stab}_{P(\mathbb{R})U(\mathbb{C})}(x))$ is a subgroup of $T(\mathbb{R})\phi(U(\mathbb{C}))$ containing $(T(\mathbb{R})\phi(U(\mathbb{C})))^+$.

A mixed Shimura datum $(P, \mathcal{X}, \hbar)$ is **irreducible** if P is the only normal $\mathbb{Q}$-subgroup Q of P such that all homomorphisms $h_x : \mathbb{S}_{\mathbb{C}} \to P_{\mathbb{C}}$ defined by $x \in \hbar(\mathcal{X})$ factor through $Q_{\mathbb{C}}$.

1.1.2. Let $(P, \mathcal{X})$ be a mixed Shimura datum. For any neat open compact subgroup K in $P(\mathbb{A}_f)$, define

$$\mathrm{Sh}_K(P, \mathcal{X})(\mathbb{C}) := P(\mathbb{Q})\backslash \mathcal{X} \times P(\mathbb{A}_f)/K.$$

The group $P(\mathbb{Q})$ acts on $\mathcal{X} \times P(\mathbb{A}_f)$ diagonally on the left, while the group K acts only on $P(\mathbb{A}_f)$ on the right. By [Pin90, Prop. 3.3 (b)], the double coset $\mathrm{Sh}_K(P, \mathcal{X})(\mathbb{C})$ is a complex manifold; by [Pin90, Prop. 6.26 and Prop. 9.24], it admits a canonical structure of a smooth quasi-projective variety $\mathrm{Sh}_K(P, \mathcal{X})_{\mathbb{C}}$ over $\mathbb{C}$.

Let $p_f \in P(\mathbb{A}_f)$ and choose K' such that $p_f^{-1} K' p_f \subset K$, we can define a morphism

$$\pi_{K',K}(p_f) : \mathrm{Sh}_{K'}(P, \mathcal{X})(\mathbb{C}) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Sh}_K(P, \mathcal{X})(\mathbb{C})$$

sending $[(x, p)]$ to $[(x, p \cdot p_f)]$. Then the map $\pi_{K',K}(p_f)$ also algebraizes to a morphism between mixed Shimura varieties. Any morphism between mixed Shimura data $f : (P_1, \mathcal{X}_1) \to (P_2, \mathcal{X}_2)$, with a compatible choice of neat open compact subgroups $K_1 \subset P_1(\mathbb{A}_f)$ and $K_2 \subset P_2(\mathbb{A}_f)$ such that $K_1 \subset K_2$, also induces a morphism between mixed Shimura varieties $f : \mathrm{Sh}_{K_1}(P_1, \mathcal{X}_1)_{\mathbb{C}} \to \mathrm{Sh}_{K_2}(P_2, \mathcal{X}_2)_{\mathbb{C}}$.

Let us briefly recall the definition of canonical models of mixed Shimura varieties (see [Pin90, Ch. 11] and also [KSZ21, 1.5.3]). If the mixed Shimura datum is of the form $(T, \mathcal{Y})$ where T is a torus and $\mathcal{Y}$ is a finite set, there is a morphism

$$R_{E_T/\mathbb{Q}}\mathbb{G}_{m,E_T} \xrightarrow{R_{E_T/\mathbb{Q}}\mu_y} R_{E_T/\mathbb{Q}}T_{E_T} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Norm}_{E_T/\mathbb{Q}}} T,$$

where $E_T = E(T, \mathcal{Y})$ and μ_y is the Hodge cocharacter associated with the homomorphism $h_y : \mathbb{S}_{\mathbb{C}} \to T_{\mathbb{C}}$ determined by any $y \in \mathcal{Y}$. This is independent of the choice of y since $\hbar(\mathcal{Y})$ is a single point. The morphism above induces a continuous homomorphism $\pi_0(\mathbb{G}_m(\mathbb{A}_{E_T})/\mathbb{G}_m(E_T)) \to \pi_0(T(\mathbb{A})/T(\mathbb{Q}))$. Pre-composing this homomorphism with the reciprocity law $\mathrm{rec}_{E_T} : \mathrm{Gal}(E_T^{ab}/E_T) \xrightarrow{\sim} \pi_0(\mathbb{G}_m(\mathbb{A}_{E_T})/\mathbb{G}_m(E_T))$, we obtain

$$r_{E_T}(T, \mathcal{Y}) : \mathrm{Gal}(\overline{E}_T/E_T) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Gal}(E_T^{ab}/E_T) \longrightarrow \pi_0(T(\mathbb{A})/T(\mathbb{Q})).$$

Let K_T be any neat open compact subgroup in $T(\mathbb{A}_f)$, since $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_T}(T, \mathcal{Y})(\overline{E}_T) = T(\mathbb{Q})\backslash \mathcal{Y} \times T(\mathbb{A}_f)/K_T$ is a finite set, the left action of $T(\mathbb{A})/T(\mathbb{Q})$ on it factors through $\pi_0(T(\mathbb{A})/T(\mathbb{Q}))$. Hence, there is a well-defined left action of $\mathrm{Gal}(\overline{E}_T/E_T)$ on $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_T}(T, \mathcal{Y})(\overline{E}_T)$ through $r_{E_T}(T, \mathcal{Y})$. This action forms a descent datum, which determines a canonical model $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_T}(T, \mathcal{Y})$ for $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_T}(T, \mathcal{Y})_{\mathbb{C}}$ over E_T.

By [Pin90, Thm. 11.18], for every mixed Shimura datum $(P, \mathcal{X})$ and K neat open compact subgroup of $P(\mathbb{A}_f)$, $\mathrm{Sh}_K(P, \mathcal{X})_{\mathbb{C}}$ admits a **canonical model** $\mathrm{Sh}_K(P, \mathcal{X})$ over its reflex field $E := E(P, \mathcal{X})$, and this canonical model is uniquely characterized by the following two properties:

- For any p_f and K' as above, the morphism $\pi_{K',K}(p_f)$ descends to E;
- For any embedding $\iota : (T, \mathcal{Y}) \hookrightarrow (P, \mathcal{X})$ and any $\iota(K_T) \subset K$, the induced morphism $\iota : \mathrm{Sh}_{K_T}(T, \mathcal{Y})_{\mathbb{C}} \to \mathrm{Sh}_K(P, \mathcal{X})_{\mathbb{C}}$ descends to E_T.

1.1.3. Let G be a connected reductive group over $\mathbb{Q}$ and X be a $G(\mathbb{R})$-conjugacy class of homomorphisms of the form $h : \mathbb{S} \to G_{\mathbb{R}}$. Let (G, X) be a Shimura datum, which means that (G, X) satisfies [Del79, 2.1.1.1-2.1.1.3]. We fix a triple (H_0, h_0, h_∞) as in [Pin90, Sec. 4.3]. More precisely, let H_0 be the reference group defined as in *loc. cit.* over $\mathbb{R}$. In fact, H_0 is characterized by

$$H_0(\mathbb{R}) := \{(z, \alpha) \in \mathbb{S}(\mathbb{R}) \times \mathrm{GL}_2(\mathbb{R}) | |z|^2 = \det \alpha\}, \text{ and}$$

$$H_0(\mathbb{C}) := \{((z_1, z_2); \alpha) \in \mathbb{S}(\mathbb{C}) \times \mathrm{GL}_2(\mathbb{C}) | z_1 z_2 = \det \alpha\}.$$

Let $h_0 : \mathbb{S} \to H_0$ and $h_\infty : \mathbb{S} \to H_0$ be homomorphisms from $\mathbb{S}$ to H_0 chosen as in *loc. cit.*, with associated weight cocharacters ω_0 and ω_∞ obtained by pre-composing with the natural embedding $\mathbb{G}_{m,\mathbb{R}} \hookrightarrow \mathbb{S}$.

Let us recall the definition of **admissible $\mathbb{Q}$-parabolic subgroups** (see [Pin90, Def. 4.5]). The adjoint group G^{ad} of G can be decomposed as a product $G^{\mathrm{ad}} = \prod_{i=1}^k G_i$ of $\mathbb{Q}$-simple reductive groups G_i. An admissible $\mathbb{Q}$-parabolic subgroup Q is the preimage in G of a subgroup $Q^{\mathrm{ad}} = \prod_{i=1}^k Q_i$, where $Q_i \subset G_i$ is either G_i or a maximal proper $\mathbb{Q}$-parabolic subgroup of G_i.

Let Q be any admissible $\mathbb{Q}$-parabolic subgroup of G. Then the homomorphisms h_0 and h_∞ are chosen such that $\omega_0 \cdot \omega_\infty^{-1}$ factors through H_0^{der}. The difference $\lambda_{H_0} := \omega_\infty \cdot \omega_0^{-1}$ is a cocharacter $\lambda_{H_0} : \mathbb{G}_{m,\mathbb{R}} \to H_0$. Let B_0 (resp. U_0) be the Borel subgroup (resp. unipotent radical of a Borel subgroup) of H_0 corresponding to the subspace of nonnegative (resp. positive) weights under the adjoint representation of λ_{H_0} on $\mathrm{Lie}\, H_0$. For any admissible $\mathbb{Q}$-parabolic subgroup Q of G and any $x \in X$, there is a unique homomorphism $u_x^Q : H_{0,\mathbb{C}} \to G_{\mathbb{C}}$ characterized by the conditions listed in [Pin90, Prop. 4.6] such that $u_x^Q \circ h_0 = h_x$, and such that $u_x^Q \circ h_\infty$ and $\omega_{x,\infty}^Q := u_x^Q \circ \omega_\infty$ factor through $Q_{\mathbb{C}}$. Let $\omega_{x,0}^Q := u_x^Q \circ \omega_0 = \omega_x$. Then $\omega_{x,0}^Q \cdot \omega_{x,\infty}^{Q,-1}$ factors through $G_{\mathbb{C}}^{\mathrm{der}}$.

A **cusp label representative** Φ of (G, X) is defined by a triple $\Phi = (Q_\Phi, X_\Phi^+, g_\Phi)$ as in [MP19, 2.1.7], where Q_Φ is an admissible $\mathbb{Q}$-parabolic subgroup of G, X_Φ^+ is a connected component of X and g_Φ is an element in $G(\mathbb{A}_f)$. For any $x \in X$, we can denote by $[x]$ its image under $X \to \pi_0(X)$, which represents a connected component of X. Let P_Φ be the smallest (connected) normal $\mathbb{Q}$-subgroup of Q_Φ, such that $u_x^{Q_\Phi} \circ h_\infty$ factors through $P_{\Phi,\mathbb{C}}$. We can also denote P_Φ by P_{Q_Φ} because it only depends on Q_Φ.

Let W_Φ be the unipotent radical of Q_Φ and let U_Φ be the center of W_Φ (see [AMRT10, III. Cor. 4.4, p.147]). Consider the $Q_\Phi(\mathbb{R})U_\Phi(\mathbb{C})$-equivariant map

$$\tau : X \longrightarrow \pi_0(X) \times \mathrm{Hom}(\mathbb{S}_{\mathbb{C}}, P_{\Phi,\mathbb{C}}) \tag{1.1}$$

defined by mapping $x \in X$ to $([x], u_x^{Q_\Phi} \circ h_\infty)$. By [Pin90, Sec. 4.11], the $P_\Phi(\mathbb{R})U_\Phi(\mathbb{C})$-orbit of the image of any $x \in X$ under the map above only depends on the image of x in $\pi_0(X)$.

Let D_Φ be the $P_\Phi(\mathbb{R})U_\Phi(\mathbb{C})$-orbit of the image of $x_\Phi \in X_\Phi^+$ under (1.1). The morphism over connected components $\pi_0(\tau^{-1}(D_\Phi)) \xrightarrow{\sim} \pi_0(D_\Phi)$ induced by τ is a bijection. We can also denote it by D_{Q_Φ, X_Φ^+}, because it only depends on Q_Φ and X_Φ^+.

By [Pin90, Sec. 4.11], the pair (P_Φ, D_Φ) is a mixed Shimura datum, which is called the **rational boundary component of** (G, X) **associated with** Φ. Define $\overline{P}_\Phi := P_\Phi/U_\Phi$ and $P_{\Phi,h} := P_\Phi/W_\Phi$. Then we have mixed Shimura data defined by $(\overline{P}_\Phi, \overline{D}_\Phi) := (P_\Phi, D_\Phi)/U_\Phi$ and $(P_{\Phi,h}, D_{\Phi,h}) := (P_\Phi, D_\Phi)/W_\Phi$ as in [Pin90, Prop. 2.9]. Note that $(P_{\Phi,h}, D_{\Phi,h})$ is a pure Shimura datum.

For any neat open compact subgroup K of $G(\mathbb{A}_f)$, define $K_\Phi := g_\Phi K {g_\Phi}^{-1} \cap P_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)$. Define $\overline{K}_\Phi$ (resp. $K_{\Phi,h}$) to be the image of K_Φ in $\overline{P}_\Phi$ (resp. $P_{\Phi,h}$) via the obvious quotient maps. Define double coset spaces $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi}(P_\Phi, D_\Phi)(\mathbb{C}) := P_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})\backslash D_\Phi \times P_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)/K_\Phi$, $\mathrm{Sh}_{\overline{K}_\Phi}(\overline{P}_\Phi, \overline{D}_\Phi)(\mathbb{C}) := \overline{P}_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})\backslash \overline{D}_\Phi \times \overline{P}_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)/\overline{K}_\Phi$ and $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi,h}}(P_{\Phi,h}, D_{\Phi,h})(\mathbb{C}) := P_{\Phi,h}(\mathbb{Q})\backslash D_{\Phi,h} \times P_{\Phi,h}(\mathbb{A}_f)/K_{\Phi,h}$, as in [MP19, 2.1.7]. They admit canonical structures of smooth quasi-projective algebraic varieties over $\mathbb{C}$ and they admit canonical models over the reflex field $E := E(G, X)$ associated with (G, X) (see §1.1.2 above). Denote their canonical models by $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi}(P_\Phi, D_\Phi)$, $\mathrm{Sh}_{\overline{K}_\Phi}(\overline{P}_\Phi, \overline{D}_\Phi)$ and $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi,h}}(P_{\Phi,h}, D_{\Phi,h})$, respectively. There is a tower $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi} \to \overline{\mathrm{Sh}}_{K_\Phi} \to \mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi,h}}$ over $\mathrm{Spec}\, E$.

We call (P_Φ, D_Φ) (resp. $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi}(P_\Phi, D_\Phi)$) the **boundary mixed Shimura datum** (resp. **boundary mixed Shimura variety**) associated with $(G, X; \Phi)$ (resp. $(G, X; \Phi; K)$).

Remark 1.1. *Note that our system of notation is slightly different from those in* [Pin90] *and* [MP19]*, and the systems of notation in the just-mentioned references are also slightly different. See a brief comparison in the List of Symbols.*

Convention 1.2. *To avoid overloaded notation, we will frequently adopt the following abbreviations:* $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi} := \mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi}(P_\Phi, D_\Phi)$, $\overline{\mathrm{Sh}}_{K_\Phi} := \mathrm{Sh}_{\overline{K}_\Phi}(\overline{P}_\Phi, \overline{D}_\Phi)$ *and* $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi,h}} := \mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi,h}}(P_{\Phi,h}, D_{\Phi,h})$*; similarly, we write* $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi,F}$, $\overline{\mathrm{Sh}}_{K_\Phi,F}$ *and* $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi,h},F}$ *for the base change to a field extension* F *of* $E = E(G, X)$*; we write* $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi}(F)$, $\overline{\mathrm{Sh}}_{K_\Phi}(F)$ *and* $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi,h}}(F)$ *for* F*-valued points. In other words, we will frequently omit the data in the brackets, which is usually harmless, since the information is hidden in the given data* Φ *and the sub/super-scripts of the level groups.*

Since D_{Q_Φ, X_Φ^+} is a $P_\Phi(\mathbb{R})U_\Phi(\mathbb{C})$-orbit, by [Pin90, 4.14], there is a natural continuous map $\mathrm{Im} : D_{Q_\Phi, X_\Phi^+} \to U_\Phi(\mathbb{R})(-1) := (2\pi\sqrt{-1})^{-1}U_\Phi(\mathbb{R})$, mapping $x \in D_{Q_\Phi, X_\Phi^+}$ to its imaginary part $u_x \in U_\Phi(\mathbb{R})(-1)$. As explained in [Pin90, 4.15], one associates with (Q_Φ, X_Φ^+) an open homogeneous self-adjoint non-degenerate cone $\mathbf{P}_\Phi^+$ in the sense of [AMRT10, Ch. II].

1.1.4. Let $\mathcal{CLR}(G, X)$ be the set of all cusp label representatives for (G, X) defined as in §1.1.3. Note that $G(\mathbb{Q})$ acts on $\mathcal{CLR}(G, X)$ by sending Φ to

$$\gamma\Phi := (\gamma Q_\Phi \gamma^{-1}, \gamma X_\Phi^+, \gamma g_\Phi)$$

for any $\gamma \in G(\mathbb{Q})$.

More importantly, we can also view the action of γ as the one induced by the conjugation

$$\gamma : G \to G;\ g \mapsto \gamma g \gamma^{-1}.$$

This is a homomorphism between algebraic groups. This homomorphism induces a morphism between Shimura data and Shimura varieties

$$\gamma : (G, X) \to (G, X);\ \mathrm{Sh}_K(G, X) \to \mathrm{Sh}_{\gamma K}(G, X).$$

By [Pin90, 4.16], this induces an automorphism of $\mathcal{CLR}(G, X)$, sending Φ to a cusp label representative on the *target* $\gamma\Phi := (\gamma Q_\Phi \gamma^{-1}, \gamma X_\Phi^+, \gamma g_\Phi \gamma^{-1})$.

For both viewpoints, they induce the same morphism between mixed Shimura varieties. The second viewpoint is more useful since it can be generalized to any conjugation of $\gamma \in G^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})$.

Indeed, any $\gamma \in G^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})$ induces a conjugation of G, and γ acts on X^{ad}, so it sends X to $\gamma \cdot X$ viewing X as a subspace of X^{ad}. Then γ induces a morphism between Shimura varieties,

$$\gamma : \mathrm{Sh}_K(G, X) \to \mathrm{Sh}_{\gamma K}(G, \gamma \cdot X),$$

sending $[(x, g)]$ to $[\gamma \cdot x, \gamma g \gamma^{-1}]$. Then we can define the action of $G^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})$ on $\mathcal{CLR}(G, X)$, i.e., defining $\gamma\Phi := (\gamma Q_\Phi \gamma^{-1}, \gamma X_\Phi^+, \gamma g_\Phi \gamma^{-1})$.

Moreover, $G(\mathbb{A}_f)$, and in particular, $P_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)$ and K, can act on $\mathcal{CLR}(G, X)$ on both left and right: if we write them as left actions, then $(g_1, g_2) \cdot \Phi := (Q_\Phi, X_\Phi^+, g_1 g_\Phi g_2^{-1})$ for any $g_1, g_2 \in G(\mathbb{A}_f)$.

Let $\Phi_1 = (Q_{\Phi_1}, X_{\Phi_1}^+, g_{\Phi_1})$ and $\Phi_2 = (Q_{\Phi_2}, X_{\Phi_2}^+, g_{\Phi_2})$ be two cusp label representatives. As [MP19, 2.1.14], we say Φ_1 and Φ_2 are **equivalent** if there is a $\gamma \in G(\mathbb{Q})$ such that $\gamma Q_{\Phi_1} \gamma^{-1} = Q_{\Phi_2}$, $P_{\Phi_1}(\mathbb{Q}) \gamma X_{\Phi_1}^+ = P_{\Phi_2}(\mathbb{Q}) X_{\Phi_2}^+$, and there is a $q \in P_{\Phi_2}(\mathbb{A}_f)$ such that $\gamma g_{\Phi_1} \equiv q g_{\Phi_2}$ modulo K; we denote this equivalence by

$$\Phi_1 \xrightarrow[\sim]{(\gamma, q)_K} \Phi_2.$$

An equivalent interpretation of the last condition is that γg_{Φ_1} and g_{Φ_2} have the same image in $P_{\Phi_2}(\mathbb{A}_f) \backslash G(\mathbb{A}_f) / K$. The notion of equivalence depends on the open compact group K. Denote by $\mathrm{Cusp}_K(G, X)$ the set of equivalence classes of cusp label representatives, and the elements $[\Phi]$ in it are called **cusp labels**. We also write $\Phi_1 \xrightarrow{(\gamma, q)_K} \Phi_2$ if $\gamma P_{\Phi_1} \gamma^{-1} \subset P_{\Phi_2}$, $P_{\Phi_1}(\mathbb{Q}) \gamma X_{\Phi_1}^+ = P_{\Phi_2}(\mathbb{Q}) X_{\Phi_2}^+$ and $\gamma g_{\Phi_1} \equiv q g_{\Phi_2}$ modulo K. Define a partial order $\preceq$ on $\mathrm{Cusp}_K(G, X)$ by writing $[\Phi_1] \preceq [\Phi_2]$ if and only if $\Phi_1 \xrightarrow{(\gamma, q)_K} \Phi_2$ for some γ and q.

Lemma 1.3. *Let Φ_1 and Φ_2 be two cusp label representatives. Suppose that $Q_{\Phi_1} = Q_{\Phi_2} = Q$. Then there is an element $q \in Q(\mathbb{Q})$ such that $q X_{\Phi_1}^+ = X_{\Phi_2}^+$.*

Proof. Since $Q(\mathbb{Q}) G(\mathbb{Q})_+ \subset G(\mathbb{Q})$ and $G(\mathbb{Q}) / G(\mathbb{Q})_+ \cong G(\mathbb{R}) / G(\mathbb{R})_+$ by real approximation (see [Del79, 2.1.2]), it suffices to show $Q(\mathbb{R}) G(\mathbb{R})_+ = G(\mathbb{R})$. Note Q is a parabolic subgroup and $G(\mathbb{R})_+$ contains $K_\infty := \mathrm{Stab}_{G(\mathbb{R})}(x)$ for some $x \in X^+$. Then the statement follows from the Iwasawa decomposition (see [PR94, Thm. 3.9, p.131]). □

Proposition 1.4 (cf. [Pin90, 6.3] and [Pin92, p.221])**.** *Fix an admissible $\mathbb{Q}$-parabolic subgroup Q and a connected component X^+ of X. The set $I(Q)$ defined as*

$$\{[\Phi] \in \mathrm{Cusp}_K(G, X) | \Phi = (Q, X_\Phi^+, g_\Phi),\ X_\Phi^+ \subset X \text{ connected component}, g_\Phi \in G(\mathbb{A}_f)\}$$

consisting of cusp labels in $\mathrm{Cusp}_K(G, X)$ that have representatives of the form $\Phi = (Q, X_\Phi^+, g_\Phi)$ is in bijection with

$$\mathrm{Stab}_{Q(\mathbb{Q})}(D_{Q, X^+}) P_Q(\mathbb{A}_f) \backslash G(\mathbb{A}_f) / K.$$

Proof. By the definition of cusp labels, there is a well-defined map from

$$\mathrm{Stab}_{Q(\mathbb{Q})}(D_{Q, X^+}) P_Q(\mathbb{A}_f) \backslash G(\mathbb{A}_f) / K \tag{1.2}$$

to $\mathrm{Cusp}_K(G, X)$ mapping $[g]$ to $[(Q, X^+, g)]$. In fact, we only have to show that $(Q, X^+, g) \sim (Q, X^+, q \cdot p \cdot g \cdot k)$ for any $q \in \mathrm{Stab}_{Q(\mathbb{Q})}(D_{Q, X^+})$, $p \in P_Q(\mathbb{A}_f)$ and $k \in K$. It suffices to check that $(Q, X^+, q \cdot p \cdot g \cdot k) \xrightarrow[\sim]{(q^{-1}, p)_K} (Q, X^+, g)$. Since $q^{-1}(Q, X^+, q \cdot p \cdot g \cdot k) = (Q, q^{-1} X^+, p \cdot g \cdot k)$ and $p \cdot g \cdot k \equiv p \cdot g \bmod K$, it suffices to show that $P_Q(\mathbb{Q}) q^{-1} X^+ = P_Q(\mathbb{Q}) X^+$. Since τ induces a bijection over connected components, it suffices to show that $P_Q(\mathbb{Q}) q^{-1} \tau(X^+) = P_Q(\mathbb{Q}) \tau(X^+) = D_{Q, X^+}$, and this follows from the condition that $q \in \mathrm{Stab}_{Q(\mathbb{Q})}(D_{Q, X^+})$.

Then we check that this map is injective. If $[g]$ and $[g']$ map to the same element in $\mathrm{Cusp}_K(G, X)$, then $\gamma \cdot g = p \cdot g' \cdot k$ for some $\gamma \in Q(\mathbb{Q}) = \mathrm{Stab}_{G(\mathbb{Q})}(Q(\mathbb{Q}))$, $p \in P_Q(\mathbb{A}_f)$ and $k \in K$. Moreover, γ stabilizes X^+, so $\gamma \in \mathrm{Stab}_{Q(\mathbb{Q})}(D_{Q, X^+})$.

Finally, we check that this map is surjective. For any cusp label $[\Phi] = [(Q, X_\Phi^+, g_\Phi)]$, there is a $q \in Q(\mathbb{Q})$ such that $qX_\Phi^+ = X^+$ by Lemma 1.3, so such an equivalence class is in the image of the map. □

1.2. **Boundary mixed Shimura varieties of Hodge type.**

1.2.1. In this subsection, we show that $(P_{\Phi,h}, D_{\Phi,h})$ is a Shimura datum in the usual sense when (G, X) is a Shimura datum of Hodge type or in slightly more general cases. Our proof does not rely on any detailed computation of the groups such as P_Φ and Q_Φ.

Denote by $N : \mathbb{S} \to \mathbb{G}_{m,\mathbb{R}}$ the morphism induced by taking the norm over $\mathbb{R}$-points. Then $N(\mathbb{S}(\mathbb{R})) = \mathbb{R}_+^\times = \mathbb{G}_m(\mathbb{R})^+$. As in [Pin90, Example 2.8], we can define the 0-dimensional Siegel Shimura datum to be the pair $(\mathbb{G}_m, \mathbb{H}_0^\pm)$, where $\mathbb{H}_0^\pm$ is the 2-point set defined by the set of isomorphisms between $\mathbb{Z}$ and $\mathbb{Z}(1)$. Let (G_0, X_0) be a Shimura datum of Hodge type with an embedding into a Siegel Shimura datum $\iota : (G_0, X_0) \hookrightarrow (G^\ddagger, X^\ddagger)$.

There is a canonical *similitude character* $\nu := \nu_{G^\ddagger} \colon (G^\ddagger, X^\ddagger) := (\mathrm{GSp}(V, \psi), \mathbb{H}_g^\pm) \to (\mathbb{G}_m, \mathbb{H}_0^\pm)$ from any Siegel Shimura datum associated with a symplectic space (V, ψ) of dimension $2g > 0$ to $(\mathbb{G}_m, \mathbb{H}_0^\pm)$. In fact, for any $x \in \mathbb{H}_g^\pm$, the point $\nu(x)$ is the isomorphism λ such that $\lambda \circ \psi$ is a polarization with respect to the Hodge structure associated with h_x; the map, abusively denoted by $\nu : \mathrm{GSp}(V, \psi) \to \mathbb{G}_m$, is defined to be the quotient map of $\mathrm{GSp}(V, \psi)$ by its derived group. From the explanation in §1.1.1, the quotient $\nu : \mathrm{GSp}(V, \psi) \to \mathbb{G}_m$ induces a quotient of $(\mathrm{GSp}(V, \psi), \mathbb{H}_g^\pm)$ by $\mathrm{Sp}(V, \psi)$.

Convention 1.5. *We fix a choice of $\sqrt{-1}$, and therefore fix a choice of $\mathbb{Z}(1) \cong \mathbb{Z}$. We denote by $X^{\ddagger,+}$ the connected component of $X^\ddagger$ such that ψ is a (*positive*) polarization with respect to h_x for one of (and therefore all of) the points $x \in X^{\ddagger,+}$.*

*Fix any cusp label representative $\Phi^\ddagger$. Recall that there is a $Q_{\Phi^\ddagger}(\mathbb{R})$-equivariant map $\tau : X^\ddagger \to \pi_0(X^\ddagger) \times \mathrm{Hom}(\mathbb{S}_\mathbb{C}, P_{\Phi^\ddagger,\mathbb{C}})$, where $D_{\Phi^\ddagger}$ is a $P_{\Phi^\ddagger}(\mathbb{R})U_{\Phi^\ddagger}(\mathbb{C})$-orbit of $X^{\ddagger,+}$. Since $P_{\Phi^\ddagger}(\mathbb{R})$ acts transitively on $\pi_0(X^\ddagger) \cong \{\pm 1\}$, $D_{\Phi^\ddagger}$ does not depend on the choice of $X^{\ddagger,+}$, and $\pi_0(D_{\Phi^\ddagger}) = \pi_0(X^\ddagger)$. Unless otherwise noted, we always let $D_{\Phi^\ddagger}^+ := \tau(X^{\ddagger,+})$. We see in §2.4 that points on $D_{\Phi^\ddagger}^+$ correspond to mixed Hodge structures of V such that ψ is a (*positive*) polarization.*

Let $\nu_G : (G_0, X_0) \to (T', Y)$ be the morphism between pure Shimura data induced by the quotient of (G_0, X_0) by G_0^{der}, where $T' := G_0/G_0^{\mathrm{der}}$. Note that there is a commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (G_0, X_0) & \longrightarrow & (G^\ddagger, X^\ddagger) \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \nu_G} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \nu} \\ (T', Y) & \xrightarrow{\nu'_G} & (\mathbb{G}_m, \mathbb{H}_0^\pm), \end{array} \tag{1.3}$$

where ν'_G is defined by the quotient of (T', Y) by $\nu_G(G_0 \cap G^{\ddagger,\mathrm{der}})$.

Lemma 1.6. *The map $\nu'_G : Y \to \mathbb{H}_0^\pm$ is injective. The stabilizer $T'(\mathbb{R})_+$ of any point of Y in $T'(\mathbb{R})$ is connected.*

Proof. Let $\omega : \mathbb{G}_m \to G_0$ be the weight cocharacter. Then $\nu'_G \circ \nu_G \circ \omega$ is isomorphic to $\mathbb{G}_m \xrightarrow{x \mapsto x^2} \mathbb{G}_m$. Denote by $C \cong \mu_2$ the kernel of this composition.

Let $G_0' := G^{\ddagger,\mathrm{der}} \cap G_0$. There is a commutative diagram of algebraic groups

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & \mathbb{G}_m & & \\ & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \omega} & \searrow^{\nu \circ \omega} & \\ G_0' & \hookrightarrow & G_0 & \xrightarrow{\nu'_G \circ \nu_G} & \mathbb{G}_m, \end{array} \tag{1.4}$$

where the horizontal row is exact. Hence, there is an almost-direct product decomposition $G_0 \cong G_0' \times \omega(\mathbb{G}_m)/C$ for G_0. In what follows, we split the proof into two cases, according to whether or not the two-point finite group C is contained in G_0^{der}.

If C lies in G_0^{der}, then $T' \cong \mathbb{K} \times \mathbb{G}_m$, where $\mathbb{K}$ is the kernel of ν_G'. In fact, $T' \cong \mathbb{K} \times (\nu_G \circ \omega(\mathbb{G}_m))/C'$, where C' is the image of C under ν_G, which is trivial in this case. So ν_G' is the projection of $T' \cong \mathbb{K} \times \mathbb{G}_m$ to the second factor. Note that $\mathbb{K}$ is a *connected and $\mathbb{R}$-anisotropic* torus since T' is connected and $h_x(i)$ induces a Cartan involution of $(G^\ddagger/\mathbb{G}_m)_{\mathbb{R}}$, so $\mathbb{K}(\mathbb{R})$ is also a *connected compact* Lie group by a theorem of Chevalley (see, e.g., [PR94, Sec. 3.1, Thm. 3.1, and Sec. 3.2, Cor. 1]). Hence, $\nu_G' : Y \to \mathbb{H}_0^{\pm}$ is isomorphic to the morphism $\pi_0(T'(\mathbb{R})) \to \pi_0(\mathbb{G}_m(\mathbb{R}))$ induced by the natural projection $T'_{\mathbb{R}} \to \mathbb{G}_{m,\mathbb{R}}$, and therefore is injective since $\mathbb{K}(\mathbb{R})$ is connected. The second statement follows from the injectivity proved above, and the connectedness of $\mathbb{K}(\mathbb{R})$.

If C does not lie in G_0^{der}, it follows that $C' \cong \mu_2$. Let U^1 be the kernel of N. Choose any $x \in X_0$. Then U', the image of U^1 under $U^1 \hookrightarrow \mathbb{S} \xrightarrow{\nu_G \circ h_x} T'_{\mathbb{R}}$, is not trivial since C' lies in it; so U' is isomorphic to U^1. Since T' is connected, it follows that $\mathbb{K}$ has at most 2 connected components. But we claim $\mathbb{K}$ is connected. In fact, $\mathbb{K}/C'$ is connected and C' is contained in a compact connected subgroup U^1 in the compact algebraic group $\mathbb{K}$, so C' lies in the identity component of $\mathbb{K}$, and then $\mathbb{K}$ is connected. Hence, both $\mathbb{K}/C'(\mathbb{R})$ and $\mathbb{K}(\mathbb{R})$ are connected by Chevalley's theorem (see, e.g., [PR94, Sec. 3.1, Thm. 3.1, and Sec. 3.2, Cor. 1]).

Furthermore, $T'(\mathbb{R})$ is connected. To see this, we note that there is an extension of algebraic groups

$$0 \to \mathbb{G}_m \to T' \to \mathbb{K}/C' \to 0.$$

Since $\mathbb{K}/C'(\mathbb{R})$ is connected and $T' \to \mathbb{K}/C'$ is surjective, the induced homomorphism between $\mathbb{R}$-points $T'(\mathbb{R}) \to (\mathbb{K}/C')(\mathbb{R})$ is surjective. Then we find a fibration $\mathbb{G}_m(\mathbb{R}) \to T'(\mathbb{R}) \to (\mathbb{K}/C')(\mathbb{R})$. We can consider the long exact sequence of π_0- and π_1- groups

$$\cdots \to \pi_1((\mathbb{K}/C')(\mathbb{R})) \xrightarrow{\partial} \pi_0(\mathbb{G}_m(\mathbb{R})) \to \pi_0(T'(\mathbb{R})) \to \pi_0((\mathbb{K}/C')(\mathbb{R})) \to 0.$$

Since $U'(\mathbb{R})$ is a loop in $\mathbb{K}(\mathbb{R}) \subset T'(\mathbb{R})$ containing $C'(\mathbb{R}) \cong \mu_2(\mathbb{R}) = \{\pm 1\} \subset \nu_G \circ \omega(\mathbb{G}_m(\mathbb{R})) \cong \mathbb{G}_m(\mathbb{R})$, where the last isomorphism is the natural isomorphism induced by the quotient of $\omega(\mathbb{G}_m)$ by $G_0^{\mathrm{der}} \cap \omega(\mathbb{G}_m) = 1$. Then there is a half-loop $U^+ \cong [-1, 1]$ in $U'(\mathbb{R})$ connecting 1 and -1 in $C'(\mathbb{R})$ whose image in $(\mathbb{K}/C')(\mathbb{R})$ is a loop, denoted by $\overline{U}^+$. Hence, the monodromy action of the homotopy class of $\overline{U}^+$ interchanges the two elements of $\pi_0(\mathbb{G}_m(\mathbb{R}))$; that is, ∂ is surjective. Then we find that $T'(\mathbb{R})$ is connected in the second case.

As a result, Y has only one point in this case, and therefore $\nu_G' : Y \to \mathbb{H}_0^{\pm}$ is injective. The second statement follows from the connectedness of $T'(\mathbb{R})$. □

Lemma 1.7. *Let (G, X) be a Shimura datum of abelian type. Let $G(\mathbb{R})_+$ be the inverse image of $G^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{R})^+$ under $G(\mathbb{R}) \to G^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{R})$. Then $G(\mathbb{R})_+$ is connected if (G, X) satisfies the following condition:*

- *There is a Hodge-type Shimura datum (G_0, X_0) and a central isogeny $\pi : G_0 \to G$ such that the kernel of π is in G_0^{der} and π induces a morphism between Shimura data $(G_0, X_0) \to (G, X)$.*

Proof. Suppose that (G, X), (G_0, X_0) and π are as in the statement. Then they fit into a commutative diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} (G_0, X_0) & & \longrightarrow & & (G^\ddagger, X^\ddagger) \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \pi} & & & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \nu} \\ (G, X) & \longrightarrow & (T', Y) & \xrightarrow{\nu_G'} & (\mathbb{G}_m, \mathbb{H}_0^{\pm}). \end{array} \tag{1.5}$$

By Lemma 1.6, it suffices to show that $G^{\mathrm{der}}(\mathbb{R})_+ := G(\mathbb{R})_+ \cap G^{\mathrm{der}}(\mathbb{R})$ is connected. Fix any $x \in X$. Let X^+ be the connected component of X containing x. Since $G^{\mathrm{der}}(\mathbb{R})^+$ maps surjectively to $G^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{R})^+$ and is contained in $G(\mathbb{R})^+ \subset G(\mathbb{R})_+$, $G^{\mathrm{der}}(\mathbb{R})_+$ acts on X^+ transitively.

Therefore, it suffices to show that the centralizer $\mathrm{Cent}_{G^{\mathrm{der}}(\mathbb{R})}(h_x)$ is connected. This fact can be extracted from the proof of [Pin90, Prop. 2.11]. Since $G^{\mathrm{der}}_{\mathbb{R}}$ is connected, the algebraic group $\mathrm{Cent}_{G^{\mathrm{der}}_{\mathbb{R}}}(h_x)$ is connected. The Lie algebra of $\mathrm{Cent}_{G^{\mathrm{der}}_{\mathbb{R}}}(h_x)$ is fixed by the Cartan involution induced by $h_x(i)$, which implies that $\mathrm{Cent}_{G^{\mathrm{der}}_{\mathbb{R}}}(h_x)$ is compact. Then the desired assertion follows by Chevalley's theorem (see, e.g., [PR94, Sec. 3.1, Thm. 3.1, and Sec. 3.2, Cor. 1]). □

Proposition 1.8. *Let $(G, \mathcal{X}, \hbar)$ be a pure Shimura datum with $\hbar : \mathcal{X} \to X = \mathrm{Hom}(\mathbb{S}, G_{\mathbb{R}})$. Suppose that (G, X) satisfies the condition in Lemma 1.7. Then for any neat open compact subgroup K, the pure Shimura variety $\mathrm{Sh}_K(G, \mathcal{X})$ is a Shimura variety.*

Proof. By definition, it suffices to show that the $G(\mathbb{R})$-equivariant projection $\mathcal{X} \to \mathrm{Hom}(\mathbb{S}, G_{\mathbb{R}})$ is injective. Let $\mathcal{X}^+$ be a connected component of $\mathcal{X}$, which maps to a connected component X^+ of X. By [Pin90, Prop. 2.11 and Cor. 2.12], $\hbar$ is a finite covering and $\mathcal{X}$ is a union of hermitian symmetric domains with $G(\mathbb{R})^+$ acting on each connected component transitively. Then the stabilizer of $\mathcal{X}^+$ in $G(\mathbb{R})$ is a subgroup of $G(\mathbb{R})_+$ containing $G(\mathbb{R})^+$. By Lemma 1.7, $G(\mathbb{R})^+ = G(\mathbb{R})_+$, which implies the desired statement. □

Corollary 1.9. *Let (G, X) be a Shimura datum satisfying the condition in Lemma 1.7. Let Φ be any cusp label representative. Then $(P_{\Phi,h}, D_{\Phi,h})$ defined in §1.1.3 is a Shimura datum in the usual sense. If $(G, X) = (G_0, X_0)$ is of Hodge type, $(P_{\Phi,h}, D_{\Phi,h})$ is of Hodge type and, in particular, $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi,h}}$ is a Hodge-type Shimura variety for any neat open compact subgroup $K \subset G(\mathbb{A}_f)$.*

Proof. We first assume that (G, X) is a Hodge-type Shimura datum. Let $\iota : (G, X) \hookrightarrow (G^\ddagger, X^\ddagger)$ be the embedding into the Siegel Shimura datum. Let $\Phi = (Q_\Phi, [x_\Phi], g_\Phi)$ be a cusp label representative of (G, X). There is a unique minimal admissible $\mathbb{Q}$-parabolic subgroup $Q^\ddagger_\Phi$ of $G^\ddagger$ containing Q_Φ. Let $[\iota(x_\Phi)]$ be the unique connected component of $X^\ddagger$ containing $\iota(x_\Phi)$. Then $(Q^\ddagger_\Phi, [\iota(x_\Phi)], \iota(g_\Phi))$ is a cusp label representative of $(G^\ddagger, X^\ddagger)$, denoted by $\Phi^\ddagger$. Levi decomposition induces an injective homomorphism $P_{\Phi,h} \hookrightarrow P_{\Phi^\ddagger,h}$. By [Pin90, 4.25], the group $P_{\Phi^\ddagger,h}$ is a symplectic similitude group and $\hbar(D_{\Phi^\ddagger,h})$ is the Siegel upper and lower half-spaces associated with $P_{\Phi^\ddagger,h}$. By Proposition 1.8, $(P_{\Phi,h}, D_{\Phi,h}) = \hbar(P_{\Phi,h}, D_{\Phi,h}) \hookrightarrow \hbar(P_{\Phi^\ddagger,h}, D_{\Phi^\ddagger,h}) = (P_{\Phi^\ddagger,h}, D_{\Phi^\ddagger,h})$ is a Hodge embedding since $\mathrm{Hom}(\mathbb{S}, P_{\Phi,h,\mathbb{R}}) \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Hom}(\mathbb{S}, P_{\Phi^\ddagger,h,\mathbb{R}})$.

Now we only assume that (G, X) satisfies the condition in Lemma 1.7. Since $\pi : G_0 \to G$ is a central isogeny, Q is an admissible $\mathbb{Q}$-parabolic subgroup of G if and only if $\pi^{-1}(Q)$ is an admissible $\mathbb{Q}$-parabolic subgroup of G_0. Since this question is not related to g_Φ, we can choose a cusp label representative $\Phi = (Q_\Phi, [x_\Phi], g_\Phi)$ of (G, X) such that there is a connected component $[x_{\Phi_0}]$ of X_0 mapping to $[x_\Phi]$ and a lifting g_{Φ_0} of g_Φ to $G_0(\mathbb{A}_f)$. Then $\Phi_0 = (\pi^{-1}(Q), [x_{\Phi_0}], g_{\Phi_0})$ is a cusp label representative of (G_0, X_0). By the last paragraph and Proposition 1.8, $(P_{\Phi_0,h}, D_{\Phi_0,h})$ is a Hodge-type Shimura datum, and therefore $(P_{\Phi,h}, D_{\Phi,h})$ satisfies the condition in Lemma 1.7. Hence, the statement follows from Proposition 1.8. □

Corollary 1.10. *With the conventions above, if $(G, X) = (G_0, X_0)$ is of Hodge type and if Φ maps to $\Phi^\ddagger \in \mathcal{CLR}(G^\ddagger, X^\ddagger)$ (see the conventions in Corollary 1.9), the morphisms $(P_\Phi, D_\Phi) \to (P_{\Phi^\ddagger}, D_{\Phi^\ddagger})$, $(\overline{P}_\Phi, \overline{D}_\Phi) \to (\overline{P}_{\Phi^\ddagger}, \overline{D}_{\Phi^\ddagger})$ and $(P_{\Phi,h}, D_{\Phi,h}) \to (P_{\Phi^\ddagger,h}, D_{\Phi^\ddagger,h})$ induced by the Hodge embedding $(G, X) \hookrightarrow (G^\ddagger, X^\ddagger)$ are embeddings. The last morphism $(P_{\Phi,h}, D_{\Phi,h}) \hookrightarrow (P_{\Phi^\ddagger,h}, D_{\Phi^\ddagger,h})$ is also a Hodge embedding.*

Proof. From the proof above, we have that $(P_{\Phi,h}, D_{\Phi,h}) = \hbar(P_{\Phi,h}, D_{\Phi,h}) \hookrightarrow \hbar(P_{\Phi^\ddagger,h}, D_{\Phi^\ddagger,h}) = (P_{\Phi^\ddagger,h}, D_{\Phi^\ddagger,h})$ is a Hodge embedding. By [Pin90, Cor. 2.12], every connected component of D_Φ (resp. $D_{\Phi^\ddagger}$) maps isomorphically to its image in $\hbar(D_\Phi)$ (resp. $\hbar(D_{\Phi^\ddagger})$). Since the fibers of projection

$D_\Phi \to D_{\Phi,h}$ (resp. $D_{\Phi^\ddagger} \to D_{\Phi^\ddagger,h}$) are connected, this implies that $D_\Phi = \hbar(D_\Phi)$ (resp. $D_{\Phi^\ddagger} = \hbar(D_{\Phi^\ddagger})$). The same argument also applies to $\overline{D}_\Phi$ and $\overline{D}_{\Phi^\ddagger}$. □

1.2.2. We compare the group P_Φ with the group P'' in [Har89, 2.7]; from now on, denote the latter group by P''_Φ. More precisely, for any Φ in $\mathcal{CLR}(G,X)$, let P''_Φ be the maximal $\mathbb{Q}$-subgroup of Q_Φ such that the homomorphism $P''_\Phi \to \mathrm{GL}(\mathrm{Lie}\, U_\Phi)$ defined by the adjoint representation of Q_Φ on $\mathrm{GL}(\mathrm{Lie}\, U_\Phi)$ factors through $P''_\Phi \to \mathbb{G}_m \hookrightarrow \mathrm{GL}(\mathrm{Lie}\, U_\Phi)$, where the second homomorphism $\mathbb{G}_m \hookrightarrow \mathrm{GL}(\mathrm{Lie}\, U_\Phi)$ is given by the $\mathbb{G}_m$-action on $\mathrm{Lie}\, U_\Phi$ by homotheties. The group P''_Φ is a normal subgroup of Q_Φ containing the center Z_G of G. By [Pin90, Prop. 2.14(a)], $P_\Phi \subset P''_\Phi$. Following [Har89], let P'_Φ be the kernel of the adjoint representation $Q_\Phi \to \mathrm{GL}(\mathrm{Lie}\, U_\Phi)$. Let P^*_Φ be the smallest normal $\mathbb{Q}$-subgroup of Q_Φ such that $u_x^{Q_\Phi} \circ h_\infty(i)$ factors through it and the unipotent radical of P^*_Φ is W_Φ.

Lemma 1.11. *Assume that (G,X) is a Shimura datum such that there is a Hodge-type Shimura datum (G_0,X_0) and a morphism $\pi:(G_0,X_0)\to(G,X)$ such that the kernel of $\pi: G_0 \to G$ is finite and is in G_0^{der}. Then the quotient group $P''_\Phi/Z_G\cdot P_\Phi$ is of compact type.*

Proof. In fact, we will imitate some arguments in [Pin90, Lem. 4.9]. Let x be any point on X. As the boundary weight cocharacter $\omega_{x,\infty}^{Q_\Phi}$ is defined over $\mathbb{Q}$ by assumption, we have $P''_\Phi = \omega_{x,\infty}^{Q_\Phi}(\mathbb{G}_m)\cdot P'_\Phi$ and $P_\Phi \supset \omega_{x,\infty}^{Q_\Phi}(\mathbb{G}_m)\cdot P^*_\Phi$. Note that, from the construction of h_∞ and $u_x^{Q_\Phi}$ (see [Pin90, Prop. 4.6]), $P^*_\Phi \subset P'_\Phi$ since the adjoint representation of $u_x^{Q_\Phi}\circ h_\infty(i)$ on $\mathrm{Lie}\, U_\Phi$ is trivial. This implies that $\omega_{x,\infty}^{Q_\Phi}(\mathbb{G}_m)\cdot P^*_\Phi$ is an almost direct product.

Therefore, we are reduced to showing that $P'_\Phi/Z_G\cdot P^*_\Phi$ is of compact type, and it suffices to show that $h_{x,\infty}(i) := u_x^{Q_\Phi}\circ h_\infty(i)$ induces a Cartan involution on $(P'_\Phi/Z_G\cdot W_\Phi)_{\mathbb{R}}$ since $h_{x,\infty}(i)$ factors through $P^*_{\Phi,\mathbb{C}}$. Let $\widetilde{G}$ be the centralizer of $\omega_{x,\infty}^{Q_\Phi}$ in Q_Φ, which is a connected reductive subgroup that is naturally isomorphic to the Levi quotient Q_Φ/W_Φ. The quotient $P'_\Phi/Z_G\cdot W_\Phi$ is a normal subgroup of $Q_\Phi/Z_G\cdot W_\Phi$. By the definition of $\widetilde{G}$, $h_{x,\infty}(i)$ factors through $\widetilde{G}_{\mathbb{C}}$.

Finally, we claim that $h_x(i)$ and $h_{x,\infty}(i)$ induce the same Cartan involution on $(\widetilde{G}/Z_G)_{\mathbb{R}}$: To see this, note that the difference $h_x(i)\cdot h_{x,\infty}(i)^{-1}$ lies in the image of $u_x^{Q_\Phi}(H^{\mathrm{der}}_{0,\mathbb{C}})$. Moreover, note that the adjoint representation of $u_x^{Q_\Phi}(H^{\mathrm{der}}_{0,\mathbb{C}})$ on G induces a trivial restriction on $\widetilde{G}$, since the kernel of this adjoint representation is a normal subgroup of a semisimple group, since the conjugation of $\omega_{x,\infty}^{Q_\Phi}\cdot\omega_{x,0}^{Q_\Phi,-1}$ on $\widetilde{G}$ is trivial, and since the image of $u_x^{Q_\Phi}(U_0)$ is in $W_{\Phi,\mathbb{R}}$. Hence, $h_{x,\infty}(i)$ induces a Cartan involution on $(Q_\Phi/Z_G\cdot W_\Phi)_{\mathbb{R}}$ and on $(P'_\Phi/Z_G\cdot W_\Phi)_{\mathbb{R}}$. □

1.3. **Compactifications and connected components.** Let $K\subset G(\mathbb{A}_f)$ be a neat open compact subgroup. Let X^+ be a connected component of X. Define $G(\mathbb{Q})_+ := G(\mathbb{Q})\cap G(\mathbb{R})_+$. We have

$$\mathrm{Sh}_K(G,X)(\mathbb{C}) = G(\mathbb{Q})_+\backslash X^+\times G(\mathbb{A}_f)/K \cong \coprod_{g_i\in I} X^+/\Gamma(g_i).$$

Here, $\Gamma(g_i) := G(\mathbb{Q})_+\cap g_iKg_i^{-1}$ and I is a set of representatives of the double coset $\pi_0(\mathrm{Sh}_K(G,X)_{\mathbb{C}}) \cong G(\mathbb{Q})_+\backslash G(\mathbb{A}_f)/K$. This disjoint union admits an algebraic structure $\mathrm{Sh}_K(G,X)_{\mathbb{C}} \cong \coprod_{g_i\in I} X^+/\Gamma(g_i)^{\mathrm{alg}}$ over $\mathbb{C}$.

In this subsection, we recall some key definitions and statements in Pink's thesis on minimal and toroidal compactifications of $\mathrm{Sh}_K := \mathrm{Sh}_K(G,X)$. Along the way, we also study the geometrically connected components of the strata of the toroidal and minimal compactifications of a single connected component $X^+/\Gamma(g_i)^{\mathrm{alg}}$ in the strata of the corresponding compactifications of $\mathrm{Sh}_K(G,X)_{\mathbb{C}}$.

1.3.1. We summarize a situation that will repeatedly occur.

Let (X,X_1) be a pair of topological spaces with an open and closed embedding $h: X\hookrightarrow X_1$. Let (G,G_1) be a pair of groups equipped with an injective homomorphism $i: G\hookrightarrow G_1$. Let K (resp.

K_1) be a subgroup of G (resp. G_1). Let H (resp. H_1) be a subgroup of G (resp. G_1). Suppose that H (resp. H_1) acts on X (resp. X_1) by $c : H \times X \to X$ (resp. $c_1 : H_1 \times X_1 \to X_1$), and c, c_1, h and i satisfy the following commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} H \times X & \xrightarrow{c} & X \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle (i,h)} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle h} \\ H_1 \times X_1 & \xrightarrow{c_1} & X_1, \end{array} \tag{1.6}$$

In addition, we assume that $H_1X = X_1$, and that H_1 stabilizes G by conjugation.

We have left group actions of H_1 on X_1 and G_1, and a right group action of K_1 on G_1. Then we have the following decomposition of double cosets

$$H_1\backslash X_1 \times G_1/K_1 = H_1\backslash \coprod_{h\in I_1} h\cdot X \times G_1/K_1 \cong \mathrm{Stab}_{H_1}(X)\backslash X \times G_1/K_1,$$

where I_1 is a set of representatives of the coset $H_1/\mathrm{Stab}_{H_1}(X)$. Moreover,

$$\mathrm{Stab}_{H_1}(X)\backslash X \times G_1/K_1 = \mathrm{Stab}_{H_1}(X)\backslash X \times \coprod_{g\in I_2} \mathrm{Stab}_{H_1}(X)gK_1/K_1,$$

where I_2 is a set of representatives of the double coset $\mathrm{Stab}_{H_1}(X)G\backslash G_1/K_1$. If $i(K) \subset gK_1g^{-1}$, we also note that there is a canonical map from $H\backslash X \times G/K$ to $\mathrm{Stab}_{H_1}(X)\backslash X \times \mathrm{Stab}_{H_1}(X)gK_1/K_1$.

Since H_1 stabilizes G by assumption, we can further write

$$\mathrm{Stab}_{H_1}(X)\backslash X \times \mathrm{Stab}_{H_1}(X)gK_1/K_1 \cong \mathrm{Stab}_{H_1}(X) \cap gK_1g^{-1}\backslash X \times gK_1/K_1.$$

1.3.2. First, we consider the minimal compactification. For any cusp label representative $(Q_\Phi, X_\Phi^+, g_\Phi)$, from §1.1.3, we associate a $P_\Phi(\mathbb{R})U_\Phi(\mathbb{C})$-homogeneous space D_Φ with Φ, and $D_{\Phi,h}$ is called a *rational boundary component* of X (see [BB66, 3.5]). Let $X^* = \bigcup D_{\Phi,h}$ be the union of $D_{\Phi,h}$ running over all rational boundary components of X (also including X itself), endowed with the so-called *Satake topology* (see [BB66, 4.8] and [Pin90, 6.2]). Note that the assignment $\Phi \mapsto D_{\Phi,h}$ is not injective: for any two cusp label representatives $\Phi = (Q_\Phi, X_\Phi^+, g_\Phi)$ and $\Phi' = (Q_{\Phi'}, X_{\Phi'}^+, g_{\Phi'})$, the associated rational boundary components $D_{\Phi,h} = D_{\Phi',h}$ if and only if $D_\Phi = D_{\Phi'}$ if and only if $Q_\Phi = Q_{\Phi'}$ and $P_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})X_\Phi^+ = P_{\Phi'}(\mathbb{Q})X_{\Phi'}^+$.

The *minimal compactification* of $\mathrm{Sh}_K(G,X)(\mathbb{C})$ is defined as $\mathrm{Sh}_K^{\min}(G,X)(\mathbb{C}) := G(\mathbb{Q})\backslash X^* \times G(\mathbb{A}_f)/K$, and it possesses a canonical structure of a normal variety $\mathrm{Sh}_K^{\min}(G,X)$ over the reflex field $E := E(G,X)$. See [Pin90, 12.3].

Consider the $G(\mathbb{Q})$-orbit $\Psi = G(\mathbb{Q})\Phi$ of Φ and let D_Ψ be the union of $D_{g\Phi}$ for $g \in G(\mathbb{Q})$. Similarly, let $D_{\Psi,h}$ be the union of subspaces $D_{g\Phi,h}$ of X^* for $g \in G(\mathbb{Q})$. Denote by $\mathrm{Z}_{\Psi,K}(\mathbb{C}) := G(\mathbb{Q})\backslash D_{\Psi,h} \times G(\mathbb{A}_f)/K$ the locally closed subspace of $\mathrm{Sh}_K^{\min}(G,X)(\mathbb{C})$ induced by the inclusion $D_{\Psi,h} \hookrightarrow X^*$. By [Pin90, 6.3] and Proposition 1.4, we have $\mathrm{Z}_{\Psi,K}(\mathbb{C}) = \mathrm{Stab}_{Q(\mathbb{Q})}(D_{\Phi,h})\backslash D_{\Phi,h} \times G(\mathbb{A}_f)/K = \coprod_{[\Phi_i]\in I(Q_\Phi)} \mathrm{Z}_{[\Phi_i],K}(\mathbb{C})$, where each

$$\mathrm{Z}_{[\Phi_i],K}(\mathbb{C}) = \Delta_{\Phi_i,K}\backslash \mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_i,h}}(G_{\Phi_i,h}, D_{\Phi_i,h})(\mathbb{C}),$$

and

$$\Delta_{\Phi_i,K} := \mathrm{Stab}_{Q_{\Phi_i}(\mathbb{Q})}(D_{\Phi_i}) \cap P_{\Phi_i}(\mathbb{A}_f) g_{\Phi_i} K g_{\Phi_i}^{-1} / P_{\Phi_i}(\mathbb{Q}).$$

Indeed, by Proposition 1.4, there is an isomorphism $\mathrm{Stab}_{Q(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi)P_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)\backslash G(\mathbb{A}_f)/K \cong I(Q_\Phi)$ mapping $[g_i]$ in the double coset to $[\Phi_i] = [(Q_\Phi, X_\Phi^+, g_i)]$, and Ψ only depends on the $G(\mathbb{Q})$-conjugacy class $[Q_\Phi]$ of Q_Φ. Since the strong approximation theorem holds for unipotent groups, we have $\mathrm{Z}_{[\Phi_i],K}(\mathbb{C}) = \Delta_{\Phi_i,K}\backslash(P_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})\backslash D_{\Phi,h} \times P_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)/K_{\Phi_i})$. By §1.3.1, we can write the disjoint union as above. If we fix a set of representatives for $I(Q_\Phi)$ as above such that $\Phi_i = (Q_\Phi, X_\Phi^+, g_i)$, then

$$\Delta_{\Phi_i,K} \cong \mathrm{Stab}_{Q_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi) \cap P_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f) g_i K g_i^{-1} / P_\Phi(\mathbb{Q}).$$

In other words, for any admissible $\mathbb{Q}$-parabolic subgroup Q, we can choose any $\Phi = (Q, X_\Phi^+, g_\Phi)$ and define Ψ as above. Then $\mathrm{Z}_{\Psi,K}(\mathbb{C})$ is the union of all $\mathrm{Z}_{[\Phi_i],K}(\mathbb{C})$ associated with equivalence classes of cusp label representatives formed by the $G(\mathbb{Q})$-conjugacy class $[Q]$ and other data. Hence, it makes sense to denote $\mathrm{Z}_{\Psi,K}(\mathbb{C})$ as $\mathrm{Z}_{[Q],K}(\mathbb{C})$.

Then

$$\mathrm{Sh}_K^{\min}(G,X)(\mathbb{C}) \cong \coprod_{[Q]} \mathrm{Z}_{[Q],K}(\mathbb{C}), \tag{1.7}$$

where the disjoint union runs over the conjugacy classes of admissible $\mathbb{Q}$-parabolic subgroups of G.

Let $\Phi = (Q, X^+, g_\Phi)$. Let D_Φ^+ be the connected component of D_Φ containing X^+. Then the image $D_{\Phi,h}^+$ of D_Φ^+ in $D_{\Phi,h}$ is a connected component of $D_{\Phi,h}$. We have $\mathrm{Z}_{[\Phi_i],K}(\mathbb{C}) \cong \mathrm{Stab}_{Q(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi)\backslash D_{\Phi,h} \times \mathrm{Stab}_{Q(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi)P_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)/K_{\Phi_i} \cong \coprod_{c_j \in C(\Phi_i)} D_{\Phi,h}^+/\Gamma_{\Phi_i}(c_j)$, where $C(\Phi_i)$ is a set of representatives of the double coset $\pi_0(\mathrm{Z}_{[\Phi_i],K}(\mathbb{C})) \cong \mathrm{Stab}_{Q(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi^+)\backslash \mathrm{Stab}_{Q(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi)P_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)/K_{\Phi_i}$ and $\Gamma_{\Phi_i}(c_j) := \mathrm{Stab}_{Q(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi^+) \cap c_j K_{\Phi_i} c_j^{-1}$.

By [Pin90, Prop. 9.24 and Thm. 11.8] again, $\mathrm{Z}_{[\Phi],K}(\mathbb{C})$, $\mathrm{Z}_{\Psi,K}(\mathbb{C})$ and $\mathrm{Z}_{[Q],K}(\mathbb{C})$ admit algebraic structures over the reflex field E of (G,X), and we denote them by $\mathrm{Z}_{[\Phi],K}$, $\mathrm{Z}_{\Psi,K}$ and $\mathrm{Z}_{[Q],K}$, respectively. We also adopt similar notation for their base changes (cf. Convention 1.2).

We have the following observation from the discussions above:

Lemma 1.12. *Denote by $\overline{E}$ the algebraic closure of $E := E(G,X)$. Fix a connected component X^+ of X so that we can define an isomorphism $\pi_0(\mathrm{Sh}_K(G,X)_{\overline{E}}) \cong G(\mathbb{Q})_+\backslash G(\mathbb{A}_f)/K$ mapping $G(\mathbb{Q})_+\backslash X^+ \times G(\mathbb{Q})_+K/K$ to $[1]$. Denote the connected component of $\mathrm{Sh}_K^{\min}(G,X)_{\overline{E}}$ corresponding to $[g]$ by $\mathrm{Sh}_{K,\overline{E}}^{\min,[g]}$ for $[g] \in G(\mathbb{Q})_+\backslash G(\mathbb{A}_f)/K$. Let $\mathrm{Z}_{[Q],K,\overline{E}}^{[g]}$ be the pullback of $\mathrm{Z}_{[Q],K,\overline{E}} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Sh}_K^{\min}(G,X)_{\overline{E}}$ to $\mathrm{Sh}_{K,\overline{E}}^{\min,[g]}$. For any Q, there is an isomorphism $\pi_0(\mathrm{Z}_{[Q],K,\overline{E}}) \cong \mathrm{Stab}_{Q(\mathbb{Q})}(D_{Q,X^+}^+)\backslash G(\mathbb{A}_f)/K$ such that $\mathrm{Z}_{[Q],K,\overline{E}}^{[g]} \cong \coprod_{[g']\mapsto[g]} \mathrm{Z}_{[Q],K,\overline{E}}^{[g']}$, where the disjoint union runs over the preimages of $[g]$ under the natural quotient*

$$\pi_{Q,X^+} : \mathrm{Stab}_{Q(\mathbb{Q})}(D_{Q,X^+}^+)\backslash G(\mathbb{A}_f)/K \longrightarrow G(\mathbb{Q})_+\backslash G(\mathbb{A}_f)/K.$$

Additionally, in the quotient above, the contribution of $\pi_0(\mathrm{Z}_{[\Phi],K,\overline{E}})$ is a subquotient

$$\pi_\Phi : \mathrm{Stab}_{Q(\mathbb{Q})}(D_{Q,X^+}^+) \cap P_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f) g_\Phi K g_\Phi^{-1} \backslash P_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f) g_\Phi K/K \longrightarrow G(\mathbb{Q})_+\backslash G(\mathbb{A}_f)/K.$$

Proof. It suffices to check the statement over $\mathbb{C}$. By the definition of Satake topology, the closure $X^{+,*}$ of X^+ in X^* has a stratification consisting of connected components $D_{\Phi,h}^+$ of $D_{\Phi,h}$ such that D_Φ^+ contains $\tau(X^+)$. Hence, $\mathrm{Sh}_K^{\min}(G,X)(\mathbb{C}) = G(\mathbb{Q})_+\backslash X^{+,*} \times G(\mathbb{A}_f)/K$, and the strata in (1.7) can be written as $G(\mathbb{Q})_+\backslash G(\mathbb{Q})_+ D_{\Phi,h}^+ \times G(\mathbb{A}_f)/K = \mathrm{Z}_{[Q],K}(\mathbb{C})$, for some connected component D_Φ^+ containing $\tau(X^+)$. Then the map between the π_0 of $\mathrm{Z}_{[Q],K,\mathbb{C}}$ and $\mathrm{Sh}_K^{\min}(G,X)(\mathbb{C})$ can be written as $\pi_0(\mathrm{Z}_{[Q],K,\mathbb{C}}) \cong G(\mathbb{Q})_+\backslash(G(\mathbb{Q})_+/\mathrm{Stab}_{Q(\mathbb{Q})}(D_{Q,X^+}^+)) \times G(\mathbb{A}_f)/K \to G(\mathbb{Q})_+\backslash(G(\mathbb{Q})_+\backslash G(\mathbb{Q})_+) \times G(\mathbb{A}_f)/K \cong \pi_0(\mathrm{Sh}_K^{\min}(G,X)_{\mathbb{C}})$. We get the desired statement. □

For any cusp label $[\Phi]$ with a representative Φ and any geometrically connected component Sh_K^+ of $\mathrm{Sh}_K(G,X)$ defined over $\overline{E}$, we denote by $\mathrm{Sh}_K^{+,\min}$ the schematic closure of Sh_K^+ in $\mathrm{Sh}_{K,\overline{E}}^{\min}$ and denote by $\mathrm{Z}_{[\Phi],K}^+$ the pullback $\mathrm{Z}_{[\Phi],K,\overline{E}} \times_{\mathrm{Sh}_{K,\overline{E}}^{\min}} \mathrm{Sh}_K^{+,\min}$.

Remark 1.13. *Although in the theory of compactifications of connected Shimura varieties over $\mathbb{C}$ (see [AMRT10, Ch. III]), the strata defined for minimal compactifications are all connected, the strata $\mathrm{Z}_{[\Phi],K}^+$ induced from Pink's theory for every connected component $\mathrm{Sh}_K^{+,\min}$ are not connected in general.*

1.3.3. Now we recall Pink's work on toroidal compactifications of $\mathrm{Sh}_K(G,X)$. Let $Z := Z_G$ be the center of G. Let Φ be any cusp label representative. Denote by Z_Φ the center of P_Φ. Let $Z_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})^\circ$ be the subgroup of $Z_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})$ that acts trivially on D_Φ. Let $K_{\Phi,W}$ be the projection of $(Z_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})^\circ \times W_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)) \cap K_\Phi$ to the second factor $W_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)$, and let $K_{\Phi,U} := K_{\Phi,W} \cap U(\mathbb{A}_f)$. So $K_{\Phi,U}$ is the projection of $(Z_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})^\circ \times U_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)) \cap K_\Phi$ to the second factor.

Moreover, define $K'_{\Phi,U}$ (resp. $K'_{\Phi,W}$) to be the projection of $(Z(\mathbb{Q}) \times U_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)) \cap g_\Phi K g_\Phi^{-1}$ (resp. $(Z(\mathbb{Q}) \times W_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)) \cap g_\Phi K g_\Phi^{-1}$) to the second factor $U_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)$.

Lemma 1.14. *If K is neat, $K_{\Phi,U}$ (resp. $K_{\Phi,W}$) is contained in $K'_{\Phi,U}$ (resp. $K'_{\Phi,W}$) as a finite index subgroup. Moreover, if we assume that Z is isogenous to a product of $\mathbb{Q}$-split tori and $\mathbb{R}$-anisotropic tori, then $K_{\Phi,U} = K'_{\Phi,U}$ and $K_{\Phi,W} = K'_{\Phi,W}$.*

Proof. We only prove the result for $K_{\Phi,U}$ and $K'_{\Phi,U}$. By the proof of [Pin90, Cor. 4.10], the center of ZP_Φ/ZW_Φ is isogenous to a product of $\mathbb{Q}$-split tori and compact-type tori. Hence, if K_Φ is neat, then $K_{\Phi,U}$ is contained in the projection of $(Z(\mathbb{Q}) \cdot Z_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})^\circ \times U_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)) \cap g_\Phi K g_\Phi^{-1}$ to the second factor $U_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)$, and the latter is isomorphic to $K'_{\Phi,U}$. By neatness assumption of K, the only neat arithmetic subgroup of $Z(\mathbb{Q})$ is the trivial group, so $K_{\Phi,U} = K'_{\Phi,U}$. □

Define the lattice $\mathbf{S}^\vee_{K_\Phi} := (U_\Phi(\mathbb{Q}) \cap K_{\Phi,U})(-1) \subset U_\Phi(\mathbb{R})(-1)$, and let $\mathbf{E}_{K_\Phi}$ be the algebraic torus whose cocharacter is the lattice $\mathbf{S}^\vee_{K_\Phi}$ in $U_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})(-1)$. Let $\mathbf{P}_\Phi$ be the union of all $\mathrm{int}(\gamma^{-1})\mathbf{P}^+_{\Phi'} \subset U_\Phi(\mathbb{R})(-1)$ such that $\Phi \xrightarrow[\sim]{(\gamma,q)_K} \Phi'$. (Note that $\mathbf{P}_\Phi$ is not a rational polyhedral cone.) Define $\mathbf{\Lambda}_{K_\Phi} := (U_\Phi(\mathbb{Q}) \cap K'_{\Phi,U})(-1) \subset U_\Phi(\mathbb{R})(-1)$. By [Pin90, 3.13, Prop. 11.10 and Thm. 11.8], Sh_{K_Φ} is a torus torsor under $\mathbf{E}_{K_\Phi}$ over $\overline{\mathrm{Sh}}_{K_\Phi}$.

Let us recall the definitions related to cone decompositions.

Definition 1.15 ([Pin90, 6.4 and 7.12] and [MP19, 2.1.23])**.** *An **admissible** rational polyhedral cone decomposition Σ for (G,X,K) is an association $\Phi \in \mathcal{CLR}(G,X) \mapsto \Sigma(\Phi)$, where $\Sigma(\Phi)$ is a rational polyhedral cone decomposition of $\mathbf{P}_\Phi$, such that: if $\Phi_1 \xrightarrow{(\gamma,p)_K} \Phi_2$, $\mathrm{int}(\gamma^{-1})\Sigma(\Phi_2) = \Sigma(\Phi_1)|_{\mathrm{int}(\gamma^{-1})\mathbf{P}_{\Phi_2}}$ under the natural embedding $\mathrm{int}(\gamma^{-1}) : U_{\Phi_2}(\mathbb{R})(-1) \hookrightarrow U_{\Phi_1}(\mathbb{R})(-1)$.*

Let Σ be any admissible rational polyhedral cone decomposition. Then $\Sigma(\Phi) = \Sigma((q,k)\Phi)$ for any $q \in P_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)$ and $k \in K$. If $\Phi_1 \xrightarrow[\sim]{(\gamma,q)_K} \Phi_2$, then $\gamma U_{\Phi_1}(\mathbb{R})\gamma^{-1} = U_{\Phi_2}(\mathbb{R})$. Note that any $\gamma \in G(\mathbb{Q})$ has a left action on Σ such that for any cone $\sigma \in \Sigma(\Phi_1)$ where $\sigma^\circ \subset \mathbf{P}^+_{\Phi_1}$, the conjugation $\gamma\sigma\gamma^{-1}$ induces a cone in $\Sigma(\Phi_2)$ whose interior lies in $\mathbf{P}^+_{\Phi_2}$. Hence, $G(\mathbb{Q})$ acts on the set of pairs (Φ,σ) where $\sigma \in \Sigma(\Phi)$ such that $\sigma^\circ \subset \mathbf{P}^+_\Phi$. As in [MP19, 2.1.26], we say any two such pairs (Φ_1,σ_1) and (Φ_2,σ_2) are **equivalent** if $\Phi_1 \xrightarrow[\sim]{(\gamma,q)_K} \Phi_2$ and $\gamma\sigma_1\gamma^{-1} = \sigma_2$; we denote this equivalence by $(\Phi_1,\sigma_1) \xrightarrow[\sim]{(\gamma,q)_K} (\Phi_2,\sigma_2)$. We denote the set of equivalence classes in the form $[(\Phi,\sigma)]$ by $\mathrm{Cusp}_K(G,X,\Sigma)$, the elements in it are called **cusp labels with cones**. There is a partial order on $\mathrm{Cusp}_K(G,X,\Sigma)$ defined as follows: $[(\Phi_1,\sigma_1)] \preceq [(\Phi_2,\sigma_2)]$ if and only if $\Phi_1 \xrightarrow{(\gamma,q)_K} \Phi_2$ and $\gamma^{-1}\sigma_2\gamma$ is a face of σ_1.

Define $\Sigma^+(\Phi)$ to be the cones $\sigma \in \Sigma(\Phi)$ satisfying $\sigma^\circ \subset \mathbf{P}^+_\Phi$.

From Proposition 1.4, we can see that when we fix a Φ, the stabilizer of $[\Phi]$ in $Q_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})$ is $\widetilde{\Delta}_{\Phi,K} := \mathrm{Stab}_{Q_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi) \cap P_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f) g_\Phi K g_\Phi^{-1}$. Let $\Delta_{\Phi,K} := \widetilde{\Delta}_{\Phi,K}/P_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})$. This means that for any $\Upsilon = [(\Phi,\sigma)] \in \mathrm{Cusp}_K(G,X,\Sigma)$, Υ is determined by a pair $([\Phi],[\sigma])$, where $[\Phi] \in \mathrm{Cusp}_K(G,X)$ and $[\sigma]$ is a $\Delta_{\Phi,K}$-orbit of σ in $U_\Phi(\mathbb{R})$. Let $\Delta^\circ_{\Phi,K}$ be the normal subgroup of $\Delta_{\Phi,K}$ that stabilizes σ. By [MP19, 2.1.19], when K is neat, $\Delta^\circ_{\Phi,K}$ is independent of the choice of σ such that $\sigma^\circ \subset \mathbf{P}^+_\Phi$, and it fixes $\mathbf{P}_\Phi$.

Definition 1.16. *Let Σ be any admissible rational polyhedral cone decomposition for (G, X, K), we can further define the following terminologies:*

- *The decomposition Σ is called **complete** if, for any Φ, $\mathbf{P}_\Phi = \bigcup_{\sigma\in\Sigma(\Phi)} \sigma^\circ$.*
- *The decomposition Σ is called **finite** if $G(\mathbb{Q})\backslash\Sigma/K$ is finite.*
- *The decomposition Σ is a decomposition **without self-intersections** if, for any $\tau, \sigma \in \Sigma(\Phi)$ such that τ is a face of σ and $\sigma^\circ \subset \mathbf{P}_\Phi^+$, and any $\gamma \in G(\mathbb{Q})$, $q \in P_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)$ and $k \in K$ such that $(\gamma, q, k)\tau$ is also a face of σ, we have that $(\gamma, q, k)\tau = \tau$. (This condition is equivalent to* [Lan13, Condition 6.2.5.25] *if K is neat; see* [Lan13, Rmk. 6.2.5.26] *and the discussion above.)*
- *The decomposition Σ is **smooth** (resp. **projective**) if $\Sigma(\Phi)$, as a cone decomposition of $\mathbf{P}_\Phi \subset U_\Phi(\mathbb{R})(-1)$, is smooth (resp. projective) with respect to $\mathbf{\Lambda}_{K_\Phi}$ for any Φ; note that, if (G, X) is a Hodge-type Shimura datum, we can replace the $\mathbf{\Lambda}_{K_\Phi}$ in the last sentence with $\mathbf{S}^\vee_{K_\Phi}$ by Lemma 1.14.*

  In the last paragraph, being "smooth with respect to $\mathbf{\Lambda}_{K_\Phi}$" has the following precise meaning: We require that, for any $\sigma \in \Sigma(\Phi)$, there is a $\mathbb{Z}$-basis $\{v_1, v_2, ..., v_n\}$ of $\mathbf{\Lambda}_{K_\Phi}$ such that $\sigma = \sum_{i=1}^k \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} v_i$ for some $k \leq n$.

  Moreover, being "projective with respect to $\mathbf{\Lambda}_{K_\Phi}$" has the following precise meaning: We require that there is a polarization function $\mathrm{pol}_{K_\Phi} : \mathbf{P}_\Phi \to \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$ on $\mathbf{P}_\Phi$ such that
  - *pol_{K_Φ} is continuous and $\Delta_{\Phi,K}$-invariant, and is positive on $\mathbf{P}_\Phi\backslash\{0\}$,*
  - *the restriction $\mathrm{pol}_{K_\Phi}|_{\mathbf{\Lambda}_{K_\Phi}\cap\mathbf{P}_\Phi}$ takes values in $\mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}$,*
  - *pol_{K_Φ} is piecewise linear, and is linear on a rational polyhedral cone $\sigma \subset \mathbf{P}_\Phi$ if and only if $\sigma \in \Sigma(\Phi)$, and*
  - *we have $\mathrm{pol}_{K_\Phi}(x + y) \geq \mathrm{pol}_{K_\Phi}(x) + \mathrm{pol}_{K_\Phi}(y)$ for any x and y in $\mathbf{P}_\Phi$.*

Convention 1.17. *We always choose Σ to be admissible, complete, finite, and without self-intersections. From now on, whenever we say Σ is an admissible cone decomposition, it will mean that Σ is an admissible rational polyhedral cone decomposition that is complete, finite, and without self-intersections. The refinements of cone decompositions we take in this paper are also admissible, complete, finite, and without self-intersections.*

Definition 1.18 (cf. [Lan22])**.** *Let $f : (G_1, X_1) \to (G_2, X_2)$ be a morphism of Shimura data. Let $g \in G_2(\mathbb{A}_f)$. Let $K_1 \subset G_1(\mathbb{A}_f)$ and $K_2 \subset G_2(\mathbb{A}_f)$ be neat open compact subgroups such that $f(K_1) \subset gK_2g^{-1}$. By* [Pin90, 3.5 and Thm. 12.4]*, there is a morphism over the reflex field of (G_1, X_1):*

$$f(g)_{K_1,K_2} : \mathrm{Sh}_{K_1}(G_1, X_1) \to \mathrm{Sh}_{K_2}(G_2, X_2).$$

(1) Suppose that $(G_1, X_1) = (G_2, X_2) = (G, X)$ and $f = \mathrm{id}$. Then, in this case, $f(g)_{K_1,K_2} = [g]_{K_1,K_2}$ is the right action of g. Suppose that there is an admissible cone decomposition Σ for (G, X, K_2), by [Pin90, 6.7]*, the pullback of Σ, denoted by $[g]^*_{K_1,K_2}(\Sigma)$ is an admissible cone decomposition for (G, X, K_1). We say $[g]^*_{K_1,K_2}(\Sigma)$ is **induced** by Σ under $[g]_{K_1,K_2}$.*

*(2) Suppose that there are admissible cone decompositions Σ_1 for (G_1, X_1, K_1) and Σ_2 for (G_2, X_2, K_2). Suppose that for any $\Phi_1 \in \mathcal{CLR}(G_1, X_1)$ mapping to some $\Phi_2 \in \mathcal{CLR}(G_2, X_2)$ under $f(g)_{K_1,K_2}$, the induced map $U_{\Phi_1}(\mathbb{R})(-1) \to U_{\Phi_2}(\mathbb{R})(-1)$ is injective. Then we say that Σ_1 is **induced** by Σ_2 under $f(g)_{K_1,K_2}$ if, for any $\sigma_1 \in \Sigma_1(\Phi_1)$, σ_1 is exactly the preimage of some $\sigma_2 \in \Sigma_2(\Phi_2)$. Denote $\Sigma_1 := f(g)^*_{K_1,K_2}(\Sigma_2)$. If the image of σ_1 is exactly $\sigma_2 \in \Sigma_2(\Phi_2)$ itself for any $\sigma_1 \in \Sigma_1(\Phi_1)$ and any pair (Φ_1, Φ_2) described above, then we say that Σ_1 and Σ_2 are **strictly compatible** with each other.*

*(3) Suppose that there are admissible cone decompositions Σ_1 for (G_1, X_1, K_1) and Σ_2 for (G_2, X_2, K_2). We say that Σ_1 and Σ_2 are **compatible** with each other if, for any $\Phi_1 \in \mathcal{CLR}(G_1, X_1)$ mapping to $\Phi_2 \in \mathcal{CLR}(G_2, X_2)$ under $f(g)_{K_1,K_2}$, the image of any $\sigma_1 \in \Sigma_1(\Phi_1)$ under the map $\mathbf{P}_{\Phi_1} \to \mathbf{P}_{\Phi_2}$ is contained in some $\Sigma_2 \in \Sigma_2(\Phi_2)$.*

Let Σ be an admissible cone decomposition for (G,X,K). Assume that K is a neat open compact subgroup of $G(\mathbb{A}_f)$. By the main theorems of [Pin90], there is a toroidal compactification $\mathrm{Sh}_K^\Sigma := \mathrm{Sh}_K^\Sigma(G,X)$ of Sh_K over the reflex field $E := E(G,X)$, such that Sh_K^Σ is a normal algebraic space that is proper over $\mathrm{Spec}\, E$. If Σ is smooth (resp. projective), then Sh_K^Σ is smooth with a normal crossings boundary divisor $D := (\mathrm{Sh}_K^\Sigma \backslash \mathrm{Sh}_K)_{\mathrm{red}}$ (resp. is projective and representable by a scheme). There is a good stratification labeled by $\mathrm{Cusp}_K(G,X,\Sigma)$:

$$\mathrm{Sh}_K^\Sigma \cong \coprod_{\Upsilon \in \mathrm{Cusp}_K(G,X,\Sigma)} \mathrm{Z}_{\Upsilon,K}.$$

For any $\Upsilon = [(\Phi,\sigma)] \in \mathrm{Cusp}_K(G,X,\Sigma)$, the stratum $\mathrm{Z}_{\Upsilon,K}$ in Sh_K^Σ is a normal variety over E and is isomorphic to $\Delta_{\Phi,K}^\circ \backslash \mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi,\sigma}$, where $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi,\sigma}$ is the σ-stratum of the twisted affine torus embedding $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi}(\Sigma)$ over $\overline{\mathrm{Sh}}_{K_\Phi}$ defined by $\Sigma^+(\Phi)$. Note that $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi,\sigma}$ is closed in $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi}(\sigma)$ and is locally closed in $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi}(\Sigma)$.

Moreover, there is a canonical isomorphism:

$$(\mathrm{Sh}_K^\Sigma)^\wedge_{\mathrm{Z}_{\Upsilon,K}} \cong \Delta_{\Phi,K}^\circ \backslash \mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi}(\sigma)^\wedge_{\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi,\sigma}}.$$

Let $\widetilde{\Delta}_{\Phi,K}^\circ$ be the preimage of $\Delta_{\Phi,K}^\circ$ in $\mathrm{Stab}_{Q(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi) \cap P_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f) g_\Phi K g_\Phi^{-1}$. Since $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi,\sigma}$ is the closed stratum of the twisted affine torus embedding $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi}(\sigma)$ over an abelian scheme torsor $\overline{\mathrm{Sh}}_{K_\Phi}$ over $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi,h}$ (see [Pin90, 3.21] and [MP19, 2.1.10]), $\pi_0(\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi,\sigma,\mathbb{C}}) \cong \pi_0(\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi,h,\mathbb{C}}) \cong \mathrm{Stab}_{P_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi^+) \backslash P(\mathbb{A}_f)/K_\Phi$. Moreover, $\pi_0(\mathrm{Sh}_{K,\mathbb{C}}^\Sigma) \cong \pi_0(\mathrm{Sh}_{K,\mathbb{C}})$ since Sh_K is dense in Sh_K^Σ.

We have the following observation:

Lemma 1.19. *Let X^+ and Q be as in Lemma 1.12. For any $[g] \in G(\mathbb{Q})_+ \backslash G(\mathbb{A}_f)/K$ and any $\Upsilon = [(\Phi,\sigma)] \in \mathrm{Cusp}_K(G,X,\Sigma)$ with $\Phi = (Q, X^+, g_\Phi)$ so that $[\Phi] \in I(Q)$, denote by $\mathrm{Z}_{\Upsilon,\overline{E}}^{[g]}$ (resp. $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi,\sigma,\overline{E}}^{[g]}$) the pullback of $\mathrm{Z}_{\Upsilon,\overline{E}} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Sh}_{K,\overline{E}}^\Sigma$ (resp. $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi,\sigma,\overline{E}} \to \mathrm{Sh}_{K,\overline{E}}^\Sigma$) to the connected component $\mathrm{Sh}_{K,\overline{E}}^{\Sigma,[g]}$ corresponding to $[g]$. Then $\mathrm{Z}_{\Upsilon,\overline{E}}^{[g]} = \coprod_{[g'] \mapsto [g]} \mathrm{Z}_{\Upsilon,\overline{E}}^{[g']}$ and $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi,\sigma,\overline{E}}^{[g]} = \coprod_{[g'']\mapsto[g]} \mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi,\sigma,\overline{E}}^{[g'']}$, where the first disjoint union runs over the preimage of $[g]$ under*

$$\pi_0(\mathrm{Z}_{\Upsilon,\overline{E}}) \cong \mathrm{Stab}_{\widetilde{\Delta}_{\Phi,K}^\circ}(D_{Q,X^+}^+) \backslash P_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f) g_\Phi K/K \longrightarrow \pi_0(\mathrm{Sh}_{K,\overline{E}}), \tag{1.8}$$

and where the second disjoint union runs over the preimage of $[g]$ under

$$\pi_0(\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi,\sigma,\overline{E}}) = \mathrm{Stab}_{P_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})}(D_{Q,X^+}^+) \backslash P_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f) g_\Phi K/K \longrightarrow \pi_0(\mathrm{Sh}_{K,\overline{E}}). \tag{1.9}$$

Proof. It suffices to check this over $\mathbb{C}$. Since g_Φ is a representative of $\mathrm{Stab}_{Q(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi) P_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f) \backslash G(\mathbb{A}_f)/K$, and $\mathrm{Stab}_{P_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi^+) \backslash P_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)/K_\Phi$ is isomorphic to $\mathrm{Stab}_{P_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi^+) \backslash P_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f) g_\Phi K/K$, the map between connected components $\pi_0(\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi,\sigma,\mathbb{C}}) \to \pi_0(\mathrm{Z}_{[Q],K,\mathbb{C}})$ induced by the natural morphism $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi,\sigma,\mathbb{C}} \to \mathrm{Z}_{[Q],K,\mathbb{C}}$ is the map $\mathrm{Stab}_{P_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi^+) \backslash P_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f) g_\Phi K/K \to \mathrm{Stab}_{Q(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi^+) \backslash G(\mathbb{A}_f)/K$ induced by $P_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f) g_\Phi K \hookrightarrow G(\mathbb{A}_f)$ and $\mathrm{Stab}_{P_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi^+) \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Stab}_{Q(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi^+)$. Then the statement follows from Lemma 1.12 and the paragraph above. □

Remark 1.20. *Let Sh_K^+ be a geometrically connected component of $\mathrm{Sh}_K(G,X)$. Denote by $\mathrm{Sh}_K^{+,\Sigma}$ and $\mathrm{Sh}_K^{+,\min}$ its closure in $\mathrm{Sh}_K^\Sigma(G,X)$ and $\mathrm{Sh}_K^{\min}(G,X)$ respectively. The components $\mathrm{Sh}_K^{+,\Sigma}$ and $\mathrm{Sh}_K^{+,\min}$ might not intersect with all strata of the toroidal and minimal compactifications nontrivially (see the appendix of [Wan15] for an affirmative answer about this for the PEL type A and C case); moreover, from (1.8), we can see that for toroidal compactifications, each stratum appearing in some $\mathrm{Sh}_K^{+,\Sigma}$, if not trivial, might not be geometrically connected, since $\Delta_{\Phi,K}^\circ$ might be trivial and the action of $\Delta_{\Phi,K}$ might not be trivial, and since $\mathrm{Z}_{[\Phi],K}^+$ might not be connected.*

Convention 1.21. *If K is clear in the context, we will omit the subscript K in $\Delta_{\Phi,K}$, $\Delta^\circ_{\Phi,K}$, $\mathrm{Z}_{[\Phi],K}$, $\mathrm{Z}_{[Q],K}$ and $\mathrm{Z}^+_{[\Phi],K}$.*

1.3.4. We have the following generalization of [Kis10, Lem. 2.1.2] for mixed Shimura varieties.

Lemma 1.22. *Let $f : (P^1, \mathcal{X}_1) \hookrightarrow (P^2, \mathcal{X}_2)$ be an embedding of two mixed Shimura data. For $i = 1$ or 2, assume that $K^i := K^i_p K^{i,p}$, where K^i_p is an open compact subgroup of $P^i(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ and $K^{i,p} \subset P^i(\mathbb{A}_f^p)$ is neat open compact. Assume that $K^2_p \cap P^1(\mathbb{Q}_p) = K^1_p$. Then, for any $K^{1,p}$, there is a $K^{2,p}$ containing $K^{1,p}$ such that f induces a closed embedding*

$$\mathrm{Sh}_{K^1}(P^1, X_1) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Sh}_{K^2}(P^2, X_2). \tag{1.10}$$

Proof. This is essentially [Kis10, Lem. 2.1.2], with some inputs in [Del71b] replaced by those in [Pin90]. In fact, since (1.10) is finite, it suffices to show that

$$\varprojlim_{K^{1,p}} \mathrm{Sh}_{K^{1,p}K^1_p}(P^1, \mathcal{X}_1) \longrightarrow \varprojlim_{K^{2,p}} \mathrm{Sh}_{K^{2,p}K^2_p}(P^2, \mathcal{X}_2)$$

is injective, where the inverse limits run over all neat open compact $K^{i,p}$ for $i = 1, 2$. Let $Z^i(\mathbb{Q})^\circ$ be the subgroup of the center $Z^i(\mathbb{Q})$ of $P^i(\mathbb{Q})$ whose action on $\mathcal{X}_i$ is trivial, and let Γ^i_Z be any arithmetic subgroup of $Z^i(\mathbb{Q})^\circ$. Denote by $(\Gamma^i_Z)^-$ the closure of Γ^i_Z in $P^i(\mathbb{A}_f)$. By [Pin90, Lem. 3.7(b)],

$$\varprojlim_{K^{1,p}} \mathrm{Sh}_{K^{1,p}K^1_p}(P^1, \mathcal{X}_1)(\mathbb{C}) \cong P^i(\mathbb{Q})\backslash \mathcal{X}_i \times P^i(\mathbb{A}_f)/(\Gamma^i_Z)^- K^i_p.$$

Note that the identity component of the center Z^i of P^i is a torus, since the Lie algebra Lie W_i of the unipotent radical W^i of P^i has nontrivial weight by [Pin90, Def. 2.1] and $G^i := P^i/W^i$ is reductive. By a theorem of Chevalley (see [Che51, Thm. 1] and [Del79, 2.0.10]), any finite index subgroup of the group of units U^i of $Z^i(\mathbb{Q})$ is open in U^i under the topology induced by $P^i(\mathbb{A}_f^p)$ and $P^i(\mathbb{A}_f)$, so $(\Gamma^i_Z)^-$ is the completion $\widehat{(\Gamma^i_Z)}$ with respect to finite index subgroups in U^i, and $(\Gamma^i_Z)^-$ is also the closure of Γ^i_Z in $P^i(\mathbb{A}_f^p)$. Let $\widehat{P}^i(\mathbb{Q}) := \varprojlim P^i(\mathbb{Q})/U^{i,n}$ be the completion with respect to $U^{i,n}$. Note that the image of $Z^1(\mathbb{Q})$ in $P^2(\mathbb{Q})$ is contained in the $\mathbb{R}$-points of the centralizer of $\mathbb{S} \xrightarrow{h^1_{x,\infty}} P^1_{\mathbb{R}} \to P^2_{\mathbb{R}}$, which is compact modulo $Z^2(\mathbb{R})W^2(\mathbb{R})$. Then there is a well-defined morphism $\widehat{P}^1(\mathbb{Q})\backslash P^1(\mathbb{A}_f^p) \to \widehat{P}^2(\mathbb{Q})\backslash P^2(\mathbb{A}_f^p)$. From the argument in [Kis10, Lem. 2.1.2] verbatim, the morphism above and the morphism $\mathcal{X}_1 \times P^1(\mathbb{Q}_p)/K^1_p \to \mathcal{X}_2 \times P^2(\mathbb{Q}_p)/K^2_p$ are injective, and the desired morphism is also injective. Note that the argument of [Del71b, 1.15.3] used in the argument of [Kis10, Lem. 2.1.2] also works, if we replace G^1 and G^2 in the proof of [Del71b, 1.15.3] with P^1 and P^2, respectively. □

Let $(G, \mathcal{X}, \hbar)$ be a pure Shimura datum. Recall that G is a connected reductive group over $\mathbb{Q}$. Assume that K_p is an open compact subgroup of $G(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ that contains a parahoric group $K^\circ_p := \mathscr{G}^\circ(\mathbb{Z}_p)$, where $\mathscr{G}^\circ$ is a parahoric group scheme of $G_{\mathbb{Q}_p}$ over $\mathbb{Z}_p$. Let K^p be a neat open compact subgroup of $G(\mathbb{A}_f^p)$ as before. Let E^p be the maximal field extension of $E := E(G, \mathcal{X})$ that is unramified at all primes dividing p. We record the following lemma:

Proposition 1.23. *With the assumptions above, the geometrically connected components of $\mathrm{Sh}_K := \mathrm{Sh}_{K_pK^p}(G, \mathcal{X})$ are defined over E^p.*

Proof. By [Pin90, Prop. 2.11], $(G, \mathcal{X})$ embeds into a pure Shimura datum $(G_1, \mathcal{X}_1)$, which has the same reflex field E as $(G, \mathcal{X})$. In fact, $(G_1, \mathcal{X}_1) := (T, \mathcal{Y}) \times \hbar(G, \mathcal{X})$, where $(T, \mathcal{Y}) := (G, \mathcal{X})/G^{\mathrm{der}}$ is a pure Shimura datum associated with the cocenter $T := G/G^{\mathrm{der}}$. Let $K_1 \subset G_1(\mathbb{A}_f)$ be a neat open compact subgroup such that $K_1 := K_{1,p}K^p_1$ with $K_{1,p} \subset G_1(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ of the form $K_{1,p} = K_{T,p} \times K_p$, $K_{1,p} \cap G(\mathbb{Q}_p) = K_p$, and K^p_1 neat open compact in $G_1(\mathbb{A}_f^p)$. We can further choose $K_{T,p} \subset T(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ to be the unique parahoric subgroup of $T(\mathbb{Q}_p)$. By Lemma 1.22, there is a neat open compact subgroup

$K_1^p \subset G_1(\mathbb{A}_f^p)$ such that the induced morphism $\mathrm{Sh}_K \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Sh}_{K_1}$ is a closed embedding between smooth varieties of equal dimensions, so it is open and closed. Moreover, this embedding is defined over E by [Pin90, Prop. 11.10]. Then we are reduced to show the statement for $\hbar(G,\mathcal{X})$ and for $(T,\mathcal{Y})$. For the former one, the proof of [KP18, Lem. 4.3.2 and Cor. 4.3.9] works verbatim. For the latter one, note that $(T,\mathcal{Y})$ is a pure Shimura datum with T a torus and $\mathcal{Y}$ finite. In this case, the proof similar to *loc. cit.* also works. Indeed, by the discussion in §1.1.2, the Galois group $\mathrm{Gal}(\overline{E}_T/E_T)$ acts on $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_T}(\overline{E}_T)$ via $r_{E_T}(T,\mathcal{Y})/K_{T,p} : \mathrm{Gal}(\overline{E}_T/E_T) \to T(\mathbb{Q})^+\backslash T(\mathbb{A}_f)/K_{T,p}$. For any place $v|p$ of $E_T \subset E$, the image of $\mathcal{O}^\times_{E_{T,v}}$ in $T(\mathbb{Q})^+\backslash T(\mathbb{A}_f)/K_{T,p}$ is trivial under $r_{E_T}(T,\mathcal{Y}) \circ \mathrm{rec}^{-1}_{E_T}$, since $K_{T,p}$ is the unique Iwahori subgroup of $T(\mathbb{Q}_p)$, since $\mathcal{O}^\times_{E_{T,v}}$ is the unique Iwahori subgroup of $R_{E_{T,v}/\mathbb{Q}_p}\mathbb{G}_m$ by [KP23, Lem. 2.5.18], and since $r_{E_T}(T,\mathcal{Y}) \circ \mathrm{rec}^{-1}_{E_T}|_{E_{T,v}}$ is induced by a homomorphism between algebraic tori

$$R_{E_{T,v}/\mathbb{Q}_p}\mathbb{G}_m \xrightarrow{R_{E_{T,v}/\mathbb{Q}_p}\mu} R_{E_{T,v}/\mathbb{Q}_p}T_{E_{T,v}} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Norm}_{E_{T,v}/\mathbb{Q}_p}} T_{\mathbb{Q}_p},$$

which sends the Iwahori subgroup to the Iwahori subgroup by [KP23, Lem. 2.5.19]. This means that $\mathrm{Gal}(\overline{E}_T/E_T^p)$ acts trivially on $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_T}(T,\mathcal{Y})_{\overline{E}_T}$. Hence, we have the desired statement for both Sh_{K_T} and $\mathrm{Sh}_K(G,\hbar(\mathcal{X}))$ and finally for $\mathrm{Sh}_K(G,\mathcal{X})$. □

1.3.5. We come back to the setup that (G,X) is a Shimura datum. Let $K = K_pK^p$ be an open compact subgroup of $G(\mathbb{A}_f)$ such that $K_p \subset G(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ and K^p is neat open compact in $G(\mathbb{A}_f^p)$. In this subsection, we assume one of the following assumptions:

(1) G is quasi-split and unramified at p, and $K_p = G_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}(\mathbb{Z}_p)$ is a hyperspecial subgroup associated with some smooth reductive model $G_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$ of G over $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$.
(2) $K_p = \mathscr{G}^\circ(\mathbb{Z}_p)$ is a parahoric subgroup of $G(\mathbb{Q}_p)$.

Proposition 1.24. *With one of the assumptions above, for any cusp label representative Φ, the geometrically connected components of $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi,h}$, $\overline{\mathrm{Sh}}_{K_\Phi}$ and Sh_{K_Φ} are defined over E^p.*

Proof. It suffices to show that the geometrically connected components of $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi,h}$ are defined over E^p. In the first case, $K_{\Phi,h}$ is also hyperspecial; in the second case, $K_{\Phi,h}$ is quasi-parahoric by [Mao25a, Prop. 2.67]. Hence, the statement follows from Proposition 1.23 above. In the first case, we can also replace the reference [KP18, Cor. 4.3.9] in the proof of the proposition above with [Kis10, Prop. 2.2.4]. □

1.4. **ZP-cusps.** We explain how to construct some cusp labels that are *not* irreducible (see §1.1.1 for the definition), which will be helpful to our purpose. We do not assume that the Shimura data being considered are of abelian type until §1.4.4.

1.4.1. Let $Z := Z_G$ be the center of G as before. We denote by ZP_Φ the identity component of the group generated by Z and P_Φ, for any cusp label representative Φ. Note that ZP_Φ is also a normal subgroup of Q_Φ over $\mathbb{Q}$. The group $ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)$ acts on cusp label representatives by sending $\Phi = (Q_\Phi, X_\Phi^+, g_\Phi)$ to $q'\Phi := (Q_\Phi, X_\Phi^+, q'g_\Phi)$ for any $q' \in ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)$.

Definition 1.25. *We say an admissible cone decomposition (see Convention 1.17) Σ is ZP-**invariant** if $\Sigma(q'\Phi) = \Sigma(\Phi)$ for any cusp label representative Φ and for any $q' \in ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)$.*

The following lemma is purely combinatorial and is similar to [Lan13, Prop. 6.3.3.5]:

Lemma 1.26. *Let Σ be an admissible cone decomposition with the property $\mathcal{P}$, where $\mathcal{P} = \emptyset$, "smooth", "projective" or "smooth and projective". Then there is a refinement Σ' of Σ which is ZP-invariant and has the property $\mathcal{P}$.*

Definition 1.27. *For any cusp label representative Φ, we define the **magnitude** of Φ to be the dimension of the torus $\mathbf{E}_{K_\Phi}$, denoted by $m(\Phi)$.*

Definition 1.28. *There is a partial order $\preceq$ associated with the set of cusp label representatives forming a poset $(\{\Phi\},\preceq)$ defined by the following: $\Phi_1\preceq\Phi_2$ if there are $q'\in ZP_{\Phi_2}(\mathbb{A}_f)$ and $\gamma\in G(\mathbb{Q})$ such that $\gamma P_{\Phi_1}\gamma^{-1}\subset P_{\Phi_2}$, $P_{\Phi_1}(\mathbb{Q})\gamma X^+_{\Phi_1}=P_{\Phi_2}(\mathbb{Q})X^+_{\Phi_2}$ and $\gamma g_{\Phi_1}\equiv q'g_{\Phi_2}$ modulo K, denoted also by $\Phi_1\xrightarrow{(\gamma,q')_K}\Phi_2$. We write $\Phi_1\sim_{ZP}\Phi_2$ if $\Phi_1\preceq\Phi_2$ and $\Phi_2\preceq\Phi_1$. Then "$\sim_{ZP}$" defines an equivalence relation. We denote by $\mathrm{Cusp}_K^{ZP}(G,X)$ the set of equivalence classes $\mathrm{Cusp}_K(G,X)/\sim_{ZP}$, called the set of ZP-**cusp labels**.*

*Similarly, we can define the set of ZP-**cusp labels with cones** $\mathrm{Cusp}_K^{ZP}(G,X,\Sigma)$ to be the set of ZP-equivalence classes of $\mathrm{Cusp}_K(G,X,\Sigma)$. Indeed, we fix any pairs (Φ_1,σ_1) and (Φ_2,σ_2) such that $\sigma_i\in\Sigma(\Phi_i)$ and $\sigma_i^\circ\subset\mathbf{P}^+_{\Phi_i}$, for $i=1$ and 2. We define $(\Phi_1,\sigma_1)\sim_{ZP}(\Phi_2,\sigma_2)$, if there are $\gamma\in G(\mathbb{Q})$ and $q'\in ZP_{\Phi_2}(\mathbb{A}_f)$, such that $\Phi_1\xrightarrow[\sim]{(\gamma,q')_K}\Phi_2$ and $\mathrm{int}(\gamma)\sigma_1=\sigma_2$. Then we can define $\mathrm{Cusp}_K^{ZP}(G,X,\Sigma):=\mathrm{Cusp}_K(G,X,\Sigma)/\sim_{ZP}$. There is also a partial order on $\mathrm{Cusp}_K^{ZP}(G,X,\Sigma)$ defined similarly: $[(\Phi_1,\sigma_1)]\preceq_{ZP}[(\Phi_2,\sigma_2)]$ if and only if $\Phi_1\xrightarrow{(\gamma,q')_K}\Phi_2$ and $\gamma^{-1}\sigma_2\gamma$ is a face of σ_1.*

Lemma 1.29. *Let Q be an admissible $\mathbb{Q}$-parabolic subgroup of G, and let X^+ be any connected component of X. Let $I^{G,X^+,ZP}(Q):=\{[\Phi]\in\mathrm{Cusp}_K^{ZP}(G,X)|\Phi\sim_{ZP}(Q,X^+,g_\Phi),g_\Phi\in G(\mathbb{A}_f)\}$. Then $I^{G,X^+,ZP}(Q)\cong\mathrm{Stab}_{Q(\mathbb{Q})}(D_{Q,X^+})ZP_Q(\mathbb{A}_f)\backslash G(\mathbb{A}_f)/K$.*

We will omit the superscript G and X^+, and write $I^{G,X^+,ZP}(Q)$ as $I^{ZP}(Q)$, if G and X^+ are clear in the context.

Proof of Lemma 1.29. This follows verbatim from the proof of Proposition 1.4, after replacing $P_Q(\mathbb{A}_f)$ there with $ZP_Q(\mathbb{A}_f)$ here and replacing $\mathrm{Cusp}_K(G,X)$ there with $\mathrm{Cusp}_K^{ZP}(G,X)$ here. □

Note that [Pin90, Prop. 2.14(a)] can be strengthened naively.

Lemma 1.30 ([Pin90, Prop. 2.14(a)])**.** *The conjugation of ZP_Φ on U_Φ is a scalar multiplication: $c_\Phi:ZP_\Phi\to\mathbb{G}_m$.*

Proof. Since Z acts on U_Φ trivially, since the quotient of ZP_Φ by $Z\cap ZP_\Phi$ is P_Φ, and since (P_Φ,D_Φ) is irreducible, we can reduce our statement to *loc. cit.* by taking the quotient of $Z\cap ZP_\Phi$. □

Proof of Lemma 1.26. Note that we only need to consider one cusp label representative Φ in each equivalence class of the relation $\sim_{ZP}$: In fact, $K'_{\Phi,U}$ is a scalar multiplication of $q'K'_{\Phi,U}(q')^{-1}$ by Lemma 1.30 or the proof of [Pin90, Prop. 2.14 (a)] for $q'\in ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)$. Suppose that $q'K'_{\Phi,U}(q')^{-1}=c_\Phi(q')K'_{\Phi,U}$ for some $c_\Phi(q')\in\mathbb{A}_f^\times$. Since we have the decomposition $\mathbb{A}_f^\times=\mathbb{Q}^\times\cdot\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\times$ and since U_Φ is connected and unipotent, $\mathbf{\Lambda}_{K_\Phi}$ is a $\mathbb{Q}^\times$-scalar multiplication of $\mathbf{\Lambda}_{K_{q'\Phi}}$. Therefore, $\Sigma(\Phi)$ has property $\mathcal{P}$ with respect to $\mathbf{\Lambda}_{K_\Phi}$ if and only if $\Sigma(\Phi')$ has the property $\mathcal{P}$ with respect to $\mathbf{\Lambda}_{K_{\Phi'}}$ for any cusp label repressentatives Φ and Φ' such that $\Phi\sim_{ZP}\Phi'$.

Next, we fix a complete set of representatives $\mathcal{R}$ in $\mathcal{CLR}(G,X)$ of the equivalence classes $\mathrm{Cusp}_K^{ZP}(G,X)$ of ZP-cusp labels. We prove the statement by induction on the magnitude of cusp label representatives $\Phi\in\mathcal{R}$. If $m(\Phi)=0$, then $\Phi=(G,X^+,g_\Phi)$ and there is nothing to show since $\mathbf{P}_\Phi$ is trivial. Assume that we have refined Σ by some cone decompositon Σ_n for cusp label representatives Φ of magnitude $m(\Phi)\le n$ with the property $\mathcal{P}$ such that the collection $\{\Sigma_n(\Phi)\}_{m(\Phi)\le n}$ is invariant under the left action of $ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)$. For any two cusp label representatives $\Phi_1\xrightarrow{(\gamma,q)_K}\Phi_2$ and $q'\in ZP_{\Phi_2}(\mathbb{A}_f)$, $q'\Phi_1\xrightarrow{(\gamma,q'q(q')^{-1})_K}q'\Phi_2$. So for any cusp label representative $\Phi\in\mathcal{R}$ of magnitude $m(\Phi)=n+1$, the cone decomposition Σ_n defines equal cone decompositions for $\mathbf{P}_{q'\Phi}-\mathbf{P}^+_{q'\Phi}$ for any $q'\in ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)$. There is an admissible cone decomposition $\Sigma_{n+1}(\Phi)$ for $\mathbf{P}_\Phi$ with the property $\mathcal{P}$ *extending* the cone decomposition for $\mathbf{P}_\Phi-\mathbf{P}^+_\Phi$ defined by Σ_n, and we can define cone decompositions $\Sigma(q'\Phi):=\Sigma(\Phi)$ for all $q'\in ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)$. Therefore, we can extend the definition of Σ_{n+1} to all cusp labels of magnitudes $\le n+1$, then we can get the desired refinement Σ' of Σ by induction.

For the results of extendability of admissible cone decompositions for $\mathbf{P}_\Phi - \mathbf{P}_\Phi^+$ to $\mathbf{P}_\Phi$ preserving the property $\mathcal{P}$, see, e.g., [KKMSD73, pp. 32-35] and [Pin90, 5.20-5.25 and 9.20]. □

Remark 1.31. *We can see from Lemma 1.29 that a ZP-cusp label with cone is determined by a ZP-cusp label $[\Phi]$ and a $\Delta_{\Phi,K}^{ZP}$-orbit $[\sigma]$ in $U_\Phi(\mathbb{R})$, where $\Delta_{\Phi,K}^{ZP} := \mathrm{Stab}_{Q(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi) \cap ZP(\mathbb{A}_f) g_\Phi K g_\Phi^{-1} / ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})$. We will omit the subscript K in $\Delta_{\Phi,K}^{ZP}$ if K is clear in the context.*

Definition 1.32. *Fix an admissible cone decomposition Σ. Let Q be an admissible $\mathbb{Q}$-parabolic subgroup of G, and let X^+ be any connected component of X. Define $I^{G,X^+,ZP}(Q,\Sigma) := \{[(\Phi,\sigma)] \in \mathrm{Cusp}_K^{ZP}(G,X,\Sigma) | (\Phi,\sigma) \sim_{ZP} (Q, X^+, g_\Phi; \sigma'), g_\Phi \in G(\mathbb{A}_f), \sigma' \in \Sigma(Q, X^+, g_\Phi)\}$, and similarly define $I^{G,X^+}(Q,\Sigma) := \{[(\Phi,\sigma)] \in \mathrm{Cusp}_K(G,X,\Sigma) | (\Phi,\sigma) \sim (Q, X^+, g_\Phi; \sigma'), g_\Phi \in G(\mathbb{A}_f), \sigma' \in \Sigma(Q, X^+, g_\Phi)\}$.*

We shall omit the superscript "G, X^+" if it is clear in the context.

We will use the following propositions later:

Proposition 1.33. *Let Φ be a cusp label representative, and let $\sigma \in \Sigma(\Phi)$. Define*

$$[ZP(\Phi)] := \{[\Phi'] \in \mathrm{Cusp}_K(G,X) | \Phi' \sim_{ZP} \Phi\},$$

and define

$$[ZP(\Phi,\sigma)] := \{[(\Phi',\sigma')] \in \mathrm{Cusp}_K(G,X,\Sigma) | (\Phi',\sigma') \sim_{ZP} (\Phi,\sigma)\}.$$

Then $[ZP(\Phi)]$ is bijective to $\widetilde{\Delta}_{\Phi,K}^{ZP} \backslash (P_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f) \backslash ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f) / \widetilde{K}_\Phi)$ and $[ZP(\Phi,\sigma)]$ is bijective to

$$\widetilde{\Delta}_{\Phi,K}^{ZP,\circ} \backslash (P_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f) \backslash ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f) / \widetilde{K}_\Phi),$$

where $\widetilde{K}_\Phi := ZP(\mathbb{A}_f) \cap g_\Phi K g_\Phi^{-1}$, $\widetilde{\Delta}_{\Phi,K}^{ZP} := \mathrm{Stab}_{Q_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi) \cap ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f) g_\Phi K g_\Phi^{-1}$ and $\widetilde{\Delta}_{\Phi,K}^{ZP,\circ} := \mathrm{Stab}_{Q_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi,\sigma) \cap ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f) g_\Phi K g_\Phi^{-1}$.

Proof. By definition, $[ZP(\Phi)]$ is the fiber of $I(Q_\Phi) \to I^{ZP}(Q_\Phi)$ at $[\Phi]$. This fiber is bijective to the fiber of

$$\mathrm{Stab}_{Q(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi) P_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f) \backslash G(\mathbb{A}_f) / K \to \mathrm{Stab}_{Q(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi) ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f) \backslash G(\mathbb{A}_f) / K$$

at $[g_\Phi]$, which is $\widetilde{\Delta}_{\Phi,K}^{ZP} \backslash (P_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f) \backslash ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f) g_\Phi K / K) \cong \widetilde{\Delta}_{\Phi,K}^{ZP} \backslash (P_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f) \backslash ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f) / K_\Phi)$. The other statement can also be proved in a similar way. The set $[ZP(\Phi,\sigma)]$ is the fiber of

$$\mathrm{Stab}_{Q(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi) P_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f) \backslash \Sigma(\Phi) \times G(\mathbb{A}_f) / K \to \mathrm{Stab}_{Q(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi) ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f) \backslash \Sigma(\Phi) \times G(\mathbb{A}_f) / K$$

at (σ, g_Φ), such that $(Q_\Phi, X_\Phi^+, g_\Phi; \sigma)$ represents $[(\Phi,\sigma)]$. Since the stabilizer in $\mathrm{Stab}_{Q(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi)$ of $P_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f) \backslash \sigma \times ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f) g_\Phi K / K$ is $\widetilde{\Delta}_{\Phi,K}^{ZP,\circ}$, $[ZP(\Phi,\sigma)]$ is bijective to $\widetilde{\Delta}_{\Phi,K}^{ZP,\circ} \backslash (P_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f) \backslash ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f) / K_\Phi)$. □

Let $\Delta_{\Phi,K}^{ZP,\circ} := \widetilde{\Delta}_{\Phi,K}^{ZP,\circ} / ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})$. Again, we shall omit the subscript K in $\widetilde{\Delta}_{\Phi,K}^{ZP}$, $\widetilde{\Delta}_{\Phi,K}^{ZP,\circ}$ and $\Delta_{\Phi,K}^{ZP,\circ}$ if it is clear in the context.

Proposition 1.34. *For any $[\Phi'] \in [ZP(\Phi)]$, there is a cone $\sigma' \in \Sigma(\Phi')$ such that $[(\Phi',\sigma')] \in [ZP(\Phi,\sigma)]$. The fiber of the natural projection $\ell : [ZP(\Phi,\sigma)] \to [ZP(\Phi)]$ at $[\Phi'] \in [ZP(\Phi)]$ is bijective to $\Delta_{\Phi'}$-orbits of the $\Delta_{\Phi'}^{ZP}$-orbit $[\sigma']_{ZP}$. Moreover, we can choose a representative $\Phi'' \sim \Phi'$ such that $\Phi'' = (Q_\Phi, X_\Phi^+, g_{\Phi''} g_\Phi)$ for some $g_{\Phi''}$ lifting an element in $\widetilde{\Delta}_\Phi^{ZP} \backslash (P_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f) \backslash ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f) / \widetilde{K}_\Phi)$, then this fiber is bijective to Δ_Φ-orbits of the Δ_Φ^{ZP}-orbit $[\sigma]_{ZP}$.*

Proof. If $\Phi \xrightarrow[\sim]{(\gamma,q)_K} \Phi'$ for $\gamma \in G(\mathbb{Q})$ and for $q \in ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)$, then we let $\sigma' := \gamma\sigma$ and $(\Phi,\sigma) \xrightarrow[\sim]{(\gamma,q)_K} (\Phi',\sigma')$. (Here we are using an abbreviation: $\gamma\sigma = \mathrm{int}(\gamma)\sigma$, and the same for the paragraph below.)

For the second statement, we consider the commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} I(Q_\Phi,\Sigma) & \longrightarrow & I^{ZP}(Q_\Phi,\Sigma) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ I(Q_\Phi) & \longrightarrow & I^{ZP}(Q_\Phi) \end{array} \tag{1.11}$$

Suppose that $[\Phi'] \in I(Q_\Phi)$ maps to $[\Phi] \in I^{ZP}(Q_\Phi)$. The fiber of $[\Phi']$ along $I(Q_\Phi,\Sigma) \to I(Q_\Phi)$ is $\{([\Phi'],[\sigma'']) | [\sigma''] \in \Delta_{\Phi'}\backslash\Sigma(\Phi')\}$. We still assume that $\Phi \xrightarrow[\sim]{(\gamma,q)_K} \Phi'$. Then $([\Phi'],[\sigma''])$ maps to $([\Phi],[\gamma^{-1}\sigma'']_{ZP})$ via $I(Q_\Phi,\Sigma) \to I^{ZP}(Q_\Phi,\Sigma)$, where $[\gamma^{-1}\sigma'']_{ZP}$ is the Δ_Φ^{ZP}-orbit of $\gamma^{-1}\sigma''$. Then the fiber of ℓ at $[\Phi']$ is isomorphic to the elements of $\Delta_{\Phi'}\backslash\Sigma(\Phi')$ that map to $[\sigma]_{ZP}$ via

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta_{\Phi'}\backslash\Sigma(\Phi') &\longrightarrow \Delta_\Phi^{ZP}\backslash\Sigma(\Phi') \\ [\sigma''] &\mapsto [\gamma^{-1}\sigma'']_{ZP}, \end{aligned} \tag{1.12}$$

which is the pullback of $[\sigma]_{ZP}$ along the map above. So it is a $\gamma\Delta_\Phi^{ZP}\gamma^{-1}$-orbit of $\sigma' = \gamma\sigma$ modulo the action of $\Delta_{\Phi'}$. Since $\gamma\Delta_\Phi^{ZP}\gamma^{-1} = \Delta_{\Phi'}^{ZP}$, the fiber of ℓ at $[\Phi']$ is bijective to $\Delta_{\Phi'}$-orbits of $[\sigma']_{ZP}$.

The last statement follows from Proposition 1.33. □

1.4.2. A ZP-invariant cone decomposition Σ can extend over certain central extensions. We have the following variant of Lemma 1.22:

Proposition 1.35. *Let G_1 be a connected reductive group over $\mathbb{Q}$ with Z_1 its center. Let Z_2 be a $\mathbb{Q}$-torus containing Z_1 and let $G_2 := G_1 \times^{Z_1} Z_2$ be a connected reductive group with center Z_2. Denote by $\iota : G_1 \to G_2$ the embedding induced by the inclusion $Z_1 \hookrightarrow Z_2$. We abusively denote by $\iota : (G_1, X_1) \hookrightarrow (G_2, X_2)$ the embedding of Shimura data induced by $\iota : G_1 \to G_2$. Let K_1 be an open compact subgroup of $G_1(\mathbb{A}_f)$ of the form $K_1 = K_{1,p}K_1^p$ where $K_{1,p}$ is open compact and $K_1^p \subset G_1(\mathbb{A}_f^p)$ is neat open compact. Then:*

1. *There is a $\mathbb{Q}$-subgroup Z_3 of Z_2 of multiplicative type such that $Z_2 = Z_1 \cdot Z_3$ and $Z_1 \cap Z_3$ is finite.*
2. *Let $K_2 := K_{2,p}K_2^p$. There is a neat open compact subgroup $K_2^{p,\prime} \subset G_2(\mathbb{A}_f^p)$ such that, for any neat open compact $K_2^p \subset K_2^{p,\prime}$ and $K_2 \cap G_1(\mathbb{A}_f) = K_1$, the following statements are true: ι induces an open and closed embedding of Shimura varieties*

$$\iota : \mathrm{Sh}_{K_1}(G_1, X_1) \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Sh}_{K_2}(G_2, X_2);$$

moreover, let Φ_1 be any cusp label representative of (G_1, X_1) which maps to a cusp label representative Φ_2 of (G_2, X_2) via ι, we have isomorphisms $U_{\Phi_1} \cong U_{\Phi_2}$, $\mathbf{\Lambda}_{K_{\Phi_1}} \cong \mathbf{\Lambda}_{K_{\Phi_2}}$, and

$$\iota_{\Phi_1} : \mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_1}}(P_{\Phi_1}, D_{\Phi_1}) \to \mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_2}}(P_{\Phi_2}, D_{\Phi_2}).$$

3. *If Z_3°, the identity component of Z_3, is isogenous to a product of $\mathbb{Q}$-split tori and compact-type tori, then the results in the last part hold for any neat open compact K_2.*

Proof. In fact, there is a $\mathbb{Q}$-subtori T_3 of $\overline{Z}_2 := Z_2/Z_{G_1^{\mathrm{der}}}$ such that the intersection of $\overline{Z}_1 := Z_1/Z_{G_1^{\mathrm{der}}}$ and T_3 is finite, and such that $\overline{Z}_2 = \overline{Z_1} \cdot T_3$. We then find such a Z_3 by taking $Z_3 := Z_2 \times_{\overline{Z}_2} T_3$.

The first statement in the second part follows directly from [Kis10, Lem. 2.1.2]. Since G_1 is a normal subgroup of G_2 and $G_1^{\mathrm{der}} = G_2^{\mathrm{der}}$, $P_{\Phi_1} \cong P_{\Phi_2}$, $U_{\Phi_1} \cong U_{\Phi_2}$ and $D_{\Phi_1} \cong D_{\Phi_2}$ by definition. Since $K_{\Phi_1} = P_{\Phi_1}(\mathbb{A}_f) \cap g_{\Phi_1}K_1g_{\Phi_1}^{-1} = P_{\Phi_2}(\mathbb{A}_f) \cap g_{\Phi_1}K_2g_{\Phi_1}^{-1} \cap G_1(\mathbb{A}_f) = P_{\Phi_2}(\mathbb{A}_f) \cap g_{\Phi_1}K_2g_{\Phi_1}^{-1} = K_{\Phi_2}$, we have isomorphisms between boundary mixed Shimura varieties. Moreover, $\mathbf{\Lambda}_{K_{\Phi_1}} \subset \mathbf{\Lambda}_{K_{\Phi_2}}$ is of finite index, we can choose K_2 such that K_2/K_1 sufficiently small and $\mathbf{\Lambda}_{K_{\Phi_1}} = \mathbf{\Lambda}_{K_{\Phi_2}}$. Note that this is possible because the number of cusp labels of Sh_{K_1} is finite and remains unchanged if we

shrink K_2. Since we only need to choose K_2 to be sufficiently small but containing K_1, we can choose a K_2 of the form $K_2 = K_{2,p}K_2^p$.

When Z_3° is isogenous to a product of $\mathbb{Q}$-split tori and compact-type tori, and K_2 is neat, $\Delta_{G_2/G_1,K_2}$ itself is trivial. □

Proposition 1.36. *With the conventions in Lemma 1.26 and Proposition 1.35, we suppose that K_2 is chosen as in Proposition 1.35. Let Σ_1 be an admissible cone decomposition for $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_1}(G_1, X_1)$. Then there is an admissible ZP-invariant cone decomposition Σ_2 for $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_2}(G_2, X_2)$ with property $\mathcal{P}$ such that $\iota^*(\Sigma_2)$ is a refinement of Σ_1. Moreover, $\iota^*(\Sigma_2)$ also has the property $\mathcal{P}$.*

Proof. It suffices to find a Σ_2 for $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_2}(G_2, X_2)$ such that $\iota^*(\Sigma_2)$ refines Σ_1, because we can refine Σ_2 further to obtain a cone decomposition Σ_2' with property $\mathcal{P}$ by Lemma 1.26. The induced cone decomposition $\iota^*(\Sigma_2)$ will also have the property $\mathcal{P}$ since $U_{\Phi_1} \cong U_{\Phi_2}$ and $\mathbf{\Lambda}_{K_{\Phi_1}} \cong \mathbf{\Lambda}_{K_{\Phi_2}}$ from the choice of K_2 above. Let Q_1 be an admissible parabolic subgroup of G_1, then there is a unique admissible parabolic subgroup Q_2 of G_2 containing Q_1. Since $Z_2 \cap G_1 = Z_1$, $Q_1 = G_1 \cap Q_2$ and $P_{Q_1} = P_{Q_2} \cap G_1$, and since our choice of K_2 as in Proposition 1.35, we see that $I(Q_1) \hookrightarrow I(Q_2)$. We then do induction on the magnitude of cusp label representatives Φ_2 of (G_2, X_2). Fix any complete set of representatives $\mathcal{R}_1$ of $\mathrm{Cusp}_{K_1}(G_1, X_1)$, we can extend $\mathcal{R}_1$ to a complete set of representatives $\mathcal{R}_2$ of $\mathrm{Cusp}_{K_2}(G_2, X_2)$ since $I(Q_1) \hookrightarrow I(Q_2)$. Assume that we have an admissible cone decomposition Σ_2^n with property $\mathcal{P}$ for cusp labels of (G_2, X_2) with magnitude $\leq n$. Let Φ_2 be any cusp label representative in $\mathcal{R}_2$ of magnitude $n+1$. Then Φ_2 represents an element $[g_{\Phi_2}] \in I(Q_{\Phi_2})$. For any $\Phi_2' \succeq \Phi_2$, there are $\gamma \in G(\mathbb{Q})$ and $q' \in P_{\Phi_2'}$ such that $\Phi_2 \xrightarrow{(\gamma,q')_{K_2}} \Phi_2'$. Let $Q^\gamma_{\Phi_2'} := \gamma^{-1}Q_{\Phi_2'}\gamma$. Then Φ_2' represents the image of $[g_{\Phi_2}]$ under $I(Q_{\Phi_2}) \to I(Q^\gamma_{\Phi_2'})$ induced by $Q_{\Phi_2} \hookrightarrow Q^\gamma_{\Phi_2'}$. If $\Phi_2 \in \mathcal{R}_1$, then the image of $[g_{\Phi_2}]$ in $I(Q^\gamma_{\Phi_2'})$ lies in $I(Q^\gamma_{\Phi_2'} \cap G_1)$, the cone decomposition for $\mathbf{P}_{\Phi_2} - \mathbf{P}^+_{\Phi_2}$ refines Σ_1 by induction hypothesis, and we can choose an admissible cone decomposition for Φ_2 that refines $\Sigma_1(\Phi_2)$ and extends $\Sigma_2^n|_{\mathbf{P}_{\Phi_2} - \mathbf{P}^+_{\Phi_2}}$; if Φ_2 is not in $\mathcal{R}_1$, we can find an admissible cone decomposition for $\mathbf{P}_{\Phi_2}$ extending that of $\mathbf{P}_{\Phi_2} - \mathbf{P}^+_{\Phi_2}$. Then we get desired result by induction process. □

Let $\iota : (G_1, X_1) \to (G_2, X_2)$ be any morphism between Shimura data. For any $g \in G_2(\mathbb{A}_f)$ and $K_1 \subset K_2$, there is a morphism

$$\iota(g) : \mathrm{Sh}_{gK_1g^{-1}}(G_1, X_1) \to \mathrm{Sh}_{K_2}(G_2, X_2) \tag{1.13}$$

defined over the reflex field of (G_1, X_1). Over complex points, it is described by $[(x, g_1)] \mapsto [(x, g_1g)]$. For any admissible cone decomposition Σ_2 for $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_2}(G_2, X_2)$, denote by $g^*\Sigma_2$ the induced cone decomposition for $\mathrm{Sh}_{gK_1g^{-1}}(G_1, X_1)$ by pulling back via $\iota(g)$.

Corollary 1.37. *Let $\iota : (G_1, X_1) \hookrightarrow (G_2, X_2)$ be the embedding as in Proposition 1.35. Let K_1 and K_2 be the neat open compact subgroups chosen there. Let Σ_2 be the admissible ZP-invariant cone decomposition chosen as in Proposition 1.36. Choose a set of representatives $\{g_i\}_{i\in\mathcal{T}}$ of $\mathcal{T} := G_2(\mathbb{Q})G_1(\mathbb{A}_f)\backslash G_2(\mathbb{A}_f)/K_2$. As the last paragraph, there are morphisms between Shimura varieties*

$$\iota(g_i) : \mathrm{Sh}_{g_iK_1g_i^{-1}}(G_1, X_1) \to \mathrm{Sh}_{K_2}(G_2, X_2), \tag{1.14}$$

defined by $[(x, g)] \mapsto [(x, gg_i)]$ over complex points, which induce morphisms between minimal and toroidal compactifications

$$\coprod_{g_i\in\mathcal{T}} \iota(g_i)^{\min} : \coprod_{g_i\in\mathcal{T}} \mathrm{Sh}^{\min}_{g_iK_1g_i^{-1}} \to \mathrm{Sh}^{\min}_{K_2} \tag{1.15}$$

and

$$\coprod_{g_i\in\mathcal{T}} \iota(g_i)^{\mathrm{tor}} : \coprod_{g_i\in\mathcal{T}} \mathrm{Sh}^{g_i^*\Sigma_2}_{g_iK_1g_i^{-1}} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Sh}^{\Sigma_2}_{K_2}. \tag{1.16}$$

In the morphism above, $g_i^* := \iota(g_i)^*$. Moreover, the morphisms restricted to $\iota^{\min} = \iota(1)^{\min}$ and $\iota^{\tor} = \iota(1)^{\tor}$, $\iota^{\min} : \mathrm{Sh}_{K_1}^{\min} \to \mathrm{Sh}_{K_2}^{\min}$ and $\iota^{\tor} : \mathrm{Sh}_{K_1}^{\iota^*\Sigma_2} \to \mathrm{Sh}_{K_2}^{\Sigma_2}$, are open and closed embeddings over the reflex field of (G_1, X_1).

Proof. We only need to show the last claim on open and closed embeddings. Define $\Delta_{G_2/G_1,K_2} := G_2(\mathbb{Q}) \cap G_1(\mathbb{A}_f)K_2/G_1(\mathbb{Q})$. From [Pin90, Prop. 7.10] for trivial cone decompositions and the choice of K_2 in Proposition 1.35, the group $\Delta_{G_2/G_1,K_2}$ acts on Sh_{K_1} trivially. Since Sh_{K_1} is dense in its minimal and toroidal compactifications, $\Delta_{G_2/G_1,K_2}$ acts on the minimal and toroidal compactifications of Sh_{K_1} trivially. From [Pin90, Prop. 7.10], we see the statement is true for toroidal compactifications. (This can also imply that $\iota = \iota(1)$ is an open and closed embedding.) We can check over $\mathbb{C}$ to see that the schematic closure $(\mathrm{Sh}_{K_1})^-$ of Sh_{K_1} in $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_2}^{\min}$ under ι is normal and proper. Since $\iota^{\min}$ is proper, quasi-finite, and factors through $(\mathrm{Sh}_{K_1})^-$, we deduce the claim for minimal compactifications by Zariski's main theorem. □

1.4.3. Let G be a connected reductive group over $\mathbb{Q}$ with connected center Z. Fix $(G^{\mathrm{ad}}, X^{\mathrm{ad}})$, a Shimura datum associated with its adjoint group. Throughout §1.4.3, we work under the following assumptions:

- Suppose that $(G^{\mathrm{ad}}, X^{\mathrm{ad}})$ lifts to two different Shimura data (G, X_a) and (G, X_b) such that the natural quotient from G to G^{ad} induces isomorphisms $(G^{\mathrm{ad}}, X_a^{\mathrm{ad}}) \xrightarrow{\sim} (G^{\mathrm{ad}}, X^{\mathrm{ad}}) \xleftarrow{\sim} (G^{\mathrm{ad}}, X_b^{\mathrm{ad}})$. Note that the maps $X_i \to X_i^{\mathrm{ad}}$ are injective for $i = a$ and b.
- Suppose that for one (and therefore any) $x \in X^{\mathrm{ad}}$, $h_x : \mathbb{S} \to G_{\mathbb{R}}^{\mathrm{ad}}$ lifts to unique cocharacters $h_x^i : \mathbb{S} \to G_{\mathbb{R}}$ in X_i.

Then $c := h_x^a \cdot (h_x^b)^{-1}$ is a homomorphism that factors through the center $Z_{\mathbb{R}}$ of $G_{\mathbb{R}}$, and therefore it is independent of the choice of $x \in X^{\mathrm{ad}}$.

We fix homomorphisms h_0 and h_∞ as in §1.1.3. Since $(H_0/H_0^{\mathrm{der}})_{\mathbb{C}} \cong \mathbb{S}_{\mathbb{C}}$, we can define $u^c : H_{0,\mathbb{C}} \to G_{\mathbb{C}}$ by $H_{0,\mathbb{C}} \twoheadrightarrow (H_0/H_0^{\mathrm{der}})_{\mathbb{C}} \xrightarrow{c_{\mathbb{C}}} Z_{\mathbb{C}} \hookrightarrow G_{\mathbb{C}}$. For $i = a$ and b, and for any admissible $\mathbb{Q}$-parabolic subgroup Q, let $u_x^{Q,i} : H_{0,\mathbb{C}} \to G_{\mathbb{C}}$ be the unique homomorphisms such that $u_x^{Q,i} \circ h_0 = h_x^i$, which satisfy [Pin90, Prop. 4.6 (b)].

Lemma 1.38. $u_x^{Q,a} = u_x^{Q,b} \cdot u^c$.

Note that the multiplication in the equation above makes sense because u^c factors through $Z_{\mathbb{C}}$.

Proof of Lemma 1.38. The statement is proved by verifying conditions in [Pin90, Prop. 4.6 (b)]. Let $v_x^{Q,a} := u_x^{Q,b} \cdot u^c$. The homomorphism $\pi' \circ v_x^{Q,a} : H_{0,\mathbb{C}} \to Q_{\mathbb{C}} \twoheadrightarrow (Q/U_Q)_{\mathbb{C}}$ is defined over $\mathbb{R}$ since u^c is defined over $\mathbb{R}$. Since $\omega_{x,\infty}^{Q,b}$ is of the form $\omega_x^b \cdot \lambda$ for some cocharacter λ depending only on Q as [Pin90, Prop. 4.6 (b)iii] and u^c factors through $Z_{\mathbb{C}}$, we have $\omega_{x,\infty}^{Q,b} \cdot (u^c \circ \omega_0) = \omega_x^b \cdot (u^c \circ \omega_0) \cdot \lambda$, whose adjoint action on $(\mathrm{Lie}\, G)_{\mathbb{C}}$ is identical to that of $\omega_{x,\infty}^{Q,b}$. So $v_x^{Q,a}$ satisfies conditions in [Pin90, Prop. 4.6 (b)]. Hence, the statement follows by the uniqueness part of *loc. cit.* □

For $i = a, b$, the map $X_i \to X^{\mathrm{ad}}$ is injective and sends connected components to connected components. So for any cusp label representative Φ, the connected component $X_{a,\Phi}^+$ of X_a associated with Φ corresponds to a connected component $X_{b,\Phi}^+$ of X_b; we denote them by X_Φ^+ abusively. So there is a natural one-to-one correspondence between cusp label representatives of (G, X_a) and those of (G, X_b), sending each of three data identically. Hence, any cone decomposition Σ for (G, X_a) can also be viewed as a cone decomposition for (G, X_b). We can abusively denote by Φ a cusp label representative of both (G, X_a) and (G, X_b).

Proposition 1.39. *Fix a neat open compact subgroup $K \subset G(\mathbb{A}_f)$. With the conventions in Lemma 1.26, let Σ be any admissible ZP-invariant cone decomposition for (G, X_a, K) with property $\mathcal{P}$. Then Σ also defines an admissible ZP-invariant cone decomposition for (G, X_b, K) with property $\mathcal{P}$.*

Proof. By Lemma 1.14, the definition of smoothness or projectivity does not depend on the center of P_Φ, so Σ also defines a cone decomposition for (G, X_b) with property $\mathcal{P}$. Fix an admissible $\mathbb{Q}$-parabolic subgroup and a connected component X^+. By Lemma 1.29, we have $I_{ZP}(Q) \cong \mathrm{Stab}_{Q(\mathbb{Q})}(D_{Q,X^+})ZP_Q(\mathbb{A}_f)\backslash G(\mathbb{A}_f)/K$. Then the rest of the statement follows from Lemma 1.40 below. □

Lemma 1.40. *Let P^i_Φ be the smallest normal subgroup of Q that $u^{Q,i}_x \circ h_\infty$ factors through, for $i = a, b$. Then $ZP^a_\Phi = ZP^b_\Phi$. In particular, $ZP^a_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f) = ZP^b_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)$.*

Proof. Let $m : Z\times Q \to Q$ be the multiplication homomorphism of $Z\times Q$. Since $m\circ(u^c\times u^{Q,b}_x)\circ h_\infty = u^{Q,a}_x \circ h_\infty$ by Lemma 1.38, and ZP^b_Φ is a normal subgroup of Q, we know ZP^b_Φ contains P^a_Φ. Hence, $ZP^a_\Phi \subset ZP^b_\Phi$. Symmetrically, we can get the opposite direction of inclusion, so the desired statement is proved. □

Let E^c be the field of definition of the Hodge cocharacter μ^c associated with the homomorphism c. Note that $(Z, \{c\})$ can be viewed as a Shimura datum whose associated Shimura varieties are 0-dimensional. Let $E_i := E(G, X_i)$ be the reflex field of (G, X_i). Let E^* be a field extension of $\mathbb{Q}$ such that all geometrically connected components of $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_a}}$ and $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_b}}$ are defined over E^* for all cusp label representatives Φ_a and Φ_b of (G, X_a) and (G, X_b). We have $E^c \subset \widetilde{E} := E_a \cdot E_b$.

Let $K_Z := K_{Z,p}K^p_Z$ be a neat open compact subgroup in $Z(\mathbb{A}_f)$, where $K_{Z,p} \subset Z(\mathbb{Q}_p) \cap K_p$ and $K^p_Z \subset Z(\mathbb{A}^p_f) \cap K^p$ is neat open compact. We can consider the zero-dimensional Shimura variety Sh_{K_Z} associated with $(Z, \{c\})$ over E^c. Over complex points, $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_Z}(\mathbb{C}) = Z(\mathbb{Q})\backslash\{c\} \times Z(\mathbb{A}_f)/K_Z$.

Denote by F_{K_Z} a finite field extension of E^c such that all geometrically connected components of Sh_{K_Z} are defined over F_{K_Z}. The base change $(\mathrm{Sh}_{K_Z})_{F_{K_Z}}$ is a disjoint union of finite points over F_{K_Z}; in particular, Sh_{K_Z} is proper.

Let S be the smallest $\mathbb{Q}$-subgroup of Z that c factors through. Then the set of cusp labels is represented by $\mathrm{Cusp}_{K_Z}(Z, \{c\}) \cong Z(\mathbb{Q})S(\mathbb{A}_f)\backslash Z(\mathbb{A}_f)/K_Z$. For any $z \in Z(\mathbb{A}_f)$, we can therefore associate a cusp label $[z]$ in the double coset above.

Let

$$m' : Z \times G \to Z \times G$$

be the isomorphism induced by $(z, g) \mapsto (z, zg)$ on R-value points, where R is any $\mathbb{Q}$-algebra.

Proposition 1.41. *Let $i = a$ or b. Let $\mathrm{Sh}^{i,\min}_K := \mathrm{Sh}^{\min}_K(G, X_i)$ be the minimal compactification of $\mathrm{Sh}^i_K := \mathrm{Sh}_K(G, X_i)$. With the conventions above, we have the following statements:*

1. *The isomorphism m' induces an isomorphism $[m'] : \mathrm{Sh}_{K_Z} \times \mathrm{Sh}^b_K \to \mathrm{Sh}_{K_Z} \times \mathrm{Sh}^a_K$ over $\widetilde{E}$. Moreover, $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_Z} \times \mathrm{Sh}^{i,\min}_K \cong (\mathrm{Sh}_{K_Z} \times \mathrm{Sh}^i_K)^{\min}$, and $[m']$ extends to an isomorphism between minimal compactifications $[m']^{\min} : \mathrm{Sh}_{K_Z} \times \mathrm{Sh}^{b,\min}_K \to \mathrm{Sh}_{K_Z} \times \mathrm{Sh}^{a,\min}_K$ over $\widetilde{E}$.*
2. *Define*

$$[ZP^i(\Phi)] := \{[\Phi'] \in \mathrm{Cusp}_K(G, X_i) | \Phi' \sim_{ZP} \Phi\}.$$

Let $\mathrm{Z}_{[ZP^i(\Phi)],K} := \coprod_{[\Phi']\in[ZP^i(\Phi)]} \mathrm{Z}_{[\Phi'],K}$ be the disjoint union of strata in the minimal compactification corresponding to any cusp label $[\Phi']$ in $[ZP^i(\Phi)]$. Then

$$\mathrm{Z}_{[ZP^i(\Phi)],K} \cong \widetilde{\Delta}^{ZP}_{\Phi,K}\backslash\mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}^i_{\Phi,h}}(ZP^i_{\Phi,h}, ZP^i_{\Phi,h}(\mathbb{Q})D_{\Phi,h}), \tag{1.17}$$

where $\widetilde{\Delta}^{ZP}_{\Phi,K} := \mathrm{Stab}_{Q_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi) \cap ZP^i_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)g_\Phi K g_\Phi^{-1}$, where

$$\widetilde{K}^i_{\Phi,h} := (ZP^i(\mathbb{A}_f) \cap g_\Phi K g_\Phi^{-1})W_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)/W_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)$$

and where $ZP^i_{\Phi,h} := ZP^i_\Phi/W_\Phi$.

3. *$m' : Z \times ZP^b_\Phi \to Z \times ZP^a_\Phi$ induces an isomorphism $[m']^\Phi : \mathrm{Sh}_{K_Z} \times \mathrm{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi)],K} \to \mathrm{Sh}_{K_Z} \times \mathrm{Z}_{[ZP^a(\Phi)],K}$ over $\widetilde{E}$.*

Proof. In the proof, we omit the subscripts of the level groups in the symbols of strata and delta groups to simplify the notation. All fiber products are over $\widetilde{E}$ if not specified. By [Pin90, 12.3], the projections from $\widetilde{\mathrm{Sh}}^i := \mathrm{Sh}_{K_Z} \times \mathrm{Sh}^i_K$ to the first and the second factors induce corresponding morphisms between minimal compactifications $\pi_1^{\min} : \widetilde{\mathrm{Sh}}^{i,\min} := (\mathrm{Sh}_{K_Z} \times \mathrm{Sh}^i_K)^{\min} \to \mathrm{Sh}_{K_Z}$ and $\pi_2^{\min} : \widetilde{\mathrm{Sh}}^{i,\min} \to \mathrm{Sh}^{i,\min}_K$. So there is a canonical morphism $\mathrm{id}^{\min} : \widetilde{\mathrm{Sh}}^{i,\min} \to \mathrm{Sh}_{K_Z} \times \mathrm{Sh}^{i,\min}_K$ induced by the universal property of the fiber product. The morphism $\mathrm{id}^{\min}|_{\mathrm{Sh}_{K_Z} \times \mathrm{Sh}^i_K}$ is an isomorphism, and $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_Z} \times \mathrm{Sh}^{i,\min}_K$ is normal since Sh_{K_Z} is smooth over $\widetilde{E}$.

Any cusp label $[\Phi^\times]$ of $\widetilde{\mathrm{Sh}}^{i,\min}$ maps to a cusp label $[z]$ of Sh_{K_Z} and also to a cusp label of $\mathrm{Sh}^{i,\min}_K$, so there is a canonical morphism $\pi_{[\Phi^\times]} : \mathrm{Z}_{[\Phi^\times]} \to \mathrm{Z}_{[z]} \times \mathrm{Z}_{[\Phi]}$ for some $[z] \in \mathrm{Cusp}_{K_Z}(Z, \{c\})$ and some $[\Phi] \in \mathrm{Cusp}_K(G, X_i)$ fitting into the following diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi^\times,h}}(P_{\Phi^\times,h}, D_{\Phi^\times,h}) & \xrightarrow{\widetilde{\pi}_{[\Phi^\times]}} & \mathrm{Sh}_{[z]} \times \mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi,h}}(P_{\Phi,h}, D_{\Phi,h}) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathrm{Z}_{[\Phi^\times]} & \xrightarrow{\pi_{[\Phi^\times]}} & \mathrm{Z}_{[z]} \times \mathrm{Z}_{[\Phi]}. \end{array} \tag{1.18}$$

In (1.18) above, the morphism $\widetilde{\pi}_{[\Phi^\times]}$ is locally quasi-finite: In fact, $P_{\Phi^\times} \hookrightarrow S \times P_\Phi$ is a closed embedding, so is the morphism between their Levi parts $P_{\Phi^\times,h} \hookrightarrow S \times P_{\Phi,h}$, then the locally quasi-finiteness follows from [Pin90, Prop. 3.8]. Moreover, the two vertical morphisms in (1.18) are finite, because $\Delta_{\Phi^\times}$ (resp. Δ_Φ and resp. $\Delta_{[z]}$) acts on $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi^\times,h}}(P_{\Phi^\times,h}, D_{\Phi^\times,h})$ (resp. $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi,h}}(P_{\Phi,h}, D_{\Phi,h})$ and resp. $\mathrm{Sh}_{[z]}$) through a finite group (resp. through a finite group and resp. trivially). Then $\pi_{[\Phi^\times]}$ is locally quasi-finite (see [Sta24, Tag 0GWS]). So the first part is deduced from Zariski's main theorem, because $\mathrm{id}^{\min} : \widetilde{\mathrm{Sh}}^{i,\min} \to \mathrm{Sh}_{K_Z} \times \mathrm{Sh}^{i,\min}_K$ is a proper birational quasi-finite morphism between normal schemes, and from [Pin90, 12.3] again.

By §1.3.1,

$$\mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}^i_\Phi}(ZP^i_{\Phi,h}, ZP^i_{\Phi,h}(\mathbb{Q})D_{\Phi,h}) \cong \coprod_{\Phi'} \widetilde{\Delta}_{ZP,\Phi',h} \backslash \mathrm{Sh}^i_{K_{\Phi',h}}. \tag{1.19}$$

In the equation (1.19) above, Φ' are cusp label representatives of (G, X_i), the varieties $\mathrm{Sh}^i_{K_{\Phi',h}}$ denote the boundary mixed Shimura varieties associated with $(P^i_{\Phi',h}, D_{\Phi',h})$ and $K_{\Phi',h}$, and the disjoint union runs over a set of representatives for

$$\mathrm{Stab}_{ZP^i_{\Phi,h}(\mathbb{Q})}(D_{\Phi,h}) P^i_{\Phi,h}(\mathbb{A}_f) \backslash ZP^i_{\Phi,h}(\mathbb{A}_f) / \widetilde{K}^i_{\Phi,h};$$

by strong approximation theorem for unipotent groups (see [PR94, Lem. 2.7 and Prop. 6.6]), the double coset above is isomorphic to

$$\mathrm{Stab}_{ZP^i_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi) P^i_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f) \backslash ZP^i_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f) / \widetilde{K}^i_\Phi, \tag{1.20}$$

which represents a set of cusp label representatives $\Phi' = (Q_\Phi, X^+_\Phi, q_{\Phi'} g_\Phi)$ for $q_{\Phi'}$ consisting of a set of representatives for (1.20). Also, in the equation (1.19) above, $\widetilde{\Delta}_{ZP,\Phi',h} := \mathrm{Stab}_{ZP^i_{\Phi,h}(\mathbb{Q})}(D_{\Phi,h}) \cap P^i_{\Phi',h}(\mathbb{A}_f)(q_{\Phi'} \widetilde{K}^i_\Phi q^{-1}_{\Phi'} W_{\Phi'}(\mathbb{A}_f)/W_{\Phi'}(\mathbb{A}_f))$, and also for the same reason as the last sentence, the action of $\widetilde{\Delta}_{ZP,\Phi'} := \mathrm{Stab}_{ZP^i_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi) \cap P^i_{\Phi'}(\mathbb{A}_f) q_{\Phi'} \widetilde{K}^i_\Phi q^{-1}_{\Phi'}$ on $\mathrm{Sh}^i_{K,h}(\Phi')$ factors surjectively through $\widetilde{\Delta}_{ZP,\Phi',h}$.

The quotient of (1.20) by $\widetilde{\Delta}^{ZP}_\Phi$ is

$$\widetilde{\Delta}^{ZP}_\Phi P^i_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f) \backslash ZP^i_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f) / \widetilde{K}^i_\Phi, \tag{1.21}$$

which is in bijection with $[ZP^i(\Phi)]$ by Proposition 1.33. The stabilizer in $\mathrm{Stab}_{Q(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi)$ of any Φ' represented in the double coset (1.20) is $\widetilde{\Delta}_{\Phi'}$. Hence, the quotient by $\widetilde{\Delta}_\Phi^{ZP}$ of the right-hand side of (1.19) can be written as

$$\coprod_{[\Phi']\in[ZP^i(\Phi)]} \Delta_{\Phi'}\widetilde{\Delta}_{ZP,\Phi'}\backslash \mathrm{Sh}^i_{K_{\Phi'},h}. \tag{1.22}$$

Since $\Delta_{ZP,\Phi'} := \widetilde{\Delta}_{ZP,\Phi'}/P^i_{\Phi'}(\mathbb{Q}) \subset \Delta_{\Phi'}$, the second part follows.

For the last part, it suffices to check over complex points that if two points on $\mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}^i_{\Phi,h}}(ZP^i_{\Phi,h}, ZP^i_{\Phi,h}(\mathbb{Q})D_{\Phi,h})$ are equivalent under the relation defined by the action of $\widetilde{\Delta}_\Phi^{ZP}$, then they remain so after the action of any $[z] \in \mathrm{Sh}_{K_Z}(\mathbb{C})$. This can be verified since Z is the center of G. □

Lemma 1.42. *With the conventions above, for any cusp label representative Φ and any $\sigma \in \Sigma(\Phi)$ such that $\sigma^\circ \subset \mathbf{P}^+_\Phi$, we have the following statements:*

(1) Let $\mathrm{Stab}_{Q_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi, \sigma)$ be the intersection $\mathrm{Stab}_{Q_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi) \cap \mathrm{Stab}_{Q_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})}(\sigma)$. Define $\widetilde{\Delta}^{ZP,\circ}_{\Phi,K} := \mathrm{Stab}_{Q_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi, \sigma) \cap ZP^i_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f) g_\Phi K g_\Phi^{-1}$, which is independent of the value of i. Define

$$[ZP^i(\Phi, \sigma)] := \{(\Phi', \sigma') \in \mathrm{Cusp}_K(G, X_i, \Sigma) | (\Phi', \sigma') \sim_{ZP} (\Phi, \sigma)\}.$$

Then

$$\coprod_{[(\Phi',\sigma')]\in[ZP^i(\Phi,\sigma)]} \Delta^{i,\circ}_{\Phi',K}\backslash \mathrm{Sh}_{K^i_{\Phi'}}(\sigma') \cong \widetilde{\Delta}^{ZP,\circ}_{\Phi,K}\backslash \mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}^i_\Phi}(ZP^i_\Phi, ZP^i_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})D_\Phi, \sigma) \tag{1.23}$$

over $\widetilde{E}$, where $K^i_{\Phi'} := P^i(\mathbb{A}_f) \cap g_{\Phi'} K g_{\Phi'}^{-1}$ and $\widetilde{K}^i_\Phi := ZP^i(\mathbb{A}_f) \cap g_\Phi K g_\Phi^{-1}$.

(2) The isomorphism (1.23) can be written as

$$\coprod_{[\Phi']\in[ZP^i(\Phi)]} \coprod_{\delta\in\Delta^i_{\Phi'}\backslash\Delta^{ZP}_{\Phi',K}} \Delta^i_{\Phi',K}\backslash \mathrm{Sh}^i_{K_{\Phi'}}(\Delta^i_{\Phi',K}\delta\sigma') \cong \Delta^{ZP}_{\Phi,K}\backslash \mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}^i_\Phi}(ZP^i_\Phi, ZP^i_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})D_\Phi, \Delta^{ZP}_{\Phi,K}\sigma). \tag{1.24}$$

Proof. Again, we omit the subscripts of the level groups in the symbols of strata and delta groups to simplify the notation. For the first part, its proof is similar to that of the third part of Proposition 1.41. Firstly, $\widetilde{\Delta}^{ZP,\circ}_\Phi\backslash \mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}^i_\Phi}(ZP^i_\Phi, ZP^i_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})D_\Phi, \sigma)$ is isomorphic to

$$\widetilde{\Delta}^{ZP,\circ}_\Phi\backslash(\coprod_{\Phi'} \Delta_{ZP,\Phi'}\backslash \mathrm{Sh}^i_{K_{\Phi'}}(\sigma)). \tag{1.25}$$

In (1.25) above, the disjoint union runs over a set of cusp label representatives $\Phi' = (Q_\Phi, X^+_\Phi, q_{\Phi'} g_\Phi)$, where $q_{\Phi'}$ consisting of a set of representatives for

$$\mathrm{Stab}_{ZP^i_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi) P^i_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)\backslash ZP^i_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)/\widetilde{K}^i_\Phi. \tag{1.26}$$

In fact, by §1.3.1, we have the following commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}^i_\Phi}(ZP^i_\Phi, ZP^i_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})D_\Phi) & \xrightarrow{\sim} & \coprod_{\Phi'} \Delta_{ZP,\Phi'}\backslash \mathrm{Sh}^i_{K_{\Phi'}} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathrm{Sh}_{\overline{\widetilde{K}}^i_\Phi}(ZP^i_\Phi/U_\Phi, ZP^i_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})\overline{D}_\Phi) & \xrightarrow{\sim} & \coprod_{\Phi'} \Delta_{ZP,\Phi'}\backslash \overline{\mathrm{Sh}}^i_{K_{\Phi'}}. \end{array} \tag{1.27}$$

Then the corresponding twisted affine torus embedding with respect to σ of the two vertical morphisms of (1.27) are isomorphic.

Since $ZP^i_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})$ acts on σ via a scalar multiplication by [Pin90, Prop. 2.14 (a)], we know $\mathrm{Stab}_{ZP^i_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi) \subset \mathrm{Stab}_{Q(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi, \sigma)$. So the quotient of (1.26) by $\widetilde{\Delta}^{ZP,\circ}_\Phi$ is

$$\widetilde{\Delta}^{ZP,\circ}_\Phi P^i_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)\backslash ZP^i_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)/\widetilde{K}^i_\Phi, \tag{1.28}$$

which is in bijection with $[ZP^i(\Phi,\sigma)]$ by Proposition 1.33. The stabilizer in $\mathrm{Stab}_{Q(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi,\sigma)$ of any Φ' represented in the double coset (1.26) is $\widetilde{\Delta}^\circ_{\Phi'}$. Hence, the quotient (1.25) can be written as

$$\coprod_{[(\Phi',\sigma')]\in[ZP^i(\Phi,\sigma)]} \Delta^\circ_{\Phi'}\Delta_{ZP,\Phi'}\backslash \mathrm{Sh}^i_{K_{\Phi'}}(\sigma). \tag{1.29}$$

Since $\Delta_{ZP,\Phi'}\subset\Delta^\circ_{\Phi'}$ by [Pin90, Prop. 2.14 (a)] again, the desired result for representatives as in (1.26) is proved. For another choice of representatives (Φ'',σ'') for $[(\Phi',\sigma')]$, there is an equivalence $(\Phi',\sigma')\xrightarrow[\sim]{(\gamma,p)_K}(\Phi'',\sigma'')$ for some $\gamma\in G(\mathbb{Q})$ and $p\in P^i_{\Phi'}(\mathbb{A}_f)$, which induces a canonical isomorphism $\Delta^{i,\circ}_{\Phi'}\backslash\mathrm{Sh}^i_{K_{\Phi'}}(\sigma')\cong\Delta^{i,\circ}_{\Phi''}\backslash\mathrm{Sh}^i_{K_{\Phi''}}(\sigma'')$. So the first part is proved.

The second part follows from the first part and Proposition 1.34. □

Proposition 1.43. *Let $i=a$ or b. Let $\mathrm{Sh}^{i,\Sigma}_K:=\mathrm{Sh}^\Sigma_K(G,X_i)$ be the toroidal compactification of $\mathrm{Sh}^i_K:=\mathrm{Sh}_K(G,X_i)$ associated with a ZP-invariant admissible cone decomposition Σ with the property $\mathcal{P}$ as in Proposition 1.39. Then:*

(1) Let π^i_2 be the projection $\pi^i_2:\mathrm{Sh}_{K_Z}\times\mathrm{Sh}^i_K\to\mathrm{Sh}^i_K$ to the second factor. Then the pullback of Σ along π^i_2 induces a cone decomposition $\pi_2^{i,*}(\Sigma)$, which we abusively denote by Σ. Then there is a canonical isomorphism $\mathrm{id}^\Sigma:(\mathrm{Sh}_{K_Z}\times\mathrm{Sh}^i_K)^\Sigma\xrightarrow{\sim}\mathrm{Sh}_{K_Z}\times\mathrm{Sh}^{i,\Sigma}_K$. So $[m']$ extends to an isomorphism $[m']^\Sigma:\mathrm{Sh}_{K_Z}\times\mathrm{Sh}^{b,\Sigma}_K\to\mathrm{Sh}_{K_Z}\times\mathrm{Sh}^{a,\Sigma}_K$ over $\widetilde{E}$.

(2) Define

$$\mathrm{Z}_{[ZP^i(\Phi,\sigma)],K}:=\coprod_{[(\Phi',\sigma')]\in[ZP^i(\Phi,\sigma)]}\mathrm{Z}^i_{[(\Phi',\sigma')],K}.$$

Then the restriction of m' to ZP^b_Φ, $m':Z\times ZP^b_\Phi\to Z\times ZP^a_\Phi$, induces an isomorphism denoted by $[m']^{\Phi,\sigma}$,

$$\mathrm{Sh}_{K_Z}\times\coprod_{[(\Phi',\sigma')]\in[ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)]}\Delta^{b,\circ}_{\Phi',K}\backslash\mathrm{Sh}^b_{K_{\Phi'}}(\sigma')\xrightarrow{[m']^{\Phi,\sigma}}\mathrm{Sh}_{K_Z}\times\coprod_{[(\Phi',\sigma')]\in[ZP^a(\Phi,\sigma)]}\Delta^{a,\circ}_{\Phi',K}\backslash\mathrm{Sh}^a_{K_{\Phi'}}(\sigma')$$

over $\widetilde{E}$. We also have a similar isomorphism for the unions of σ'-closed strata.

(3) The following diagram commutes:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
(\mathrm{Sh}_{K_Z})^\wedge_{[z]}\times(\mathrm{Sh}^{b,\Sigma}_K)^\wedge_{\mathrm{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)],K}} & \xrightarrow{\sim} & (\mathrm{Sh}_{K_Z})^\wedge_{[z]}\times\coprod_{[(\Phi',\sigma')]\in[ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)]}\Delta^{b,\circ}_{\Phi',K}\backslash(\mathrm{Sh}^b_{K_{\Phi'}}(\sigma'))^\wedge_{\mathrm{Sh}^b_{K_{\Phi',\sigma'}}}\\
\downarrow{\scriptstyle [m']^\Sigma} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle [m']^{\Phi,\sigma}}\\
(\mathrm{Sh}_{K_Z})^\wedge_{[z]}\times(\mathrm{Sh}^{a,\Sigma}_K)^\wedge_{\mathrm{Z}_{[ZP^a(\Phi,\sigma)],K}} & \xrightarrow{\sim} & (\mathrm{Sh}_{K_Z})^\wedge_{[z]}\times\coprod_{[(\Phi',\sigma')]\in[ZP^a(\Phi,\sigma)]}\Delta^{a,\circ}_{\Phi',K}\backslash(\mathrm{Sh}^a_{K_{\Phi'}}(\sigma'))^\wedge_{\mathrm{Sh}^a_{K_{\Phi',\sigma'}}}.
\end{array}\tag{1.30}$$

Proof. Again, we omit the subscripts of the level groups in the symbols of strata, cones and delta groups to simplify the notation. We prove the first part with the same strategy as in Proposition 1.41. For any cusp label $[\Phi^\times]$ mapping to $[z]$ and $[\Phi]$ under $\pi_1^{\min}$ and $\pi_2^{\min}$ as in Proposition 1.41, we have $\mathbf{P}_{\Phi^\times}\xrightarrow{\sim}\mathbf{P}_{[z]}\times\mathbf{P}_\Phi=\mathbf{P}_\Phi$. For any cone $\sigma\in\Sigma(\Phi)$, we abusively denote by σ the cone induced by $\mathbf{P}_{\Phi^\times}\xrightarrow{\sim}\mathbf{P}_\Phi$. We have the following commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi^\times}}(P_{\Phi^\times},D_{\Phi^\times}) & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Z}_{[z]}\times\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi}(P_\Phi,D_\Phi)\\
\downarrow & & \downarrow\\
\mathrm{Sh}_{\overline{K}_{\Phi^\times}}(\overline{P}_{\Phi^\times},\overline{D}_{\Phi^\times}) & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Z}_{[z]}\times\mathrm{Sh}_{\overline{K}_\Phi}(\overline{P}_\Phi,\overline{D}_\Phi),
\end{array}\tag{1.31}$$

where the horizontal morphisms are locally quasi-finite. Then morphism $\mathbf{E}_{K_{\Phi^\times}} \to \mathbf{E}_{K_\Phi}$ is also finite. So the morphism between twisted affine torus embeddings with respect to σ, i.e., $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi^\times}}(P_{\Phi^\times}, D_{\Phi^\times}, \sigma) \to \mathrm{Z}_{[z]} \times \mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi}(P_\Phi, D_\Phi, \sigma)$, is locally quasi-finite. So $\mathrm{Z}_{[(\Phi^\times,\sigma)]} \to \mathrm{Z}_{[z]} \times \mathrm{Z}_{[(\Phi,\sigma)]}$ is locally quasi-finite. Then id^Σ is an isomorphism by Zariski's main theorem, as it is a proper birational and quasi-finite morphism between normal schemes. Other statements in part one follow from [Pin90, 6.7(b) and 12.4(b)].

The morphism m' induces an isomorphism

$$m' : \mathrm{Sh}_{K_Z} \times \mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi}(ZP^b_\Phi, ZP^b_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})D_\Phi) \to \mathrm{Sh}_{K_Z} \times \mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}^a_\Phi}(ZP^a_\Phi, ZP^a_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})D_\Phi)$$

by [Pin90, 3.5 (c)], whose quotient by $\widetilde{\Delta}^{ZP,\circ}_\Phi$ on the second factor is $[m']^{\Phi,\sigma}$. So the second part is proved by Lemma 1.42. The third part follows from the first two parts, and [MP19, Thm. 2.1.27 and 2.1.28]. Note that the second paragraph also implies a similar isomorphism between closed strata. □

Define $\widetilde{E}_{K_Z}$ to be $\widetilde{E}_{K_Z} := \widetilde{E} \cdot F_{K_Z}$. Then Sh_{K_Z} splits as a finite union of $\mathrm{Spec}\, \widetilde{E}_{K_Z}$ over $\widetilde{E}_{K_Z}$.

Corollary 1.44. *With the conventions above, let $s : \mathrm{Spec}\, \widetilde{E}_{K_Z} \to \mathrm{Sh}_{K_Z}$ be any section of $(\mathrm{Sh}_{K_Z})_{\widetilde{E}_{K_Z}}$ over $\widetilde{E}_{K_Z}$ corresponding to an element $z \in Z(\mathbb{A}_f)$. Denote by π_2 the projection of a fiber product to the second factor. Denote by $[g]$ the Hecke action of any element $g \in G(\mathbb{A}_f)$. We have the following statements:*

(1) The compositions

$$(m')^\Phi_s := [z^{-1}] \circ \pi_2 \circ (m') \circ (s \times \mathrm{id}) : \mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi}(ZP^b_\Phi, ZP^b_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})D_\Phi) \to \mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}^a_\Phi}(ZP^a_\Phi, ZP^a_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})D_\Phi)$$

and

$$[m']^\Phi_s := [z^{-1}] \circ \pi_2 \circ [m']^\Phi \circ (s \times \mathrm{id}) : \mathrm{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi)],K} \to \mathrm{Z}_{[ZP^a(\Phi)],K}$$

are isomorphisms over $\widetilde{E}_{K_Z}$. Also, $[m']^{\min}_s := [z^{-1}] \circ \pi_2^a \circ [m']^{\min} \circ (s \times \mathrm{id}) : \mathrm{Sh}^{b,\min}_K \to \mathrm{Sh}^{a,\min}_K$ is an isomorphism over $\widetilde{E}_{K_Z}$ extending $[m']_s := [z^{-1}] \circ \pi_2^a \circ [m'] \circ (s \times \mathrm{id})$.

(2) Then the composition $[m']^\Sigma_s := [z^{-1}] \circ \pi_2 \circ [m']^\Sigma \circ (s \times \mathrm{id}) : \mathrm{Sh}^{b,\Sigma}_K \to \mathrm{Sh}^{a,\Sigma}_K$ is an isomorphism over $\widetilde{E}_{K_Z}$. Similarly, for any cusp label representative Φ and any $\sigma \in \Sigma(\Phi)$, there is an isomorphism $[m']^{\Phi,\sigma}_s := [z^{-1}] \circ \pi_2 \circ [m']^{\Phi,\sigma} \circ \coprod (s \times \mathrm{id}) : \coprod_{[(\Phi',\sigma')] \in [ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)]} \Delta^{b,\circ}_{\Phi'} \backslash \mathrm{Sh}^b_{K_{\Phi'}}(\sigma') \to \coprod_{[(\Phi',\sigma')] \in [ZP^a(\Phi,\sigma)]} \Delta^{a,\circ}_{\Phi'} \backslash \mathrm{Sh}^a_{K_{\Phi'}}(\sigma')$ over $\widetilde{E}_{K_Z}$, and it induces an isomorphism

$$\coprod_{[(\Phi',\sigma')] \in [ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)]} \Delta^{b,\circ}_{\Phi',K} \backslash \mathrm{Sh}^b_{K_{\Phi',\sigma'}} \to \coprod_{[(\Phi',\sigma')] \in [ZP^a(\Phi,\sigma)]} \Delta^{a,\circ}_{\Phi',K} \backslash \mathrm{Sh}^a_{K_{\Phi',\sigma'}}$$

over $\widetilde{E}_{K_Z}$.

Moreover, the following diagram over $\widetilde{E}_{K_Z}$ commutes:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (\mathrm{Sh}^{b,\Sigma}_K)^\wedge_{\mathrm{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)],K}} & \xrightarrow{\sim} & \coprod_{[(\Phi',\sigma')] \in [ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)]} \Delta^{b,\circ}_{\Phi',K} \backslash (\mathrm{Sh}^b_K(\Phi',\sigma'))^\wedge_{\mathrm{Sh}^b_{K_{\Phi',\sigma'}}} \\ \downarrow [m']^\Sigma_s & & \downarrow [m']^{\Phi,\sigma}_s \\ (\mathrm{Sh}^{a,\Sigma}_K)^\wedge_{\mathrm{Z}_{[ZP^a(\Phi,\sigma)],K}} & \xrightarrow{\sim} & \coprod_{[(\Phi',\sigma')] \in [ZP^a(\Phi,\sigma)]} \Delta^{a,\circ}_{\Phi',K} \backslash (\mathrm{Sh}^a_K(\Phi',\sigma'))^\wedge_{\mathrm{Sh}^a_{K_{\Phi',\sigma'}}}. \end{array} \tag{1.32}$$

(3) All the isomorphisms $[m']_s$, $[m']^\Phi_s$, $[m']^{\min}_s$, $[m']^\Sigma_s$ and $[m']^{\Phi,\sigma}_s$ above are independent of the choice of s.

Proof. By [Pin90, 12.4(b)] and our construction, all of the morphisms above are defined over $\widetilde{E}_{K_Z}$. Then we can check all the statements above over field extensions. Since all of $[m']^?$ for $? =, \Phi, (\Phi,\sigma), \Sigma,$ min are isomorphisms according to Proposition 1.41 and Proposition 1.43, and since π_2, $s\times$ id and $[z]$ all induce isomorphisms on each geometrically connected component, we only need to count the number of geometrically connected components. Over $\overline{\widetilde{E}}$, the morphism $[m']_s^{\Sigma}$ (resp. $[m']_s^{\Phi,\sigma}$) induces isomorphism of connected components via $\pi_0(\mathrm{Sh}_K^{b,\Sigma}) \to [z]\times \mathrm{Stab}_{G(\mathbb{Q})}(X^+)\backslash G(\mathbb{A}_f)/K \to [z]\times \mathrm{Stab}_{G(\mathbb{Q})}(X^+)\backslash G(\mathbb{A}_f)/K \to \pi_0(\mathrm{Sh}_K^{a,\Sigma})$
(resp. $\pi_0(\coprod_{[(\Phi',\sigma')]\in[ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)]}\mathrm{Sh}^b_{K_{\Phi'}}(\sigma')) \to [z]\times \mathrm{Stab}_{Q(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi^+)\backslash ZP^b_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)g_\Phi K/K \to$
$[z]\times \mathrm{Stab}_{Q(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi^+)\backslash ZP^a_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)g_\Phi zK/K \to \pi_0(\coprod_{[(\Phi',\sigma')]\in[ZP^a(\Phi,\sigma)]}\mathrm{Sh}^a_{K_{\Phi'}}(\sigma')))$ (see Lemma 1.19). The morphism in the bracket is an isomorphism because of Lemma 1.40 and Lemma 1.42. Other isomorphisms are checked in a similar way. So the first part is proved. The second part is also true since we can verify it over $\overline{\widetilde{E}}$, since we have (1.30) and since we can restrict it to geometrically connected components of $\mathrm{Sh}_K^{i,\Sigma}$, and open and closed subschemes of $\mathrm{Sh}^b_{K_{\Phi'}}(\sigma')$. Finally, we can check over complex points that $[m']_s$ and $[m']_s^{\Phi}$ are isomorphisms that are independent of the choice of s or z. Then the definitions of all the other morphisms are independent of the choice of s or z because of density. □

Convention 1.45. *We denote $[m']_s$, $[m']_s^{\Phi}$, $[m']_s^{\min}$, $[m']_s^{\Sigma}$ and $[m']_s^{\Phi,\sigma}$ by m, m^{Φ}, $m^{\min}$, m^{Σ} and $m^{\Phi,\sigma}$, respectively, since they do not depend on the choice of sections.*

1.4.4. We finally come to the main setup. Let (G_0,X_0) be a Hodge-type Shimura datum. Denote by $\iota:(G_0,X_0)\hookrightarrow(G^\ddagger,X^\ddagger)$ an embedding into a Siegel Shimura datum. Let (G_2,X_2) be an abelian-type Shimura datum with a central isogeny $\pi^{\mathrm{der}}: G_0^{\mathrm{der}}\to G_2^{\mathrm{der}}$ between the derived groups of G_0 and G_2 such that π^{der} induces an isomorphism $(G_0^{\mathrm{ad}},X_0^{\mathrm{ad}})\cong(G_2^{\mathrm{ad}},X_2^{\mathrm{ad}})$. If $G_{2,\mathbb{Q}_p}$ is unramified, by [Kis10, Lem. 3.4.13], there is a G_0 such that $G_{0,\mathbb{Q}_p}$ is also unramified.

Construction 1.46. Let C^{der} be the kernel of π^{der}. Let $G_0':=G_0/C^{\mathrm{der}}$ be the quotient of G_0 by C^{der}. Let G^* be the contracted product $G^*:=G_2\times^{G_2^{\mathrm{der}}}G_0'$. The center Z^* of G^* can be embedded in some quasi-split $\mathbb{Q}$-torus Z' by [PR94, Prop. 2.1, p. 55]. We define $G:=G^*\times^{Z^*}Z'$.

By the construction in the last paragraph, there are natural homomorphisms $\pi^a:G_2\to G^*\to G$ and $\pi^b:G_0\to G^*\to G$, where π^a is an embedding and π^b has finite kernel. Let X_a (resp. X_b) be the $G(\mathbb{R})$-orbit of one of the elements in X_2 (resp. X_0). Since $H^1(\mathbb{R},Z')$ is trivial by [PR94, Lem. 2.4, p.73], $X_a\cong X_b\cong X^{\mathrm{ad}}$. In particular, the Shimura data (G,X_a) and (G,X_b) satisfy the assumptions in §1.4.3.

Fix an open compact subgroup $K_{2,p}$ of $G_2(\mathbb{Q}_p)$, and a neat open compact subgroup of K_2^p of $G_2(\mathbb{A}_f)$. Choose an open compact $K_p\subset G(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ such that $K_p\cap G_2(\mathbb{Q}_p)=K_{2,p}$. Let $K_{0,p}$ be an open compact subgroup of $G_0(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ contained in the preimage of K_p under π^b. Let $K_0:=K_{0,p}K_0^p$ (resp. $K:=K_pK^p$), where K_0^p (resp. K^p) is a neat open compact subgroup of $G_0(\mathbb{A}_f^p)$ (resp. $G(\mathbb{A}_f^p)$).

By Proposition 1.35, we can choose K^p sufficiently small such that π^a induces an open and closed embedding $\pi^a:\mathrm{Sh}_{K_2}(G_2,X_2)\hookrightarrow\mathrm{Sh}_K(G,X_a)$ and an isomorphism $\pi^a:\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_2}}(P_{\Phi_2},D_{\Phi_2})\cong\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi}(P_\Phi,D_\Phi)$, for any cusp label representative Φ_2 mapping to Φ under π^a.

Let $\mathrm{Im}\,G_0(\mathbb{A}_f)$ be the image of $G_0(\mathbb{A}_f)$ under π^b. Define an index set I_{G/G_0} as follows:

$$I_{G/G_0}:=I_{G/G_0,K}:=\mathrm{Stab}_{G(\mathbb{Q})}(X_0)\,\mathrm{Im}\,G_0(\mathbb{A}_f)\backslash G(\mathbb{A}_f)/K.$$

We omit the subscript K in the notation if it is clear in the context. From now on, we fix a set of representatives $\{g_\alpha\}_{\alpha\in I_{G/G_0}}$ of I_{G/G_0}; moreover, if G_0 and G are all chosen to be unramified at p, by [Kis10, Lem. 2.2.6], we can choose g_α in $G(\mathbb{A}_f^p)$.

For any α, choose a neat open compact $K_0^{p,\alpha}$ of $G_0(\mathbb{A}_f^p)$ contained in $\pi^{b,-1}(g_\alpha K^p g_\alpha^{-1})$, and choose an open compact subgroup $K_{0,p}^\alpha\subset G_0(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ contained in $\pi^{b,-1}(g_\alpha K_p g_\alpha^{-1})$. Denote by $\pi^b(g_\alpha)$:

$\mathrm{Sh}_{K_0^\alpha}(G_0,X_0)\to\mathrm{Sh}_K(G,X_b)$ the morphism defined as in §1.1.2. For any α, we also choose $K^{\ddagger,\alpha}:=K_p^{\ddagger,\alpha}K^{\ddagger,\alpha,p}$ such that:

- $K_p^{\ddagger,\alpha}$ are open compact subgroups of $G^\ddagger(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ and $K_p^{\ddagger,\alpha}\cap G_0(\mathbb{Q}_p)\supset K_{0,p}^\alpha$.
- $K^{\ddagger,\alpha,p}$ are neat open compact subgroups of $G^\ddagger(\mathbb{A}_f^p)$ containing $K_0^{\alpha,p}$.
- $\iota^\alpha:\mathrm{Sh}_{K_0^\alpha}(G_0,X_0)\to\mathrm{Sh}_{K^{\ddagger,\alpha}}(G^\ddagger,X^\ddagger)$ are finite morphisms.

Since $E_a\subset E_2:=E(G_2,X_2)$ and $E_b\subset E_0:=E(G_0,X_0)$, we have $\widetilde{E}\subset E':=E_0\cdot E_2$.

Proposition 1.47. *Let Σ_2 be an admissible cone decomposition for $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_2}(G_2,X_2)$. Then by Proposition 1.36, there is an admissible ZP-invariant cone decomposition Σ for $\mathrm{Sh}_K(G,X_a)$ and $\mathrm{Sh}_K(G,X_b)$ such that $\pi^{a,*}(\Sigma)$ refines Σ_2.*

For each g_α defined above, let $\Sigma_0^\alpha:=\pi^b(g_\alpha)^*(\Sigma)$. Then Σ can be chosen such that, for each $\alpha\in I_{G/G_0}$, Σ_0^α is induced by an admissible cone decomposition $\Sigma^{\ddagger,\alpha}$ for $\mathrm{Sh}_{K^{\ddagger,\alpha}}(G^\ddagger,X^\ddagger)$, and such that $\Sigma^{\ddagger,\alpha}$ is a refinement of a smooth or smooth and projective admissible cone decomposition for $\mathrm{Sh}_{K^{\ddagger,\alpha}}(G^\ddagger,X^\ddagger)$. Moreover, we can further choose Σ to be smooth, projective, or to be both smooth and projective.

Proof. First, we apply the argument of [Lan22, Prop. 4.10]. For any $\alpha\in I_{G/G_0}$, we have an embedding $\iota^\alpha:\mathrm{Sh}_{K_0^\alpha}\hookrightarrow\mathrm{Sh}_{K^{\ddagger,\alpha}}$ by construction. For any cusp label representative $\Phi_0^\alpha\in\mathcal{CLR}(G_0,X_0)$, the map ι^α sends Φ_0^α to a cusp label representative $\Phi^{\ddagger,\alpha}\in\mathcal{CLR}(G^\ddagger,X^\ddagger)$. This assignment induces embeddings of cones $\iota_{\mathbf{P}}^\alpha:\mathbf{P}_{\Phi_0^\alpha}\hookrightarrow\mathbf{P}_{\Phi^{\ddagger,\alpha}}$ and $\mathbb{R}$-spaces $\iota_U^\alpha:U_{\Phi_0^\alpha}(\mathbb{R})(-1)\hookrightarrow U_{\Phi^{\ddagger,\alpha}}(\mathbb{R})(-1)$. The maps $\iota_{\mathbf{P}}^\alpha$ and ι_U^α are cut out by some hyperplane $H_{\Phi_0^\alpha}\subset U_{\Phi^{\ddagger,\alpha}}(\mathbb{R})(-1)$. By *loc. cit.*, there is a pair of admissible cone decompositions (which are not necessarily smooth or projective) $(\Sigma_{0,\mathrm{scp}}^\alpha,\Sigma_{\mathrm{scp}}^{\ddagger,\alpha})$, such that the two cone decompositions are *strictly compatible with each other* (see Definition 1.18). That is, for any Φ_0^α mapping to $\Phi^{\ddagger,\alpha}$, and any $\sigma^{\ddagger,\alpha}\in\Sigma_{\mathrm{scp}}^{\ddagger,\alpha}(\Phi^{\ddagger,\alpha})$ such that $\sigma^{\ddagger,\alpha,\circ}\cap H_{\Phi_0^\alpha}\neq\emptyset$, we have $\sigma^{\ddagger,\alpha}\subset H_{\Phi_0^\alpha}$ and $\sigma^{\ddagger,\alpha}\in\Sigma_{0,\mathrm{scp}}^\alpha(\Phi_0^\alpha)$. In other words, all hyperplanes $H_{\Phi_0^\alpha}$ either intersect with the cone $\sigma^{\ddagger,\alpha}$ on a face of its boundaries, or contain the cone, and each $\sigma_0^\alpha\in\Sigma_{0,\mathrm{scp}}^{\alpha,+}(\Phi_0^\alpha)$ also maps exactly to a cone in $\Sigma_{\mathrm{scp}}^{\ddagger,\alpha,+}(\Phi^{\ddagger,\alpha})$. For any refinement Σ_0^α of $\Sigma_{0,\mathrm{scp}}^\alpha$ with property $\mathcal{P}$, since all the refinements are on the boundaries of each $\sigma^{\ddagger,\alpha}$, or are on the whole $\sigma^{\ddagger,\alpha}$. By [Pin90, Prop. 5.23 and Lem. 5.25] and [KKMSD73, pp. 32-35], there is a refinement $\Sigma^{\ddagger,\alpha}$ of $\Sigma_{\mathrm{scp}}^{\ddagger,\alpha}$ such that Σ_0^α and $\Sigma^{\ddagger,\alpha}$ are strictly compatible with each other.

Then it suffices to choose an admissible cone decomposition Σ for $\mathrm{Sh}_K(G,X_b)$, such that the induced cone decompositions $\pi^b(g_\alpha)^*(\Sigma)$ are refinements of $\Sigma_{0,\mathrm{scp}}^\alpha$. Indeed, if we can do so, we can refine Σ further so that it satisfies the property $\mathcal{P}$ and is ZP-invariant. Denote this refinement by Σ'. Then the pullbacks $\pi^b(g_\alpha)^*(\Sigma')$ are refinements of $\pi^b(g_\alpha)^*(\Sigma)$ and in particular, of $\Sigma_{0,\mathrm{scp}}^\alpha$. Then, by the last paragraph, there are refinements $\Sigma^{\ddagger,\alpha,\prime}$ of $\Sigma_{\mathrm{scp}}^{\ddagger,\alpha}$, such that $\pi^b(g_\alpha)^*(\Sigma')$ and $\Sigma^{\ddagger,\alpha,\prime}$ are strictly compatible with each other for all α. In particular, $\pi^b(g_\alpha)^*(\Sigma')$ are induced by $\Sigma^{\ddagger,\alpha,\prime}$ for all α.

In fact, we can choose such a Σ. Since the maps $\mathrm{Cusp}_{K_0^\alpha}(G_0,X_0)\to\mathrm{Cusp}_K(G,X_b)$ induced by $\pi^b(g_\alpha)$ are maps between finite sets and with finite fibers and since $|I_{G/G_0}|$ is finite, we only have finitely many prescribed cone decompositions for each $\mathbf{P}_\Phi$ with $\Phi\in\mathcal{CLR}(G,X_b)$. For any $\Phi_0^\alpha\in\mathcal{CLR}(G_0,X_0)$ mapping to $\Phi\in\mathcal{CLR}(G,X_b)$, the map $\pi^b(g_\alpha)_{\mathbf{P}}:\mathbf{P}_{\Phi_0^\alpha}\to\mathbf{P}_\Phi$ induced by $\pi^b(g_\alpha)$ is an isomorphism. We then choose a common refinement of the cone decompositions of all $[\Phi_0^\alpha]$ in $\coprod_{\alpha\in I_{G/G_0}}\mathrm{Cusp}_{K_0^\alpha}(G_0,X_0)$ mapping to $[\Phi]$; we can do this since there are only finitely many such cone decompositions for $[\Phi]$. □

Definition 1.48. *As §1.1.3, define $\widetilde{K}_\Phi:=\widetilde{K}_\Phi^i:=ZP_\Phi^i(\mathbb{A}_f)\cap g_\Phi Kg_\Phi^{-1}$, $\overline{\widetilde{K}}_\Phi:=\overline{\widetilde{K}}_\Phi^i:=ZP_\Phi^i/U_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)\cap(g_\Phi Kg_\Phi^{-1}/g_\Phi Kg_\Phi^{-1}\cap U_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f))$ and $\widetilde{K}_{\Phi,h}:=\widetilde{K}_{\Phi,h}^i:=ZP_\Phi^i/W_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)\cap(g_\Phi Kg_\Phi^{-1}/W_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)\cap g_\Phi Kg_\Phi^{-1})$.*

Define $\mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^i} := \mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}(ZP_\Phi^i, ZP_\Phi^i(\mathbb{Q})D_\Phi)$, $\overline{\mathrm{Sh}}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^i} := \mathrm{Sh}_{\overline{\widetilde{K}}_\Phi}(ZP_\Phi^i/U_\Phi, ZP_\Phi^i(\mathbb{Q})\overline{D}_\Phi)$, *and* $\mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^i,h} := \mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}_{\Phi,h}}(ZP_\Phi^i/W_\Phi, ZP_\Phi^i(\mathbb{Q})D_{\Phi,h})$.

Let $\mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$ be the algebraic torus whose group of cocharacters corresponds to the lattice $\mathbf{\Lambda}_{K_\Phi} \subset U_\Phi(\mathbb{R})(-1)$. By [Pin90, 3.13] and Lemma 1.14, the variety $\mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^i}$ is a $\mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$-torsor over $\overline{\mathrm{Sh}}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^i}$, and $\overline{\mathrm{Sh}}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^i}$ is an abelian scheme torsor over $\mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^i,h}$.

2. One-motives and the theory of degeneration

The goal of this section is to review and explain Faltings-Chai's theory of degenerating abelian schemes (see [FC90] and [Lan13]). As a preparation for the next section, we present the theory in the language of 1-motives and aim to relate the notions in different references (see, e.g., [Mil90], [Pin90], [Str10], [MP19, §2.2], [FC90], [Lan13] and [Lan12]).

We start with Siegel moduli and 1-motives (see §2.1 and §2.2). We then review the theory of degeneration (see §2.3), and explain the moduli interpretations of boundary mixed Shimura varieties of integral models of Siegel Shimura varieties (see §2.4). In particular, we check that for Siegel Shimura varieties, definitions of cusp labels, boundary charts, and level structures of boundary charts given in various references are the same. In §2.5, we review the main theorems of toroidal compactifications of integral models of Siegel/PEL/Hodge-type Shimura varieties. The results that will be used in subsequent sections will be proved throughout the course of the exposition.

Since we will only study Hodge-type and Siegel-type Shimura varieties in this section, the index set I_{G/G_0} in the previous section is not important here; all superscripts α in the conventions of §1.4.4 will be omitted.

2.1. **Siegel moduli.** Recall that G_0 is a connected reductive group over $\mathbb{Q}$ and (G_0, X_0) is a Hodge-type Shimura datum with an embedding $\iota : (G_0, X_0) \hookrightarrow (G^\ddagger, X^\ddagger) := (\mathrm{GSp}(V, \psi), \mathbb{S}^\pm)$. We denote $G^\ddagger := \mathrm{GSp}(V, \psi)$ and $X^\ddagger := \mathbb{S}^\pm$. We denote by $\nu := \nu_{G^\ddagger} : G^\ddagger \to \mathbb{G}_m$ the similitude character of $G^\ddagger$. Let $K_0 := K_{0,p} K_0^p$ (resp. $K^\ddagger := K_p^\ddagger K^{\ddagger,p}$) be a neat open compact subgroup of $G_0(\mathbb{A}_f)$ (resp. $G^\ddagger(\mathbb{A}_f)$) such that $K_0 \subset K^\ddagger \subset G^\ddagger(\mathbb{A}_f)$, such that K_0^p (resp. $K^{\ddagger,p}$) is a neat open compact subgroup of $G_0(\mathbb{A}_f^p)$ (resp. $G^\ddagger(\mathbb{A}_f^p)$) and such that $K_{0,p}$ (resp. $K_p^\ddagger$) is an open compact subgroup of $G_0(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ (resp. $G^\ddagger(\mathbb{Q}_p)$). By Zarhin's trick, after replacing V with $V^{\oplus 8}$ if necessary, we choose a $\mathbb{Z}$-lattice $V_{\mathbb{Z}} \subset V$ such that $V_{\mathbb{Z}}$ is self-dual with respect to ψ, such that $K_p^\ddagger$ is exactly the stabilizer of $V_{\mathbb{Z}_p}$ in $G^\ddagger(\mathbb{Q}_p)$, and such that $K^\ddagger$ stabilizes $V_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}}$.

To avoid repeating similar definitions, let $\square$ be $\emptyset$ or $\{p\}$. If $\square = \emptyset$, then $K^{\ddagger,\square} = K^\ddagger$ and $K_\square^\ddagger$ is empty. Denote by $\mathbf{M}^{\mathrm{isog}}_{K^\ddagger, \mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}}$ the moduli problem $\mathbf{M}^{\mathrm{isog}}_{K^\ddagger, \mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}} : (Sch/\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)})^{\mathrm{op}} \to (Grpds)$ defined as follows:

For any locally Noetherian and connected $\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}$-scheme S, $\mathbf{M}^{\mathrm{isog}}_{K^\ddagger,\square}(S)$ is the groupoid of tuples $(\mathcal{A}, \lambda, [\varepsilon^\ddagger]_{K^{\ddagger,\square}})$, where

- $\mathcal{A}$ is an abelian scheme over S,
- λ is a $\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}^\times$-polarization (i.e., $[N] \circ \lambda$ is a (positive) polarization for some positive integer N such that $(N, \square) = 1$), and
- $[\varepsilon^\ddagger]_{K^{\ddagger,\square}}$ is a $\pi_1(S, \overline{s})$-invariant $K^{\ddagger,\square}$-orbit of $\mathbb{A}_f^\square$-equivariant isomorphisms $\varepsilon^\ddagger : V_{\mathbb{A}_f^\square} \xrightarrow{\sim} V^p \mathcal{A}_{\overline{s}}$ at some (and therefore any) geometric point $\overline{s}$ of S (this is equivalent to saying that $[\varepsilon^\ddagger]_{K^{\ddagger,\square}} \in \Gamma(S, \underline{\mathrm{Isom}}(V_{\mathbb{A}_f^\square}, V^\square \mathcal{A})/K^{\ddagger,\square})$), such that, $\psi_{\mathbb{A}_f^\square}$ is sent to an $\mathbb{A}_f^{\square,\times}$-multiple of the Weil pairing $e^{\lambda_{\overline{s}}}$ of $\lambda_{\overline{s}}$ via each such $\varepsilon^\ddagger$ in the orbit; we will omit the subscript $K^{\ddagger,\square}$ when it is clear in the context.

Any pair of such tuples $(\mathcal{A}, \lambda, [\varepsilon^\ddagger])$ and $(\mathcal{A}', \lambda', [\varepsilon^{\ddagger,\prime}])$ are equivalent in $\mathbf{M}^{\mathrm{isog}}_{K^\ddagger}(S)$, denoted as $(\mathcal{A}, \lambda, [\varepsilon^\ddagger]) \sim_{\mathrm{isog}} (\mathcal{A}', \lambda', [\varepsilon^{\ddagger,\prime}])$, if there is a $\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}^\times$-isogeny $f : \mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{A}'$ such that $rf^\vee \circ \lambda' \circ f = \lambda$ for some $\mathbb{Z}_{(\square),>0}^\times$ and such that $V^\square f \circ \varepsilon^\ddagger = \varepsilon^{\ddagger,\prime}$ modulo the action of $K^{\ddagger,\square}$. Finally, for general $\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}$-scheme S, as the pairs $(\mathcal{A}, \lambda)$ described above are finitely presented, there is a locally Noetherian $\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}$-scheme S_1 with a morphism $S \to S_1$ over $\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}$, such that $(\mathcal{A}, \lambda)$ is the pullback of a disjoint union of tuples described above over each connected component of S_1. The action of $\pi_1(S, \overline{s})$ for any geometric point $\overline{s} \in S$ on $V^\square \mathcal{A}$ factors through the action of the étale fundamental group $\pi_1(S_1, \overline{s}_1)$ at a geometric point

$\overline{s}_1$ of S_1 by [Del77, Arcata V. Cor. 3.3]. Hence, the tuple $(\mathcal{A}, \lambda, [\varepsilon^\ddagger])$ is the pullback of a disjoint union of tuples described above over each connected component of S_1.

Remark 2.1. *We will have equivalent interpretations of* $\mathbf{M}^{\mathrm{isog}}_{K^\ddagger,\square}$ *if doing the following changes: (1) We further require that the objects in* $\mathbf{M}^{\mathrm{isog}}_{K^\ddagger,\square}(S)$ *satisfy the (Kottwitz) determinantal condition (see* [Kot92, §5] *and also* [Lan13, 1.3.4]*). Since the* $\mathcal{O}$ *in* loc. cit. *is* $\mathbb{Z}$*, the condition is empty for the Siegel-type case. (2) We can change the term "*$\mathbb{Z}^\times_{(\square)}$*-polarizations" to other terms such as "weak polarizations with respect to* $\mathbb{Z}^\times_{(\square)}$*" and also allow the* r *in the equivalence condition above to cover the whole* $\mathbb{Z}^\times_{(\square)}$*.*

The moduli problem above, defined by $\mathbb{Z}^\times_{(\square)}$-isogeny classes of abelian schemes with additional structures, is equivalent to the one defined below using isomorphism classes of abelian schemes with additional structures.

Let $(V_\mathbb{Z}, \psi_\mathbb{Z})$ be a pair of $\mathbb{Z}$-lattice $V_\mathbb{Z}$ with $\psi_\mathbb{Z} : V_\mathbb{Z} \times V_\mathbb{Z} \to \mathbb{Z}(1)$, the restriction of ψ to $V_\mathbb{Z}$ which takes its values in $\mathbb{Z}(1)$. Recall that we require that $V_\mathbb{Z}$ is self-dual with respect to ψ. Define the moduli problem $\mathbf{M}^{\mathrm{iso}}_{(V_\mathbb{Z},\psi_\mathbb{Z}),K^\ddagger,\square} : (Sch/\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)})^{\mathrm{op}} \to (Grpds)$ of isomorphism classes of abelian schemes with additional structures as follows:

For any locally Noetherian and connected $\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}$-scheme S, $\mathbf{M}^{\mathrm{iso}}_{(V_\mathbb{Z},\psi_\mathbb{Z}),K^\ddagger,\square}(S)$ is a groupoid whose objects consist of the tuples $(\mathcal{A}, \lambda, [\varepsilon^\ddagger_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}]_{K^\ddagger,\square})$, where

- $\mathcal{A}$ is an abelian scheme over S,
- λ is a principal polarization, and
- $[\varepsilon^\ddagger_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}]_{K^\ddagger,\square}$ is a $\pi_1(S, \overline{s})$-invariant $K^{\ddagger,\square}$-orbit of $\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square$-equivariant isomorphisms $\varepsilon^\ddagger_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square} : V_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square} \xrightarrow{\sim} T^\square\mathcal{A}_{\overline{s}}$ for some (and hence any) geometric point $\overline{s}$ of S (this is equivalent to saying that $[\varepsilon^\ddagger_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}]_{K^\ddagger,\square} \in \Gamma(S, \underline{\mathrm{Isom}}(V_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}, T^\square\mathcal{A})/K^{\ddagger,\square}))$, such that, $\psi_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}$ is sent to a $\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^{\square,\times}$-multiple of the Weil pairing $e^{\lambda_{\overline{s}}}$ associated with the polarization $\lambda_{\overline{s}}$ via each such $\varepsilon^\ddagger_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}$; we will omit the subscript $K^{\ddagger,\square}$ when it is clear in the context.

Any pair of such tuples $(\mathcal{A}, \lambda, [\varepsilon^\ddagger_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}])$ and $(\mathcal{A}', \lambda', [\varepsilon^{\ddagger,\prime}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}])$ are equivalent in $\mathbf{M}^{\mathrm{iso}}_{(V_\mathbb{Z},\psi_\mathbb{Z}),K^\ddagger,\square}(S)$, denoted as $(\mathcal{A}, \lambda, [\varepsilon^\ddagger_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}]) \sim_{\mathrm{iso}} (\mathcal{A}', \lambda', [\varepsilon^{\ddagger,\prime}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}])$, if there is an isomorphism $f : \mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{A}'$ such that $f^\vee \circ \lambda' \circ f = \lambda$ and such that $T^\square f \circ \varepsilon^\ddagger_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square} = \varepsilon^{\ddagger,\prime}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}$ modulo the action of $K^{\ddagger,\square}$. For general $\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}$-scheme S, as explained above the objects described above are finitely presented. For any $(\mathcal{A}, \lambda, [\varepsilon^\ddagger_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}])$ over S, there is a locally Noetherian $\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}$-scheme S_1 with a morphism $S \to S_1$ over $\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}$, such that $(\mathcal{A}, \lambda, [\varepsilon^\ddagger_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}])$ is the pullback of a disjoint union of tuples described above over each connected component of S_1.

Remark 2.2. *Again, it is harmless to do the following modifications to the definition above: (1) Requiring (Kottwitz) determinantal conditions, which are in fact empty for our case. (2) Requiring that one of* $\pm\lambda$ *to be a polarization, and that* $f^\vee \circ \pm\lambda' \circ f = \pm\lambda$ *in the definition of the equivalence relation* $\sim_{\mathrm{iso}}$*.*

Remark 2.3. *The definition of* $\mathbf{M}^{\mathrm{iso}}_{(V_\mathbb{Z},\psi_\mathbb{Z}),K^\ddagger,\square}$ *depends only on the base change of* $(V_\mathbb{Z}, \psi_\mathbb{Z})$ *to* $\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square$*; that is, if* $(V^{(1)}_\mathbb{Z}, \psi^{(1)}_\mathbb{Z})$ *and* $(V^{(2)}_\mathbb{Z}, \psi^{(2)}_\mathbb{Z})$ *are symplectic* $\mathbb{Z}$*-lattices that are isomorphic over* $\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square$ *after base change, then the two moduli problems defined by the two symplectic lattices are identical, since only the base change* $(V_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}, \psi_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square})$ *is involved in the definition above. We shall omit the subscript* $(V_\mathbb{Z}, \psi_\mathbb{Z})$ *if it is clear in the context.*

In the definition above, the condition that λ *is a principal polarization follows automatically from the self-duality of* $V_\mathbb{Z}$ *with respect to* ψ *and the definition of* $\varepsilon^\ddagger_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}$*. In general, if we choose a* $V_\mathbb{Z}$ *such that* $V_\mathbb{Z} \subset V^\vee_\mathbb{Z}$*, we may require that* λ *is a polarization with degree* d*, where* $d := |V^\vee_\mathbb{Z}/V_\mathbb{Z}|$*.*

For any object $(\mathcal{A},\lambda,[\varepsilon^\ddagger_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}])$ in $\mathbf{M}^{\mathrm{iso}}_{K^\ddagger,\square}(S)$, we can associate an object $(\mathcal{A},\lambda,[\varepsilon^\ddagger_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}\otimes\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}])$ in $\mathbf{M}^{\mathrm{isog}}_{K^\ddagger}(S)$ by viewing λ as a $\mathbb{Z}^\times_{(\square)}$-polarization and by tensoring $\varepsilon^\ddagger_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}$ with $\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}$. Then the natural inclusion of equivalence relations from $\mathbf{M}^{\mathrm{iso}}_{K^\ddagger,\square}(S)$ to $\mathbf{M}^{\mathrm{isog}}_{K^\ddagger,\square}(S)$ induces a natural transformation $t:\mathbf{M}^{\mathrm{iso}}_{K^\ddagger,\square}\to\mathbf{M}^{\mathrm{isog}}_{K^\ddagger,\square}$, which is in fact an equivalence; see, e.g., [Lan13, Prop. 1.4.3.4].

Let us recall the construction of the inverse $t^{-1}:\mathbf{M}^{\mathrm{isog}}_{K^\ddagger,\square}(S)\to\mathbf{M}^{\mathrm{iso}}_{K^\ddagger,\square}(S)$ following *loc. cit.*:

Construction 2.4. First, we can assume that S is locally Noetherian and connected over $\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}$. Next, for any object $(\mathcal{A},\lambda,[\varepsilon^\ddagger])$ in $\mathbf{M}^{\mathrm{isog}}_{K^\ddagger,\square}(S)$ and any representative $\varepsilon^\ddagger:V_{\mathbb{A}_f^\square}\to V^\square\mathcal{A}_{\overline{s}}$, the image $\varepsilon^\ddagger(V_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square})$ of $V_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}$ in $V^\square\mathcal{A}_{\overline{s}}$ is $\pi_1(S,\overline{s})$-invariant (since for any $\pi\in\pi_1(S,\overline{s})$, $\pi(\varepsilon^\ddagger)=\varepsilon^\ddagger\circ k$ for some $k\in K^{\ddagger,\square}$ and $K^{\ddagger,\square}$ stabilizes $V_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}$). Moreover, $\varepsilon^\ddagger(V_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square})$ contains a finite index sub-$\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square$-lattice $NT^\square\mathcal{A}_{\overline{s}}$ for some prime-to-$\square$ integer $N>0$.

Then there is a homomorphism between abelian schemes $f_1:\mathcal{A}_{\overline{s}}\to\mathcal{A}'_{\overline{s}}$ over $\overline{s}$ defined by taking the quotient of $\mathcal{A}_{\overline{s}}$ by $K_{\overline{s}}:=\frac{1}{N}\varepsilon^\ddagger(V_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square})/T^\square\mathcal{A}_{\overline{s}}\subset V^\square\mathcal{A}_{\overline{s}}/T^\square\mathcal{A}_{\overline{s}}=\mathcal{A}_{\overline{s},\mathrm{torsion}}$.

Since $K_{\overline{s}}$ is $\pi_1(S,\overline{s})$-invariant, it extends to a finite étale commutative group scheme K_S over S contained in $\mathcal{A}[k]$. So f_1 is the pullback to $\overline{s}$ of some homomorphism $f:\mathcal{A}\to\mathcal{A}'$ defined by taking the quotient of $\mathcal{A}$ by K_S. Hence, there is a $\mathbb{Z}^\times_{(\square)}$-isogeny defined by $f':\mathcal{A}\xleftarrow{[N]}\mathcal{A}\xrightarrow{f}\mathcal{A}'$ such that $V^\square f'\circ\varepsilon^\ddagger(V_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square})=T^\square\mathcal{A}'$. Now we have found another object $(\mathcal{A}',\lambda',[\varepsilon^{\ddagger,\prime}])$ in $\mathbf{M}^{\mathrm{isog}}_{K^\ddagger,\square}(S)$ equivalent to $(\mathcal{A},\lambda,[\varepsilon^\ddagger])$ such that $f'^{,\vee}\circ\lambda'\circ f'=\lambda$ and $V^\square f'\circ\varepsilon^\ddagger=\varepsilon^{\ddagger,\prime}$. Finally, since $\mathbb{A}_f^{\square,\times}=\mathbb{Z}^\times_{(\square)}\cdot\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^{\square,\times}$, and $K^{\ddagger,\square}$ stabilizes $V_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}$, we can choose a prime-to-$\square$ polarization λ'_0, which is a $\mathbb{Z}^\times_{(\square),>0}$-multiple of λ', such that $\psi_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}$ is sent to a $\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^{\square,\times}$-multiple of $\mathrm{e}^{\lambda_{\overline{s}}}$ via any $\varepsilon^{\ddagger,\prime}$ in $[\varepsilon^{\ddagger,\prime}]$. Hence, we have found an object $(\mathcal{A}',\lambda'_0,[\varepsilon^{\ddagger,\prime}])$ in $\mathbf{M}^{\mathrm{iso}}_{K^\ddagger,\square}(S)$.

When $K^{\ddagger,\square}$ is neat, the moduli problems $\mathbf{M}^{\mathrm{isog}}_{K^\ddagger,\square}$ and $\mathbf{M}^{\mathrm{iso}}_{(V_{\mathbb{Z}},\psi_{\mathbb{Z}}),K^\ddagger,\square}$ are representable by a smooth quasi-projective scheme $\mathcal{M}_{K^\ddagger,\square}$ over $\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}$. When $\square$ is empty, $\mathcal{M}_{K^\ddagger}$ is (the canonical model of) Siegel Shimura variety $\mathrm{Sh}_{K^\ddagger}:=\mathrm{Sh}_{K^\ddagger}(G^\ddagger,X^\ddagger)$. When $\square=\{p\}$, we denote $\mathcal{M}_{K^\ddagger,\square}$ by $\mathcal{S}_{K^\ddagger}:=\mathcal{S}_{K_p^\ddagger K^{\ddagger,p}}(G^\ddagger,\mathbb{S}^\pm)$, the integral model of the Siegel Shimura variety $\mathrm{Sh}_{K^\ddagger}$ associated with the Shimura datum $(G^\ddagger,\mathbb{S}^\pm)$ and the level subgroup $K^\ddagger:=K_p^\ddagger K^{\ddagger,p}$, where $K_p^\ddagger$ is hyperspecial. The inverse limit $\mathcal{S}_{K_p^\ddagger}:=\varprojlim_{K^{\ddagger,p}}\mathcal{S}_{K_p^\ddagger K^{\ddagger,p}}$ is an integral canonical model of $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_p^\ddagger}:=\varprojlim_{K^{\ddagger,p}}\mathrm{Sh}_{K_p^\ddagger K^{\ddagger,p}}$ that satisfies the extension property.

2.2. **1-motives.**

2.2.1. We recall the definition of 1-motives.

Definition 2.5 ([Del74, (10.1.2) and (10.1.10)]; see also [Ray94, Sec. 2] and [MP19, 1.1])**.** *A **1-motive** $\mathcal{Q}$ over a base scheme S is a tuple $\mathcal{Q}=(\underline{Y},\mathcal{G}^\natural,T,A,\iota,c^\vee)$, where:*

1. *$\underline{Y}$ is an étale locally constant finite free $\mathbb{Z}$-module over S,*
2. *$\mathcal{G}^\natural$ is a semi-abelian scheme over S,*
3. *T is a torus over S and A is an abelian scheme over S, such that $\mathcal{G}^\natural$ is an extension of A by T, i.e., there is an exact sequence $0\to T\xrightarrow{i}\mathcal{G}^\natural\xrightarrow{\pi}A\to 0$,*
4. *$\iota:\underline{Y}\to\mathcal{G}^\natural$ is a homomorphism from $\underline{Y}$ to $\mathcal{G}^\natural$, whose composition with the natural quotient $\mathcal{G}^\natural\to A$ is $c^\vee:\underline{Y}\to A$.*

Let $\underline{X}:=\mathbf{X}^*(T)$ be the sheaf of groups of characters of T. Then 3 is equivalent to

3′ *There is a homomorphism $c:\underline{X}\to A^\vee$.*

In fact, for any $\chi\in\underline{X}$, the $\mathbb{G}_m$-torsor produced by the pushout of $\mathcal{G}^\natural$ under $-\chi:T\to\mathbb{G}_m$ corresponds to an invertible sheaf $\mathcal{O}_\chi$ in $A^\vee:=\underline{\mathrm{Pic}}^0_e(A/S)$; so $\mathcal{G}^\natural$ is associated with a homomorphism

$\underline{X} \to \underline{\mathrm{Pic}}^0_e(A/S)$, and this association is bijective (see [Lan13, Prop. 3.1.5.1]). Note that there is an anti-equivalence

$$\underline{\mathrm{Pic}}^0_e(A/S) \xrightarrow{\sim} \underline{\mathrm{Ext}}^1_S(A, \mathbb{G}_m).$$

Remark 2.6. *Let X be an S-scheme. We will use the same notation to denote a $\mathbb{G}_m$-extension of X and its corresponding invertible sheaf; we will make the precise meaning clear in the context.*

Let $\mathcal{P}_A$ be the Poincaré biextension of $A \times_S A^\vee$ by $\mathbb{G}_m$.

Given c and $c^\vee$, the statement 4 is equivalent to

4′ *There is a trivialization of biextensions $\tau^{-1} : \mathbf{1}_{\underline{Y}\times\underline{X}} \to (c^\vee \times c)^*\mathcal{P}_A$ over $\underline{Y} \times \underline{X}$; or equivalently, a trivialization of biextensions $\tau : \mathbf{1}_{\underline{Y}\times\underline{X}} \to (c^\vee \times c)^*\mathcal{P}_A^{\otimes -1}$, i.e., the inverse of τ^{-1}.*

In fact, after replacing S with an étale cover, for any $y \in Y$ and $\chi \in X$, $(c^\vee(y) \times c(\chi))^*\mathcal{P}_A \cong \mathcal{O}_\chi|_{c^\vee(y)}$. Then the sections $\{\tau^{-1}(y,\chi) : \mathcal{O}_\chi|_{c^\vee(y)} \to \mathcal{O}_S\}$ determine and are determined by $\bigoplus_\chi \mathcal{O}_\chi|_{c^\vee(y)} \xrightarrow{\sum_\chi \tau^{-1}(y,\chi)} \mathcal{O}_S$, which is a section in $\mathcal{G}^\natural(S)$ that projects to $c^\vee(y) \in A(S)$, since we can write $\mathcal{G}^\natural$ as $\underline{\mathrm{Spec}}_A(\bigoplus_{\chi\in X} \mathcal{O}_\chi)$.

Symmetrically, given c and $c^\vee$, 4′ is equivalent to

4″ *Let $\mathcal{G}^{\natural,\vee}$ be the semi-abelian scheme over S determined by $c^\vee$ under* [Lan13, Prop. 3.1.5.1]. *Then there is a homomorphism $\iota^\vee : \underline{X} \to \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\vee}$.*

Note that the semi-abelian scheme $\mathcal{G}^{\natural,\vee}$ satisfies an exact sequence $0 \to T^\vee \xrightarrow{i^\vee} \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\vee} \xrightarrow{\pi^\vee} A^\vee \to 0$, which makes it an extension of $A^\vee$ by $T^\vee := \underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\underline{Y}, \mathbb{G}_m)$.

Hence, a 1-motive $\mathcal{Q}$ determines and is determined by its **Cartier dual**

$$\mathcal{Q}^\vee := (\underline{X}, \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\vee}, T^\vee, A^\vee, \iota^\vee, c).$$

If there is more than one 1-motive we are working with, we will use $?^\sharp_{\mathcal{Q}}$, for $? = \underline{Y}, \underline{X}, \mathcal{G}^\natural, T, A, c, \iota, \tau$ and for $\sharp = \emptyset, \vee$, to refer to the corresponding objects determined by $\mathcal{Q}$; if the 1-motive we are referring to is clear in the context, we omit the subscript $\mathcal{Q}$.

Remark 2.7. *Note that if S is the spectrum of a Noetherian complete local ring, or if S is locally Noetherian and normal, then every torus over S is isotrivial. See* [ABD+63, EX. X, 3 and 5]*; see also* [Lan13, Rmk. 3.2.5.6]. *In these cases, we can require $\underline{Y}$ to be trivialized by a finite étale cover in the definition of a 1-motive $\mathcal{Q}$, and $\underline{X} = \underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}^\vee}$ is also trivialized by a finite étale cover.*

A **homomorphism** between 1-motives $f : \mathcal{Q}_1 \to \mathcal{Q}_2$ is a pair $f = (f^{et}, f^{sab}) \in \underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_1}, \underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_2}) \times \underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\mathcal{G}^\natural_{\mathcal{Q}_1}, \mathcal{G}^\natural_{\mathcal{Q}_2})$, such that $\iota_{\mathcal{Q}_2} \circ f^{et} = f^{sab} \circ \iota_{\mathcal{Q}_1}$. The morphism f^{sab} determines and is determined by a pair $(f^{tr}, f^{ab}) \in \underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(T_{\mathcal{Q}_1}, T_{\mathcal{Q}_2}) \times \underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(A_{\mathcal{Q}_1}, A_{\mathcal{Q}_2})$. Moreover, define the **Cartier dual** $f^\vee : \mathcal{Q}_2^\vee \to \mathcal{Q}_1^\vee$ **of** f to be $f^\vee := (f^{tr,\vee}, (f^{et,\vee}, f^{ab,\vee}))$.

Definition 2.8 ([ABV05, Sec. 1.3]; see also [Del74, 10.1.5])**.** *For any positive integer n, define n-**torsion subgroup of** $\mathcal{Q}$ to be the quotient sheaf*

$$\mathcal{Q}[n] := \frac{\ker((-\iota + [n]) : \underline{Y} \times_S \mathcal{G}^\natural \to \mathcal{G}^\natural)}{\mathrm{Im}(([n], \iota) : \underline{Y} \to \underline{Y} \times_S \mathcal{G}^\natural)}.$$

Note that this sheaf $\mathcal{Q}[n]$ is indeed representable by a finite flat commutative group over S: To see this, note that there is a canonical exact sequence of fppf sheaves:

$$0 \to \mathcal{G}^\natural[n] \to \mathcal{Q}[n] \to \underline{Y}/n\underline{Y} \to 0. \tag{2.1}$$

Also, there is a canonical exact sequence of commutative groups over S:

$$0 \to T[n] \to \mathcal{G}^\natural[n] \to A[n] \to 0. \tag{2.2}$$

Since finiteness and flatness are fppf-local on the base (see [Sta24, Lem. 02LA] and [Sta24, Lem. 02L2]), $\mathcal{G}^\natural[n]$ is finite flat over $A[n]$. So $\mathcal{G}^\natural[n]$ is finite flat over S. In (2.1), the first and the last (non-zero) terms are representable. Since $\mathcal{G}^\natural[n]$ is finite over S, $\mathcal{Q}[n]$ is representable by fppf descent of affine morphisms; see [Oor66, Prop. 17.4], and also [Sta24, Lem. 0247]; this also implies that $\mathcal{Q}[n]$ is finite flat over S by [Sta24, Lem. 02LA] and [Sta24, Lem. 02L2] again.

Remark 2.9. *Note that one might also replace $(-\iota + [n])$ with $(\iota + [n])$ and replace $([n], \iota)$ with $([n], -\iota)$ to have a different sign convention for $\mathcal{Q}[n]$. Here we are following the conventions of* [Del74, 10.1.5] *so that we can define Weil pairings of* 1*-motives the same as* [Del74, 10.2.5]*; moreover, it makes it easy to interpret splittings of the weight filtration W on $\mathcal{Q}[n]$ as liftings $(c_n, c_n^\vee, \iota_n)$ (see Proposition 2.39, part 3).*

Remark 2.10. *Continuing the previous remark, as in* [Del74, 10.1.5]*, $\mathcal{Q}$ is represented by a complex $[\underline{Y} \to \mathcal{G}^\natural] \in D^b_{fppf}(S)$, where $\underline{Y}$ is in degree -1 and $\mathcal{G}^\natural$ is in degree 0 and where $D^b_{fppf}(S)$ is the derived category of bounded complexes of fppf-sheaves of abelian groups over S. Moreover, by* [Ray94, Prop. 2.3.1]*, $\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}_{1-mot}(\mathcal{Q}_1, \mathcal{Q}_2) = \underline{\mathrm{Hom}}_{D^b_{fppf}(S)}(\mathcal{Q}_1, \mathcal{Q}_2)$. We denote by $\{k\}$ the k-shifted complex (since square brackets are occupied by the notation of n-torsions). So the multiplication of $\mathcal{Q}\{-1\}$ by n is represented by the following morphism between complexes*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} [\underline{Y} & \xrightarrow{-\iota} & \mathcal{G}^\natural] \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle n} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle n} \\ [\underline{Y} & \xrightarrow{-\iota} & \mathcal{G}^\natural]; \end{array} \tag{2.3}$$

the mapping cone of the above morphism is represented by

$$\mathcal{C}_n(\mathcal{Q}) := [\underline{Y} \xrightarrow{(n,\iota)} \underline{Y} \times_S \mathcal{G}^\natural \xrightarrow{-\iota+n} \mathcal{G}^\natural],$$

whose degrees are concentrated in $-1, 0$ and 1. Then $\mathcal{Q}[n] = H^0(\mathcal{C}_n(\mathcal{Q})) \cong \mathcal{C}_n(\mathcal{Q})$. If we do not shift $\mathcal{Q}$ by -1, we can also formulate $\mathcal{Q}[n]$ as H^{-1} of $[\mathcal{Q} \xrightarrow{n} \mathcal{Q}]$ (see, e.g., [Ray94, 3.1] *and* [MP19, §1.1.2]*).*

Lemma 2.11. *Let $f : \mathcal{Q}_1 \to \mathcal{Q}_2$ be a homomorphism between* 1*-motives over S. Then f naturally induces a homomorphism, which we abusively denote by $f : \mathcal{Q}_1[n] \to \mathcal{Q}_2[n]$, between n-torsion subgroups.*

Proof. This is just the consequence of the following commutative diagram:

$$\begin{array}{lccccc} \mathcal{C}_n(\mathcal{Q}_1): & \underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_1} & \xrightarrow{(n,\iota_{\mathcal{Q}_1})} & \underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_1} \times_S \mathcal{G}^\natural_{\mathcal{Q}_1} & \xrightarrow{-\iota_{\mathcal{Q}_1}+n} & \mathcal{G}^\natural_{\mathcal{Q}_1} \\ & \downarrow{\scriptstyle f^{et}} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle (f^{et}, f^{sab})} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle f^{sab}} \\ \mathcal{C}_n(\mathcal{Q}_2): & \underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_2} & \xrightarrow{(n,\iota_{\mathcal{Q}_2})} & \underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_2} \times_S \mathcal{G}^\natural_{\mathcal{Q}_2} & \xrightarrow{-\iota_{\mathcal{Q}_2}+n} & \mathcal{G}^\natural_{\mathcal{Q}_2}. \end{array} \tag{2.4}$$

□

In general,

Definition 2.12. *A homomorphism $f : \mathcal{Q}_1 \to \mathcal{Q}_2$ between* 1*-motives is called an* ***isogeny*** *if f^{et} is injective and has finite cokernel, and if f^{sab} is an isogeny, that is, f^{sab} is surjective and finite.*

Define the ***kernel*** *of f to be the quotient sheaf*

$$\ker f := \frac{\ker((-\iota_{\mathcal{Q}_2} + f^{sab}) : \underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_2} \times_S \mathcal{G}^\natural_{\mathcal{Q}_1} \to \mathcal{G}^\natural_{\mathcal{Q}_2})}{\mathrm{Im}((f^{et}, \iota_{\mathcal{Q}_1}) : \underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_1} \to \underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_2} \times_S \mathcal{G}^\natural_{\mathcal{Q}_1})}.$$

Equivalently, $\ker f := H^0(\mathcal{C}_f(\mathcal{Q}_1, \mathcal{Q}_2)) \cong \mathcal{C}_f(\mathcal{Q}_1, \mathcal{Q}_2)$*, where*

$$\mathcal{C}_f(\mathcal{Q}_1, \mathcal{Q}_2) := [\underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_1} \xrightarrow{(f^{et}, \iota_{\mathcal{Q}_1})} \underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_2} \times_S \mathcal{G}^\natural_{\mathcal{Q}_1} \xrightarrow{-\iota_{\mathcal{Q}_2}+f^{sab}} \mathcal{G}^\natural_{\mathcal{Q}_2}],$$

the mapping cone of $f\{-1\}$, whose degrees are concentrated in $-1, 0$ and 1.

See more definitions about isogenies in Appendix B.

As (2.1), there is a canonical exact sequence:

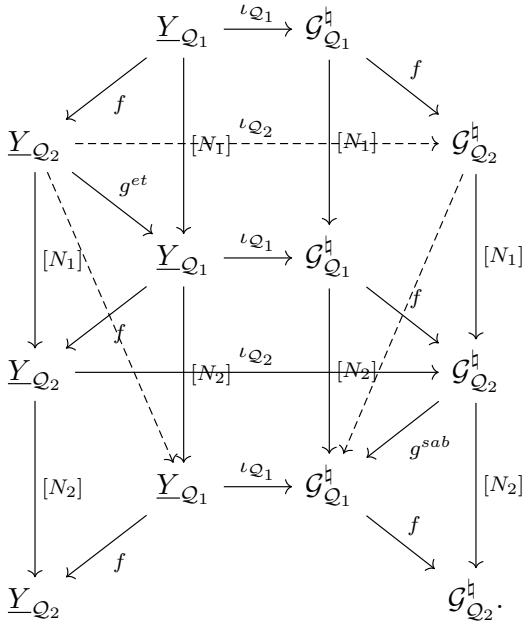
$$0 \to \ker f^{sab} \to \ker f \to \operatorname{coker} f^{et} \to 0. \tag{2.5}$$

By [Oor66, Prop. 17.4], [Sta24, Lem. 02LA], [Sta24, Lem. 02L2] and [Sta24, Lem. 0247] again, $\ker f$ is representable by a finite flat commutative group over S.

Lemma 2.13. *Let $f : \mathcal{Q}_1 \to \mathcal{Q}_2$ be an isogeny between 1-motives over S. Then there is an integer N and an isogeny $h : \mathcal{Q}_2 \to \mathcal{Q}_1$, such that, $h \circ f = [N]_{\mathcal{Q}_1}$ and $f \circ h = [N]_{\mathcal{Q}_2}$. In particular,* $\ker f \subset \mathcal{Q}_1[N]$ *and* $\ker h \subset \mathcal{Q}_2[N]$.

Proof. There is an integer N_1 and an injective homomorphism $g^{et} : \underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_1} \to \underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_2}$ with finite cokernel such that $g^{et} \circ f^{et} = [N_1]_{\underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_1}}$ and $f^{et} \circ g^{et} = [N_1]_{\underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_2}}$; moreover, there is an integer N_2 and an isogeny $g^{sab} : \mathcal{G}^\natural_{\mathcal{Q}_1} \to \mathcal{G}^\natural_{\mathcal{Q}_2}$ such that $g^{sab} \circ f^{sab} = [N_2]_{\mathcal{G}^\natural_{\mathcal{Q}_1}}$ and $f^{sab} \circ g^{sab} = [N_2]_{\mathcal{G}^\natural_{\mathcal{Q}_2}}$. Take $N := N_1 N_2$. Then $h := ([N_2] \circ g^{et}, [N_1] \circ g^{sab})$ satisfies the first statement: To see this, we draw the following commutative diagram

(2.6)



In the diagram above, all triangles, parallelograms and trapezoids containing at most one dashed arrow in their edges are commutative. By diagram-chasing, we find $[N_1] \circ g^{sab} \circ \iota_{\mathcal{Q}_2} = \iota_{\mathcal{Q}_1} \circ [N_2] \circ g^{et}$.

For the second statement, we only need to show $\ker f \subset \mathcal{Q}_1[N]$, since the other one can be proved symmetrically. We have the following commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{lccccc} \mathcal{C}_f(\mathcal{Q}_1, \mathcal{Q}_2): & \underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_1} & \xrightarrow{(f^{et}, \iota_{\mathcal{Q}_1})} & \underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_2} \times_S \mathcal{G}^\natural_{\mathcal{Q}_1} & \xrightarrow{-\iota_{\mathcal{Q}_2} + f^{sab}} & \mathcal{G}^\natural_{\mathcal{Q}_2} \\ & \| & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle (h^{et}, \mathrm{Id})} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle h^{sab}} \\ \mathcal{C}_N(\mathcal{Q}_1): & \underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_1} & \xrightarrow{([N], \iota_{\mathcal{Q}_1})} & \underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_1} \times_S \mathcal{G}^\natural_{\mathcal{Q}_1} & \xrightarrow{-\iota_{\mathcal{Q}_1} + [N]} & \mathcal{G}^\natural_{\mathcal{Q}_1}. \end{array} \tag{2.7}$$

Since $\ker(-\iota_{\mathcal{Q}_2} + f^{sab}) \subset \ker(-\iota_{\mathcal{Q}_1} + [N])$ and $\operatorname{Im}(h^{et} \circ f^{et}, \iota_{\mathcal{Q}_1}) = \operatorname{Im}([N], \iota_{\mathcal{Q}_1})$, we have the second statement. □

Conversely,

Lemma 2.14. *Let $\mathcal{Q}_1$ and N be defined as in Lemma 2.13. Let K be a finite, flat, closed S-subgroup of $\mathcal{Q}_1[N]$.*

Then there is a 1-motive $\mathcal{Q}_2$ and an isogeny $f : \mathcal{Q}_1 \to \mathcal{Q}_2$, such that, $\ker f = K$.

Proof. There is a canonical quotient map from $\mathcal{Q}_1[N]$ to $\underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_1}/N\underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_1}$, whose kernel is $\mathcal{G}^\natural_{\mathcal{Q}_1}[N]$. Then K fits into a canonical exact sequence of fppf sheaves

$$0 \to K_G \longrightarrow K \longrightarrow K_Y \longrightarrow 0.$$

In the sequence above, K_G is the kernel of $K \subset \mathcal{Q}_1[N] \to \underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_1}/N\underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_1}$, and $K_Y := K/K_G$ as an fppf sheaf; in fact, $K_Y = K/K_G$ is representable by a scheme since K_G is finite. Since both K and K_G are flat, K_Y is finite and flat in $\underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_1}/N\underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_1}$, and therefore is locally constant.

Let $\mathcal{G}^\natural_{\mathcal{Q}_2} := \mathcal{G}^\natural_{\mathcal{Q}_1}/K_G$ and $\underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_2}$ be the inverse image of $K_Y \subset \underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_1}/N\underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_1} \cong \frac{1}{N}\underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_1}/\underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_1}$ in $\frac{1}{N}\underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_1}$. Let K_T be the kernel of $K_G \subset \mathcal{G}^\natural_{\mathcal{Q}_1}[N] \to A_{\mathcal{Q}_1}[N]$ and let $K_A := K_G/K_T$, which is representable by a finite flat group scheme since K_T is finite and flat. There is an exact sequence $0 \to K_T \to K_G \to K_A \to 0$.

Since $\mathcal{G}^\natural_{\mathcal{Q}_1}$ is an extension of an abelian scheme $A_{\mathcal{Q}_1}$ by a torus $T_{\mathcal{Q}_1}$, and by a theorem of Deligne and Raynaud [FC90, Thm. 1.9 (b)], each orbit of K_G is locally on the base contained in an affine open subset of $\mathcal{G}^\natural_{\mathcal{Q}_1}$. Then $\mathcal{G}^\natural_{\mathcal{Q}_2}$ is representable by a scheme. Then $\mathcal{G}^\natural_{\mathcal{Q}_2}$ is an extension of an abelian scheme $A_{\mathcal{Q}_2} := A_{\mathcal{Q}_1}/K_A$ by a torus $T_{\mathcal{Q}_2} := T_{\mathcal{Q}_1}/K_T$, and $\underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_2}$ is flat and locally constant.

Let $f^{et} : \underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_1} \to \underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_2}$ be the natural inclusion; let $f^{sab} : \mathcal{G}^\natural_{\mathcal{Q}_1} \to \mathcal{G}^\natural_{\mathcal{Q}_2}$ be the natural quotient.

Finally, let us define $\iota_{\mathcal{Q}_2}$ such that $f^{sab} \circ \iota_{\mathcal{Q}_1} = \iota_{\mathcal{Q}_2} \circ f^{et}$. Fix any S' over S and any $y \in \underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_2}(S')$. Since $\underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_2}$ is defined to be the fiber product of K_Y and $\frac{1}{N}\underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_1}$ over $\frac{1}{N}\underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_1}/\underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_1}$, we see y projects to some $k_y \in K_Y(S')$. We then lift k_y to $k \in K(S')$ and then to $\widetilde{k} = (\widetilde{y}, \widetilde{g}) \in \underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_1} \times_S \mathcal{G}^\natural_{\mathcal{Q}_1}(S')$ up to replacing S' with an fppf cover. Since the projection of $\widetilde{y}$ from $\underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_1}(S')$ to $\underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_1}/N\underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_1}(S') \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{N}} \frac{1}{N}\underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_1}/\underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_1}(S')$ coincides with the projection of y to $\frac{1}{N}\underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_1}/\underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_1}(S')$. We have $Ny - \widetilde{y} = Ny_0$ for $y_0 \in \underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_1}(S')$. By adjusting $(Ny_0, \iota_{\mathcal{Q}_1}(y_0))$, we have a lifting $(Ny, \widetilde{g}') \in \underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_1} \times_S \mathcal{G}^\natural_1(S')$. We define $\iota_{\mathcal{Q}_2}(y) = \overline{\widetilde{g}}'$, the projection of $\widetilde{g}'$ to $\mathcal{G}^\natural_{\mathcal{Q}_2}(S')$. This definition is independent of the choice of the lifting from K_Y to K, since any two liftings differ by an element in K_G. Moreover, this definition is independent of the second step of lifting from K to $\underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_1} \times_S \mathcal{G}^\natural_{\mathcal{Q}_1}$, since we will always adjust it by some $(Ny_0, \iota_{\mathcal{Q}_1}(y_0))$ so that the first component is Ny. Hence, this map is well defined. It is compatible with $\iota_{\mathcal{Q}_1}$ since if $y \in \underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_1}(S')$, the lifting we choose will be $(Ny, \iota_{\mathcal{Q}_1}(y))$. □

Moreover, we can define the p-adic Tate module by the p-adic sheaf $T_p\mathcal{Q} := \varprojlim_{n \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}} \mathcal{Q}[p^n]$ and denote the prime-to-p Tate module by the $\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p$-sheaf $T^p\mathcal{Q} := \varprojlim_{n \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0} \text{ and } p\nmid n} \mathcal{Q}[n]$. Define $\widehat{T}\mathcal{Q} := \varprojlim_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} \mathcal{Q}[n]$. Define the corresponding rational Tate modules by $V_p\mathcal{Q} := T_p\mathcal{Q} \otimes \mathbb{Q}$, $V^p\mathcal{Q} := T^p\mathcal{Q} \otimes \mathbb{Q}$ and $\widehat{V}\mathcal{Q} := \widehat{T}\mathcal{Q} \otimes \mathbb{Q}$, respectively.

The **weight filtration** $W_\bullet$ on $\mathcal{Q}$ is defined by $W_{-3}\mathcal{Q} = 0$, $W_{-2}\mathcal{Q} = T$, $W_{-1}\mathcal{Q} = \mathcal{G}^\natural$ and $W_0\mathcal{Q} = \mathcal{Q}$; so $\mathrm{Gr}^W_{-2} = T$, $\mathrm{Gr}^W_{-1} = A$ and $\mathrm{Gr}^W_0 = \underline{Y}$. This weight filtration canonically induces weight filtrations on $?\mathcal{Q}$ by setting $W_i?\mathcal{Q} := ?W_i\mathcal{Q}$, for $? = T^p$, T_p, V^p, V_p, $\widehat{T}$ and $\widehat{V}$, and for any $i \in \mathbb{Z}$; we denote their corresponding graded pieces by $\mathrm{Gr}_i^{W_?\mathcal{Q}}$. For n-torsion subgroups, denote the weight filtration and its graded pieces by $W_i\mathcal{Q}[n] := (W_i\mathcal{Q})[n]$ and $\mathrm{Gr}_i^{W_{\mathcal{Q}[n]}}$.

Lemma 2.15. *Let κ be a field. Let $l \neq \mathrm{char}\,\kappa$ be a prime number. Let $\mathcal{Q}_1$ and $\mathcal{Q}_2$ be two 1-motives over $S = \mathrm{Spec}\,\kappa$. Then there is an injective map*

$$T_l : \mathrm{Hom}(\mathcal{Q}_1, \mathcal{Q}_2) \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbb{Z}_l}(T_l\mathcal{Q}_1, T_l\mathcal{Q}_2). \tag{2.8}$$

Proof. Let $f : \mathcal{Q}_1 \to \mathcal{Q}_2$ be any homomorphism such that $T_l f = 0$. We want to show that $f = 0$. Assume that κ is algebraically closed. Then, for any integer $n > 0$, the morphism $f^{sab} : \mathcal{G}^\natural_{\mathcal{Q}_1}[l^n] \to$

$\mathcal{G}^\natural_{\mathcal{Q}_2}[l^n]$ is 0. Then the homomorphism $f^{ab}: A_{\mathcal{Q}_1}[l^n] \to A_{\mathcal{Q}_2}[l^n]$ is 0. So $f^{ab}: A_{\mathcal{Q}_1} \to A_{\mathcal{Q}_2}$ is 0 since (2.8) holds for abelian varieties by [MRM74, Thm. 3, p.176]. Also, (2.8) holds for tori since tori over an algebraically closed field are copies of $\mathbb{G}_m$. We then have $f^{tr} = 0$ and $f^{sab} = 0$.

Now we can assume that $f^{sab} = 0$. Then $f^{et}(\underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_1}) \subset \ker \iota_{\mathcal{Q}_2}$. So for any $y_1 \in \underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_1}(S')$, the projection of $(f^{et}(y_1), 0) \in \underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_2} \times_S \mathcal{G}^\natural_{\mathcal{Q}_2}(S')$ to $\underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_2}/l^n\underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_1}(S')$ lies in $\mathcal{Q}_2[l^n]$. But since this projection is trivial for all integers $n > 0$, $f^{et}(y_1)$ is trivial. Hence, f^{et} and f^{sab} are both trivial, so is f. □

Definition 2.16. *Let $\mathcal{Q}$ be a 1-motive defined as in Definition 2.5. A **polarization** of a 1-motive $\mathcal{Q}$ is a homomorphism $\boldsymbol{\lambda}: \mathcal{Q} \to \mathcal{Q}^\vee$ such that $\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{et} = \phi$ for some injective homomorphism $\phi: \underline{Y} \to \underline{X}$ with finite cokernel, such that $\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{tr} = \phi^\vee$, and such that $\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{ab} = \lambda_A$ for some polarization λ_A of A.*

A pair $(\mathcal{Q}, \boldsymbol{\lambda})$ of a 1-motive $\mathcal{Q}$ with a polarization $\boldsymbol{\lambda}$ is called a polarized 1-motive. Given a $\boldsymbol{\lambda}$, by definition, $c \circ \phi = \boldsymbol{\lambda}^{ab} \circ c^\vee$. Then we have a trivialization $\varphi := (\mathrm{Id} \times \phi)^*\tau : \mathbf{1}_{\underline{Y}\times\underline{Y}} \to (\mathrm{Id} \times \phi)^*(c^\vee \times c)^*\mathcal{P}_A^{\otimes -1} \cong (c^\vee \times c^\vee)^*(\mathrm{Id} \times \lambda_A)^*\mathcal{P}_A^{\otimes -1}$ of $\mathbb{G}_m$-biextensions over $\underline{Y} \times \underline{Y}$. Note that by the rigidifications of $\mathcal{P}_A$ along $e_A \times A^\vee$ and $A \times e_{A^\vee}$, and by partial multiplication laws of biextensions (see [GRR72, VII, Déf. 2.1]), if we replace S with some étale cover such that $\underline{X} = X$ and $\underline{Y} = Y$ are constant, then $\tau(Y, 0) = \tau(0, X) = 1$, and $\tau(-,-)$ (resp. $\varphi(-,-)$) is bilinear over $Y \times X$ (resp. $Y \times Y$).

2.2.2. Next, we recall the definition of biextension of 1-motives by commutative groups. Using this notion, we recall the definition of Weil pairings for 1-motives following Deligne [Del74, 10.2.5].

Definition 2.17 ([Del74, 10.2.1])**.** *Let $\mathcal{Q}_1$ and $\mathcal{Q}_2$ be two 1-motives over S. Let H be a commutative group scheme over S. A **biextension $\mathcal{P}$ of $(\mathcal{Q}_1, \mathcal{Q}_2)$ by H** is a biextension $\mathcal{P}$ of $(\mathcal{G}_1^\natural, \mathcal{G}_2^\natural)$ by H such that*

1. *There is a trivialization ϱ_1 (resp. ϱ_2) of biextensions $\mathcal{P}|_{\mathcal{G}_1^\natural \times \underline{Y}_2}$ (resp. $\mathcal{P}|_{\underline{Y}_1 \times \mathcal{G}_2^\natural}$) $\varrho_1 : \mathbf{1}_{\mathcal{G}_1^\natural \times \underline{Y}_2} \to \mathcal{P}|^{\otimes -1}_{\mathcal{G}_1^\natural \times \underline{Y}_2}$ (resp. $\varrho_2 : \mathbf{1}_{\underline{Y}_1 \times \mathcal{G}_2^\natural} \to \mathcal{P}|^{\otimes -1}_{\underline{Y}_1 \times \mathcal{G}_2^\natural}$).*
2. *ϱ_1 and ϱ_2 coincide when they are pulled back to $\underline{Y}_1 \times \underline{Y}_2$ under $(\iota_1 \times \mathrm{Id}_{\underline{Y}_2})$ and $(\mathrm{Id}_{\underline{Y}_1} \times \iota_2)$, respectively.*

Remark 2.18. *Recall that a 1-motive $\mathcal{Q}$ can also be interpreted as a complex of group schemes $\mathcal{Q} = [\underline{Y} \xrightarrow{\iota} \mathcal{G}^\natural]$; here, we let $\underline{Y}$ be in degree -1 and let $\mathcal{G}^\natural$ be in degree 0. As remarked in* [Del74, 10.2.1], *$\mathrm{Biext}^1(\mathcal{Q}_1, \mathcal{Q}_2; H)$, the isomorphism classes of biextensions of $(\mathcal{Q}_1, \mathcal{Q}_2)$ by H, is isomorphic to $\underline{\mathrm{Ext}}^1(\mathcal{Q}_1 \otimes^L \mathcal{Q}_2, H)$; by hom-tensor adjunction* [Sta24, Lem. 0A65], *this group is isomorphic to $\underline{\mathrm{Ext}}^1(\mathcal{Q}_1, R\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\mathcal{Q}_2, H))$.*

Lemma 2.19. *Let $\mathcal{P}_\mathcal{Q}$ be the pullback of $\mathcal{P}_A$ to $\mathcal{G}^\natural \times \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\vee}$. Then $\mathcal{P}_\mathcal{Q}$ can be canonically viewed as a biextension of $(\mathcal{Q}, \mathcal{Q}^\vee)$ by $\mathbb{G}_m$.*

Proof. Let S' be any S-scheme such that $\underline{X}(S') = X$ and $\underline{Y}(S') = Y$. Giving a section $x \in \mathcal{G}^\natural(S')$ is equivalent to giving a section $x_A \in A(S')$ together with a section x_f of the fiber $\mathcal{G}^\natural|_{x_A}$ over S'; a section x_f of the trivial T-torsor $\mathcal{G}^\natural|_{x_A}$ is determined by a map $\chi \in X(S') \mapsto x_f(\chi) \in \mathcal{O}_\chi|_{x_A}(S')$ (here $\mathcal{O}_\chi$ means the corresponding $\mathbb{G}_m$-bundle), a section of the pushout of $\mathcal{G}^\natural|_{x_A}$ along $-\chi$. We show that $\varrho_1(x, \chi) := x_f(\chi)^{-1}$ is the desired trivialization of the biextension $\mathcal{P}_\mathcal{Q}^{\otimes -1}|_{\mathcal{G}^\natural \times \underline{X}}$.

To see this, we have to show that $\varrho_1(-,-)$ can be canonically viewed as a trivialization of $\mathcal{P}_\mathcal{Q}|_{(x,\chi)}$ for any $x \in \mathcal{G}^\natural(S')$ and any $\chi \in X(S')$, and that $\varrho_1(-,-)$ is bilinear. We let $S = S'$. Note that any $x \in \mathcal{G}^\natural(S)$ induces a section $x \in \mathcal{G}^\natural \times_A \mathcal{G}^\natural(S)$ under the diagonal embedding $\Delta: \mathcal{G}^\natural \to \mathcal{G}^\natural \times_A \mathcal{G}^\natural$. Then $\varrho_1(x, \chi)$ is defined by (the inverse of) the pushout of $\mathcal{G}^\natural \times_A \mathcal{G}^\natural|_{(x,x)}$ from the second factor along $-\chi$. The case for $\varrho_2(-,-)$ is constructed symmetrically.

Next, let us explain the bilinearity. The linearity with respect to the first factor follows from the multiplicative structure of $\mathcal{G}^\natural$ and the diagonal embedding; the linearity of the second factor follows from the multiplicative structure of pushouts with respect to the tensor product: $\mathcal{O}_\chi \otimes \mathcal{O}_{\chi'} \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathcal{O}_{\chi+\chi'}$.

Finally, ϱ_1 and ϱ_2 coincide when pulled back to $Y \times X$: this can be seen from the equivalence of τ, ι and $\iota^\vee$; see 2.2.1, 4, 4′ and 4″. □

We will keep on using the notation $\varrho_1(g,h)$ (resp. $\varrho_2(g,h)$) defined in Lemma 2.19, for $g \in \mathcal{G}^\natural(S')$ and $h \in \iota^\vee(\underline{X})(S')$ (resp. for $g \in \iota(\underline{Y})(S')$ and $h \in \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\vee}$), where S' is an S-scheme; if there is more than one 1-motive involved, we will use $\varrho_1^{\mathcal{Q}}$ and $\varrho_2^{\mathcal{Q}}$ to specify that the trivializations ϱ_1 and ϱ_2 are defined for $\mathcal{P}_{\mathcal{Q}}$. If g (resp. h) is trivial, we denote $\mathrm{rig}_h := \varrho_2(0,h)$ (resp. $\mathrm{rig}_g := \varrho_1(g,0)$).

Now we recall Deligne's definition of Weil pairings.

For any two valued points $x \in \mathcal{G}^\natural(S')$ and $y \in \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\vee}(S')$ for some S-scheme S', we denote $\mathcal{P}_{\mathcal{Q}}|_{(x,y)}$ by $\mathcal{P}_{x,y}$. Moreover, we denote $(x \times \mathrm{Id}_{\mathcal{G}^{\natural,\vee}})^*\mathcal{P}_{\mathcal{Q}}$ (resp. $(\mathrm{Id}_{\mathcal{G}^\natural} \times y)^*\mathcal{P}_{\mathcal{Q}}$) by $\mathcal{O}_x$ (resp. $\mathcal{O}_y$).

Definition 2.20 ([Del74, 10.2.5]). *The **Weil pairing for a 1-motive** $\mathcal{Q}$ over S is a perfect pairing $\mathrm{e}_{\mathcal{Q}[n]} : \mathcal{Q}[n] \times \mathcal{Q}^\vee[n] \to \mathbb{G}_m$, which is defined as the difference of two trivializations described as follows:*

Let $q_1 \in \mathcal{Q}[n](S')$ and $q_2 \in \mathcal{Q}^\vee[n](S')$. Suppose that q_1 lifts to $(y,g) \in \underline{Y}(S') \times \mathcal{G}^\natural(S')$ and q_2 lifts to $(x,h) \in \underline{X}(S') \times \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\vee}(S')$. Then $\mathrm{e}_{\mathcal{Q}[n]}(q_1,q_2)$ fits into the commutative diagram

(2.9)
$$\begin{array}{ccc} & \mathcal{P}_{\iota(y),h} & \xrightarrow{\varrho_2(y,h)} \mathbb{G}_m \\ \overset{\text{can.}}{\nearrow} & & \uparrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{e}_{\mathcal{Q}[n]}(q_1,q_2)} \\ \mathcal{P}_{g,h}^{\otimes n} & & \\ \underset{\text{can.}}{\searrow} & & \\ & \mathcal{P}_{g,\iota^\vee(x)} & \xrightarrow{\varrho_1(g,x)} \mathbb{G}_m. \end{array}$$

Symbolically, we write $\mathrm{e}_{\mathcal{Q}[n]}(q_1,q_2) := \frac{\varrho_2(y,h)}{\varrho_1(g,x)}$.

Moreover, for any polarization $\boldsymbol{\lambda}$ of $\mathcal{Q}$, $\boldsymbol{\lambda}(\mathcal{Q}[n]) \subset \mathcal{Q}^\vee[n]$ (see Lemma 2.11). Define $\mathrm{e}^{\boldsymbol{\lambda}} : \mathcal{Q}[n] \times \mathcal{Q}[n] \to \mathbb{G}_m$ to be $\mathrm{e}^{\boldsymbol{\lambda}}(q_1,q_2) := \mathrm{e}_{\mathcal{Q}[n]}(q_1, \boldsymbol{\lambda}(q_2))$ for $q_1, q_2 \in \mathcal{Q}[n]$.

The following lemma is immediate:

Lemma 2.21. *Let $(\mathcal{Q}, \boldsymbol{\lambda})$ be a polarized 1-motive and let $f : \mathcal{Q}_1 \to \mathcal{Q}$ be an isogeny between 1-motives. Then $\boldsymbol{\lambda}_1 := f^\vee \circ \boldsymbol{\lambda} \circ f$ is a polarization of $\mathcal{Q}_1$.*

Let $q_1 \in \mathcal{Q}_1[n]$ and $q_2 \in \mathcal{Q}^\vee[n]$. Set $q_1 = (y,g) \in \underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_1}(S') \times \mathcal{G}^\natural_{\mathcal{Q}_1}(S')$ and $q_2 = (x,h) \in \underline{X}_{\mathcal{Q}}(S') \times \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\vee}_{\mathcal{Q}}(S')$. Then $\varrho_1^{\mathcal{Q}}(f^{sab}(g),x) = \varrho_1^{\mathcal{Q}_1}(g, f^{\vee,et}(x))$, and $\varrho_2^{\mathcal{Q}}(f^{et}(y),h) = \varrho_2^{\mathcal{Q}_1}(y, f^{\vee,sab}(h))$.

Consequently, we have the following equalities: $\mathrm{e}_{\mathcal{Q}[n]}(f(q_1),q_2) = \mathrm{e}_{\mathcal{Q}_1[n]}(q_1, f^\vee(q_2))$; if $q_1, q_2 \in \mathcal{Q}_1[n](S')$, $\mathrm{e}^{\boldsymbol{\lambda}}(f(q_1),f(q_2)) = \mathrm{e}^{\boldsymbol{\lambda}_1}(q_1,q_2)$; for any $y_1 \in \underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_1}(S')$ and any $x \in \underline{X}_{\mathcal{Q}}(S')$, $\tau_{\mathcal{Q}}(f^{\acute{e}t}(y),x) = \tau_{\mathcal{Q}_1}(y, f^{\vee,et}(x))$.

Proof. The first paragraph follows directly from the definition. The second paragraph follows from the construction of ϱ_1 and ϱ_2 in Lemma 2.19, as the pushout of $g \in \mathcal{G}^\natural_{\mathcal{Q}_1}(S')$ under $-f^{\vee,et}(x)$ factors through the pushout of $f^{sab}(g) \in \mathcal{G}^\natural_{\mathcal{Q}}(S')$ under $-x$, and as the pushout of $f^{\vee,sab}(h) \in \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\vee}_{\mathcal{Q}_1}(S')$ under $-y$ factors through the pushout of $h \in \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\vee}_{\mathcal{Q}}(S')$ under $-f^{et}(y)$. The third paragraph follows from the second paragraph. □

2.2.3. The statements in §2.2.3 and §2.2.4 are not used in the remaining part of this paper. These two subsections are retained to ensure consistency with the submitted version of the thesis.

We make some explanations on how the definitions above are compatible with the general theory of Ext- and Biext- groups studied in [GRR72, VII and VIII].

First, let us consider the complex $[\underline{Y} \xrightarrow{c^\vee} A]$ concentrated in degrees -1 and 0. Then, as in [GRR72, VII, 3.1 and Thm. 3.2.5], the group $\underline{\mathrm{Ext}}^1([\underline{Y} \to A], \mathbb{G}_m)$ can be described as follows:

Theorem 2.22 ([GRR72, VII, Thm. 3.2.5]). *Let $L = [\cdots \to L_2 \xrightarrow{d_2} L_1 \xrightarrow{d_1} L_0 \to 0]$ be a complex of fppf sheaves of commutative groups over S such that L_0 is in degree 0. Let H be a commutative group over S. Then*

$$\underline{\mathrm{Ext}}^1(L, H) \cong \{ \begin{array}{c} (E, \alpha) | E \text{ is an extension of } L_0 \text{ by } H,\ \alpha \text{ is a trivialization} \\ \text{of the pullback extension } d_1^*(E) \text{ such that } \alpha \circ d_2 = 0 \end{array} \}/\cong,$$

where an isomorphism $f : (E, \alpha) \to (E', \alpha')$ is an isomorphism of extensions of L_0 by H, $f : E \to E'$, such that $f \circ \alpha = \alpha'$. Moreover, $\underline{\mathrm{Ext}}^0(L, H) \cong \underline{\mathrm{Hom}}_{S-gp}(H^0(L), H)$.

As there is an exact sequence

$$0 \to [0 \to A] \to [\underline{Y} \to A] \to [\underline{Y} \to 0] \to 0,$$

applying $R\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(-, \mathbb{G}_m)$, we see that there is an exact sequence

$$0 \to T^\vee \to \underline{\mathrm{Ext}}^1([\underline{Y} \to A], \mathbb{G}_m) \to A^\vee \to 0,$$

and $R^0\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}([\underline{Y} \to A], \mathbb{G}_m) = 0$.

On the other hand, since the arguments in [GRR72, VIII, 1.1.4 and 1.4.2] involve only general homological algebra and also work in the case of 1-motives, and since $R^0\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}([\underline{Y} \to A], \mathbb{G}_m)$ is trivial, we have an isomorphism $\mathrm{Biext}^1(\mathcal{T}, [\underline{Y} \xrightarrow{c^\vee} A]; \mathbb{G}_m) \xrightarrow{\sim} \underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\mathcal{T}, \underline{\mathrm{Ext}}^1([\underline{Y} \xrightarrow{c^\vee} A], \mathbb{G}_m))$ for any fppf sheaf of commutative groups $\mathcal{T}$. Then the functor $\mathrm{Biext}^1(-, [\underline{Y} \to A]; \mathbb{G}_m)$ from $Sh(S_{fppf})^{\mathrm{op}}$ to $Sh(S_{fppf})$ is represented by $\underline{\mathrm{Ext}}^1([\underline{Y} \to A], \mathbb{G}_m)$; the fppf sheaf $\underline{\mathrm{Ext}}^1([\underline{Y} \to A], \mathbb{G}_m)$ is representable by a commutative group scheme by fppf descent of affine morphisms (see [Oor66, Prop. 17.4]; see also [Sta24, Lem. 0247]).

More precisely,

Proposition 2.23. *$\underline{\mathrm{Ext}}^1([\underline{Y} \to A], \mathbb{G}_m)$ is representable by $\mathcal{G}^{\natural,\vee}$. In particular, if we assume that $\underline{Y}$ splits, for simplicity, then $\underline{\mathrm{Ext}}^1([\underline{Y} \to A], \mathbb{G}_m) \cong \bigoplus_{y \in Y} \mathcal{O}_{c^\vee(y)}$, where $\mathcal{O}_{c^\vee(y)} := (c^\vee(y) \times \mathrm{Id}_{A^\vee})^* \mathcal{P}_A$. Similar statements are true if we replace $c^\vee, \underline{X}$ and A with $c, \underline{Y}$ and $A^\vee$, respectively.*

Proof. Let $\mathcal{P}$ be the $\mathbb{G}_m$-extension over $A \times \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\vee}$ defined by the pullback of $\mathcal{P}_A$ under $\mathrm{Id}_A \times \pi^\vee$. Then as Lemma 2.19, the diagonal embedding $\Delta : \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\vee} \to \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\vee} \times_{A^\vee} \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\vee}$ defines a canonical trivialization of $\mathbf{t}^\Delta : \mathbf{1}_{\underline{Y} \times \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\vee}} \to (c^\vee \times \mathrm{Id}_{\mathcal{G}^{\natural,\vee}})^* \mathcal{P}$ over $\underline{Y} \times \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\vee}$ by pushing out sections $-y \in \underline{Y}(S')$ for any S-scheme S'; we claim that $(\mathcal{P}, \mathbf{t}^\Delta)$ is the tautological biextension (with the sign of trivializations opposite to the definition appearing previously) of the functor $\mathrm{Biext}^1(-, [\underline{Y} \to A]; \mathbb{G}_m)$.

On the one hand, for any commutative group scheme H over S, any $x \in \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\vee}(H)$, the pair $((\mathrm{Id}_A \times x)^* \mathcal{P}, (\mathrm{Id}_A \times x)^* \mathbf{t}^\Delta)$ defines a desired biextension in $\mathrm{Biext}^1(H, [\underline{Y} \xrightarrow{c^\vee} A]; \mathbb{G}_m)$. On the other hand, for any biextension (E, α) of $([\underline{Y} \to A], H)$ by $\mathbb{G}_m$, the image of (E, α) from the top-left corner to the bottom-right corner of the commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{Biext}^1(H, [\underline{Y} \xrightarrow{c^\vee} A]; \mathbb{G}_m) & \xrightarrow{\sim} & \underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(H, \underline{\mathrm{Ext}}^1([\underline{Y} \xrightarrow{c^\vee} A], \mathbb{G}_m)) \\ \downarrow \text{can.} & & \downarrow \text{can.} \\ \mathrm{Biext}^1(H, A; \mathbb{G}_m) & \xrightarrow{\sim} & \underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(H, A^\vee) \end{array} \tag{2.10}$$

determines a homomorphism $f_E : H \to A^\vee$, and this induces an isomorphism $E \cong (\mathrm{Id}_A \times f_E)^* \mathcal{P}_A$. Then α is a trivialization that assigns each $y \in \underline{Y}(S')$ a trivialization $\alpha(y)$ of $f_E^* \mathcal{O}_{c^\vee(y)}(S')$ for any

S-scheme S', and this is equivalent to a homomorphism $a : H \to H \times_{A^\vee} \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\vee}$. This proves the claim. □

With the definition above, we can then construct $\iota^\vee$ from ι by pushing out $\mathcal{G}^\natural$ along $-\chi$. By doing this, there is a $\mathbb{G}_m$-extension $\mathcal{O}_\chi$ with a section $\underline{Y} \to \mathcal{G}^\natural \xrightarrow{-\chi} \mathcal{O}_\chi$ for any χ, which induces a map $\iota^\vee : \underline{X} \to \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\vee}$ by the proposition above.

2.2.4. The following lemma is self-explanatory due to the definition of n-torsion points.

Lemma 2.24 (See also [FC90, III., Cor. 7.3])**.** *Recall that there are two extensions induced by the weight filtration of $\mathcal{Q}[n]$*

$$\begin{aligned} 0 \longrightarrow \mathcal{G}^\natural[n] \longrightarrow \mathcal{Q}[n] \longrightarrow \underline{Y}/n\underline{Y} \longrightarrow 0, \\ 0 \longrightarrow T[n] \longrightarrow \mathcal{G}^\natural[n] \longrightarrow A[n] \longrightarrow 0. \end{aligned} \tag{2.11}$$

The first extension is determined by the image of ι under the canonical connecting homomorphism $\partial : \underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\underline{Y}, \mathcal{G}^\natural) \to \underline{\mathrm{Ext}}^1(\underline{Y}, \mathcal{G}^\natural[n]) = \underline{\mathrm{Ext}}^1(\underline{Y}/n\underline{Y}, \mathcal{G}^\natural[n])$ induced by applying $R\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\underline{Y}, -)$ to $0 \to \mathcal{G}^\natural[n] \to \mathcal{G}^\natural \to \mathcal{G}^\natural \to 0$; the second extension is the dual of the extension determined by the image of c under the canonical connecting homomorphism $\partial : \underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\underline{X}, A^\vee) \to \underline{\mathrm{Ext}}^1(\underline{X}, A^\vee[n]) = \underline{\mathrm{Ext}}^1(\underline{X}/n\underline{X}, A^\vee[n])$ induced by applying $R\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\underline{X}, -)$ to $0 \to A^\vee[n] \to A^\vee \to A^\vee \to 0$.

The construction of the Cartier dual $\mathcal{Q}^\vee$ (see [Del74, 10.2.11]) can be viewed as the following statement:

Proposition 2.25. *With the notation and conventions introduced in Remark 2.10, the Cartier dual $\mathcal{Q}^\vee$ is isomorphic to the 1-motive represented by $(\tau^{\leq 1} R\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\mathcal{Q}, \mathbb{G}_m))\{1\}$, where $\tau^{\leq 1}$ denotes the canonical truncation and where $\{-\}$ denotes the shifting of complexes.*

Proof. There is an exact sequence

$$0 \longrightarrow T \longrightarrow \mathcal{Q} \longrightarrow \mathcal{Q}^\circ \longrightarrow 0,$$

where $\mathcal{Q}^\circ := [\underline{Y} \to A]$. Applying $R\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(-, \mathbb{G}_m)$, there is a long exact sequence

$$\begin{aligned} 0 \longrightarrow R^0\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\mathcal{Q}^\circ, \mathbb{G}_m) \longrightarrow R^0\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\mathcal{Q}, \mathbb{G}_m) \longrightarrow \underline{X} \xrightarrow{\delta} R^1\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\mathcal{Q}^\circ, \mathbb{G}_m) \longrightarrow \\ R^1\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\mathcal{Q}, \mathbb{G}_m) \longrightarrow 0. \end{aligned}$$

The first term $R^0\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\mathcal{Q}^\circ, \mathbb{G}_m)$ is trivial by the second paragraph before Proposition 2.23; moreover, the fourth term $R^1\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\mathcal{Q}^\circ, \mathbb{G}_m) = \underline{\mathrm{Ext}}^1([\underline{Y} \xrightarrow{c^\vee} A], \mathbb{G}_m) \cong \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\vee}$ by Proposition 2.23. Moreover, $\delta = -\iota^\vee$ since δ is constructed by pushing out.

There is a distinguished triangle

$$R\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\mathcal{Q}^\circ, \mathbb{G}_m) \longrightarrow R\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\mathcal{Q}, \mathbb{G}_m) \longrightarrow R\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(T, \mathbb{G}_m) \xrightarrow[+1]{\delta};$$

this triangle shifts to a distinguished triangle

$$R\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(T, \mathbb{G}_m)\{-1\} \xrightarrow{-\delta\{-1\}} R\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\mathcal{Q}^\circ, \mathbb{G}_m) \longrightarrow R\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\mathcal{Q}, \mathbb{G}_m) \xrightarrow{+1}.$$

From Lemma 2.26, since $R^1\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(T, \mathbb{G}_m) = \underline{\mathrm{Ext}}^1(T, \mathbb{G}_m)$ is trivial, there is a distinguished triangle

$$\tau^{\leq 1}(R\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(T, \mathbb{G}_m)) \xrightarrow{-\delta} (\tau^{\leq 1} R\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\mathcal{Q}^\circ, \mathbb{G}_m))\{1\} \longrightarrow (\tau^{\leq 1} R\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\mathcal{Q}, \mathbb{G}_m))\{1\} \xrightarrow{+1}.$$

Since $\tau^{\leq 1} R\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(T, \mathbb{G}_m) \cong \underline{X}$ and $(\tau^{\leq 1} R\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\mathcal{Q}^\circ, \mathbb{G}_m))\{1\} \cong \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\vee}$, $(\tau^{\leq 1} R\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\mathcal{Q}, \mathbb{G}_m))\{1\} \cong [\underline{X} \xrightarrow{-\delta} \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\vee}]$, which is concentrated in degrees -1 and 0. □

Lemma 2.26. *Let $f : A^\bullet \to B^\bullet$ be a morphism between complexes of fppf sheaves of commutative groups over S. Assume that $A^i = B^i = 0$ for any $i < 0$, and assume that $H^2(A^\bullet) = 0$. Let $\mathcal{C}_f$ be the mapping cone of f. Then $\tau^{\leq 1}\mathcal{C}_f$ is quasi-isomorphic to the mapping cone of $\tau^{\leq 1} f : \tau^{\leq 1} A^\bullet \to \tau^{\leq 1} B^\bullet$.*

Proof. Write $A^\bullet = [0 \to A^0 \to A^1 \to A^2 \to \cdots]$ and $B^\bullet = [0 \to B^0 \to B^1 \to B^2 \to \cdots]$. Let $K^1 := \mathrm{Im}(d_A^1 : A^1 \to A^2)$ and $R^1 := \mathrm{Im}(d_B^1 : B^1 \to B^2)$. By assumption, $K^1 = \ker(d_A^2 : A^2 \to A^3)$. Then the mapping cone $\mathcal{C}_f$ of f can be written as $(\mathcal{C}_f^i, d_C^i)$, where $\mathcal{C}_f^i = A^{i+1} \oplus B^i$ and $d_C^i = (-d_A^{i+1}, f^{i+1} + d_B^i)$; the first four terms can be written as $[0 \to A^0 \to A^1 \oplus B^0 \to A^2 \oplus B^1 \to A^3 \oplus B^2 \to \cdots]$, where A^0 is concentrated in degree -1.

Then $\tau^{\leq 1}\mathcal{C}_f = [0 \to A^0 \to A^1 \oplus B^0 \to A^2 \oplus B^1 \to \mathrm{Im}(d_C^1 : \mathcal{C}_f^1 \to \mathcal{C}_f^2) \to 0]$. On the other hand, the mapping cone of $[0 \to A^0 \to A^1 \to K^1 \to 0] \to [0 \to B^0 \to B^1 \to R^1 \to 0]$ is $\mathcal{C}_{\tau^{\leq 1}f} := [0 \to A^0 \to A^1 \oplus B^0 \to K^1 \oplus B^1 \to 0 \oplus R^1 \to 0]$. There is an obvious morphism $\omega : \mathcal{C}_{\tau^{\leq 1}f} \to \tau^{\leq 1}\mathcal{C}_f$ induced by inclusions $K^1 \to A^2$ and $R^1 \to \mathrm{Im}(d_C^1 : \mathcal{C}_f^1 \to \mathcal{C}_f^2)$. We can check that ω is a quasi-isomorphism: We need to check the isomorphism of H^1. If $d_C^1(a_2, b_1) = 0$ for some $a_2 \in A^2$ and $b_1 \in B^1$, then $d_A^2(a_2) = 0$, so $a_2 \in K^1$ by assumption. Since the image of d_C^0 factors through $K^1 \oplus B^1$, we deduce that $H^1(\mathcal{C}_{\tau^{\leq 1}f}) = H^1(\tau^{\leq 1}\mathcal{C}_f)$; for the same reason, we can also see that $H^0(\mathcal{C}_{\tau^{\leq 1}f}) = H^0(\tau^{\leq 1}\mathcal{C}_f)$. □

Finally, the duality of n-torsion subgroups of 1-motives can also be described as follows:

Proposition 2.27. $\mathcal{Q}^\vee[n] \cong \underline{\mathrm{Hom}}_{1-mot}(\mathcal{Q}[n], \mathbb{G}_m)$.

Proof. We have the following two diagrams:

(2.12)
$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
\mathcal{Q}^\vee\{-1\} & \xrightarrow{n} & \mathcal{Q}^\vee\{-1\} & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{C}_n(\mathcal{Q}^\vee) & \xrightarrow{+1} & \\
\| & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\
\mathcal{Q}^\vee\{-1\} & \longrightarrow & R\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\mathcal{Q}, \mathbb{G}_m) & \xrightarrow[+1]{} & \mathcal{Y} & \xrightarrow{+1} & \\
 & & \downarrow & & & & \\
 & & \tau^{>1}R\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\mathcal{Q}, \mathbb{G}_m) & & & & \\
 & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle +1} & & & &
\end{array},$$

and

(2.13)
$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
\mathcal{Q}^\vee\{-1\} & \longrightarrow & R\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\mathcal{Q}, \mathbb{G}_m) & \longrightarrow & \tau^{>1}R\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\mathcal{Q}, \mathbb{G}_m) & \xrightarrow{+1} & \\
\| & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle n} & & \downarrow & & \\
\mathcal{Q}^\vee\{-1\} & \longrightarrow & R\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\mathcal{Q}, \mathbb{G}_m) & \xrightarrow[+1]{} & \mathcal{Y} & \xrightarrow{+1} & \\
 & & \downarrow & & & & \\
 & & \widetilde{\mathcal{C}}_n & & & & \\
 & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle +1} & & & &
\end{array}.$$

From the Octahedral Axiom (TR4; see [Sta24, Def. 0145]), we find that the two dashed triangles are distinguished. Then $\mathcal{Q}^\vee[n] \cong H^0(\mathcal{C}_n(\mathcal{Q}^\vee)) \cong H^0(\mathcal{Y}) \cong H^0(\widetilde{\mathcal{C}}_n)$. On the other hand, by [Ray94, Prop. 2.3.1], $\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}_{1-mot}(\mathcal{Q}[n], \mathbb{G}_m) \cong R^0\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\mathcal{Q}[n], \mathbb{G}_m)$, and $R^0\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\mathcal{Q}[n], \mathbb{G}_m) \cong H^0(R\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\mathcal{C}_n(\mathcal{Q}), \mathbb{G}_m)) \cong H^0(Cone(R\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\mathcal{Q}, \mathbb{G}_m) \xrightarrow{n} R\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\mathcal{Q}, \mathbb{G}_m))) \cong H^0(\widetilde{\mathcal{C}}_n)$. So we have the desired result. □

2.3. **Theory of degeneration.** We review the notions of degenerating families, degeneration data, and their level structures. Along the way, we will explain that the definitions of level structures associated with the degeneration data in [Lan13, Sec. 6.2.3] and in [MP19, Sec. 2.2] are equivalent

(see Proposition 2.39). The aim of §2.3.1-§2.3.4 is to provide a very brief summary; see [FC90] and [Lan13] for all the details that we omit.

2.3.1. Let R be a Noetherian normal domain that is complete with respect to a radical ideal $I \subset R$. Let $K := \operatorname{Frac} R$ be the fraction field. Denote $R_i := R/I^{i+1}$, $\mathcal{W} := \operatorname{Spec} R$, $\mathcal{W}_i := \operatorname{Spec} R_i$ and $\eta := \operatorname{Spec} K$. Denote $\mathcal{W}_{\mathrm{for}} := \operatorname{Spf}(R, I)$.

Definition 2.28 ([Lan13, Def. 4.4.2]). *Define the category $\mathbf{DEG}_{\mathrm{pol}}(R, I)$ as follows:*

1. *An object of $\mathbf{DEG}_{\mathrm{pol}}(R, I)$ is a pair $(\mathcal{G}, \lambda)$ of a semi-abelian scheme $\mathcal{G}$ over $\mathcal{W}$ with a homomorphism $\lambda : \mathcal{G} \to \mathcal{G}^\vee$.*
2. *The generic fiber $\mathcal{G}_\eta$ is an abelian scheme, and $\lambda_\eta : \mathcal{G}_\eta \to \mathcal{G}_\eta^\vee$ is a polarization of the abelian scheme $\mathcal{G}_\eta$. The pullback $\mathcal{G}_0 := \mathcal{G} \times_{\mathcal{W}} \mathcal{W}_0$ is an extension of an abelian scheme A_0 by an isotrivial torus T_0 over $\mathcal{W}_0$.*
3. *A morphism $f : (\mathcal{G}_1, \lambda_1) \to (\mathcal{G}_2, \lambda_2)$ in $\mathbf{DEG}_{\mathrm{pol}}(R, I)$ is a homomorphism f from $\mathcal{G}_1$ to $\mathcal{G}_2$ respecting the given polarizations over η, i.e., $f_\eta^\vee \circ \lambda_{2,\eta} \circ f_\eta = \lambda_{1,\eta}$.*

Let $(V_{\mathbb{Z}}, \psi_{\mathbb{Z}})$ be as in §2.1. Let S be a normal locally Noetherian scheme, and let U be a dense open subscheme of S.

Definition 2.29 ([Lan13, Def. 5.3.2.1]). *Define the groupoid $\mathbf{DEG}_{(V_{\mathbb{Z}},\psi_{\mathbb{Z}}),K^{\ddagger,\square}}(S, U)$ of **degenerating families of type** $\mathbf{M}^{\mathrm{iso}}_{(V_{\mathbb{Z}},\psi_{\mathbb{Z}}),K^{\ddagger,\square}}$ as follows:*

1. *An object in $\mathbf{DEG}_{(V_{\mathbb{Z}},\psi_{\mathbb{Z}}),K^{\ddagger,\square}}(S, U)$ is a tuple $(\mathcal{G}, \lambda, [\varepsilon^{\ddagger}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}]_{K^{\ddagger,\square}})$, where $\mathcal{G}$ is a semi-abelian scheme over S and $\lambda : \mathcal{G} \to \mathcal{G}^\vee$ is a homomorphism. The pullback $(\mathcal{G}_U, \lambda_U)$ is a principally polarized abelian scheme over U such that $[\varepsilon^{\ddagger}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}]_{K^{\ddagger,\square}}$ is an integral level structure for $(\mathcal{G}_U, \lambda_U)$ of the moduli problem $\mathbf{M}^{\mathrm{iso}}_{(V_{\mathbb{Z}},\psi_{\mathbb{Z}}),K^{\ddagger,\square}}$. That is, the pullback $(\mathcal{G}_U, \lambda_U, [\varepsilon^{\ddagger}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}]_{K^{\ddagger,\square}})$ is an object in $\mathbf{M}^{\mathrm{iso}}_{(V_{\mathbb{Z}},\psi_{\mathbb{Z}}),K^{\ddagger,\square}}(U)$.*
2. *Two tuples $(\mathcal{G}, \lambda, [\varepsilon^{\ddagger}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}]_{K^{\ddagger,\square}})$ and $(\mathcal{G}', \lambda', [\varepsilon^{\ddagger,\prime}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}]_{K^{\ddagger,\square}})$ are equivalent if and only if $(\mathcal{G}_U, \lambda_U, [\varepsilon^{\ddagger}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}]_{K^{\ddagger,\square}}) \cong (\mathcal{G}'_U, \lambda'_U, [\varepsilon^{\ddagger,\prime}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}]_{K^{\ddagger,\square}})$ in $\mathbf{M}^{\mathrm{iso}}_{(V_{\mathbb{Z}},\psi_{\mathbb{Z}}),K^{\ddagger,\square}}(U)$.*

2.3.2.

Definition 2.30 ([Lan13, p.212]). *Let $\mathcal{Q}$ be a 1-motive. Define $\boldsymbol{\lambda} := (\phi, \lambda_A)$ to be a pair consisting of an injective homomorphism $\phi : \underline{Y} \to \underline{X}$ with finite cokernel, and a polarization $\lambda_A : A \to A^\vee$ of $A = \mathcal{Q}^{ab}$, such that $\lambda_A \circ c^\vee = c \circ \phi$. With conventions introduced in Definition 2.16 and the paragraph below it, we say that some trivialization τ of biextension $(c^\vee \times c)^* \mathcal{P}_A^{\otimes -1}$ is symmetric (with respect to $\boldsymbol{\lambda}$) if, for any étale S-scheme S' and any $y, y' \in \underline{Y}(S')$, we have $\varphi(y, y') = \varphi(y', y)$, where $\varphi := (\mathrm{Id} \times \phi)^* \tau$.*

Lemma 2.31. *Let $\tau = \tau_{\mathcal{Q}}$ be the trivialization of $\mathcal{P}_A^{\otimes -1}$ canonically constructed from $\iota_{\mathcal{Q}}$. Let $\boldsymbol{\lambda}$ be a polarization of $\mathcal{Q}$. Then τ is symmetric with respect to $(\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{et}, \boldsymbol{\lambda}^{ab})$.*

Proof. This follows from Definition 2.16 and the last statement of Lemma 2.21. □

Definition 2.32 ([Lan13, Def. 4.4.6]). *Define the category $\mathbf{DD}_{\mathrm{pol}}(R, I)$ of degeneration data over (R, I) (without level structures) as follows:*

1. *An object in $\mathbf{DD}_{\mathrm{pol}}(R, I)$ is a polarized 1-motive $(\mathcal{Q}_\eta, \boldsymbol{\lambda}_\eta)$ over η. Moreover, we denote $?^\sharp_\eta := ?^\sharp_{\mathcal{Q}_\eta}$ for $? = \underline{Y}, \underline{X}, \mathcal{G}^\natural, T, A, c, \iota, \tau$ and for $\sharp = \emptyset, \vee$. Then $\underline{X}_\eta$ (resp. $\underline{Y}_\eta$) extends to an étale locally finite free $\mathbb{Z}$-module $\underline{X}$ (resp. $\underline{Y}$) over $\mathcal{W}$; $\mathcal{G}^\natural_\eta$ (resp. $G^{\natural,\vee}_\eta$) extends to a semi-abelian scheme $\mathcal{G}^\natural$ (resp. $G^{\natural,\vee}$) over $\mathcal{W}$, which is an extension of abelian scheme A (resp. $A^\vee$) extending A_η (resp. $A^\vee_\eta$) by a torus T (resp. $T^\vee$) extending T_η (resp. $T^\vee_\eta$); c_η (resp. $c^\vee_\eta$) extends to a homomorphism c (resp. $c^\vee$). Consequently, $\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{et}_\eta = \phi_\eta$ and $\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{ab}_\eta = \lambda_{A,\eta}$ canonically extend to homomorphisms $\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{et} = \phi : \underline{Y} \to \underline{X}$ and $\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{ab} = \lambda_A : A \to A^\vee$.*

(2) *The trivialization τ_η satisfies the* ***positivity conditions****, i.e., after replacing $\mathcal{W}$ with an étale cover of $\mathcal{W}$ such that $\underline{Y}$ splits, for any $y \in \underline{Y}$, $\tau_\eta(y, \phi(y))$ extends to a section of $(\mathrm{Id} \times \phi)^*(c^\vee \times c)^* \mathcal{P}_A^{\otimes -1}$ over $\mathcal{W}$, and this section factors through I if y is nonzero. Moreover, τ_η is* necessarily *symmetric with respect to $(\phi_\eta, \lambda_{A,\eta})$ (see Lemma 2.31).*

(3) *A morphism $f : (\mathcal{Q}_{\eta,1}, \boldsymbol{\lambda}_{\eta,1}) \to (\mathcal{Q}_{\eta,2}, \boldsymbol{\lambda}_{\eta,2})$ in $\mathbf{DD}_{\mathrm{pol}}(R, I)$ is a homomorphism $f : \mathcal{Q}_{\eta,1} \to \mathcal{Q}_{\eta,2}$ respecting the given polarizations, i.e., $f^\vee \circ \boldsymbol{\lambda}_{\eta,2} \circ f = \boldsymbol{\lambda}_{\eta,1}$.*

Construction 2.33 ([FC90, Ch. II] and [Lan13, Sec. 4.1-4.3])**.** Let us recall the construction of the functor $\mathbf{F}_{\mathrm{pol}}(R, I)$ that associates with any object $(\mathcal{G}, \lambda)$ in $\mathbf{DEG}_{\mathrm{pol}}(R, I)$ an object $(\mathcal{Q}_\eta, \boldsymbol{\lambda}_\eta)$ in $\mathbf{DD}_{\mathrm{pol}}(R, I)$:

(1) First, we can write $\mathcal{G}_0 := \mathcal{G}_{\mathcal{W}_0}$ as an extension of an abelian scheme A_0 by an isotrivial torus T_0 over $\mathcal{W}_0$: $1 \to T_0 \to \mathcal{G}_0 \to A_0 \to 1$. Then T_0 uniquely extends to a torus T_i over $\mathcal{W}_i$ and T_i induces an extension: $0 \to T_i \to \mathcal{G}_i \to A_i \to 0$, where $\mathcal{G}_i := \mathcal{G}_{\mathcal{W}_i}$ and A_i is an abelian scheme over $\mathcal{W}_i$. Then this induces an extension: $0 \to T_{\mathrm{for}} \to \mathcal{G}_{\mathrm{for}} \to A_{\mathrm{for}} \to 0$ over $\mathcal{W}_{\mathrm{for}}$. Since there is a cubical ample invertible sheaf over $\mathcal{G}$, the extension of $\mathcal{G}_{\mathrm{for}}$ over $\mathcal{W}_{\mathrm{for}}$ algebraizes uniquely to a so-called **Raynaud extension**: $0 \to T \xrightarrow{i} \mathcal{G}^\natural \xrightarrow{\pi} A \to 0$ over $\mathcal{W}$. Similarly, there is a canonical Raynaud extension for $\mathcal{G}^\vee$: $0 \to T^\vee \xrightarrow{i^\vee} \mathcal{G}^{\vee,\natural} \xrightarrow{\pi^\vee} A^\vee \to 0$. See [Lan13, Sec. 3.3.3 and 3.4.4]. Thus, λ canonically defines two morphisms $\phi^\vee : T \to T^\vee$ and $\lambda_A : A \to A^\vee$, where the former one determines a dual morphism $\phi : \underline{Y} \to \underline{X}$. Then it suffices to construct τ_η.

(2) Fix an auxiliary ample cubical invertible sheaf $\mathcal{L}$ over $\mathcal{G}$ which induces some polarization λ' (possibly different from λ). Then $\mathcal{L}$ induces an ample cubical invertible sheaf $\mathcal{L}_{\mathrm{for}}$ over the formal completion $\mathcal{G}_{\mathrm{for}}$ and algebraizes to an ample cubical invertible sheaf $\mathcal{L}^\natural$ over $\mathcal{G}^\natural$. Replacing $\mathcal{W}$ with a finite étale cover, we assume that T and $T^\vee$ split with character groups $\mathbf{X}^*(T) = X$ and $\mathbf{X}^*(T^\vee) = Y$. Then we can fix a cubical trivialization $\mathbf{tri} : i^*\mathcal{L}^\natural \cong \mathcal{O}_T$ and find an ample invertible sheaf $\mathcal{M}$ over A such that $\mathcal{L}^\natural \cong \pi^*\mathcal{M}$ under this trivialization; moreover, we can write $\pi_*\mathcal{L}^\natural$ as a direct sum $\pi_*\mathcal{L}^\natural \cong \bigoplus_{\chi \in X} \mathcal{M}_\chi$, where $\mathcal{M}_\chi := \mathcal{M} \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_A} \mathcal{O}_\chi$, and $\mathcal{O}_\chi$ is the invertible sheaf corresponding to the $\mathbb{G}_m$-torsor defined by the pushout of $\mathcal{G}^\natural$ along $-\chi$. By [Lan13, Prop. 3.1.5.1], we see that $\mathcal{O}_\chi \cong (\mathrm{Id}_A \times c(\chi))^* \mathcal{P}_A$. Denote by $p_\chi : \pi_*\mathcal{L}^\natural \to \mathcal{M}_\chi$ the projection to the direct factor $\mathcal{M}_\chi$ of $\pi_*\mathcal{L}^\natural$ canonically determined by the fixed trivialization $\mathbf{tri}$; this projection determines a morphism $\sigma_\chi : \Gamma(\mathcal{G}_\eta, \mathcal{L}_\eta) \hookrightarrow \Gamma(\mathcal{G}_{\mathrm{for},\eta}, \mathcal{L}_{\mathrm{for},\eta}) \cong \widehat{\bigoplus}_{\chi \in X} \Gamma(A_\eta, \mathcal{M}_{\chi,\eta}) \to \Gamma(A_\eta, \mathcal{M}_{\chi,\eta})$. We then need to show a technical fact that $\sigma_\chi \neq 0$ for all $\chi \in X$ using addition formulas for theta representations (see [Lan13, Sec. 4.3.3]).

(3) There is an isomorphism $T^*_{c^\vee(y)} \mathcal{M}_\chi \cong \mathcal{M}_{\chi+\phi(y)} \otimes \mathcal{M}_\chi(c^\vee(y))$. Let $K(\mathcal{M}_{\chi,\eta})$ be the kernel of $\lambda_{\mathcal{M}_{\chi,\eta}}$, the polarization determined by $\mathcal{M}_{\chi,\eta}$. Then there is a group $\mathcal{G}(\mathcal{M}_{\chi,\eta})$, which is an extension of $K(\mathcal{M}_{\chi,\eta})$ by $\mathbb{G}_{m,\eta}$, defined by the Weil pairing over $K(\mathcal{M}_{\chi,\eta}) \times K(\mathcal{M}_{\chi,\eta})$ (see [Lan13, Sec. 3.2.4]). For any $y \in Y$, there is a canonical isomorphism $\mathcal{G}(\mathcal{M}_{\chi,\eta}) \cong \mathcal{G}(\mathcal{M}_{\chi+\phi(y),\eta})$ depending only on the trivialization $\mathbf{tri}$ (see [Lan13, Lem. 4.3.2.4]). For any $\overline{\chi} \in X/\phi(Y)$, there is a weight-$\overline{\chi}$ space $\Gamma(\mathcal{G}_\eta, \mathcal{L}_\eta)_{\overline{\chi}}$, whose choice depends only on $\mathbf{tri}$, such that $\Gamma(\mathcal{G}_\eta, \mathcal{L}_\eta) \cong \bigoplus_{\overline{\chi} \in X/\phi(Y)} \Gamma(\mathcal{G}_\eta, \mathcal{L}_\eta)_{\overline{\chi}}$ and such that σ_χ factors as a sequence $\sigma_\chi : \Gamma(\mathcal{G}_\eta, \mathcal{L}_\eta) \to \Gamma(\mathcal{G}_\eta, \mathcal{L}_\eta)_{\overline{\chi}} \xrightarrow{\overline{\sigma}_\chi} \Gamma(A_\eta, \mathcal{M}_{\chi,\eta})$, where the first map is the natural projection and the second map $\overline{\sigma}_\chi$ is $\mathcal{G}(\mathcal{M}_{\chi,\eta})$-equivariant. See [Lan13, Lem. 4.3.2.3 and Lem. 4.3.2.5]. In fact, it can be shown that $\overline{\sigma}_\chi$ is an isomorphism of irreducible representations of $\mathcal{G}(\mathcal{M}_{\chi,\eta})$ (see [Lan13, Lem. 4.3.2.9]). Thus, by comparing $T^*_{c^\vee(y)} \circ \overline{\sigma}_\chi : \Gamma(\mathcal{G}_\eta, \mathcal{L}_\eta)_{\overline{\chi}} \to \Gamma(A_\eta, \mathcal{M}_{\chi+\phi(y),\eta}) \otimes \mathcal{M}_\chi(c^\vee(y))_\eta$ and $\overline{\sigma}_{\chi+\phi(y)} : \Gamma(\mathcal{G}_\eta, \mathcal{L}_\eta)_{\overline{\chi}} \to \Gamma(A_\eta, \mathcal{M}_{\chi+\phi(y),\eta})$ as isomorphisms of *nonzero* and *irreducible* representations of $\mathcal{G}(\mathcal{M}_{\chi,\eta})$, there is a well-defined function $\boldsymbol{\psi}(-,-) \in \mathcal{M}_\chi(c^\vee(y))^{\otimes -1}_\eta$ such that $\boldsymbol{\psi}(\chi, y)(T^*_{c^\vee(y)} \circ \overline{\sigma}_\chi) = \overline{\sigma}_{\chi+\phi(y)}$ (see [Lan13, Prop.

4.3.2.10]). Let $\boldsymbol{\psi}(y) := \boldsymbol{\psi}(0, y)$ and let $\tau_\eta(\chi, y) = \boldsymbol{\psi}(y)^{-1}\boldsymbol{\psi}(\chi, y)$. Then it can be shown that τ_η is symmetric with repsect to ϕ and satisfies the positivity conditions (see [Lan13, Prop. 4.3.1.9]).

(4) One can show that the definition of τ_η does not depend on auxiliary choices, that is, it does not depend on the choice of $\mathcal{L}$ and the trivialization **tri**. Eventually, it can be shown that τ_η does not depend on λ'. See [Lan13, Cor. 4.3.4.4 and Prop. 4.5.5.1].

Theorem 2.34 ([FC90, III. Cor. 7.2]; see also [Lan13, Thm. 4.4.16])**.** *The functor*

$$\mathbf{F}_{\mathrm{pol}}(R, I) : \mathbf{DEG}_{\mathrm{pol}}(R, I) \longrightarrow \mathbf{DD}_{\mathrm{pol}}(R, I)$$

sending $(\mathcal{G}, \lambda)$ *to the pair* $(\mathcal{Q}_\eta, \boldsymbol{\lambda}_\eta)$ *constructed as above is an equivalence of categories.*

Remark 2.35. *The quasi-inverse of the functor* $\mathbf{F}_{\mathrm{pol}}(R, I)$ *is the so-called "Mumford's construction"* $\mathbf{M}_{\mathrm{pol}}(R, I)$*. Note that the independence of* τ_η *on the choice of* λ *is actually proved after the construction of* $\mathbf{M}_{\mathrm{pol}}(R, I)$*; see* [Lan13, Sec. 4.5.5].

2.3.3. Fix a pair (R, I) as before. Let us briefly recall the construction of the quasi-inverse of the functor $\mathbf{F}_{\mathrm{pol}}(R, I)$, the so-called **Mumford's construction** $\mathbf{M}_{\mathrm{pol}}(R, I)$; see [Mum72], [FC90, Ch. III] and [Lan13, Sec. 4.5].

Let $\mathbf{DEG}(R, I)$ (resp. $\mathbf{DD}(R, I)$) be the category whose objects are $\mathcal{G}$ (resp. $\mathcal{Q}_\eta$) that can be extended to an object $(\mathcal{G}, \lambda) \in \mathrm{Ob}\,\mathbf{DEG}_{\mathrm{pol}}(R, I)$ (resp. $(\mathcal{Q}_\eta, \boldsymbol{\lambda}_\eta) \in \mathrm{Ob}\,\mathbf{DD}_{\mathrm{pol}}(R, I)$). The morphisms in $\mathbf{DEG}(R, I)$ (resp. $\mathbf{DD}(R, I)$) are the morphisms between semi-abelian schemes (resp. 1-motives) that can be extended to $\mathrm{Mor}(\mathbf{DEG}(R, I))$ (resp. $\mathrm{Mor}(\mathbf{DD}(R, I))$). If we forget polarizations, it turns out that there is also a functor $\mathbf{F}(R, I) : \mathbf{DEG}(R, I) \to \mathbf{DD}(R, I)$ that is compatible with $\mathbf{F}_{\mathrm{pol}}$, see below.

Construction 2.36 ([Mum72], [FC90, Ch. III] and [Lan13, Sec. 4.5])**.** Fix some $(\mathcal{Q}_\eta, \boldsymbol{\lambda}_\eta) \in \mathrm{Ob}\,\mathbf{DD}_{\mathrm{pol}}(R, I)$. The so-called "Mumford's construction" is established in the following steps:

(1) Suppose that we are given an ample invertible sheaf $\mathcal{M}$ over A. Let $\mathcal{L}^\natural := \pi^*\mathcal{M}$, the pullback of $\mathcal{M}$ via $\pi : \mathcal{G}^\natural \to A$. Suppose that there is a cubical trivialization $\boldsymbol{\psi} : \underline{Y} \to \mathcal{L}^{\natural,\otimes -1}$ and an injective $\phi : \underline{Y} \to \underline{X}$ with finite cokernel. Furthermore, we can assume that $\underline{Y} = Y$ and $\underline{X} = X$, i.e., $\underline{Y}$ and $\underline{X}$ split. The idea is to construct some "compactification" $(\mathscr{P}^\natural, \mathcal{L}^\natural)$.

(2) The first fact is that, *under some technical condition* on $(\mathcal{L}^\natural, \boldsymbol{\psi}, \phi)$ (see [FC90, Ch. III, p. 62], there is a *relatively complete model* $\mathscr{P}^\natural$. To be precise, $\mathscr{P}^\natural$ is an integral and locally of finite type scheme over A, which contains $\mathcal{G}^\natural$ as an open dense subscheme and satisfies the following properties (see [FC90, Ch. III, Def. 3.1]):
   (a) The invertible sheaf $\mathcal{L}^\natural$ extends to an invertible sheaf over $\mathscr{P}^\natural$, which we also denote by $\mathcal{L}^\natural$. Moreover, $\mathcal{L}^\natural|_V$ is ample over any quasi-compact open subscheme V of $\mathscr{P}^\natural$.
   (b) The translation action $T : \mathcal{G}^\natural \times \mathcal{G}^\natural \to \mathcal{G}^\natural$ extends to an action of $\mathcal{G}^\natural$ on $\mathscr{P}^\natural$, i.e., a $\mathcal{G}^\natural$-action $T : \mathcal{G}^\natural \times \mathscr{P}^\natural \to \mathscr{P}^\natural$. Denote by T_g the translation action of $g \in \mathcal{G}^\natural(S')$ for any S' over $\mathcal{W}$. Moreover, the translation action on $\mathcal{O}_{\mathcal{G}^\natural}$ extends to an action $T_g^*\mathcal{N} \to \mathcal{N}$ on $\mathcal{N} := \mathcal{L}^\natural \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_{\mathscr{P}^\natural}} \pi^*\mathcal{M}^{\otimes -1}$.
   (c) We assume that $\underline{Y} = Y$ splits. Recall that there is a Y-action $(\iota, \boldsymbol{\psi})$ on $(\mathcal{G}_\eta^\natural, \mathcal{L}_\eta^\natural)$. Then there is a Y-action on $(\mathscr{P}^\natural, \mathcal{L}^\natural)$ extending $(\iota, \boldsymbol{\psi})$; we denote by $(S, \widetilde{S})$ this extended action, and by $(S_y, \widetilde{S}_y)$ the evaluation of this action at any point $y \in Y$.
   (d) There is a $\mathcal{G}^\natural$-invariant open subscheme U of $\mathscr{P}^\natural$, such that $\mathscr{P}^\natural = \bigcup_{y \in Y} S_y(U)$.
   (e) $\mathscr{P}^\natural$ satisfies the *completeness condition* as in [FC90, Ch. III, 3, p.61].

   Note that not all $(\mathcal{L}^\natural, \boldsymbol{\psi}, \phi)$ satisfy the *technical condition* on [FC90, Ch. III, p. 62], but for any $\mathcal{Q}_\eta$, one can find some $(\mathcal{L}^\natural, \boldsymbol{\psi}, \phi)$ satisfying this condition.

(3) Denote $\mathscr{P}_i^\natural := \mathscr{P}^\natural \times_{\mathcal{W}} \mathcal{W}_i$. Every irreducible component of $\mathscr{P}_i^\natural$ is proper. Moreover, S_y acts on each $\mathscr{P}_i^\natural$, and the quotient fpqc sheaf $\mathscr{P}_i := \mathscr{P}_i^\natural/Y$ is representable by a projective scheme. The morphism $\mathscr{P}_i^\natural \to \mathscr{P}_i$ is étale and surjective. The invertible sheaf $\mathcal{L}_i^\natural := \mathcal{L}^\natural \otimes_R R_i$ descends to an ample sheaf $\mathcal{L}_i$. For different i, such pairs $(\mathscr{P}_i, \mathcal{L}_i)$ are compatible, and therefore there is a pair $(\mathscr{P}_{\mathrm{for}}, \mathcal{L}_{\mathrm{for}})$ consisting of the formal completion $\mathscr{P}_{\mathrm{for}}$ of $\{\mathscr{P}_i\}$ and an ample sheaf $\mathcal{L}_{\mathrm{for}}$ on it. This pair algebraizes to a pair $(\mathscr{P}, \mathcal{L})$ of projective scheme $\mathscr{P}$ with an ample invertible sheaf $\mathcal{L}$ on it.

(4) Let $\mathcal{G}^{\natural,*} := \bigcup_{y\in Y} S_y(\mathcal{G}^\natural) \subset \mathscr{P}^\natural$. Then $\mathcal{G}^{\natural,*}$ is an open subscheme of $\mathscr{P}^\natural$. Denote $\mathcal{G}_i := \mathcal{G}^{\natural,*} \times_{\mathcal{W}} \mathcal{W}_i$. Consider the complement $C^\natural := (\mathscr{P}^\natural - \mathcal{G}^{\natural,*})_{\mathrm{red}}$. Note that C_i, the quotient by Y of the pullback of $C^\natural$ to $\mathcal{W}_i$, are reduced closed subschemes of $\mathscr{P}_i$. We can form a C_{for} over $\mathcal{W}$ whose pullback to $\mathcal{W}_i$ is C_i, and this C_{for} algebraizes to a closed subscheme C of $\mathscr{P}$. Let $\mathcal{G} := \mathscr{P} - C$. Then it can be shown that $\mathcal{G}$ is a semi-abelian scheme, with $\mathcal{G}_\eta$ an abelian scheme, and with $\mathcal{L} := \mathcal{L}|_{\mathcal{G}}$ an ample invertible sheaf. See [Lan13, Cor. 4.5.3.9 and Cor. 4.5.3.13].

(5) It can be shown that $\mathcal{G}$ does not depend on the auxiliary choice of $(\mathcal{L}^\natural, \boldsymbol{\psi}, \phi)$ and $\mathscr{P}^\natural$. Thus, one can form a functor $\mathbf{M}(R,I) : \mathbf{DD}(R,I) \to \mathbf{DEG}(R,I)$, which is an equivalence of category. The quasi-inverse of it is denoted by $\mathbf{F}(R,I)$. Moreover, we have $\mathbf{M}(R,I)(\mathcal{Q}_\eta^\vee) = \mathcal{G}^\vee$. Thus, there is a $\lambda : \mathcal{G} \to \mathcal{G}^\vee \in \mathrm{Mor}(\mathbf{DEG}(R,I))$ that is defined by applying $\mathbf{M}(R,I)$ to $\boldsymbol{\lambda}_\eta$. In fact, it can be shown that λ is a polarization, so we can form the functor $\mathbf{M}_{\mathrm{pol}} : \mathbf{DD}_{\mathrm{pol}}(R,I) \to \mathbf{F}_{\mathrm{pol}}(R,I)$; $\mathbf{M}_{\mathrm{pol}}(R,I)$ is the quasi-inverse of $\mathbf{F}_{\mathrm{pol}}$.

Let us also recall the construction of relative complete models for the graph of a morphism $f : \mathcal{Q}_{\eta,1} \to \mathcal{Q}_{\eta,2}$ in $\mathbf{DD}(R,I)$. See [Mum72, Thm. 4.6], [FC90, Ch. III, Thm. 5.5] and [Lan13, Thm. 4.5.3.6].

Choose $(\mathcal{M}_i, \mathcal{L}_i^\natural, \boldsymbol{\psi}_i, \phi_i)$ satisfying the condition on [FC90, Ch. III, p.63] as in Construction 2.36 for $\mathcal{Q}_{\eta,1}$ and $\mathcal{Q}_{\eta,2}$, respectively. Then there are two relative complete models $\mathscr{P}_1^\natural$ and $\mathscr{P}_2^\natural$ for $\mathcal{Q}_{\eta,1}$ and $\mathcal{Q}_{\eta,2}$, respectively. f^{sab} extends to a morphism $f^{sab} : \mathcal{G}_1^\natural \to \mathcal{G}_2^\natural$ over $\mathcal{W}$. If we let $W_1^\natural$ be the schematic closure of the graph $H^\natural$ of f^{sab} in $\mathscr{P}_1^\natural \times_{\mathcal{W}} \mathscr{P}_2^\natural$. Then $W_{\mathrm{for}}^\natural := \bigcup_{(y_1,y_2)\in Y_1\times Y_2} S_{(y_1,y_2)} W_{1,\mathrm{for}}^\natural$ is a locally finite union. Then it can be shown that $W_{\mathrm{for}} := W_{\mathrm{for}}^\natural/Y_1 \times Y_2$ is a formal subscheme of $P_{1,\mathrm{for}} \times_{\mathcal{W}_{\mathrm{for}}} P_{2,\mathrm{for}}$; moreover, W_{for} algebraizes to a unique $W \subset P_1 \times_{\mathcal{W}} P_2$. Then it can be shown that $H = W \cap (\mathcal{G}_1 \times_{\mathcal{W}} \mathcal{G}_2)$ is the graph of a uniquely determined $g : G_1 \to G_2$, and we let $g = \mathbf{M}(f)$.

2.3.4. The n-torsion points of $\mathcal{G}_\eta$ and $\mathcal{Q}_\eta$ are isomorphic. More precisely, they are canonically isomorphic under $\mathbf{M}$.

Lemma 2.37. *Suppose that n is prime to p and that $\mathbf{M}(\mathcal{Q}_\eta) = \mathcal{G}$. Then there is a canonical isomorphism $\mathcal{Q}_\eta[n] \cong \mathcal{G}_\eta[n]$ induced by $\mathbf{M}$.*

Proof. We can see this in the proof of [Mum72, Thm. 4.10], [FC90, Thm. 5.9] and [Lan13, Thm. 4.5.3.10]. Let us repeat this for the convenience of the reader.

By étale descent, we assume that the locally constant group part of all 1-motives we are working on are constant, i.e., $\underline{X} = X$ and $\underline{Y} = Y$. Let $\mathscr{P}^\natural$ be a relative complete model for $\mathcal{Q}_\eta$. Let ${}^{(n)}Z_\eta^\natural$ be $Y \times_{\iota,\mathcal{G}_\eta^\natural,[n]} \mathcal{G}_\eta^\natural$. Let ${}^{(n)}Z_{y,\eta}^\natural$ be $y \times_{\iota,\mathcal{G}_\eta^\natural,[n]} \mathcal{G}_\eta^\natural$. We see that ${}^{(n)}Z_{y,\eta}^\natural \cong {}^{(n)}Z_{y+nz,\eta}^\natural$ for any $z \in Y$. Then, if we choose any set of representatives of Y/nY in Y, $\coprod_{y\in Y/nY} {}^{(n)}Z_{y,\eta}^\natural$ is isomorphic to $\mathcal{Q}_\eta[n]$. Let $\sigma_y : \mathcal{W} \to \mathcal{G}^{\natural,*}$ be the unique section that $\sigma_y(\eta) = \iota(y)$. Let ${}^{(n)}Z_y^\natural := \mathcal{W} \times_{\sigma_y,\mathcal{G}^{\natural,*},[n]} \mathcal{G}^{\natural,*}$. Since $\mathcal{G}_\eta^{\natural,*} = \bigcup_y \iota(y)(\mathcal{G}_\eta^\natural) = \mathcal{G}_\eta^\natural$, ${}^{(n)}Z_{y,\eta}^\natural$ is dense in ${}^{(n)}Z_y^\natural$.

Denote by ${}^{(n)}W_1^\natural$ the schematic closure of the graph of $[n]$ in $\mathscr{P}^\natural \times \mathscr{P}^\natural$. Recall that ι extends to an action S over $\mathscr{P}^\natural$. Denote $S_{(a,b)} := S_a \times S_b$. Denote ${}^{(n)}W^\natural := \underset{y\in Y}{\cup} S_{(0,y)}{}^{(n)}W_1^\natural$.

Then

$$\bigcup_{y\in Y}(\overline{{}^{(n)}Z_y^\natural})_{\mathrm{for}} = {}^{(n)}W_{\mathrm{for}}^\natural \cap (\mathscr{P}_{\mathrm{for}}^\natural \times_{\mathcal{W}_{\mathrm{for}}} \sigma_0\mathcal{W}_{\mathrm{for}}),$$

and both the left-hand side and the right-hand side are locally finite unions.

Let $(\overline{{}^{(n)}Z})_{\mathrm{for}} := \underset{y\in Y}{\cup}(\overline{{}^{(n)}Z_y^\natural})_{\mathrm{for}}/Y = {}^{(n)}W_{\mathrm{for}} \cap (\mathscr{P}_{\mathrm{for}} \times_{\mathcal{W}_{\mathrm{for}}} \sigma_0\mathcal{W}_{\mathrm{for}})$, where ${}^{(n)}W_{\mathrm{for}} := {}^{(n)}W_{\mathrm{for}}^\natural/Y \times Y$. Then $(\overline{{}^{(n)}Z})_{\mathrm{for}}$ algebraizes to a closed subscheme $\overline{{}^{(n)}Z}$ of P, and

$$\overline{{}^{(n)}Z} = {}^{(n)}W \cap (P \times \sigma_0\mathcal{W}).$$

On the other hand, for any finite subset $Y_0 \subset Y$, there is a morphism

$$\overline{q}_{\mathrm{for}} : \bigcup_{y\in Y_0}(\overline{{}^{(n)}Z_y^\natural})_{\mathrm{for}} \longrightarrow (\overline{{}^{(n)}Z})_{\mathrm{for}}.$$

Since $\overline{q}_{\mathrm{for}}$ is a morphism between formal completions of proper schemes over $\mathcal{W}$, $\overline{q}_{\mathrm{for}}$ algebraizes to a morphism $\overline{q}$. Since $\overline{q}_{\mathrm{for}}^{-1}(\overline{{}^{(n)}Z}_{\mathrm{for}} \cap \mathscr{P}_{\mathrm{for}} \times C_{\mathrm{for}}) \subset \mathscr{P}_{\mathrm{for}}^\natural \times C_{\mathrm{for}}^\natural$, $\overline{q}^{-1}(\overline{{}^{(n)}Z} \cap \mathscr{P} \times C) \subset \mathscr{P}^\natural \times C^\natural$. Then $\overline{q}$ restricts to

$$q : \bigcup_{y\in Y_0}({}^{(n)}Z_y^\natural) \longrightarrow ({}^{(n)}Z).$$

Choose Y_0 to be any set of representatives of Y/nY in Y. Then it turns out that q is étale, surjective and of degree one; see the proof of *loc. cit.* In particular, q is an isomorphism. Hence, q_η is the desired isomorphism induced by Mumford's construction. □

2.3.5. Next, we recall the definition of level structures of degeneration data, which can be used to describe the boundary mixed Shimura varieties of $\mathcal{S}_{K^\ddagger}$. Let $(V_\mathbb{Z}, \psi_\mathbb{Z})$ be a pair as in §2.1, where $V_\mathbb{Z}$ is a $\mathbb{Z}$-lattice and $\psi_\mathbb{Z} : V_\mathbb{Z} \times V_\mathbb{Z} \to \mathbb{Z}(1)$ is the restriction of ψ to $V_\mathbb{Z}$, which takes its values in $\mathbb{Z}(1)$. Moreover, we can and we will assume that $V_\mathbb{Z}$ is self-dual with respect to ψ. Set $\square = \emptyset$ or $\{p\}$.

Fix any cusp label representative $\Phi_0 = (Q, X_0^+, g_0)$ of (G_0, X_0). Let $g_0^\square \in G_0(\mathbb{A}_f^\square) \subset G^\ddagger(\mathbb{A}_f^\square)$ be the projection of g_0 to $\mathbb{A}_f^\square$-points of G_0. Suppose that Φ_0 maps to a cusp label representative $\Phi^\ddagger = (Q^\ddagger, X^{\ddagger,+}, g^\ddagger)$, where $Q^\ddagger$ is the unique minimal admissible $\mathbb{Q}$-parabolic of $G^\ddagger$ containing Q, $X^{\ddagger,+}$ is the unique connected component of $X^\ddagger$ containing X_0^+, and $g^\ddagger = g_0$. For any $K^\ddagger$ containing K, recall that $K_{\Phi^\ddagger} := P_{\Phi^\ddagger}(\mathbb{A}_f) \cap g^\ddagger K^\ddagger (g^\ddagger)^{-1}$. We assume $K^\ddagger$ is as in §2.1.

Recall some conventions in Appendix A. The parabolic subgroup $Q^\ddagger$ defines a filtration $W_\bullet^\ddagger = \{W_i^\ddagger\}_{i=-2}^0$ on $V_\mathbb{Q}$, and the filtration $W_\bullet^\ddagger$ determines an admissible and fully symplectic filtration $Z^{(g^\ddagger)} := V_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square} \cap g^{\ddagger,-1}(W_i^\ddagger) \otimes_\mathbb{Q} \mathbb{A}_f^\square$ on $V_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}$. Denote $V_\mathbb{Z}^{(g^\ddagger)} := g^\ddagger V_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}} \cap V_\mathbb{Z}$. Let $F_\bullet^{(g^\ddagger)} := V_\mathbb{Z}^{(g^\ddagger)} \cap W_\bullet^\ddagger$ be the filtration on $V_\mathbb{Z}^{(g^\ddagger)}$. Recall that ν is the similitude character for $G^\ddagger$. For any $g^\ddagger \in G^\ddagger(\mathbb{A}_f)$, there is a unique decomposition $\nu(g^\ddagger) = r(g^\ddagger) \cdot h(g^\ddagger)$, where $r(g^\ddagger) \in \mathbb{Q}_{>0}^\times$ and $h(g^\ddagger) \in \widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\times$.

Definition 2.38 (see [MP19, 2.2.3]). *Let S be a $\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}$-scheme. We fix a cusp label representative $\Phi^\ddagger$. Suppose that there is a polarized 1-motive $(\mathcal{Q}, \boldsymbol{\lambda})$ over S. A* ***level structure of type*** *$(V_\mathbb{Z}, \psi_\mathbb{Z}, \Phi^\ddagger, K^{\ddagger,\square})$ for $(\mathcal{Q}, \boldsymbol{\lambda})$ is a section $[u]_{(K_{\Phi^\ddagger}^\square)^{g^\ddagger}} \in \Gamma(S, \underline{\mathrm{Isom}}(V_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}, T^\square\mathcal{Q})/(K_{\Phi^\ddagger}^\square)^{g^\ddagger})$, which, over any geometric point $\overline{s} \in S$, is a $\pi_1(S, \overline{s})$-invariant $(K_{\Phi^\ddagger}^\square)^{g^\ddagger}$-orbit of an isomorphism of $\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square$-modules $u_{\overline{s}} : V_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square} \xrightarrow{\sim} T^\square\mathcal{Q}_{\overline{s}}$ with an isomorphism $v_{\overline{s}} : \widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square(1) \xrightarrow{\sim} T^\square\mathbb{G}_m$ such that the following conditions are satisfied:*

(1) $u_{\overline{s}}$ maps $v_{\overline{s}} \circ \psi_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}$ to $\mathrm{e}^{\boldsymbol{\lambda}_{\overline{s}}}$, the Weil pairing $\mathrm{e}^{\boldsymbol{\lambda}_{\overline{s}}}$ over $T^\square\mathcal{Q}_{\overline{s}} \times T^\square\mathcal{Q}_{\overline{s}}$ induced by $\boldsymbol{\lambda}_{\overline{s}}$.

(2) *$u_{\overline{s}}$ maps $Z^{(g^\ddagger)}$ to the weight filtration $W_{\mathcal{Q}}$ on $T^\square\mathcal{Q}_{\overline{s}}$.*

(3) *There are isomorphisms over $\mathbb{Z}$, $\alpha_{-2}^{(g^\ddagger)}:\mathrm{Gr}_{-2}^{F^{(g^\ddagger)}}\to\mathrm{Hom}(\underline{X},\mathbb{Z}(1))$ and $\alpha_0^{(g^\ddagger)}:\mathrm{Gr}_0^{F^{(g^\ddagger)}}\to\underline{Y}$, such that, $v_{\overline{s}}\circ(\alpha_{-2}^{(g^\ddagger)}\otimes 1)\circ h(g^\ddagger)^{-1}\circ\mathrm{Gr}(g^\ddagger)=\mathrm{Gr}_{-2}u_{\overline{s}}$ and $(\alpha_0^{(g^\ddagger)}\otimes 1)\circ\mathrm{Gr}(g^\ddagger)=\mathrm{Gr}_0 u_{\overline{s}}$; the isomorphisms $\alpha_{-2}^{(g^\ddagger)}\otimes 1$ and $\alpha_0^{(g^\ddagger)}\otimes 1$ are isomorphisms defined by tensoring $\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square$.*

We have the following statement relating Definition 2.38 with [Lan13, Ch. 5]:

Proposition 2.39 (cf. [Lan13, Ch. 5]). *Let $(\mathcal{Q},\boldsymbol{\lambda})$ be a polarized 1-motive over a $\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}$-scheme S. Fix a cusp label representative $\Phi^\ddagger$ as above. We denote $\mathcal{Q}=(\underline{Y},\mathcal{G}^\natural,T,A,\iota,c^\vee)$, denote $\mathcal{Q}^\vee=(\underline{X},\mathcal{G}^{\natural,\vee},T^\vee,A^\vee,\iota^\vee,c)$ and denote $\tau_{\mathcal{Q}}$ by τ, for simplicity. Then the following objects associated with $(\mathcal{Q},\boldsymbol{\lambda})$ are equivalent:*

(1) *We associate a level structure $[u]_{(K^\square_{\Phi^\ddagger})^{g^\ddagger}}$ of type $(V_{\mathbb{Z}},\psi_{\mathbb{Z}},\Phi^\ddagger,K^{\ddagger,\square})$.*

(2) *Under the map $\mathrm{CL}^\square$ defined as in Appendix A, $\Phi^\ddagger$ defines a PEL cusp label which admits a representative $(Z^{(g^\ddagger)}_{K^{\ddagger,\square}},\Phi^{(g^\ddagger)}_{K^{\ddagger,\square}},\delta^{(g^\ddagger)}_{K^{\ddagger,\square}})$. In particular, $g^\ddagger$ determines a $K^{\ddagger,\square}$-orbit of $(\varphi_{-2}^{(g^\ddagger)},\varphi_0^{(g^\ddagger)})$. We associate a tuple $(\alpha'_0,\alpha'_{-2},v_{K^{\ddagger,\square}},\beta^{(g^\ddagger)}_{-1,K^{\ddagger,\square}},\hat{\varsigma})$ defined as follows:*

- *$\alpha'_{-2}:\mathrm{Hom}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}(\underline{X}\otimes\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square,T^\square\mathbb{G}_m)\xrightarrow{\sim}\mathrm{Hom}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}(\underline{X}\otimes\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square,T^\square\mathbb{G}_m)$ is an automorphism of $\mathrm{Hom}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}(\underline{X}\otimes\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square,T^\square\mathbb{G}_m)$ that is induced by an automorphism of $\underline{X}$.*
- *$\alpha'_0:\mathrm{Gr}_0^{W_{T^\square\mathcal{Q}}}\xrightarrow{\sim}\mathrm{Gr}_0^{W_{T^\square\mathcal{Q}}}$ is an automorphism of $\mathrm{Gr}_0^{W_{T^\square\mathcal{Q}}}\cong\underline{Y}\otimes\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square$ that is a $\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^{\square,\times}$-multiple of a base change of an automorphism of $\underline{Y}$ to $\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square$.*
- *$v_{K^{\ddagger,\square}}$ is a $K^{\ddagger,\square}$-orbit of isomorphisms $v:\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square(1)\xrightarrow{\sim}T^\square\mathbb{G}_m$.*
- *Set $\beta_0^{(g^\ddagger)}:=\alpha'_0\circ\varphi_0^{(g^\ddagger)}$ and $\beta_{-2}^{(g^\ddagger)}:=\alpha'_{-2}\circ v\circ\varphi_{-2}^{(g^\ddagger)}$. Moreover, $\beta^{(g^\ddagger)}_{-1,K^{\ddagger,\square}}$ is a $K^{\ddagger,\square}$-orbit of $\beta_{-1}^{(g^\ddagger)}:\mathrm{Gr}_{-1}^{Z^{(g^\ddagger)}}\xrightarrow{\sim}A$.*
- *$\hat{\varsigma}:\bigoplus_{i=0}^{2}\mathrm{Gr}_{-i}^{W_{T^\square\mathcal{Q}}}\xrightarrow{\sim}T^\square\mathcal{Q}$ is a splitting of $W_{T^\square\mathcal{Q}}$, such that,*

(2.1) $(\bigoplus_{i=0}^{2}\beta_{-i}^{(g^\ddagger)})_*(\delta^{(g^\ddagger)})^*(v\circ\psi_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square})=\hat{\varsigma}^*(\mathrm{e}^{\boldsymbol{\lambda}})$.

(3) *Under the conventions of the second part, we associate a tuple $(\alpha'_0,\alpha'_{-2},\beta^{(g^\ddagger)}_{-1,K^{\ddagger,p}},c_{K^{\ddagger,\square}},c^\vee_{K^{\ddagger,\square}},\tau_{K^{\ddagger,\square}})$, where:*

(3.1) $\beta^{(g^\ddagger)}_{-1,K^{\ddagger,\square}}$ is defined as in the second part, such that, $\beta_{-1}^{(g^\ddagger)}$ maps ψ_{11}, the restriction of $\psi_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}$ to $\mathrm{Gr}_{-1}^{Z^{(g^\ddagger)}}$ is a $\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^{\square,\times}$-multiple of e^{λ_A}; that is, there is an isomorphism $v:\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square(1)\xrightarrow{\sim}T^\square\mathbb{G}_m$ such that $\beta_{-1}^{(g^\ddagger),*}(\mathrm{e}^{\lambda_A})=v\circ\psi_{11}$.

(3.2) α'_0 and α'_{-2} are defined exactly as in the second part, so $\beta_0^{(g^\ddagger)}$ and $\beta_{-2}^{(g^\ddagger)}$ are also defined as above.

(3.3) $c_{K^{\ddagger,\square}}$ (resp. $c^\vee_{K^{\ddagger,\square}}$) is a homomorphism $\widetilde{c}:\underline{X}\otimes\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}\to A^\vee$ (resp. $\widetilde{c}^\vee:\underline{Y}\otimes\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}\to A$) that lifts c (resp. $c^\vee$) and remains unchanged under the action of $K^{\ddagger,\square}$. Note that we can write $\underline{Y}\otimes\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}$ as $\varinjlim_{n,\square\nmid n}\frac{1}{n}\underline{Y}$; the same is true for $\underline{X}$. We can therefore write $\widetilde{c}$ (resp. $\widetilde{c}^\vee$) as an inverse limit of $c_n:\frac{1}{n}\underline{X}\to A^\vee$ (resp. $c_n^\vee:\frac{1}{n}\underline{Y}\to A$) over all n, $\square\nmid n$.

(3.4) $\tau_{K^{\ddagger,\square}}$ is a trivialization of biextensions $\widetilde{\tau}:\mathbf{1}_{(\underline{Y}\otimes\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)})\times\underline{X}}\to(\widetilde{c}^\vee\times c)^*\mathcal{P}_A^{\otimes-1}$ that lifts τ and remains unchanged under the action of $K^{\ddagger,\square}$. We can write $\widetilde{\tau}$ as an inverse limit of $\tau_n:\frac{1}{n}\underline{Y}\times\underline{X}\to(c_n^\vee\times c)^*\mathcal{P}_A^{\otimes-1}$ over all n, $\square\nmid n$.

(3.5) *Denote by* $\phi_n : \frac{1}{n}\underline{Y} \to \frac{1}{n}\underline{X}$ *the base change of* ϕ *to* $\frac{1}{n}\mathbb{Z}$, *and by* $\hat{\phi} : \mathrm{Gr}_0^{W_{T^\square \mathcal{Q}}} \to (\mathrm{Gr}_{-2}^{W_{T^\square \mathcal{Q}}})^\vee = \underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\mathrm{Gr}_{-2}^{W_{T^\square \mathcal{Q}}}, \mathbb{G}_m)$ *the base change of* ϕ *to* $\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square$. *Moreover,* $\hat{\phi}$ *naturally induces a pairing* $\hat{\phi}^* : \mathrm{Gr}_{-2}^{W_{T^\square \mathcal{Q}}} \times \mathrm{Gr}_0^{W_{T^\square \mathcal{Q}}} \to \mathbb{G}_m$.

Denote by $\hat{\mathbf{d}}_{10} : \mathrm{Gr}_{-1}^{W_{T^\square \mathcal{Q}}} \times \mathrm{Gr}_0^{W_{T^\square \mathcal{Q}}} \to T^\square \mathbb{G}_m$ *the pairing defined as follows: For any* $a = (a_n) \in \mathrm{Gr}_{-1}^{W_{T^\square \mathcal{Q}}} = T^\square A$ *and any* $\hat{y} = (y_n) \in \mathrm{Gr}_0^{W_{T^\square \mathcal{Q}}} = \varprojlim \underline{Y}/n\underline{Y}$, *define* $\hat{\mathbf{d}}_{10} : (a, \hat{y}) \mapsto \varprojlim_{n, \square \nmid n} \mathbf{d}_{10,n}(a_n, y_n)$, *where* $\mathbf{d}_{10,n}(a_n, y_n) := \mathrm{e}_{A[n]}(a_n, (\lambda_A \circ c_n^\vee - c_n \circ \phi_n)(\frac{1}{n}\widetilde{y}_n))$, *which is independent of the choice of* $\widetilde{y}_n \in \underline{Y}$ *lifting* y_n.

Denote by $\hat{\mathbf{d}}_{00} : \mathrm{Gr}_0^{W_{T^\square \mathcal{Q}}} \times \mathrm{Gr}_0^{W_{T^\square \mathcal{Q}}} \to T^\square \mathbb{G}_m$ *the pairing defined as follows: for any* $\hat{y}_1 = (y_{1,n})_n, \hat{y}_2 = (y_{2,n})_n \in \mathrm{Gr}_0^{W_{T^\square \mathcal{Q}}} = \varprojlim \underline{Y}/n\underline{Y}$, *define* $\hat{\mathbf{d}}_{00} : (\hat{y}_1, \hat{y}_2) \mapsto \varprojlim_{n, \square \nmid n} \mathbf{d}_{00,n}(y_{1,n}, y_{2,n})$, *where* $\mathbf{d}_{00,n}(y_{1,n}, y_{2,n}) := \tau_n(\frac{1}{n}\widetilde{y}_{1,n}, \phi(\widetilde{y}_{2,n}))\tau_n(\frac{1}{n}\widetilde{y}_{2,n}, \phi(\widetilde{y}_{1,n}))^{-1}$, *which is independent of liftings* $\widetilde{y}_{1,n}$ *and* $\widetilde{y}_{2,n}$ *chosen in* $\underline{Y}$.

Let $\hat{\mathbf{d}}_{22} : \mathrm{Gr}_{-2}^{W_{T^\square \mathcal{Q}}} \times \mathrm{Gr}_{-2}^{W_{T^\square \mathcal{Q}}} \to T^\square \mathbb{G}_m$ *and* $\hat{\mathbf{d}}_{21} : \mathrm{Gr}_{-2}^{W_{T^\square \mathcal{Q}}} \times \mathrm{Gr}_{-1}^{W_{T^\square \mathcal{Q}}} \to T^\square \mathbb{G}_m$ *be trivial pairings. Let* $\hat{\mathbf{d}}_{20} = \hat{\phi}^*$, *the pairing of* $\mathrm{Gr}_0^{W_{T^\square \mathcal{Q}}} \times \mathrm{Gr}_{-2}^{W_{T^\square \mathcal{Q}}}$ *induced by* $\hat{\phi}$. *Let* $\hat{\mathbf{d}}_{11} = \mathrm{e}^{\lambda_A}$. *Let* $\hat{\mathbf{d}}_{ij} = -\hat{\mathbf{d}}_{ji}^T$, *the negative of the transpose of* $\hat{\mathbf{d}}_{ji}$, *for* $i, j = 0, 1, 2$.

Denote by ψ_{ij} *the pullback of* $\psi_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}$ *under* $(\delta_{-i}^{(g^\ddagger)} \times \delta_{-j}^{(g^\ddagger)})$. *Then* $\beta^{(g^\ddagger),*}(\hat{\mathbf{d}}_{ij}) = v \circ \psi_{ij}$, *for* $i, j = 0, 1, 2$.

Remark 2.40. *Before presenting the proof, we make the following remarks:*

1. *One might not deduce this equivalence* verbatim *from the proof of* [Lan13, Thm. 5.2.3.14 and Cor. 5.2.3.15] *since the pair* $(\mathcal{Q}, \boldsymbol{\lambda})$ *might not come from* $\mathbf{F}_{\mathrm{pol}}(R, I)$, *in particular, we are not assuming positive conditions for* τ *imposed in* $\mathbf{DD}_{\mathrm{pol}}(R, I)$. *Nevertheless, we will closely follow the idea and the arguments of* loc. cit. *in the proof below.*
2. *Note that Part 3 is helpful in the construction and the* detailed *description of boundary charts (see* [Lan13, Ch. 6]*). For our purpose, it is more convenient for us to directly use Part 1 in order to study the twisting action on the family of* 1*-motives with additional structures in the next section.*
3. *One can change the sign conventions in the definition of Weil pairings (see Definition 2.20) to get a possibly different sign in the pairings of the proposition above. We choose a convention that makes our results compatible with* [Lan13].

We explain the proof of Proposition 2.39 in steps.

Proof of Proposition 2.39, part 1⟺part 2.

Part 1 $\Longrightarrow$ part 2 can be directly deduced from [Lan13, Lem. 5.2.2.14]. Since $G^\ddagger(\mathbb{A}_f)$ has a *right* action on $(Z^{(g^\ddagger)}, \Phi^{(g^\ddagger)})$ whose stabilizer is $g^{\ddagger,-1}P_{\Phi^\ddagger}(\mathbb{A}_f)g^\ddagger$, part 2 $\Longrightarrow$ part 1 also follows from *loc. cit.*; while applying *loc. cit.*, one can replace $\overline{\eta}$ there with a general base S and replace (G, λ) there with $(\mathcal{Q}, \boldsymbol{\lambda})$. □

Next, we show part 2⟺part 3.

Proof of Proposition 2.39, except that (2.1)⟺(3.5).

First, a splitting $\varsigma_{12} : \mathrm{Gr}_{-1}^{W_{T^\square \mathcal{Q}}} \oplus \mathrm{Gr}_{-2}^{W_{T^\square \mathcal{Q}}} \xrightarrow{\sim} T^\square \mathcal{G}^\natural$ determines and is determined by an inverse system of splittings $\varsigma_{12,n} : \mathrm{Gr}_{-1}^{W_{T^\square \mathcal{Q}}}[n] \oplus \mathrm{Gr}_{-2}^{W_{T^\square \mathcal{Q}}}[n] \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathcal{G}^\natural[n]$, for $p \nmid n$ if $\square = \{p\}$.

Write $\mathcal{G}^\natural$ as the extension $1 \to T \xrightarrow{i} \mathcal{G}^\natural \xrightarrow{\pi} A \to 1$. For any positive integer n, the splitting $\varsigma_{12,n} : \mathrm{Gr}_{-1}^{W_{T^\square \mathcal{Q}}}[n] \oplus \mathrm{Gr}_{-2}^{W_{T^\square \mathcal{Q}}}[n] \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathcal{G}^\natural[n]$ determines and is determined by a projection $p_T : \mathcal{G}^\natural[n] \to T[n]$ such that $p_T \circ i = \mathrm{Id}$; this is equivalent to an embedding $\overline{c}_n : \underline{X}/n\underline{X} \to \underline{\mathrm{Hom}}_{S-gp}(\mathcal{G}^\natural[n], \mathbb{G}_m) \cong$

$\mathcal{Q}^{\vee,\circ}[n]$ such that $\overline{p}_X \circ \overline{c}_n = \mathrm{Id}$, after taking $\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}_{S-gp}(-, \mathbb{G}_m)$. In the last sentence, $\mathcal{Q}^{\vee,\circ} := \mathcal{Q}^\vee / T^\vee = [\underline{X} \xrightarrow{c} A^\vee]$, and $\overline{p}_X$ is a quotient of the natural projection to the first factor $\mathcal{Q}^{\vee,\circ}[n] \xrightarrow{p_1} \underline{X} \to \underline{X}/n\underline{X}$.

Then we can see that such a splitting $\overline{c}_n$ determines and is determined by a lifting $c_n : \frac{1}{n}\underline{X} \to A^\vee$ of c such that the following diagram commutes:

(2.14)
$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & c & & \\ & \overset{\frown}{\nearrow} & & \overset{\frown}{\searrow} & \\ \underline{X} & \xrightarrow{\sim} & \frac{1}{n}\underline{X} & & A^\vee \\ {\scriptstyle [n]}\uparrow & \nearrow & & \searrow^{c_n} & \uparrow{\scriptstyle [n]} \\ \underline{X} & & \xrightarrow{\quad c \quad} & & A^\vee, \end{array}$$

where the natural isomorphism $\underline{X} \cong \frac{1}{n}\underline{X}$ is induced by "dividing by n" of coefficients $\mathbb{Z} \cong \mathbb{Z} \cdot \frac{1}{n}$.

In fact, this follows from the definition of n-torsion subgroup of 1-motives. We can assume that $\underline{X} = X$. Fix any S-scheme S'. If there is a splitting $\overline{c}_n : X/nX \to \mathcal{Q}^{\vee,\circ}[n]$, for any $\overline{\chi} \in X/nX(S')$, we can therefore find a pair $(\chi, a^\vee)$, lifting $\overline{c}_n(\overline{\chi})$, such that $\chi \in X(S')$ lifting $\overline{\chi}$, $a^\vee \in A^\vee(S')$, and $na^\vee = c(\chi)$. Define $c_n(\frac{1}{n}\chi) = a^\vee$. For any other choice of the pair $(\chi', a^{\vee,\prime})$ lifting $\overline{c}_n(\overline{\chi})$, $c(\frac{1}{n}(\chi' - \chi)) = a^{\vee,\prime} - a^\vee$. Then there is a well-defined homomorphism $c_n : \frac{1}{n}X \to A^\vee$ lifting c. Conversely, assume that there is a lifting $c_n : \frac{1}{n}X \to A^\vee$. Choose any set of representatives $\{\frac{1}{n}\chi\}$ of $\frac{1}{n}X/X$ in $\frac{1}{n}X$. Then define $\overline{c}_n : X/nX \to \mathcal{Q}^{\vee,\circ}[n]$, by $\overline{\chi} \mapsto [(\chi, c_n(\frac{1}{n}\chi))]$, which maps any $\overline{\chi} \in X/nX$ represented by χ to the class represented by $(\chi, c_n(\frac{1}{n}\chi))$ in $\mathcal{Q}^{\vee,\circ}[n]$.

A splitting $\hat{\varsigma} : \bigoplus_{i=0}^{2} \mathrm{Gr}_{-i}^{W_{T^\square \mathcal{Q}}} \xrightarrow{\sim} T^\square \mathcal{Q}$ determines and is determined by $\hat{\varsigma}_{12}$ and the restriction $\hat{\varsigma}_0 := \hat{\varsigma}|_{\mathrm{Gr}_0^{W_{T^\square \mathcal{Q}}}}$. And $\hat{\varsigma}_0$ is an inverse limit, over all n such that $\square \nmid n$, of splittings $\varsigma_{0,n} : \underline{Y}/n\underline{Y} \to \mathcal{Q}[n]$ of the exact sequence $0 \to \mathcal{G}^\natural[n] \to \mathcal{Q}[n] \to \underline{Y}/n\underline{Y} \to 0$. Then, by the same argument as in the third and the fourth paragraph of this proof, a splitting $\varsigma_{0,n}$ determines and is determined by liftings $\iota_n : \frac{1}{n}\underline{Y} \to \mathcal{G}^\natural$ of ι such that the following diagram commutes:

(2.15)
$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & \iota & & \\ & \overset{\frown}{\nearrow} & & \overset{\frown}{\searrow} & \\ \underline{Y} & \xrightarrow{\sim} & \frac{1}{n}\underline{Y} & & \mathcal{G}^\natural \\ {\scriptstyle [n]}\uparrow & \nearrow & & \searrow^{\iota_n} & \uparrow{\scriptstyle [n]} \\ \underline{Y} & & \xrightarrow{\quad \iota \quad} & & \mathcal{G}^\natural. \end{array}$$

Then $c_n^\vee := \pi \circ \iota_n$ is a lifting of $c^\vee$, which corresponds to the splitting $\pi \circ \varsigma_{0,n} : \underline{Y}/n\underline{Y} \to \mathcal{Q}[n]/T[n] = \mathcal{Q}^\circ[n]$ of the exact sequence $0 \to A[n] \to \mathcal{Q}^\circ[n] \to \underline{Y}/n\underline{Y} \to 0$.

Let $\widetilde{c} := \varprojlim_{n,\square \nmid n} c_n$, $\widetilde{c}^\vee := \varprojlim_{n,\square \nmid n} c_n^\vee$ and $\widetilde{\iota} := \varprojlim_{n,\square \nmid n} \iota_n$; $\widetilde{\iota}$ corresponds to a trivialization $\widetilde{\tau} : \mathbf{1}_{(\underline{Y} \otimes \mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}) \times \underline{X}} \to (\widetilde{c}^\vee \times c)^* \mathcal{P}_A^{\otimes -1}$ of biextensions. Then we have shown that a splitting $\hat{\varsigma}$ is equivalent to a tuple of liftings $(\widetilde{c}, \widetilde{c}^\vee, \widetilde{\iota})$ which lifts the tuple $(c, c^\vee, \iota)$; this tuple of liftings is further equivalent to a tuple $(\widetilde{c}, \widetilde{c}^\vee, \widetilde{\tau})$. □

Note that we will complete the proof of Proposition 2.39 if we show (2.1)⟺(3.5).

Proof of Proposition 2.39, (2.1)⟺(3.5): first reductions.

From now on, to the end of the proof of Proposition 2.39, we fix an S-scheme S' such that $\underline{X} = X$ and $\underline{Y} = Y$ over S'.

We can write the splitting $\hat{\varsigma} : \bigoplus_{i=0}^{2} \mathrm{Gr}_{-i}^{W_{T^\square \mathcal{Q}}} \xrightarrow{\sim} T^\square \mathcal{Q}$ as an inverse limit, over all n such that $\square \nmid n$, of $\varsigma_n : \bigoplus_{i=0}^{2} \mathrm{Gr}_{-i}^{W_{\mathcal{Q}[n]}} \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathcal{Q}[n]$. Let $\mathrm{e}_{ij,n} := \mathrm{e}^{\boldsymbol{\lambda}}|_{\varsigma_n(\mathrm{Gr}_{-i}^{W_{\mathcal{Q}[n]}}), \varsigma_n(\mathrm{Gr}_{-j}^{W_{\mathcal{Q}[n]}})}$.

To show (2.1)$\Longleftrightarrow$(3.5), it suffices to show that $\hat{\mathrm{e}}_{ij} := \varprojlim_{n,\square\nmid n} \mathrm{e}_{ij,n} = \hat{\mathbf{d}}_{ij}$.

Firstly, we can show the claim above when $(i,j) = (2,1),(2,2)$ and $(1,1)$. In fact, since $\mathrm{rig}_g : \mathcal{P}_{g,0} \to \mathcal{O}_{S'}$ (resp. $\mathrm{rig}_h : \mathcal{P}_{0,h} \to \mathcal{O}_{S'}$) factors through $\mathrm{rig}_{\pi(g)} : \mathcal{P}_{\pi(g),0} \to \mathcal{O}_{S'}$ (resp. $\mathrm{rig}_{\pi^\vee(h)} : \mathcal{P}_{0,\pi^\vee(h)} \to \mathcal{O}_{S'}$) for any $g \in \mathcal{G}^\natural[n](S')$ (resp. $h \in \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\vee}[n](S')$), from Definition 2.20, we find that

$$\mathrm{e}_{\mathcal{G}^\natural[n]}(q_1, q_2) = \mathrm{e}_{A[n]}(\pi(q_1), \pi^\vee(q_2)) \tag{2.16}$$

for any $q_1 \in \mathcal{G}^\natural[n](S')$ and $q_2 \in \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\vee}[n](S')$.

Then $\mathrm{e}_{21,n} = \mathrm{e}_{22,n} = 0$ and $\mathrm{e}_{11,n} = \mathrm{e}^{\lambda_A}$. □

Before completing the final steps, let us make some preparation on the Weil pairings and trivializations induced by the tuple $(c_n, c_n^\vee, \iota_n)$ and introduce some notation.

The Cartier dual of the splitting ς_n induces a splitting

$$\varsigma_n^\vee := \underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\varsigma_n, \mathbb{G}_m)^{-1} : \bigoplus_{i=0}^{2} \mathrm{Gr}_{-i}^{W_{\mathcal{Q}^\vee[n]}} \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathcal{Q}^\vee[n].$$

As the proof above, the restriction $\varsigma_{0,n}^\vee := \varsigma_n^\vee|_{\mathrm{Gr}_0^{W_{\mathcal{Q}^\vee[n]}}} : \underline{X}/n\underline{X} \to \mathcal{Q}^\vee[n]$ is equivalent to a lifting $\iota_n^\vee : \frac{1}{n}\underline{X} \to \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\vee}$ of $\iota^\vee$ satisfying a similar commutative diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & \overset{\iota^\vee}{\frown} & & \\ \underline{X} & \xrightarrow{\sim} & \frac{1}{n}\underline{X} & & \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\vee} \\ {\scriptstyle [n]}\uparrow & \nearrow & & \searrow^{\iota_n^\vee} & {\scriptstyle [n]}\uparrow \\ \underline{X} & & \xrightarrow{\iota^\vee} & & \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\vee}. \end{array} \tag{2.17}$$

In particular, $\pi^\vee \circ \iota_n^\vee = c_n$.

Denote by $\mathcal{R}^\vee$ the 1-motive represented by $[\frac{1}{n}\underline{X} \xrightarrow{\iota_n^\vee} \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\vee}]$. Let $\mathcal{R}$ be the Cartier dual of $\mathcal{R}^\vee$, which is represented by $[\underline{Y} \xrightarrow{\widetilde{\iota}} \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\prime}]$. More precisely, $\mathcal{G}^{\natural,\prime} = \underline{\mathrm{Ext}}^1([\frac{1}{n}\underline{X} \xrightarrow{c_n} A], \mathbb{G}_m)$. Then $\mathcal{R}$ and $\mathcal{R}^\vee$ fit into the following commutative diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \underline{Y} & \xrightarrow{\widetilde{\iota}} & \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\prime} \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \phi} & \searrow^{\iota} & \downarrow{\scriptstyle [n]_T} \\ \underline{X} & & \mathcal{G}^{\natural} \\ \downarrow & \searrow^{\iota^\vee} & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \boldsymbol{\lambda}^{sab}} \\ \frac{1}{n}\underline{X} & \xrightarrow{\iota_n^\vee} & \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\vee}. \end{array} \tag{2.18}$$

In the diagram above, the homomorphism $[n]_T : \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\prime} \to \mathcal{G}^\natural$ is the homomorphism defined by the Cartier dual of

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \underline{X} & \xrightarrow{c} & A^\vee \\ \downarrow & \nearrow_{c_n} & \\ \frac{1}{n}\underline{X}, & & \end{array}$$

which is $T \xrightarrow{x \mapsto x^n} T$ over torus parts of $\mathcal{G}^{\natural,\prime}$ and $\mathcal{G}^\natural$.

Lemma 2.41. *The image of $\varsigma_n(A[n]) \subset \mathcal{G}^\natural[n]$ lifts to n-torsion points in $\mathcal{G}^{\natural,\prime}$.*

Proof. The homomorphism $\bar{c}_n$ determines a homomorphism $\overline{\pi}^\vee : \mathcal{Q}^{\vee,\circ}[n] \to A^\vee[n]$: Indeed, for any $[(\chi, a)] \in \mathcal{Q}^{\vee,\circ}[n]$ such that $\chi \in X$ and $a \in A^\vee(S')$, $a - \bar{c}_n(\overline{\chi}) \in A^\vee(S')$. Then $\overline{\pi}^\vee : [(\chi, a)] \mapsto$

$a - \bar{c}_n(\overline{\chi})$ is a well-defined homomorphism. Since $\bar{c}_n$ is a splitting of $0 \to A^\vee[n] \to \mathcal{Q}^{\vee,\circ}[n] \to \underline{X}/n\underline{X} \to 0$, $\ker \overline{\pi}^\vee = \operatorname{Im} \bar{c}_n$ and $\overline{\pi}^\vee|_{A^\vee[n]} = \mathrm{Id}_{A^\vee[n]}$. On the other hand, from the second step of the proof of Proposition 2.39, the image of $\bar{c}_n$ in $\mathcal{Q}^{\vee,\circ}[n]$ is $\operatorname{Im}(n, c_n)/\operatorname{Im}(n, c)$. So the image of $\overline{\pi}^\vee : \mathcal{Q}^{\vee,\circ}[n] \to A^\vee[n]$ is isomorphic to the image of the natural homomorphism $\mathcal{Q}^{\vee,\circ}[n] \to \mathcal{R}^{\vee,\circ}[n]$, where $\mathcal{R}^{\vee,\circ} := [\frac{1}{n}\underline{X} \xrightarrow{c_n} A^\vee]$. Then, by Cartier duality, we find that $\varsigma_n(A[n]) \subset [n]_T(\mathcal{G}^{\natural,\prime}[n])$. □

In all diagrams below, all "$\mathcal{P}$" and "$\mathcal{O}$" denote biextensions or bundles, but not invertible sheaves.

Proof of Proposition 2.39, (2.1)⟺(3.5): $\mathbf{d}_{10,n} = \mathrm{e}_{10,n}$.

Let $\overline{y} \in Y/nY$ and $a \in A[n](S')$. Then $\varsigma_n(\overline{y}) = (y, g) \in \mathcal{Q}[n]$ for some $y \in Y$ lifting $\overline{y}$ and some $g \in \mathcal{G}^\natural(S')$ such that $\iota(y) = ng$. And $\varsigma_n(a) = (0, h)$ such that $h \in \mathcal{G}^\natural[n](S')$ and $\pi(h) = a$. To compute $\mathrm{e}^{\boldsymbol{\lambda}}(\varsigma_n(a), \varsigma_n(\overline{y}))$, let us analyze the following diagram:

(2.19)

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathcal{P}^{\otimes n}_{h,\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{sab}(g)} & \xrightarrow{\text{can.}} & \mathcal{P}_{h,\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{sab}\circ\iota(y)} \\
\big\downarrow{\scriptstyle \text{can.}} & & \big\downarrow{\scriptstyle \cong} \\
\mathcal{P}_{0,\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{sab}(g)} & & \mathcal{O}_{\iota^\vee\circ\phi(y)}|_h \\
\big\downarrow{\scriptstyle \cong} & & \\
\mathcal{O}_{\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{sab}\circ\iota_n(\frac{1}{n}y)}|_0 & & \big\downarrow{\scriptstyle \varrho_1(h,\phi(y))} \\
\big\downarrow{\scriptstyle \varrho_2(0,\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{sab}\circ\iota_n(\frac{1}{n}y))} & & \\
\mathcal{O}_{S'} & \xleftarrow[\mathrm{e}^{\boldsymbol{\lambda}}(\varsigma_n(a),\varsigma_n(\overline{y}))]{} & \mathcal{O}_{S'}.
\end{array}$$

By Lemma 2.41, there is an $h' \in \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\prime}[n](S')$ such that $h = [n]_T(h')$. Let $[n]_A : \mathcal{G}^\natural \to \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\prime}$ be the pushout of $\mathcal{G}^\natural$ by $[n]_A : A \to A$. Applying Lemma 2.21 to the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\underline{Y} & \xrightarrow{\widetilde{\iota}} & \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\prime} \\
\big\downarrow{\scriptstyle [n]} & \overset{\iota}{\searrow} & \big\downarrow{\scriptstyle [n]_T} \\
\underline{Y} & & \mathcal{G}^\natural \\
 & \searrow & \big\downarrow{\scriptstyle [n]_A} \\
 & & \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\prime},
\end{array}$$

we find that $\varrho_1^{\mathcal{Q}}(h, \phi(y)) = \varrho_1^{\mathcal{R}}(h', \phi_n(y)) = \varrho_1^{\mathcal{R}}(nh', \phi_n(\frac{1}{n}y)) = \varrho_1^{\mathcal{R}}(0, \phi_n(\frac{1}{n}y))$.

The equality $\varrho_1^{\mathcal{Q}}(h, \phi(y)) = \varrho_1^{\mathcal{R}}(h', \phi_n(y))$ amounts to the commutativity of

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathcal{P}_{h',\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{sab}\circ\iota(y)} & \xrightarrow{\varrho_1^{\mathcal{R}}(h',\phi_n(y))} & \mathcal{O}_{S'} \\
\big\downarrow{\scriptstyle \text{can.}} & \overset{\varrho_1^{\mathcal{Q}}(h,\phi(y))}{\nearrow} & \\
\mathcal{P}_{h,\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{sab}\circ\iota(y)}; & &
\end{array}$$

also, $\mathcal{P}^{\otimes n}_{h',\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{sab}(g)} \xrightarrow{\text{can.}} \mathcal{P}_{0,\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{sab}(g)}$ factors through $\mathcal{P}^{\otimes n}_{h',\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{sab}(g)} \xrightarrow{\text{can.}} \mathcal{P}^{\otimes n}_{h,\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{sab}(g)}$. As a result, (2.19) can be written as

(2.19′)

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathcal{P}^{\otimes n}_{h',\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{sab}(g)} & \xrightarrow{\text{can.}} & \mathcal{P}_{h',\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{sab}\circ\iota(y)} \\
\downarrow{\scriptstyle \text{can.}} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \cong} \\
\mathcal{P}_{0,\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{sab}(g)} & & \mathcal{O}_{\iota_n^\vee\circ\phi_n(y)}|_{h'} \\
\downarrow{\scriptstyle \cong} & & \\
\mathcal{O}_{\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{sab}\circ\iota_n(\frac{1}{n}y)}|_0 & & \Big\downarrow{\scriptstyle \varrho_1^{\mathcal{R}}(h',\phi_n(y))} \\
\downarrow{\scriptstyle \varrho_2(0,\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{sab}\circ\iota_n(\frac{1}{n}y))} & & \\
\mathcal{O}_{S'} & \xleftarrow[\mathrm{e}^{\boldsymbol{\lambda}}(\varsigma_n(a),\varsigma_n(\overline{y}))]{} & \mathcal{O}_{S'}.
\end{array}$$

On the other hand, $\mathrm{e}_{\mathcal{G}^\natural,'[n]}(h',(\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{sab}\circ\iota_n-\iota_n^\vee\circ\phi_n)(\frac{1}{n}y))$ is computed by the following commutative diagram:

(2.20)

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & \mathcal{P}^{\otimes n}_{h',\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{sab}(g)}\otimes([n]^*\mathcal{O}_{-\iota_n^\vee\circ\phi_n(\frac{1}{n}y)})|_{h'} & \xrightarrow{\text{can.}} & (\mathcal{O}_{\iota_n^\vee\circ\phi_n(y)})|_{h'} \\
 & \overset{\text{can.}}{\nearrow} & \Big\downarrow{\scriptstyle \text{can.}} & & \otimes \\
\mathcal{P}^{\otimes n}_{h',(\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{sab}\circ\iota_n)(\frac{1}{n}y)}\otimes\mathcal{P}^{\otimes n}_{h',(-\iota_n^\vee\circ\phi_n)(\frac{1}{n}y)} & & & & (\mathcal{O}_{-\iota_n^\vee\circ\phi_n(y)})|_{h'} \\
\Big\uparrow{\scriptstyle \text{can.}} & & \text{can.} & & \Big\downarrow{\scriptstyle \text{can.multi.}} \\
\mathcal{P}^{\otimes n}_{h',(\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{sab}\circ\iota_n-\iota_n^\vee\circ\phi_n)(\frac{1}{n}y)} & \xrightarrow{\text{can.}} & \mathcal{O}_{\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{sab}\circ\iota_n(\frac{1}{n}y)}|_0\otimes\mathcal{O}_{-\iota_n^\vee\circ\phi_n(\frac{1}{n}y)}|_0 & & \mathcal{O}_{\mathcal{G}^\natural,'[n]}|_{h'} \\
 & & \Big\downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{rig}_{\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{sab}\circ\iota_n(\frac{1}{n}y)-\iota_n^\vee\circ\phi_n(\frac{1}{n}y)}} & & \Big\downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{rig}_{h'}} \\
 & & \mathcal{O}_{S'} & \xleftarrow{\mathrm{e}(h',(\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{sab}\circ\iota_n-\iota_n^\vee\circ\phi_n)(\frac{1}{n}y))} & \mathcal{O}_{S'}.
\end{array}$$

In the diagram above, the canonical homomorphism $\mathcal{O}_{\iota_n^\vee\circ\phi_n(y)}|_{h'}\otimes\mathcal{O}_{-\iota_n^\vee\circ\phi_n(y)}|_{h'} \xrightarrow{\text{can.multi.}} \mathcal{O}_{\mathcal{G}^\natural,'[n]}|_{h'}$ is deduced from the multiplication on $A^\vee$; since $\varrho_1^{\mathcal{R}}$ is a trivialization of biextensions, its multiplicative structure implies that $\mathrm{rig}_{h'}\circ(\text{can.multi.}) = \varrho_1(h',\phi_n(y))\cdot\varrho_1(h',-\phi_n(y))$. Then the first (resp. second) column of (2.19′), tensoring with $\varrho_1^{\mathcal{R}}(0,-\phi_n(\frac{1}{n}y))$ (resp. with $\varrho_1^{\mathcal{R}}(h',-\phi_n(y))$), is the second (resp. third) column of the diagram (2.20).

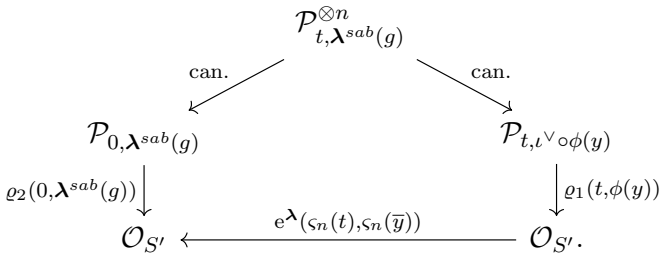
Then the diagram (2.20) implies that $\mathrm{e}^{\boldsymbol{\lambda}}(\varsigma_n(a),\varsigma_n(\overline{y})) = \mathrm{e}_{\mathcal{G}^\natural,'[n]}(h',(\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{sab}\circ\iota_n-\iota_n^\vee\circ\phi_n)(\frac{1}{n}y)) = \mathrm{e}_{A[n]}(a,(\lambda_A\circ c_n^\vee - c_n\circ\phi_n)(\frac{1}{n}y))$, where the last equality is from (2.16). □

Proof of Proposition 2.39, (2.1)⟺(3.5): $\mathbf{d}_{20,n} = \mathrm{e}_{20,n}$.

Let $t\in T[n](S')$ and $\overline{y}\in Y/nY$. As before, set $\varsigma_n(\overline{y}) = (y,g)\in\mathcal{Q}[n](S')$, for some $y\in Y$ lifting $\overline{y}$ and some $g\in\mathcal{G}^\natural(S')$ such that $\iota(y) = ng$.

Then $\mathrm{e}_{20}(t,(y,g))$ is computed by the following diagram:

(2.21)



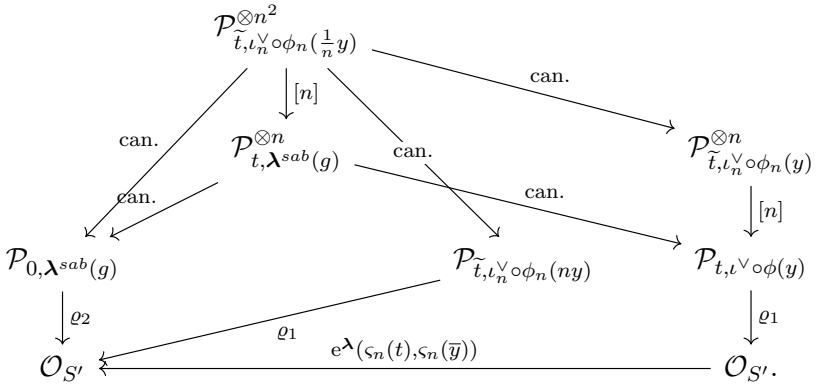
Let $\widetilde{t}\in\mathcal{G}^{\natural,\prime}(S')$ lifting t. Then $\widetilde{t}\in\mathcal{G}^{\natural,\prime}[n^2](S')$. Note that there is a canonical morphism $\mathcal{O}^{\otimes n}_{\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{sab}(g)}|_T\xrightarrow{\text{can.}}([n]^*_T\mathcal{O}_{\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{sab}(g)})|_T\cong[n]^*(\mathcal{O}_{\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{sab}(g)}|_T)|_T\xrightarrow{\text{can.}}\mathcal{O}_{\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{sab}(g)}|_T$, we denote this canonical morphism also by $[n]$; restricting this morphism to $\widetilde{t}$, there is a canonical morphism $[n]:\mathcal{P}^{\otimes n}_{\widetilde{t},\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{sab}(g)}\cong\mathcal{O}^{\otimes n}_{\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{sab}(g)}|_{\widetilde{t}}\xrightarrow{\text{can.}}\mathcal{O}_{\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{sab}(g)}|_t\cong\mathcal{P}_{t,\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{sab}(g)}$.

Moreover, since $\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{sab}(g)=\iota_n^\vee\circ\phi_n(\frac{1}{n}y)$, we know $\mathrm{e}_{\mathcal{R}[n^2]}(\widetilde{t},\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{sab}(g))=\mathrm{e}_{\mathcal{R}[n^2]}(\widetilde{t},\phi_n(\frac{1}{n}y))=0$; that is, $\varrho_1^{\mathcal{R}}(n\widetilde{t},\phi_n(y))=\varrho_1^{\mathcal{R}}(\widetilde{t},\phi_n(ny))=\varrho_2^{\mathcal{R}}(0,\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{sab}(g))$. Also, since $[n]$ commutes with tensor products,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}\mathcal{P}^{\otimes n^2}_{\widetilde{t},\iota_n^\vee\circ\phi_n(\frac{1}{n}y)} & \xrightarrow{\text{can.}} & \mathcal{P}^{\otimes n}_{\widetilde{t},\iota_n^\vee\circ\phi_n(y)}\\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle [n]} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle [n]}\\ \mathcal{P}^{\otimes n}_{t,\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{sab}(g)} & \xrightarrow{\text{can.}} & \mathcal{P}_{t,\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{sab}(y)}\end{array}$$

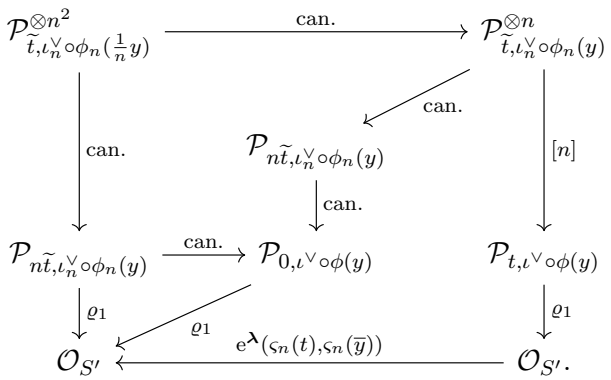
commutes. As a result, we have the following commutative diagram, which computes e_{20}:

(2.22)



Then, from Lemma 2.21, e_{20} is computed by the commutative diagram

(2.23)



Finally, viewing T as a subgroup of $\mathcal{G}^{\natural,\prime}$, we conclude that $\mathrm{e}^{\boldsymbol{\lambda}}(t,(y,g))$ is the difference between the evaluation of $\phi_n(y): T\to\mathbb{G}_m$ at $\widetilde{t}^n$ and the evaluation of $\phi_n(y)$ at $\widetilde{t}^{n^2}$. By the sign conventions in Lemma 2.19, $\mathrm{e}^{\boldsymbol{\lambda}}(t,(y,g))=\phi^*(y)(t)$. □

Note that the Cartier dual of

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \underline{Y} & \xrightarrow{\iota} & \mathcal{G}^{\natural} \\ \downarrow & \nearrow_{\iota_n} & \\ \frac{1}{n}\underline{Y} & & \end{array}$$

is a commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \underline{X} & \xrightarrow{\widetilde{\iota}^\vee} & \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\wedge} \\ & \searrow^{\iota^\vee} & \downarrow{\scriptstyle n^\vee} \\ & & \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\vee}. \end{array}$$

Denote by $\mathcal{Q}^\wedge:=[\underline{X}\xrightarrow{\widetilde{\iota}^\vee}\mathcal{G}^{\natural,\wedge}]$ the Cartier dual of $\mathcal{Q}_n:=[\frac{1}{n}\underline{Y}\xrightarrow{\iota_n}\mathcal{G}^{\natural}]$. The homomorphism $n^\vee:\mathcal{G}^{\natural,\wedge}\to\mathcal{G}^{\natural,\vee}$ is $T^\vee\xrightarrow{x\mapsto x^n}T^\vee$ when restricted to torus parts.

More precisely, we have the following commutative diagram which is similar to (2.18):

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \underline{X} & \xrightarrow{\widetilde{\iota}^\vee} & \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\wedge} \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \phi^c} & \searrow^{\iota^\vee} & \downarrow{\scriptstyle n^\vee} \\ \underline{Y} & & \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\vee} \\ \downarrow & \searrow^{\iota} & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \boldsymbol{\lambda}^{c,sab}} \\ \frac{1}{n}\underline{Y} & \xrightarrow{\iota_n} & \mathcal{G}^{\natural}. \end{array} \tag{2.24}$$

To form the diagram above, we can find a polarization $\boldsymbol{\lambda}^c:\mathcal{Q}^\vee\to\mathcal{Q}$ such that $\boldsymbol{\lambda}\circ\boldsymbol{\lambda}^c=[N]_{\mathcal{Q}^\vee}$ and $\boldsymbol{\lambda}^c\circ\boldsymbol{\lambda}=[N]_{\mathcal{Q}}$ for some integer $N>0$; then we denote $\boldsymbol{\lambda}^c:=(\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{c,et},\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{c,sab})$ and $\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{c,et}:=\phi^c$.

Proof of Proposition 2.39, (2.1)⟺(3.5): $\mathbf{d}_{00,n}=\mathrm{e}_{00,n}$.

Suppose that $\varsigma_n(\overline{y}_i)=(y_i,g_i)\in\mathcal{Q}[n]$ for some $y_i\in Y$ lifting $\overline{y}_i$ and some $g_i\in\mathcal{G}^{\natural}(S')$ such that $\iota(y_i)=ng_i$, for $i=1,2$. Then $\mathrm{e}^{\boldsymbol{\lambda}}(\varsigma_n(\overline{y}_1),\varsigma_n(\overline{y}_2))$ is computed by the following commutative diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \mathcal{P}^{\otimes n}_{g_1,\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{sab}(g_2)} & \xrightarrow[\sim]{\text{can.}} & \mathcal{P}_{\iota(y_1),\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{sab}(g_2)} & \xrightarrow[\sim]{\text{can.}} & \mathcal{P}_{\iota^\vee\circ\phi(y_1),g_2} & \xrightarrow[\sim]{\text{can.}} & \mathcal{P}_{\widetilde{\iota}^\vee\circ\phi(y_1),\iota_n(\frac{1}{n}y_2)} \\ {\scriptstyle\sim}\downarrow{\scriptstyle\text{can.}} & & & \searrow^{\varrho_2(y_1,\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{sab}(g_2))} & & {\scriptstyle\tau_{\mathcal{Q}^\wedge}(\phi(y_1),\frac{1}{n}y_2)}\swarrow & {\scriptstyle\sim}\downarrow{\scriptstyle\text{can.}} \\ \mathcal{P}_{g_1,\iota^\vee\circ\phi(y_2)} & & & & \mathcal{O}_{S'} & \xleftarrow{\tau_n(\frac{1}{n}y_2,\phi(y_1))} & \mathcal{P}_{\iota_n(\frac{1}{n}y_2),\widetilde{\iota}^\vee\circ\phi(y_1)} \\ {\scriptstyle\sim}\downarrow{\scriptstyle\text{can.}} & \searrow^{\varrho_1(g_1,\phi(y_2))} & & & \uparrow{\scriptstyle\mathrm{e}^{\boldsymbol{\lambda}}(\varsigma_n(\overline{y}_1),\varsigma_n(\overline{y}_2))} & & \\ \mathcal{P}_{\iota_n(\frac{1}{n}y_1),\widetilde{\iota}^\vee\circ\phi(y_2)} & & \xrightarrow{\tau_n(\frac{1}{n}y_1,\phi(y_2))} & & \mathcal{O}_{S'}. & & \end{array} \tag{2.25}$$

More precisely, the commutativity of $\tau_n(\frac{1}{n}y_1,\phi(y_2))\circ\text{can.}=\varrho_1(g_1,\phi(y_2))$ and $\tau_{\mathcal{Q}^\wedge}(\phi(y_1),\frac{1}{n}y_2)\circ\text{can.}\circ\text{can.}=\varrho_2(y_1,\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{sab}(g_2))$ follows from Lemma 2.21; the commutativity of $\tau_n(\frac{1}{n}y_2,\phi(y_1))\circ\text{can.}=\tau_{\mathcal{Q}^\wedge}(\phi(y_1),\frac{1}{n}y_2)$ follows from $4\Longleftrightarrow 4''$ Hence, we have shown the desired result. □

Now we have completed the proof of Proposition 2.39. □

2.4. **Boundary mixed Shimura varieties of Hodge type, continued.** Fix a cusp label representative $\Phi_0=(Q,X_0^+,g_0)$ of (G_0,X_0). With the conventions in §2.3.5, suppose that Φ_0 is sent to a cusp label representative $\Phi^\ddagger$ of $(G^\ddagger,X^\ddagger)$ under ι. Let us describe the moduli interpretation of $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi^\ddagger}}(\mathbb{C})$ as a family of polarized 1-motives with level structures.

2.4.1. Recall that $D_{\Phi_0} := D_{Q,X_0^+}$ is defined to be the $P_{\Phi_0}(\mathbb{R})U_{\Phi_0}(\mathbb{C})$-orbit of $([x], u_x^Q \circ h_\infty) \in \pi_0(X_0) \times \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{S}_{\mathbb{C}}, P_{\Phi_0,\mathbb{C}})$, for any $x \in X_0^+$. Moreover, by Proposition 1.8, D_{Φ_0} is in fact the $P_{\Phi_0}(\mathbb{R})U_{\Phi_0}(\mathbb{C})$-orbit of $u_x^Q \circ h_\infty \in \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{S}_{\mathbb{C}}, P_{\Phi_0,\mathbb{C}})$, and the morphism $D_{\Phi_0} \to D_{\Phi^\ddagger} \subset \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{S}_{\mathbb{C}}, P_{\Phi^\ddagger,\mathbb{C}})$ induced by ι is injective.

For any $x^\ddagger \in D_{\Phi^\ddagger}$, $x^\ddagger$ determines a rational mixed Hodge structure $\mathbf{M}_{\mathrm{MH}}(x^\ddagger) := (V, F^\bullet_{x^\ddagger}, W^{x^\ddagger}_\bullet)$ on the $\mathbb{Q}$-vector space V, where $F^\bullet_{x^\ddagger}$ is a descending filtration on $V_{\mathbb{C}}$ and where $W^{x^\ddagger}_\bullet$ is an ascending filtration on V; by [Pin90, Prop. 1.16(c)], the association $x^\ddagger \mapsto \mathbf{M}_{\mathrm{MH}}(x^\ddagger)$ is injective. For any $\mathbb{Z}$-lattice $\mathfrak{V} \subset V$, $\mathbf{M}_{\mathrm{MH}}(x^\ddagger)$ determines an integral mixed Hodge structure $\mathbb{M}_{\mathrm{MH}}(\mathfrak{V}, x^\ddagger) := (\mathfrak{V}, F^\bullet_{x^\ddagger}|_{\mathfrak{V}}, W^{x^\ddagger}_\bullet|_{\mathfrak{V}})$; we will abusively write $\mathbb{M}_{\mathrm{MH}}(\mathfrak{V})$ or $\mathbb{M}_{\mathrm{MH}}(x^\ddagger)$ if $x^\ddagger$ or $\mathfrak{V}$ is clear in the context; we apply similar shorthand for $\mathbf{M}_{\mathrm{MH}}$. Note that if V and $\mathfrak{V}$ are fixed, then $\mathbf{M}_{\mathrm{MH}}(x^\ddagger)$ determines and is determined by $\mathbb{M}_{\mathrm{MH}}(x^\ddagger)$.

On the other hand, $x^\ddagger$ induces on V a mixed Hodge structure of type (see [Pin90, Ex. 4.25])

$$\{(0,0); (-1,0), (0,-1); (-1,-1)\}.$$

The category of integral mixed Hodge structures of this type is closely related to the category of 1-motives over $\mathbb{C}$. In fact, Deligne showed that one can geometrize this type of integral mixed Hodge structures.

Theorem 2.42 ([Del74, 10.1.3])**.** *For any 1-motive $\mathcal{Q} = (\underline{Y}, \mathcal{G}^\natural, T, A, \iota, c^\vee)$ over $\mathbb{C}$, there is a canonical finitely generated free $\mathbb{Z}$-module $T_{\mathbb{Z}}\mathcal{Q}$ with Hodge filtration $F^\bullet$ and weight filtration $W_\bullet$ on it, such that $(T_{\mathbb{Z}}\mathcal{Q}, F^\bullet, W_\bullet)$ is an integral mixed Hodge structure of type $\{(0,0); (-1,0), (0,-1); (-1,-1)\}$, and such that, $\mathrm{Gr}^W_{-2} T_{\mathbb{Z}}\mathcal{Q} = H_1(T,\mathbb{Z}) = X^\vee \cong \mathbf{X}_*(T)$, $\mathrm{Gr}^W_{-1} T_{\mathbb{Z}}\mathcal{Q} = H_1(A,\mathbb{Z})$ and $\mathrm{Gr}^W_0 T_{\mathbb{Z}}\mathcal{Q} = Y$.*

Moreover, the functor $T_{\mathbb{Z}}(-)$, from the category of 1-motives over $\mathbb{C}$ to the category of integral mixed Hodge structures of type $\{(0,0); (-1,0), (0,-1); (-1,-1)\}$ whose weight -1 graded pieces are polarizable, is an equivalence of category.

The module $T_{\mathbb{Z}}\mathcal{Q}$, equipped with its weight filtration and Hodge filtration, is called the **Hodge realization** of $\mathcal{Q}$. There are canonical comparison isomorphisms between the Hodge realization and the Tate modules, respecting weight filtrations and its graded pieces: $T_{\mathbb{Z}}\mathcal{Q} \otimes \widehat{\mathbb{Z}} \cong \widehat{T}\mathcal{Q}$, $T_{\mathbb{Z}}\mathcal{Q} \otimes \widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p \cong T^\square\mathcal{Q}$ and $T_{\mathbb{Z}}\mathcal{Q} \otimes \mathbb{Z}_p \cong T_p\mathcal{Q}$. For this, see [Del74, 10.1.5-10.1.10].

One can also associate with $\mathcal{Q}$ a canonical **de Rham realization** $H_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathcal{Q}$. There is a canonical exact sequence

$$0 \to F^0 H_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathcal{Q} \cong \underline{\mathrm{Lie}}^\vee_{\mathcal{G}^\natural,\vee/\mathbb{C}} \to H_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathcal{Q} \to \underline{\mathrm{Lie}}_{\mathcal{G}^\natural/\mathbb{C}} \to 0. \tag{2.26}$$

There is also a canonical comparison $H_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathcal{Q} \cong T_{\mathbb{Z}}\mathcal{Q} \otimes \mathbb{C}$. For this, see *loc. cit.*, and see [Ber09].

2.4.2. Fix any polarized 1-motive $(\mathcal{Q}, \boldsymbol{\lambda})$ over $\mathbb{C}$. Denote $\mathcal{Q} = (\underline{Y}, \mathcal{G}^\natural, T, A, \iota, c^\vee)$. Let $\mathfrak{V} = T_{\mathbb{Z}}\mathcal{Q}$. The Hodge realization of Cartier dual $\mathcal{Q}^\vee$, $\mathfrak{V}^\vee := T_{\mathbb{Z}}(\mathcal{Q}^\vee)$, can be naturally identified with $T_{\mathbb{Z}}(\mathcal{Q}^\vee) = \mathrm{Hom}(\mathfrak{V}, \mathbb{Z}(1))$, induced by a canonical pairing $\Phi^{\mathrm{can}} : \mathfrak{V} \times \mathfrak{V}^\vee \to \mathbb{Z}(1)$. Then $\boldsymbol{\lambda} : \mathcal{Q} \to \mathcal{Q}^\vee$ induces a pairing $\psi : \mathfrak{V} \times \mathfrak{V} \to \mathbb{Z}(1)$ by defining $\psi := \Phi^{\mathrm{can}} \circ (\mathrm{Id}, T_{\mathbb{Z}}\boldsymbol{\lambda})$. Its base change to $V := \mathfrak{V} \otimes \mathbb{Q}$ is a pairing $\psi : V \times V \to \mathbb{Q}(1)$. By [Del74, Rmk. 10.2.4], ψ is an alternating pairing.

The weight -2 graded piece $\mathfrak{V}_{-2} := \mathrm{Gr}^W_{-2}\mathfrak{V} \cong H_1(T,\mathbb{Z})$ is a totally isotropic space of $\mathfrak{V}$ with respect to ψ, whose orthogonal complement is $\mathfrak{V}^\perp = W_{-1}\mathfrak{V}$. The alternating pairing ψ induces a pairing $\psi^{et} : \mathfrak{V}_0 \times \mathfrak{V}_{-2} \to \mathbb{Z}(1)$, where $\mathfrak{V}_0 := \mathrm{Gr}^W_0\mathfrak{V} \cong Y$; note that ψ^{et} does not depend on the choice of liftings for $\mathfrak{V}_0$. Moreover, since $\psi(\mathfrak{V}_{-2}, \mathfrak{V}^\perp) = 0$, there is a canonical alternating pairing $\psi^{ab} : \mathfrak{V}_{-1} \times \mathfrak{V}_{-1} \to \mathbb{Z}(1)$, defined by projecting to $\mathfrak{V}_{-1} := \mathrm{Gr}^W_{-1}\mathfrak{V} \cong H_1(A,\mathbb{Z})$ of the restriction of ψ to $\mathfrak{V}_{-1}$. By Riemann's Theorem, ψ^{ab} is a polarization of $\mathfrak{V}_{-1}$, an integral Hodge structure of type $\{(-1,0), (0,-1)\}$.

Note that ψ^{et} defines an embedding $Y \cong \mathfrak{V}_0 \hookrightarrow X \cong \mathfrak{V}^\vee_{-2}$ with finite cokernel, which we abusively denote by ψ^{et}. Together with ψ^{ab}, and by Riemann's Theorem, the pair (ψ^{et}, ψ^{ab}) determines and is

determined by the polarization $\boldsymbol{\lambda} = (\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{et}, \boldsymbol{\lambda}^{ab})$. We will call such a ψ induced by $\boldsymbol{\lambda}$ a **polarization** of the integral mixed Hodge structure $\mathfrak{V}$.

Lemma 2.43. *Let us fix (V, ψ) and a cusp label representative $\Phi^\ddagger = (Q^\ddagger, X^{\ddagger,+}, g^\ddagger)$ of $G^\ddagger$. Fix a $\mathbb{Z}$-lattice $\mathfrak{V} \subset V$. Let $\mathbb{M}_{\mathrm{MH}}(\mathfrak{V})$ be an integral mixed Hodge structure defined by $x^\ddagger \in D^+_{\Phi^\ddagger}$. Suppose that there is another pair $(\mathbb{M}_{\mathrm{MH}}(\mathfrak{U}), \psi_0)$ of integral mixed Hodge structures of type $\{(0,0); (-1,0), (0,-1); (-1,-1)\}$ with polarization ψ_0. Suppose that there is an isomorphism of lattices $f : \mathfrak{V} \to \mathfrak{U}$, which matches ψ and ψ_0, and matches the weight filtrations of $\mathfrak{V}$ and $\mathfrak{U}$.*

Then there is $g \in P_{\Phi^\ddagger}(\mathbb{R})U_{\Phi^\ddagger}(\mathbb{C})$, such that the mixed Hodge structure on $V_{\mathbb{C}} := \mathfrak{V} \otimes \mathbb{C}$ induced by the action of g on the mixed Hodge structure $\mathbb{M}_{\mathrm{MH}}(\mathfrak{V}) \otimes \mathbb{C}$ coincides with the pullback of the mixed Hodge structure on $U_{\mathbb{C}} := \mathfrak{U} \otimes \mathbb{C}$ to $V_{\mathbb{C}}$ under f.

Proof. Denote by $\mathfrak{V}_{-i}$ and $\mathfrak{U}_{-i}$ for $i = 0, 1, 2$ the graded pieces of $\mathfrak{V}$ and $\mathfrak{U}$, with respect to the corresponding weights $-i$. Denote by $W^\ddagger$ the unipotent radical of $Q^\ddagger$, $P^\ddagger := P_{\Phi^\ddagger}$ and $U^\ddagger := U_{\Phi^\ddagger}$. After pulling back the mixed Hodge structure on $U_{\mathbb{C}}$ to $V_{\mathbb{C}}$ via f, we can assume $f = \mathrm{Id}$ without loss of generality. By [Pin90, Prop. 1.16 (b)], it suffices to show that there is a $g \in P^\ddagger(\mathbb{R})W^\ddagger(\mathbb{C})$, such that, the weight filtrations and Hodge filtrations on $V_{\mathbb{C}}$ induced by $\mathbb{M}_{\mathrm{MH}}(\mathfrak{V})$ and induced by (the pullback of) $\mathbb{M}_{\mathrm{MH}}(\mathfrak{U})$ are matched after an action of g. The weight filtrations are assumed to be equal; we denote it by W.

By [Del71a, Lem. 1.2.11], there is a canonical bigrading $A_V^{p,q}$ for $\mathbf{M}_{\mathrm{MH}}(V)$, such that, $V_{\mathbb{C}} = \bigoplus_{(p,q)=(-1,-1),(-1,0),(0,-1),(0,0)} A_V^{p,q}$, and such that $A_V^{p,q}$ can recover the weight filtration $W_\bullet$ and the Hodge filtration $F_V^\bullet$ of $V_{\mathbb{C}}$. See also [Pin90, Prop. 1.2]. In our case, we have: $A_V^{-1,-1} = \mathfrak{V}_{-2} \otimes \mathbb{C}$; the projection of $A_V^{-1,0} \oplus A_V^{0,-1}$ to $\mathrm{Gr}^W_{-1} V_{\mathbb{C}}$ is the Hodge decomposition of $\mathrm{Gr}^W_{-1} V_{\mathbb{C}}$; $A_V^{0,0} \cong \mathrm{Gr}^W_0 V_{\mathbb{C}}$. Then the Hodge structure is determined by a homomorphism $h_V : \mathbb{S}_{\mathbb{C}} \to \mathrm{GL}(V_{\mathbb{C}})$, such that $(z_1, z_2) \mapsto z_1^{-p} z_2^{-q}$ on $A_V^{p,q}$. By the same lemma, there are similar complex spaces $A_U^{p,q}$ for $U_{\mathbb{C}}$ with corresponding property, replacing "V" with "U". Note that the bigrading pieces $A_V^{p,q}$ and $A_U^{p,q}$ are canonically determined by the mixed Hodge structure. To show the statement, it suffices to show that h_V and h_U are conjugate under some element $g \in P^\ddagger(\mathbb{R})W^\ddagger(\mathbb{C})$.

Let $\varsigma_V : \bigoplus_{(p,q)} A_V^{p,q} \to V_{\mathbb{C}}$ be the canonical splitting, and let ς_U be the corresponding object for U. The pullback of ψ to $\bigoplus_{(p,q)} A_U^{p,q}$ (resp. $\bigoplus_{(p,q)} A_V^{(p,q)}$) under ς_U (resp. ς_U) is a 3×3 anti-diagonal blocked matrix. In fact, we can see this via the perfect pairing of the de Rham realizations of 1-motives over $\mathbb{C}$. See [Del74, 10.2.7] and [Ber09]. Since $A_V^{-1,-1} = A_U^{-1,-1} = \mathfrak{V}_{-2} \otimes \mathbb{C}$ and since $A_V^{0,0} = A_U^{0,0} = \mathrm{Gr}^W_0 V_{\mathbb{C}}$, $\varsigma_U^{-1} \circ \varsigma_V$ matches the 0-th and -2-th graded pieces of the weight filtration W. After taking the W-graded pieces $\bigoplus_{i=-2}^{0} \mathrm{Gr}^W_i V_{\mathbb{C}}$, there is a $\overline{g} \in G_{\Phi^\ddagger,h}(\mathbb{R})$ such that the Hodge filtrations on each graded piece induced by $\mathbb{M}_{\mathrm{MH}}(\mathfrak{V})$ and $\mathbb{M}_{\mathrm{MH}}(\mathfrak{U})$ are matched after the action of $\overline{g}$. Also, we know that $\overline{g}$ lifts to an element $p \in P^\ddagger(\mathbb{R})$. Then after replacing ς_V with $p \circ \varsigma_V$, we can identify $A_V^{p,q}$ with $A_U^{p,q}$ for each (p, q). We can also choose an identification $\bigoplus_{(p,q)} A_U^{p,q} \cong \bigoplus_{(p,q)} A_V^{p,q}$ such that it matches $\varsigma_U^* \psi$ with $\varsigma_V^* \psi$. We then see that $\varsigma_U^{-1} \circ \varsigma_V$ corresponds to a matrix in $W^\ddagger(\mathbb{C})$. □

2.4.3. With the background in previous subsections, we can summarize the desired moduli interpretation now. Recall that $\square$ is a finite set of prime numbers, which, in our case, is $\{p\}$ or $\emptyset$. Let us fix a cusp label representative $\Phi^\ddagger = (Q^\ddagger, X^{\ddagger,+}, g^\ddagger)$ of $G^\ddagger$. Recall that in §2.1 that $(V_{\mathbb{Z}}, \psi_{\mathbb{Z}})$ is a pair of $\mathbb{Z}$-lattice $V_{\mathbb{Z}}$ with $\psi_{\mathbb{Z}} : V_{\mathbb{Z}} \times V_{\mathbb{Z}} \to \mathbb{Z}(1)$, the restriction of ψ to $V_{\mathbb{Z}}$ which takes its values in $\mathbb{Z}(1)$.

Let $\boldsymbol{\xi}_{(V_{\mathbb{Z}}, \psi_{\mathbb{Z}}), \Phi^\ddagger, K^{\ddagger,\square}} : (Sch/\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)})^{\mathrm{op}} \to (Grpds)$ be a moduli problem of isomorphism classes of 1-motives with additional structures, which can be described as follows:

For any locally Noetherian and connected $\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}$-scheme S, $\boldsymbol{\xi}_{(V_{\mathbb{Z}}, \psi_{\mathbb{Z}}), \Phi^\ddagger, K^{\ddagger,\square}}(S)$ is a groupoid whose objects consist of the tuples $(\mathcal{Q}, \boldsymbol{\lambda}, [u]_{(K^\square_{\Phi^\ddagger})^{g^\ddagger}})$, where

- $(\mathcal{Q}, \boldsymbol{\lambda})$ is a polarized 1-motive over S such that $\underline{X}_{\mathcal{Q}}$ and $\underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}}$ split, and
- $[u]_{(K^{\square}_{\Phi^\ddagger})^{g^\ddagger}} \in \Gamma(S, \underline{\mathrm{Isom}}(V_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}, T^\square\mathcal{Q})/(K^{\square}_{\Phi^\ddagger})^{g^\ddagger})$ is a level structure of type $(V_{\mathbb{Z}}, \psi_{\mathbb{Z}}, \Phi^\ddagger, K^{\ddagger,\square})$. See Definition 2.38.

Any pair of such tuples $(\mathcal{Q}, \boldsymbol{\lambda}, [u]_{(K^{\square}_{\Phi^\ddagger})^{g^\ddagger}})$ and $(\mathcal{Q}', \boldsymbol{\lambda}', [u']_{(K^{\square}_{\Phi^\ddagger})^{g^\ddagger}})$ are equivalent in $\boldsymbol{\xi}_{(V_{\mathbb{Z}},\psi_{\mathbb{Z}}),\Phi^\ddagger,K^{\ddagger,\square}}(S)$, denoted as $(\mathcal{Q}, \boldsymbol{\lambda}, [u]_{(K^{\square}_{\Phi^\ddagger})^{g^\ddagger}}) \sim_{\mathrm{iso}} (\mathcal{Q}', \boldsymbol{\lambda}', [u']_{(K^{\square}_{\Phi^\ddagger})^{g^\ddagger}})$, if there is an isomorphism $f : \mathcal{Q} \to \mathcal{Q}'$ such that $f^\vee \circ \lambda' \circ f = \lambda$ and such that $T^\square f \circ u = u'$ modulo the action of $(K^{\square}_{\Phi^\ddagger})^{g^\ddagger}$. This also describes the objects in $\boldsymbol{\xi}_{(V_{\mathbb{Z}},\psi_{\mathbb{Z}}),\Phi^\ddagger,K^{\ddagger,\square}}(S)$ for a general object S in $\mathrm{Ob}(Sch/\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)})$, since objects $(\mathcal{Q}, \boldsymbol{\lambda}, [u]_{(K^{\square}_{\Phi^\ddagger})^{g^\ddagger}})$ are finitely presented.

In fact, for any neat open compact $K^\ddagger$, $\xi_{(V_{\mathbb{Z}},\psi_{\mathbb{Z}}),\Phi^\ddagger,K^\ddagger,\mathbb{C}}$ is representable by $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi^\ddagger},\mathbb{C}}$. Let us explain this now.

Lemma 2.44. *Let $(\mathcal{Q}, \boldsymbol{\lambda})$ be a polarized 1-motive over a $\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}$-scheme S. Let $\mathcal{U} \subset V^\square\mathcal{Q}$ be an open compact subgroup of $V^\square\mathcal{Q}$ such that $\mathcal{U}_{\overline{s}}$ is $\pi_1(S, \overline{s})$-invariant for any $\overline{s} \in S$. Then there is a 1-motive $\mathcal{Q}'$ with a $\mathbb{Z}^\times_{(\square)}$-isogeny $f : \mathcal{Q} \to \mathcal{Q}'$ and a $\mathbb{Z}^\times_{(\square)}$-polarization $\boldsymbol{\lambda}' : \mathcal{Q}' \to \mathcal{Q}'^\vee$ such that $f^\vee \circ \boldsymbol{\lambda}' \circ f = \boldsymbol{\lambda}$.*

Proof. This is similar to Construction 2.4; see also [Mum91, Lem. 4.22] and [Lan13, Cor. 1.3.5.4]. In fact, there is a prime-to-$\square$ positive integer N such that $NT^\square\mathcal{Q} \subset \mathcal{U}$. Since $\frac{1}{N}\mathcal{U}/T^\square\mathcal{Q}$ is a finite prime-to-$\square$-torsion subgroup of $\mathcal{Q}$, define a homomorphism between 1-motives $g : \mathcal{Q} \to \mathcal{Q}'$ to be the quotient of $\mathcal{Q}$ by $\frac{1}{N}\mathcal{U}/T^\square\mathcal{Q}$. The quotient is a 1-motive by Lemma 2.14. Then $f : \mathcal{Q} \xleftarrow{[N]} \mathcal{Q} \xrightarrow{g} \mathcal{Q}'$ is the desired $\mathbb{Z}^\times_{(\square)}$-isogeny.

For the second sentence, let $\boldsymbol{\lambda}' := f^{\vee,-1} \circ \boldsymbol{\lambda} \circ f^{-1}$. See Appendix B for the definition of inverse $\mathbb{Z}^\times_{(\square)}$-isogenies. □

Then we can associate with any $\wp = [(x, p)] \in \mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi^\ddagger}}(\mathbb{C})$ a polarized 1-motive $(\mathcal{Q}_\wp, \boldsymbol{\lambda}_\wp)$ with a level structure $[u]_{(K^{\square}_{\Phi^\ddagger})^{g^\ddagger}}$.

Construction 2.45. (1) Since $(V_{\mathbb{Z}}, \psi_{\mathbb{Z}})$ is fixed, x determines an integral mixed Hodge structure $\mathbb{M}_{\mathrm{MH}}(x)$ of $V_{\mathbb{Z}}$. Then ψ or $-\psi$ is a polarization of $\mathbb{M}_{\mathrm{MH}}(x)$, which depends on x is in $D^+_{\Phi^\ddagger}$ or not. Since $P_{\Phi^\ddagger}(\mathbb{R})$ acts transitively on $\pi_0(D_{\Phi^\ddagger})$, we can assume that $x \in D^+_{\Phi^\ddagger}$. Then x determines a polarized 1-motive $(\mathcal{Q}_x, \boldsymbol{\lambda}_x)$ such that there is an isomorphism $\alpha_x : T_{\mathbb{Z}}\mathcal{Q}_x \xrightarrow{\sim} V_{\mathbb{Z}}$; for a different x' in $P_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})$-orbit of x, $\alpha_{x'}$ and α_x differ by an action of $P_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})$. That is, if $t \in P_{\Phi^\ddagger}(\mathbb{Q})$ and $tx = x'$, there is a commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} T_{\mathbb{Z}}\mathcal{Q}_x \otimes \mathbb{Q} & \xrightarrow{\alpha_x} & V_{\mathbb{Q}} \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \sim} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle t} \\ T_{\mathbb{Z}}\mathcal{Q}_{x'} \otimes \mathbb{Q} & \xrightarrow{\alpha_{x'}} & V_{\mathbb{Q}}, \end{array} \tag{2.27}$$

such that $V_{\mathbb{Z}}$ corresponds to $T_{\mathbb{Z}}\mathcal{Q}_x$ (resp. $T_{\mathbb{Z}}\mathcal{Q}_{x'}$) under α_x (resp. $\alpha_{x'}$).

Let us fix a choice of $x \in D^+_{\Phi^\ddagger}$ and $p \in P_{\Phi^\ddagger}(\mathbb{A}_f)$. Then there is a left-multiplication

$$c_{p^{\ddagger,\square}} : (V_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}, \psi_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}) \xrightarrow{p^{\ddagger,\square}} (V^{(p^{\ddagger,\square})}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}, \nu(p^{\ddagger,\square})^{-1}\psi_{\mathbb{A}^\square_f}|_{V^{(p^{\ddagger,\square})}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}}), \tag{2.28}$$

where $p^{\ddagger,\square}$ is the $\mathbb{A}^\square_f$-component of $pg^\ddagger$. Then $c_{p^{\ddagger,\square}}V_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}$ maps to an open compact subgroup of $V_{\mathbb{A}^\square_f} \xrightarrow{\alpha_x^{-1}} T_{\mathbb{Z}}\mathcal{Q}_x \otimes \mathbb{A}^\square_f \cong V^\square\mathcal{Q}_x$. By Lemma 2.44, there is a 1-motive $\mathcal{Q}_\wp$ and a $\mathbb{Z}^\times_{(\square)}$-isogeny $f_x : \mathcal{Q}_x \to \mathcal{Q}_\wp$, such that $V^\square f_x \circ c_{p^{\ddagger,\square}}(V_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}) = T^\square\mathcal{Q}_\wp$. Note that $\mathcal{Q}_\wp$ indeed only depends on $\wp$ but

not the choice of liftings (x,p). Let $u_\wp := V^\square f_x \circ c_{p^{\ddagger,\square}}|_{V_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}}$. Then the $(K^\square_{\Phi^\ddagger})^{g^\ddagger}$-orbit $u^\square := [u_\wp]_{(K^\square_{\Phi^\ddagger})^{g^\ddagger}}$ is the desired level structure.

Note that since this process determines a $\mathbb{Z}^\times_{(\square)}$-polarization $\boldsymbol{\lambda}'$ by *loc. cit.*, there is a unique polarization $\boldsymbol{\lambda}_\wp := r(p^{\ddagger,\square})^{-1}\boldsymbol{\lambda}'$ for $\mathcal{Q}_\wp$, such that, $u^\square$ sends $\psi_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}$ to a $\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^{\square,\times}$-multiple of $\mathrm{e}^{\boldsymbol{\lambda}_\wp}$.

(2) Conversely, let us fix any object $(\mathcal{Q},\boldsymbol{\lambda},[u]_{(K^\square_{\Phi^\ddagger})^{g^\ddagger}})$ over $\mathbb{C}$. There is a map $\alpha : T_\mathbb{Z}\mathcal{Q} \xrightarrow{\sim} V^{(g^\ddagger)}_\mathbb{Z}$, such that $\mathrm{Gr}_0\,\alpha = \alpha_0^{(g^\ddagger),-1}$ and $\mathrm{Gr}_{-2}\,\alpha = \alpha_{-2}^{(g^\ddagger),-1}$, and such that $T_\mathbb{Z}\boldsymbol{\lambda}$ corresponds to $\psi_\mathbb{Z}^{(g^\ddagger)}$ under α. In fact, fix a splitting $\delta_\mathbb{Z} : \mathrm{Gr}_\bullet T_\mathbb{Z}\mathcal{Q} \to T_\mathbb{Z}\mathcal{Q}$ and a splitting $\zeta_\mathbb{Z} : \mathrm{Gr}^W_\bullet V^{(g^\ddagger)}_\mathbb{Z} \to V^{(g^\ddagger)}_\mathbb{Z}$, where W is the filtration defined by $Q^\ddagger$. Then there is such an α, since there is an $\alpha_{-1} : \mathrm{Gr}_{-1}T_\mathbb{Z}\mathcal{Q} \to \mathrm{Gr}^W_{-1}V_\mathbb{Z}$ sending $\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{ab}$ to $\psi_\mathbb{Z}^{(g^\ddagger),ab}$ and since $\alpha_0^{(g^\ddagger)}$ and $\alpha_{-2}^{(g^\ddagger)}$ are determined by the definition of level structures. By Lemma 2.43, we find a point $x \in D_{\Phi^\ddagger}$, which determines an isomorphism of integral mixed Hodge structures $\alpha_x : T_\mathbb{Z}\mathcal{Q} \xrightarrow{\sim} V^{(g^\ddagger)}_\mathbb{Z}$.

Consider the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (V_{\mathbb{A}_f^\square}, \psi, Z^{(g^\ddagger)}_{\mathbb{A}_f^\square}) & \xrightarrow{\quad u \quad} & V^\square\mathcal{Q} \cong T_\mathbb{Z}\mathcal{Q}\otimes\mathbb{A}_f^\square \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle g^{\ddagger,\square}} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \alpha_x\otimes 1} \\ (V_{\mathbb{A}_f^\square}, \nu(g^{\ddagger,\square})^{-1}\psi, W_{\mathbb{A}_f^\square}) & \xrightarrow{\quad p \quad} & (V_{\mathbb{A}_f^\square}, r(g^\ddagger)^{-1}\psi, W_{\mathbb{A}_f^\square}). \end{array} \tag{2.29}$$

The dashed arrow is induced by multiplying some $p \in P_{\Phi^\ddagger}(\mathbb{A}_f^\square)$ since it sends W to W, sends ψ to a $\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^{\square,\times}$-multiple of ψ, sends $\mathrm{Gr}^W_0 V_{\mathbb{A}_f^\square}$ to $\mathrm{Gr}^W_0 V_{\mathbb{A}_f^\square}$ identically, and sends $\mathrm{Gr}^W_{-2}V_{\mathbb{A}_f^\square}$ to $\mathrm{Gr}^W_{-2}V_{\mathbb{A}_f^\square}$ by multiplying some element in $\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^{\square,\times}$. Then we have found a pair (x,p).

Hence, by Construction 2.45 and Lemma 2.43, $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi^\ddagger}}(\mathbb{C}) \cong \boldsymbol{\xi}_{(V_\mathbb{Z},\psi_\mathbb{Z}),\Phi^\ddagger,K^\ddagger}(\mathbb{C})$.

On the other hand, by [MP19, 2.2.14-2.2.17], or by Proposition 2.39 and the proof of [Lan13, Prop. 6.2.4.7], assuming that $K_p^\ddagger$ is hyperspecial when $\square = \{p\}$, $\boldsymbol{\xi}_{(V_\mathbb{Z},\psi_\mathbb{Z}),\Phi^\ddagger,K^{\ddagger,\square}}$ is representable by a separated smooth scheme $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi^\ddagger},\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}}(P_{\Phi^\ddagger},D_{\Phi^\ddagger})$ over $\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}$. Write $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi^\ddagger}} := \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi^\ddagger},\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}(P_{\Phi^\ddagger},D_{\Phi^\ddagger})$.

We then have $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi^\ddagger},\mathbb{C}} \cong \boldsymbol{\xi}_{(V_\mathbb{Z},\psi_\mathbb{Z}),\Phi^\ddagger,K^\ddagger,\mathbb{C}}$. Furthermore, $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi^\ddagger},\mathbb{Q}} \cong \boldsymbol{\xi}_{(V_\mathbb{Z},\psi_\mathbb{Z}),\Phi^\ddagger,K^\ddagger,\mathbb{Q}}$ as $\mathbb{Q}$-schemes, by [MP19, 2.2.5 and 2.2.6].

2.4.4. Recall that $\Phi_0 = (Q,X_0^+,g_0)$ maps to $\Phi^\ddagger = (Q^\ddagger,X^{\ddagger,+},g^\ddagger)$, that is, $Q \subset Q^\ddagger$, $X_0^+ \subset X^{\ddagger,+}$, and $g_0 = g^\ddagger$.

The embedding $\iota : (G_0,X_0) \hookrightarrow (G^\ddagger,X^\ddagger)$ induces a morphism between mixed Shimura data $\iota_{\Phi_0} : (P_{\Phi_0},D_{\Phi_0}) \to (P_{\Phi^\ddagger},D_{\Phi^\ddagger})$, which is an embedding by Corollary 1.10.

Fix a neat open compact $K = K_{0,p}K_0^p$. We can find a neat open compact $K^\ddagger = K_p^\ddagger K^{p,\ddagger}$, such that $K_{0,p} = K_p^\ddagger \cap G_0(\mathbb{Q}_p)$. By Lemma 1.22, $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_0,p}} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi^\ddagger,p}}$ is an embedding.

For integral models, let $K^\ddagger$ and K_0 be defined as in §2.1, and let $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0}}(P_{\Phi_0},D_{\Phi_0})$ be the normalization in $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_0}}$ of $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi^\ddagger}}$ under the morphism $\iota_{\Phi_0} : \mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_0}} \to \mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi^\ddagger}} \hookrightarrow \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi^\ddagger}}$. Write $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0}} := \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0}}(P_{\Phi_0},D_{\Phi_0})$. Note that the morphism $\iota_{\Phi_0} : \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0}} \to \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi^\ddagger}}$ induced by the normalization is finite, but not a closed embedding in general. When $\Phi_0 = (G_0,X_0^+,1)$, a trivial cusp label representative, $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_0}} = \mathrm{Sh}_{K_0}$. The normalization in Sh_{K_0} of $\mathcal{S}_{K^\ddagger}$ under the morphism $\iota : \mathrm{Sh}_{K_0} \to \mathrm{Sh}_{K^\ddagger} \hookrightarrow \mathcal{S}_{K^\ddagger}$ is denoted by $\mathcal{S}_{K_0}$, and the generic fiber of $\mathcal{S}_{K_0}$ is Sh_{K_0}.

Let $v|p$ be a place of E_0 over p, and let R be an $\mathcal{O}_{(v)} := \mathcal{O}_{E_0,(v)}$-algebra. For any choice of neat open compact $K^{\ddagger,p}$ subgroup containing K_0^p, we can associate an object $(\mathcal{Q},\boldsymbol{\lambda},[u]_{(K^p_{\Phi^\ddagger})^{g^\ddagger}})$ in $\boldsymbol{\xi}_{(V_\mathbb{Z},\psi_\mathbb{Z}),\Phi^\ddagger,K^{\ddagger,p}}(R)$ for any R-valued point in $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0}}(R)$ by pulling back the tautological family via

ι_{Φ_0}. Define $[u]_{(K^p_{\Phi_0})^{g^\ddagger}} := \varprojlim_{K^p_{\Phi_0}\subset K^p_{\Phi^\ddagger}} [u]_{(K^p_{\Phi^\ddagger})^{g^\ddagger}}$. Then we have associated a tuple $(\mathcal{Q}, \boldsymbol{\lambda}, [u]_{(K^p_{\Phi_0})^{g^\ddagger}})$ to any R-point. See Construction 2.45 for the case when $R = \mathbb{C}$.

2.5. **Toroidal compactifications of integral models of Hodge type.** For the convenience of the readers, let us briefly summarize Chai and Faltings', Lan's and Madapusi's theorems on toroidal compactifications of integral models of Shimura varieties of Siegel/PEL/Hodge type.

Theorem 2.46 (Faltings-Chai [FC90], for Siegel-type case; Lan [Lan13], [Lan16] and [Lan17], for PEL-type case; Madapusi [MP19], for Hodge-type case)**.** *Let (G, X) be a Shimura datum of Siegel, PEL or Hodge type. Let Σ be an admissible polyhedral cone decomposition for $\mathrm{Sh}_K(G, X)$. Let $K := K_pK^p$, where K_p is open compact in $G(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ and K^p is neat open compact in $G(\mathbb{A}_f^p)$. Fix a place $v|p$ of the reflex field E of (G, X). For different cases, we have the following assumptions for Σ:*

(1) If (G, X) is of Siegel or PEL type, we assume that Σ is any smooth or projective cone decomposition.
(2) If (G, X) is of Hodge type, we fix an embedding: $\iota : (G, X) \hookrightarrow (G^\ddagger, X^\ddagger)$. We assume that Σ is a refinement of an admissible cone decomposition Σ' for Sh_K, where Σ' is induced by a smooth, or smooth and projective cone decomposition $\Sigma^\ddagger$ for $\mathrm{Sh}_{K^\ddagger}$.

Under the assumptions for Σ as above, we have the following statements:

(1) There is a normal algebraic space $\mathcal{S}^\Sigma_K$ that is proper over $\mathcal{O}_{E,(v)}$ extending the toroidal compactification Sh^Σ_K over E constructed by [Pin90]. The algebraic space $\mathcal{S}^\Sigma_K$ is a projective scheme if Σ is induced by a projective $\Sigma^\ddagger$; if Σ is smooth, $\mathcal{S}^\Sigma_K$ is smooth if and only if $\mathcal{S}_K$ is smooth.
(2) We have a good stratification $\mathcal{S}^\Sigma_K = \coprod_{\Upsilon} \mathcal{Z}_{\Upsilon,K}$, where each $\mathcal{Z}_{\Upsilon,K}$ is a locally closed normal subspace of $\mathcal{S}^\Sigma_K$ that is flat over $\mathcal{O}_{E,(v)}$. The strata $\mathcal{Z}_{\Upsilon,K}$ are indexed by the same set of cusp labels with cones with elements of the form $\Upsilon = [(\Phi, \sigma)] \in \mathrm{Cusp}_K(G, X, \Sigma)$ defined in the characteristic zero theory. Moreover, $\overline{\mathcal{Z}}_{\Upsilon,K} = \coprod_{\Upsilon'\leq\Upsilon} \mathcal{Z}_{\Upsilon',K}$.
(3) Fix any $\Upsilon = [(\Phi, \sigma)]$. There is an integral model $\mathcal{S}_{K_\Phi}$ of the boundary mixed Shimura variety Sh_{K_Φ}, defined over $\mathcal{O}_{E,(v)}$. There is a tower $\mathcal{S}_{K_\Phi} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_\Phi} \to \mathcal{S}_{K_\Phi,h}$ over $\mathcal{O}_{E,(v)}$ extending the tower $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi} \to \overline{\mathrm{Sh}}_{K_\Phi} \to \mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi,h}$ over E, where the first morphism is an $\mathbf{E}_{K_\Phi}$-torsor and the second morphism is proper. Denote by $\mathcal{S}_{K_\Phi}(\sigma)$ the toric scheme defined by the twisted affine torus embedding $\mathcal{S}_{K_\Phi}(\sigma) := \mathcal{S}_{K_\Phi} \times^{\mathbf{E}_{K_\Phi}} \mathbf{E}_{K_\Phi}(\sigma)$. Denote by $\mathcal{S}_{K_\Phi,\sigma}$ the σ-stratum of $\mathcal{S}_{K_\Phi}(\sigma)$.
(4) There is an isomorphism $\mathcal{S}_{K_\Phi,\sigma} \cong \mathcal{Z}_{[(\Phi,\sigma)],K}$ between the σ-stratum in $\mathcal{S}_{K_\Phi}(\sigma)$ and the stratum $\mathcal{Z}_{[(\Phi,\sigma)],K}$ in $\mathcal{S}^\Sigma_K$. Moreover, there is a strata-preserving isomorphism $(\mathcal{S}_{K_\Phi}(\sigma))^\wedge_{\mathcal{S}_{K_\Phi,\sigma}} \cong (\mathcal{S}^\Sigma_K)^\wedge_{\mathcal{Z}_{[(\Phi,\sigma)],K}}$. Here, "strata-preserving" has the following meaning: For any affine open formal subscheme $\mathfrak{U} = \mathrm{Spf}(A, I)$ of $(\mathcal{S}_{K_\Phi}(\sigma))^\wedge_{\mathcal{S}_{K_\Phi,\sigma}} \cong (\mathcal{S}^\Sigma_K)^\wedge_{\mathcal{Z}_{[(\Phi,\sigma)],K}}$ which canonically induces morphisms $\mathsf{c}_1 : \mathrm{Spec}\, A \to \mathcal{S}_{K_\Phi}(\sigma)$ and $\mathsf{c}_2 : \mathrm{Spec}\, A \to \mathcal{S}^\Sigma_K$, the two stratifications on $\mathrm{Spec}\, A$ defined by the pullback of the stratification on $\mathcal{S}_{K_\Phi}(\sigma)$ under c_1 and the pullback of the stratification on $\mathcal{S}^\Sigma_K$ under c_2 coincide.

Convention 2.47. *To be compatible with the conventions of the previous subsections, when (G, X) is of Siegel type, in the theorem above: $(G, X) = (G^\ddagger, X^\ddagger)$, $K = K^\ddagger$, and all the symbols "Φ" and "σ" in the theorem above should be added superscripts "$\ddagger$". Similarly, when (G, X) of Hodge type, then in the theorem above: $(G, X) = (G_0, X_0)$, $K = K_0$, and all "Φ" and "σ" above should be added subscripts 0. That is, $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi^\ddagger}}$ (resp. $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0}}$) introduced in previous subsections are the integral models of boundary mixed Shimura varieties $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi^\ddagger}}$ (resp. $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_0}}$) described in Part 3 of Theorem 2.46 for the compactification $\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma^\ddagger}_{K^\ddagger}$ (resp. $\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma_0}_{K_0}$).*

The assumptions in [FC90] are: (1)$(G,X)=(G^\ddagger,X^\ddagger)$ is of Siegel type, (2)$K^\ddagger=K^\ddagger(n)$ is a principal n level subgroup with $(n,p)=1$, and (3)$\Sigma^\ddagger$ is smooth with respect to $K^\ddagger$ (and is admissible, finite, complete and without self-intersections). In [Lan13], the $\mathcal{S}_K^\Sigma$ as above is constructed when (G,X) is of PEL type, $K=K_pK^p$ is defined as Theorem 2.46 with the assumption that K_p is hyperspecial, and Σ is smooth with respect to K; the hyperspecial assumption for K_p is removed in [Lan16]. In [Lan17], the $\mathcal{S}_K^\Sigma$ as above is constructed for any projective Σ. In [MP19], there is also no assumption on the level $K_{0,p}$ at p when $(G,X)=(G_0,X_0)$ is of Hodge type. In fact, with the same settings as in §2.1, if $\Sigma=\Sigma_0$ is induced by some smooth cone decomposition $\Sigma^\ddagger$ for $(G^\ddagger,X^\ddagger)$ via the embedding $\iota:(G_0,X_0)\hookrightarrow(G^\ddagger,X^\ddagger)$, then $\mathcal{S}_{K_0}^{\Sigma_0}$, the toroidal compactification of the integral model $\mathcal{S}_{K_0}$ associated with the cone decomposition Σ_0, is constructed as the normalization in Sh_K^Σ of the toroidal compactification $\mathcal{S}_{K^\ddagger}^{\Sigma^\ddagger}$ of the Siegel-type integral model $\mathcal{S}_{K^\ddagger}$. When Σ_0' is a refinement of Σ_0, there is also such a $\mathcal{S}_K^{\Sigma_0'}$ as in the theorem above by [MP19, Rmk. 4.1.6].

When $(G,X)=(G^\ddagger,X^\ddagger)$ is of Siegel type and $K^\ddagger$ is chosen as in §2.1, there is a degenerating family $(\mathcal{G}^\ddagger,\lambda^\ddagger,[\varepsilon_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}]_{K^{\ddagger,p}})$ of type $\mathbf{M}^{\mathrm{iso}}_{(V_\mathbb{Z},\psi_\mathbb{Z}),K^{\ddagger,p}}$ extending the universal family $(\mathcal{A}^\ddagger,\lambda^\ddagger|_\mathcal{A},[\varepsilon_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}]_{K^{\ddagger,p}})$ over $\mathcal{S}_{K^\ddagger}$.

As we will work over an extension of the reflex field later, let us record the following result:

Proposition 2.48. *Let F be any finite field extension of E. Let $\mathcal{S}^\Sigma_{K,\mathcal{O}_F}$ be the normalization of the base change $\mathcal{S}^\Sigma_K\otimes_{\mathcal{O}_{E,(v)}}(\mathcal{O}_{E,(v)}\otimes_{\mathcal{O}_E}\mathcal{O}_F)$. Then the same results in Theorem 2.46 also hold for $\mathcal{S}^\Sigma_{K,\mathcal{O}_F}$, with the strata and toric torsors replaced also by the normalizations of their base change from $\mathcal{O}_{E,(v)}$ to $\mathcal{O}_{E,(v)}\otimes_{\mathcal{O}_E}\mathcal{O}_F$.*

Proof. This can be seen from construction, as the arguments in [MP19] still work if the reflex field is replaced with a finite field extension of it, but let us give a direct proof here. We temporarily denote all normalizations of the base changes of $\mathcal{O}_{E,(v)}$-algebraic spaces to $\mathcal{O}_F\otimes_{\mathcal{O}_E}\mathcal{O}_{E,(v)}$ by adding subscript $\mathcal{O}_F$ and denote corresponding usual base changes by adding $[\mathcal{O}_F]$. The first assertion in Theorem 2.46 is clear; the third one is true because torus parts commute with normalization and base change. There is a quasi-finite morphism $\mathcal{Z}_{\Upsilon,K,\mathcal{O}_F}\to\mathcal{S}^\Sigma_{K,\mathcal{O}_F}$ with locally closed image denoted by $[\mathcal{Z}_\Upsilon]$; the induced morphism $\mathcal{Z}_{\Upsilon,K,\mathcal{O}_F}\to[\mathcal{Z}_\Upsilon]$ is finite and birational. We just need to show that $[\mathcal{Z}_\Upsilon]$ is normal and isomorphic to $\mathcal{Z}_{\Upsilon,K,\mathcal{O}_F}$, and that $(\mathcal{S}_{K_\Phi,\mathcal{O}_F}(\sigma))^\wedge_{\mathcal{S}_{K_\Phi,\mathcal{O}_F,\sigma}}\cong(\mathcal{S}^\Sigma_{K,\mathcal{O}_F})^\wedge_{[\mathcal{Z}_\Upsilon]}$.

By [LS18a, Sec. 3.1], the assertions except for the normality are true for the usual base change to $\mathcal{O}_{E,(v)}\otimes_{\mathcal{O}_E}\mathcal{O}_F$. Let $\bar{x}$ be any $\overline{\mathbb{F}}_p$-point of $[\mathcal{Z}_\Upsilon]$ which maps to $\bar{y}$ in $\mathcal{Z}_{\Upsilon,K,[\mathcal{O}_F]}\hookrightarrow\mathcal{S}^\Sigma_{K,[\mathcal{O}_F]}$ and lifts to an $\overline{\mathbb{F}}_p$-point $\bar{x}_0$ in $\mathcal{Z}_{\Upsilon,K,\mathcal{O}_F}$. This induces a finite homomorphism from the complete local ring at $\bar{y}$, $\widehat{\mathcal{O}}_{\bar{y}}$, to the complete local ring at $\bar{x}$, $\widehat{\mathcal{O}}_{\bar{x}}$. Moreover, from *loc. cit.* we have $\widehat{\mathcal{O}}_{\bar{y}}\cong\widehat{\mathcal{O}}_{\mathcal{S}_{K_\Phi,[\mathcal{O}_F](\sigma),\bar{y}}}$ (since pullbacks still have a good description of formal completions). Suppose that $\bar{y}$ maps to a point $\bar{z}$ in $\mathcal{S}_{K_\Phi,\sigma,[\mathcal{O}_F]}$ under the canonical projection to σ-stratum. Let $\widehat{\mathcal{O}}^*_{\bar{z}}$ be the normalization in $\widehat{\mathcal{O}}_{\bar{x}}$ of the complete local ring $\widehat{\mathcal{O}}_{\mathcal{S}_{K_\Phi,\sigma,[\mathcal{O}_F],\bar{z}}}$ via the ring homomorphism $\widehat{\mathcal{O}}_{\mathcal{S}_{K_\Phi,\sigma,[\mathcal{O}_F],\bar{z}}}\to\widehat{\mathcal{O}}_{\bar{y}}\cong\widehat{\mathcal{O}}_{\mathcal{S}_{K_\Phi,[\mathcal{O}_F](\sigma),\bar{y}}}\to\widehat{\mathcal{O}}_{\bar{x}}$. Then we have $\widehat{\mathcal{O}}_{\mathcal{Z}_{\Upsilon,K,\mathcal{O}_F},\bar{x}_0}\cong\widehat{\mathcal{O}}^*_{\bar{z}}$ by Zariski's main theorem. This implies that $\widehat{\mathcal{O}}_{\mathcal{Z}_{\Upsilon,K,\mathcal{O}_F},\bar{x}_0}\cong\widehat{\mathcal{O}}_{[\mathcal{Z}_\Upsilon],\bar{x}}$; therefore, $[\mathcal{Z}_\Upsilon]\cong\mathcal{Z}_{\Upsilon,K,\mathcal{O}_F}$. Moreover, we have $\widehat{\mathcal{O}}^*_{\bar{z}}\otimes_{\widehat{\mathcal{O}}_{\mathcal{S}_{K_\Phi,\sigma,[\mathcal{O}_F],\bar{z}}}}\widehat{\mathcal{O}}_{\bar{y}}\cong\widehat{\mathcal{O}}_{\bar{x}}$ by Zariski's main theorem again. Thanks to [MP19, Lem. A.3.2], we now obtain the desired description of the formal completion at the boundary. □

3. Twisting constructions

We continue with the notation in Section 2. Denote by G_0^{ad} the adjoint group of G_0. Denote by $G_0^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{R})_1$ the subgroup of $G_0^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{R})$ that stabilizes the subspace X_0 in X_0^{ad}. Denote $G_0^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})_1 := G_0^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{R})_1 \cap G_0^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})$.

By [Del79], there is a left action of $G_0^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})_1$ on $\mathrm{Sh}(G_0, X_0)$. The goal of this section is to construct "moduli descriptions" (called "twisting" in [Kis10] and [KP18]) in some special cases for this action on (integral models of) compactifications. From §3.1 to §3.3, we extend the twisting construction of Kisin-Pappas [KP18] to boundaries. In §3.4 and in a different setting, we construct a "twisting" related to the quasi-isogeny twisting of Lan [Lan16] in the Siegel case and conclude that twisting constructions admit extensions to toroidal compactifications (if the cone decompositions are compatible with the actions).

3.1. **Twisting abelian schemes.**

We explain Kisin and Pappas' twisting construction for abelian schemes and for algebraic tori. The main difference is that the original construction due to Kisin and Pappas is established on the level of abelian schemes up to prime-to-p isogenies. All materials are from [Kis10, Sec. 3.1 and 3.2] and [KP18, Sec. 4.4 and 4.5].

3.1.1. Let Z be a faithfully flat affine group scheme of finite type over A, where A is a commutative ring. For any A-module M, a Z-action on M is defined by a morphism between fppf sheaves $\mathbf{z} : Z \to \underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_A M$. Then $\mathbf{z}$ induces a map $M \xrightarrow{\mathbf{z}^*} M \otimes_A \mathcal{O}_Z$ that endows M with an $\mathcal{O}_Z$-comodule structure. Let $\mathcal{P}$ be a Z-torsor over A. Then $M \otimes_A \mathcal{O}_{\mathcal{P}}$ is an $\mathcal{O}_{\mathcal{P}}$-module with semilinear Z-action. Then $(M \otimes_A \mathcal{O}_{\mathcal{P}})^Z$, the submodule of $N := M \otimes_A \mathcal{O}_{\mathcal{P}}$ fixed by Z, can be viewed as the equalizer of the natural $\mathcal{O}_Z$-comodule structure $\mathbf{z}^* : N \to N \otimes_A \mathcal{O}_Z$ of N and the map $p^* : N \to N \otimes_A \mathcal{O}_Z$ determined by the natural projection $Z \times_{\mathrm{Spec}\, A} M \to M$. By [KP18, Lem. 4.4.3],

$$(M \otimes_A \mathcal{O}_{\mathcal{P}})^Z \otimes_A \mathcal{O}_{\mathcal{P}} \cong M \otimes_A \mathcal{O}_{\mathcal{P}}. \tag{3.1}$$

Following [Kis10] and [KP18], define the **twisting of M by $\mathcal{P}$** by an exact functor

$$(-)^{\mathcal{P}} : M \mapsto M^{\mathcal{P}} := (M \otimes_A \mathcal{O}_{\mathcal{P}})^Z,$$

where the exactness follows from (3.1) and the faithful flatness of Z (and $\mathcal{O}_{\mathcal{P}}$) over A.

Now let $A = \mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$, let S be a $\mathrm{Spec}\, \mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$-scheme and also assume that Z is commutative. Set $\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)} := \mathcal{O}_F \otimes \mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$. Since $\mathcal{P}$ is flat of finite type over $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$, by [MB89, I, Thm. 1.6], $\mathcal{P}(\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)})$ is not empty for some finite Galois extension F over $\mathbb{Q}$. For this, see also the proof of [KP18, Lem. 4.4.6].

Since $Z(\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)})$ acts on $\mathcal{P}(\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)})$ freely and transitively, for any $\tilde{\gamma} \in \mathcal{P}(\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)})$ and any $\sigma \in \mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})$, there exists a unique $z_\sigma^{\tilde{\gamma}} \in Z(\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)})$ such that $\sigma\tilde{\gamma} = z_\sigma^{\tilde{\gamma}} \cdot \tilde{\gamma}$. Since $z_{\sigma\tau}^{\tilde{\gamma}} \tilde{\gamma} = \sigma\tau\tilde{\gamma} = \sigma(z_\tau^{\tilde{\gamma}} \cdot \tilde{\gamma}) = \sigma(z_\tau^{\tilde{\gamma}}) \cdot \sigma\tilde{\gamma} = \sigma(z_\tau^{\tilde{\gamma}}) \cdot z_\sigma^{\tilde{\gamma}} \cdot \tilde{\gamma}$, we have associated with $\tilde{\gamma}$ a 1-cocycle $\sigma \mapsto z_\sigma^{\tilde{\gamma}}$. For another $\tilde{\gamma}' \in \mathcal{P}(\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)})$, there is a unique $z \in Z(\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)})$ such that $z\tilde{\gamma} = \tilde{\gamma}'$, and $\sigma\tilde{\gamma}' = \sigma(z) z_\sigma^{\tilde{\gamma}} \cdot \tilde{\gamma} = \sigma(z) z^{-1} z_\sigma^{\tilde{\gamma}} \cdot \tilde{\gamma}'$. This implies that $z_\sigma^{\tilde{\gamma}'} = \sigma(z) z^{-1} z_\sigma^{\tilde{\gamma}}$.

Specializing (3.1) at $\tilde{\gamma}$, we have an isomorphism

$$\iota^{\tilde{\gamma}} : M^{\mathcal{P}} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \mathcal{O}_{F,(p)} \xrightarrow{\sim} M \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}. \tag{3.2}$$

The Galois group $\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})$ acts on $\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}$ on the left-hand side and acts on both factors on the right-hand side. The action of $\sigma \in \mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})$ on $M \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}$ is via $\sigma \mapsto z_\sigma^{\tilde{\gamma}} \otimes \sigma \mapsto \mathbf{z}(z_\sigma^{\tilde{\gamma}}) \otimes \sigma$, and we will omit $\mathbf{z}$ if it is clear in the context. In particular, we have $M^{\mathcal{P}} \cong (M \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \mathcal{O}_{F,(p)})^{\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})}$.

3.1.2. Let R be a faithfully flat algebra over $\mathbb{Z}$. Denote $R_{(p)} := R \otimes \mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$. Suppose that M is a free $R_{(p)}$-module of finite rank and that M_R is an R-lattice in M. Let $f^{\tilde{\gamma}} : M_R \otimes \mathcal{O}_F \otimes \mathbb{Z}_{(p)} \to (M_R \otimes \mathcal{O}_F)^{\oplus|\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})|-1} \otimes \mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$ be a homomorphism between $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$-modules defined by $f^{\tilde{\gamma}} := \bigoplus_{\sigma\in\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q}) \text{ and } \sigma\neq\mathrm{id}} (z_\sigma^{\tilde{\gamma}}\sigma - \mathrm{id})$. Then there is a sufficiently large prime-to-p integer $N > 0$, such that $Nz_\sigma^{\tilde{\gamma}}\sigma$ is an endomorphism of $M_R \otimes \mathcal{O}_F$ for all $\sigma \in \mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})$. Define $f_N^{\tilde{\gamma}} := N \circ f^{\tilde{\gamma}}|_{M_R\otimes\mathcal{O}_F}$, and define $M_R^{\tilde{\gamma}} := \ker f_N^{\tilde{\gamma}}$.

Let V and W be two finite free $R_{(p)}$-modules as M above. Suppose that there is an $R_{(p)}$-isomorphism $g : V \to W$. Suppose that V (resp. W) is equipped with a Z-action denoted by $\mathbf{z}^V$ (resp. $\mathbf{z}^W$). We say $\mathbf{z}^V$ and $\mathbf{z}^W$ are compatible with g if, for any $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$-algebra R_0 and any $z \in Z(\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)})$, $\mathbf{z}^W(z) = g \circ \mathbf{z}^V(z) \circ g^{-1} \in \mathrm{End}_{R_{(p)}\otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} R_0}(W \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} R_0)$. We summarize the following observation:

Lemma 3.1. *Let V_R (resp. W_R) be an R-lattice of V (resp. W). Let $g : V_R \to W_R$ be a homomorphism between R-lattices of V and W such that $f \otimes \mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$ is an isomorphism. Let F be a Galois extension of $\mathbb{Q}$. Suppose that W is equipped with a compatible Z-action induced by g as above. Fix any $\tilde{\gamma} \in \mathcal{P}(\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)})$. Let N be any positive prime-to-p integer such that $N\mathbf{z}^V(z_\sigma^{\tilde{\gamma}})$ (resp. $N\mathbf{z}^W(z_\sigma^{\tilde{\gamma}})$) lies in $\mathrm{End}(V_R \otimes \mathcal{O}_F)$ (resp. $\mathrm{End}(W_R \otimes \mathcal{O}_F)$) for any $\sigma \in \mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})$. Then there is a unique homomorphism $f_N^{W,\tilde{\gamma}} : W_R \otimes \mathcal{O}_F \to W_R \otimes \mathcal{O}_F{}^{\oplus|\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})|-1}$ such that the diagram*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} V_R \otimes \mathcal{O}_F & \xrightarrow{\quad g \quad} & W_R \otimes \mathcal{O}_F \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle f_N^{\tilde{\gamma}}} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle f_N^{W,\tilde{\gamma}}} \\ (V_R \otimes \mathcal{O}_F)^{\oplus|\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})|-1} & \xrightarrow{g^{\oplus|\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})|-1}} & (W_R \otimes \mathcal{O}_F)^{\oplus|\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})|-1} \end{array} \tag{3.3}$$

commutes. By taking kernels of the two vertical arrows of the diagram above, there is a natural homomorphism $g^{\tilde{\gamma}} : V_R^{\tilde{\gamma}} \to W_R^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ which induces an isomorphism after tensoring $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$. For different choices of N, $g^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ varies by isomorphisms induced by multiplying prime-to-p integers.

If g is defined by multiplying $r \in R^\times$, then so is $g^{\tilde{\gamma}}$.

Proof. In fact, we let $f_N^{W,\tilde{\gamma}} := \bigoplus_{\sigma\in\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q}) \text{ and } \sigma\neq\mathrm{id}} ((N\mathbf{z}^W(z_\sigma^{\tilde{\gamma}})\sigma - N \cdot \mathrm{id})$ since $\mathbf{z}^V$ and $\mathbf{z}^W$ are compatible. The homomorphism $g^{\tilde{\gamma}} \otimes \mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$ is an isomorphism since $g \otimes \mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$ is so. □

3.1.3. Denote by S a $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$-scheme and denote by $\mathcal{A}$ a commutative group scheme over S. Let $\mathcal{N}$ be a finite free $\mathbb{Z}$-algebra. Suppose that there is an $\mathcal{N}$-action on $\mathcal{A}$, that is, there is a homomorphism $m : \mathcal{N} \to \underline{\mathrm{End}}_S(\mathcal{A})$. Let $\mathcal{M}$ be a finite $\mathcal{N}$-module. Define *Serre's construction* to be $\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}_{\mathcal{N}}(\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{A})^\circ$, the fiberwise identity component of the étale sheaf $\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}_{\mathcal{N}}(\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{A})$.

If $\mathcal{A}$ is an abelian scheme, $\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}_{\mathcal{N}}(\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{A})^\circ$ is representable by an abelian scheme over S. When $\mathcal{M}$ is a finite projective $\mathcal{N}$-module, $\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}_{\mathcal{N}}(\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{A})$ is fiberwise connected and therefore is representable by an abelian scheme over S. See, e.g., [Lan13, Prop. 5.2.3.9].

Assuming that $\mathcal{M}$ is finite projective, we can write $\mathcal{A}^{\mathcal{M}^\vee} := \underline{\mathrm{Hom}}_{\mathcal{N}}(\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{A}) \cong \mathcal{M}^\vee \otimes_{\mathcal{N}} \mathcal{A}$, where $\mathcal{M}^\vee := \underline{\mathrm{Hom}}_{\mathcal{N}}(\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{N})$. For any scheme T over S, $\mathcal{A}^{\mathcal{M}^\vee}(T) = \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{N}}(\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{A}(T)) \cong \mathcal{M}^\vee \otimes_{\mathcal{N}} \mathcal{A}(T)$.

For our purpose, we can further assume that $\mathcal{N} = \mathbb{Z}$ and that $\mathcal{M}$ is a finite free $\mathbb{Z}$-algebra of finite rank. Then $\mathcal{F}^{\mathcal{M}^\vee} := \underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{F}) = \mathcal{F} \otimes \mathcal{M}^\vee$ for any fppf sheaf $\mathcal{F}$ over S; this is just $\mathcal{F}^{\oplus r}$ equipped with an action of $\mathcal{M}^\vee$ (or rather, $\mathcal{M}$). In this case, $\mathcal{F}^{\mathcal{M}^\vee}$ is representable by a torus (resp. an étale locally constant sheaf of finite rank, resp. an abelian scheme, resp. a semi-abelian scheme) if $\mathcal{F}$ is representable by a torus (resp. an étale locally constant sheaf of finite rank, resp. an abelian scheme, resp. a semi-abelian scheme). If $\mathcal{Q} = [\underline{Y} \to \mathcal{G}^\natural]$ is a 1-motive, so is $\mathcal{Q}^{\mathcal{M}^\vee} := [\underline{Y}^{\mathcal{M}^\vee} \to \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\mathcal{M}^\vee}]$.

Now suppose that we are given a 1-motive $\mathcal{Q}$ and a finite Galois extension F of $\mathbb{Q}$. There is a canonical perfect reduced trace pairing between $\mathcal{O}_F$ and its inverse different $\mathrm{Diff}^{-1}_{\mathcal{O}_F/\mathbb{Z}}$:

$$\mathrm{Tr}_{F/\mathbb{Q}} : \mathcal{O}_F \times \mathrm{Diff}^{-1}_{\mathcal{O}_F/\mathbb{Z}} \to \mathbb{Z}.$$

This perfect pairing induces an isomorphism $\mathcal{O}_F^\vee := \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbb{Z}}(\mathcal{O}_F, \mathbb{Z}) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathrm{Diff}^{-1}_{\mathcal{O}_F/\mathbb{Z}} \subset F$.

Let $\boldsymbol{\lambda} : \mathcal{Q} \to \mathcal{Q}^\vee$ be an isogeny. Then

$$\boldsymbol{\lambda} \otimes 1 : \mathcal{Q} \otimes \mathcal{O}_F \longrightarrow \mathcal{Q}^\vee \otimes \mathcal{O}_F$$

is an isogeny. Any embedding of $\mathbb{Z}$-modules $i_F : \mathcal{O}_F \hookrightarrow \mathcal{O}_F^\vee$ induces an isogeny

$$(\boldsymbol{\lambda} \otimes 1)(i_F) : \mathcal{Q} \otimes \mathcal{O}_F \xrightarrow{\boldsymbol{\lambda}\otimes 1} \mathcal{Q}^\vee \otimes \mathcal{O}_F \xrightarrow{i_F} \mathcal{Q}^\vee \otimes \mathcal{O}_F^\vee$$

between $\mathcal{Q} \otimes \mathcal{O}_F$ and its Cartier dual $\mathcal{Q}^\vee \otimes \mathcal{O}_F^\vee$.

3.1.4. Let F, $\tilde{\gamma}$ and $z_\sigma^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ be defined as in §3.1.1. Let $\mathcal{A}$ be an abelian scheme or an algebraic torus over S. Let $[\mathcal{A}] := \mathcal{A} \otimes \mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$: it is the sheaf that represents $\mathcal{A}$ up to prime-to-p isogenies. More precisely, for any S-scheme T, define the T-value points of $[\mathcal{A}]$ to be $[\mathcal{A}](T) := \mathrm{Hom}_S(T, \mathcal{A}) \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$. Assume that Z acts on $[\mathcal{A}]$ via a morphism $\mathbf{z} : Z \to \underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}([\mathcal{A}])$: For any $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$-algebra R, there is a homomorphism $\mathbf{z}(R) : Z(R) \to \underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}([\mathcal{A}])(R) := (\mathrm{End}_S(\mathcal{A}) \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} R)^\times$. From the discussion above, we have a map $\iota_{\mathrm{Gal}} : \mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q}) \to \underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}([\mathcal{A}])(\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)})$ defined by $\sigma \mapsto z_\sigma^{\tilde{\gamma}} \mapsto \mathbf{z}(z_\sigma^{\tilde{\gamma}})$. The homomorphism $\mathbf{z}(\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}) : Z(\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}) \to \underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}([\mathcal{A}])(\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)})$ is equivariant with respect to the actions induced by the Galois action of $\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})$ on $\mathcal{O}_F$.

Since $\mathcal{O}_F$ is finite free over $\mathbb{Z}$, $\underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}([\mathcal{A}])(\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}) = (\mathrm{End}_S(\mathcal{A}) \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathcal{O}_F \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{Z}_{(p)})^\times \cong (\mathrm{End}_S(\mathcal{A}^{\mathcal{O}_F}) \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{Z}_{(p)})^\times \cong \underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}([\mathcal{A}^{\mathcal{O}_F}])(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})$. So the map ι_{Gal} above is equivalent to a map

$$\iota_{\mathrm{Gal}} : \mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q}) \longrightarrow \underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}([\mathcal{A}^{\mathcal{O}_F}])(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}).$$

The isomorphism (3.1) can be read as

$$[\mathcal{A}]^{\mathcal{P}} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \mathcal{O}_{\mathcal{P}} \cong [\mathcal{A}] \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \mathcal{O}_{\mathcal{P}}.$$

Evaluating at $\tilde{\gamma}$, we have an isomorphism between fppf sheaves over S:

$$\iota^{\tilde{\gamma}} : [\mathcal{A}]^{\mathcal{P}} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \mathcal{O}_{F,(p)} \cong [\mathcal{A}] \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}. \tag{3.4}$$

As discussed in §3.1.1, we have that $[\mathcal{A}]^{\mathcal{P}} \cong (\mathcal{A} \otimes \mathcal{O}_{F,(p)})^{\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})}$.

Since $\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})$ is a finite group, there is a positive prime-to-p integer N such that $N\iota_{\mathrm{Gal}}(\sigma) \in \mathrm{End}_S(\mathcal{A}^{\mathcal{O}_F})$ for all $\sigma \in \mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})$. There is a homomorphism between abelian schemes or algebraic tori

$$f_N^{\tilde{\gamma}} : \mathcal{A}^{\mathcal{O}_F} \longrightarrow (\mathcal{A}^{\mathcal{O}_F})^{\oplus|\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})|-1},$$

defined by $f_N^{\tilde{\gamma}} := \bigoplus_{\sigma\in\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q}) \text{ and } \sigma\neq\mathrm{id}} ((Nz_\sigma^{\tilde{\gamma}})\sigma - N \cdot \mathrm{id})$. Define $\mathcal{A}_N^{\tilde{\gamma}} := (\ker f_N^{\tilde{\gamma}})^\circ$ to be the fiberwise (geometrically) identity component of $\ker f_N^{\tilde{\gamma}}$. Hence, $\ker f_N^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ and $\mathcal{A}_N^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ are representable by closed subgroup schemes of $\mathcal{A}^{\mathcal{O}_F}$.

Let $f^{\tilde{\gamma}} : \mathcal{A}^{\mathcal{O}_F} \otimes \mathbb{Z}_{(p)} \to (\mathcal{A}^{\mathcal{O}_F})^{\oplus|\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})|-1} \otimes \mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$ be a morphism between sheaves defined by $f^{\tilde{\gamma}} := \bigoplus_{\sigma\in\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q}) \text{ and } \sigma\neq\mathrm{id}} (z_\sigma^{\tilde{\gamma}}\sigma - \mathrm{id})$. Since $(p, N) = 1$, $[\mathcal{A}]^{\mathcal{P}} \cong \ker f^{\tilde{\gamma}} \cong \ker Nf^{\tilde{\gamma}} \cong \ker f_N^{\tilde{\gamma}} \otimes \mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$.

For different points in $\mathcal{P}(\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)})$, we have the following lemma:

Lemma 3.2. *Let $\tilde{\gamma} \in \mathcal{P}(\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)})$. Suppose that $\tilde{\gamma}' = z\tilde{\gamma}$ for some $z \in Z(\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)})$. Let N' be an integer such that $N'z \in \mathrm{End}_S(\mathcal{A}^{\mathcal{O}_F})$ and $(N', p) = 1$. The homomorphism $N'z \in \mathrm{End}_S(\mathcal{A}^{\mathcal{O}_F})$ induces a prime-to-p isogeny between $\ker f_N^{\tilde{\gamma}'}$ and $\ker f_N^{\tilde{\gamma}}$.*

Proof. This is true because $(Nz_\sigma^{\tilde{\gamma}}\sigma - N)\cdot N'z = N'z\cdot(Nz_\sigma^{\tilde{\gamma}'}\sigma - N)$, where $z_\sigma^{\tilde{\gamma}'} = \sigma(z)z^{-1}z_\sigma^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ for any $\sigma \in \mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})$. □

3.1.5. Since $[\mathcal{A}]^{\mathcal{P}} \cong \ker f_N^{\tilde{\gamma}} \otimes \mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$, the isomorphism (3.4) is the base change to $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$ of the following composition of morphisms between schemes

$$\iota_N^{\tilde{\gamma}} : \ker f_N^{\tilde{\gamma}} \otimes \mathcal{O}_F \longrightarrow \mathcal{A}^{\mathcal{O}_F} \otimes \mathcal{O}_F \longrightarrow \mathcal{A}^{\mathcal{O}_F} \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_F} \mathcal{O}_F \cong \mathcal{A}^{\mathcal{O}_F},$$

where the first arrow is induced by the embedding $\ker f_N^{\tilde{\gamma}} \hookrightarrow \mathcal{A}^{\mathcal{O}_F}$ and the second arrow is induced by the multiplication of $\mathcal{O}_F$ to the second factor of $\mathcal{A}^{\mathcal{O}_F} \cong \mathcal{A}\otimes\mathcal{O}_F$.

Now we explain the proof of the following proposition:

Proposition 3.3. *With the conventions above, the closed subgroup scheme $\mathcal{A}_N^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ of $\mathcal{A}^{\mathcal{O}_F}$ is an abelian scheme (resp. an algebraic torus) over S if $\mathcal{A}$ is an abelian scheme (resp. an algebraic torus) over S.*

Proof. Since this question is Zariski local on the base, and all the objects and morphisms being studied are finitely presented, we assume that S is affine and of finite type over $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$. If $\mathcal{A}$ is an abelian scheme, we see that $\mathcal{A}_N^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ is proper since it is a closed subgroup scheme of $\mathcal{A}^{\mathcal{O}_F}$, and that it is fiberwise geometrically connected by the construction. Hence, for either case where $\mathcal{A}$ is an abelian scheme or an algebraic torus, we only need to show that $\mathcal{A}_N^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ is smooth. By the fiber-by-fiber criterion of flatness [Sta24, Lem. 039E], to show the flatness of $f_N^{\tilde{\gamma}}$, it suffices to show the fibers of $f_N^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ at all $x \in S$ are flat; by generic flatness [Sta24, Prop. 052A] and the group scheme structures on $\mathcal{A}_x^{\mathcal{O}_F}$, the homomorphisms $f_{\tilde{\gamma},N,x}$ are flat. We see that the homomorphism $f_N^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ is flat, so is its kernel. Then we only need to show that $\ker f_N^{\tilde{\gamma}}$, or equivalently, $\mathcal{A}_N^{\tilde{\gamma}}$, is fiberwise smooth, and it suffices to check it at all closed points of S. Note that for any point $x' \in S$ whose residue field is of characteristic 0, $\ker f_{N,x'}^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ and $\mathcal{A}_{N,x'}^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ are smooth by Cartier's theorem; see [Sta24, Lem. 047N].

For any closed point $x \in S$, the residue field κ_x of x is perfect. We write $K := \ker f_N^{\tilde{\gamma}} \otimes \mathcal{O}_F$ and $A := \mathcal{A}^{\mathcal{O}_F}$ for simplicity. We claim that $\iota_{N,x}^{\tilde{\gamma}} : K_x \to A_x$, the fiber of $\iota_N^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ at x, is an isogeny, i.e., is surjective with finite kernel. Granting this, we will know that $\ker \iota_{N,x}^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ is a finite group. Since $\ker \iota_{N,x}^{\tilde{\gamma}} \otimes \mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$ is trivial, $\iota_{N,x}^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ is a prime-to-p isogeny. Then the identity component of K_x is an abelian variety or algebraic torus and in particular is smooth. So K is smooth. As K° is isomorphic to a product of copies of $\mathcal{A}_N^{\tilde{\gamma}}$, the latter is also smooth.

Now we show the claim in the last paragraph. We apply Lemma 3.4 to $\iota_{\mathrm{red}} : K_{x,\mathrm{red}}^\circ \hookrightarrow K_x \xrightarrow{\iota_{N,x}^{\tilde{\gamma}}} A_x$. If $(\ker \iota_{\mathrm{red}})_{\mathrm{red}}^\circ$ is non-trivial, it will have nontrivial p^n-torsion points since it is an abelian variety or a torus. But this gives us a contradiction since $\ker \iota_{N,x}^{\tilde{\gamma}} \otimes \mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$ is trivial. Applying Lemma 3.4 to $f_N^{\tilde{\gamma}}$, we see that $\ker \iota_{N,x}^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ is finite. Then $\iota_{N,x}^{\tilde{\gamma}}(K) := K/\ker \iota_{N,x}^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ can be decomposed as $K_1 \cdot K'$, where K_1 is a finite group and K' is the image of $K_{x,\mathrm{red}}^\circ$ in A_x via $\iota_{N,x}^{\tilde{\gamma}}$. If $K' \neq A_x$, there is an abelian subvariety or a subtorus B in A_x such that $K' \cap B$ is finite and $K' \cdot B = A$. Then the cokernel sheaf $\mathrm{coker}\, \iota_{N,x}^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ of $\iota_{N,x}^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ is representable by a quotient of B by a finite group variety, and therefore is representable by an abelian variety or a torus. Since abelian varieties or tori have non-trivial p^n-torsion points, $\mathrm{coker}\, \iota_{N,x}^{\tilde{\gamma}} \otimes \mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$ is nontrivial, which leads to a contradiction. So $\iota_{N,x}^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ is surjective. □

Lemma 3.4. *Let κ be a field. Let A and B be two abelian varieties (resp. two algebraic tori) over κ. Let $f : A \to B$ be a homomorphism with kernel K. Let K_{red} be the reduced scheme associated with K. Suppose that K_{red} is geometrically reduced (for example, when κ is perfect), and therefore is endowed with a group scheme structure induced by K. Then:*

(1) *K satisfies an extension*

$$0 \longrightarrow K_1 \longrightarrow K \longrightarrow K_2 \longrightarrow 0,$$

where K_1 is a finite flat group variety and K_2 is an abelian variety (resp. algebraic torus).
(2) *Denote by K_{red}° the identity component of K_{red}. Then K_{red}° is an abelian variety (resp. algebraic torus) and the embedding $K_{\mathrm{red}} \hookrightarrow K$ induces an isogeny $K_{\mathrm{red}}^{\circ} \to K_2$.*

Proof. Without loss of generality, assume that f is surjective. If A is an abelian variety (resp. torus), K_{red}° is an abelian subvariety (resp. a subtorus) of A. Then there is an abelian subvariety (resp. a subtorus) A' of A such that $K_{\mathrm{fin}} := K_{\mathrm{red}}^{\circ} \cap A'$ is finite and such that $K_{\mathrm{red}}^{\circ} \cdot A' = A$; it follows from the Poincaré reducibility theorem in the abelian variety case. The quotient $K_2 := K_{\mathrm{red}}^{\circ}/K_{\mathrm{fin}}$ is an abelian variety (resp. a torus). Then there is a surjective homomorphism $\tilde{f} : A \to K_{\mathrm{red}}^{\circ}/K_{\mathrm{fin}} \times_{\kappa} A'/K_{\mathrm{fin}} \to K_2 \times_{\kappa} B$ between abelian varieties (resp. tori), which is an isogeny since the dimensions of the source and the target are the same. Let p_2 be the projection $p_2 : K_2 \times_{\kappa} B$ to the second factor. Then $f = p_2 \circ \tilde{f}$. Define $K_1 := \ker \tilde{f}$. Then we have the desired results. □

From the proof of Proposition 3.3, we see that the cokernel sheaf of the inclusion $\mathcal{A}_N^{\tilde{\gamma}} \hookrightarrow \ker \iota_N^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ is finite and the orders of its fibers are prime to p. Then $\mathcal{A}_N^{\tilde{\gamma}} \otimes \mathbb{Z}_{(p)} \cong \ker \iota_N^{\tilde{\gamma}} \otimes \mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$. Combining this with the discussion before Lemma 3.2, we have

Corollary 3.5. *The morphism $\iota_N^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ is a prime-to-p isogeny and $\mathcal{A}_N^{\tilde{\gamma}} \otimes \mathbb{Z}_{(p)} \cong [\mathcal{A}]^{\mathcal{P}}$ as fppf sheaves over S. Moreover, $\iota^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ is the base change to $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$ of the following $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}^{\times}$-isogeny*

$$\mathcal{A}_N^{\tilde{\gamma},\mathcal{O}_F} \xleftarrow{[N]} \mathcal{A}_N^{\tilde{\gamma},\mathcal{O}_F} \xrightarrow{\iota_N^{\tilde{\gamma}}} \mathcal{A}^{\mathcal{O}_F},$$

which we still denote by $\iota^{\tilde{\gamma}}$.

Since, for any positive integer M such that $N|M$ and $(M,p) = 1$, $f_M^{\tilde{\gamma}} = \frac{M}{N} f_N^{\tilde{\gamma}}$. We then have $\mathcal{A}_N^{\tilde{\gamma}} \cong \mathcal{A}_M^{\tilde{\gamma}}/\mathcal{A}_M^{\tilde{\gamma}}[\frac{M}{N}] \cong \mathcal{A}_M^{\tilde{\gamma}}$. So it makes sense to define $\mathcal{A}^{\tilde{\gamma}} := \mathcal{A}_N^{\tilde{\gamma}}$, where N is any prime-to-p positive integer such that $N z_{\sigma}^{\tilde{\gamma}} \in \mathrm{End}_S(\mathcal{A}^{\mathcal{O}_F})$.

Remark 3.6. *We may say $\mathcal{A}^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ is the twisting of $\mathcal{A}$ by $\tilde{\gamma}$. By Lemma 3.2, for another choice $\tilde{\gamma}' \in \mathcal{P}(\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)})$, $\mathcal{A}^{\tilde{\gamma}'}$ and $\mathcal{A}^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ lie in the same prime-to-p isogeny class, but might not be isomorphic. We will see later that this ambiguity can be eliminated by adding additional structures; see Proposition 3.11.*

3.2. **Twisting degenerating families.** In this subsection, we construct twisting of degenerating families. As a preparation, materials in §3.2.1-§3.2.3 are again from [Kis10, Sec. 3.1 and 3.2], [Kis17, Sec. 4.2] and [KP18, Sec. 4.4 and 4.5].

3.2.1. Let (G_0, X_0), $(G^{\ddagger}, X^{\ddagger})$, K_0, $K^{\ddagger}$ and $V_{\mathbb{Z}}$ be defined as in §2.1. Fix a place $v|p$ and denote $\mathcal{O}_{(v)} := \mathcal{O}_{E_0,(v)}$. Recall that $\mathcal{S}_{K_0} := \mathcal{S}_{K_0}(G_0, X_0)$ is the normalization of $\mathcal{S}_{K^{\ddagger}}$ in $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_0} := \mathrm{Sh}_{K_0}(G_0, X_0)$ via $\iota : \mathrm{Sh}_{K_0} \to \mathrm{Sh}_{K^{\ddagger}} \to \mathcal{S}_{K^{\ddagger}}$, which is a normal integral model of Sh_{K_0}; we will abusively denote by ι the finite morphism $\mathcal{S}_{K_0} \to \mathcal{S}_{K^{\ddagger}}$ induced by taking the relative normalization. Recall that $\square = \emptyset$ or $\{p\}$.

Denote by $G_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$ the schematic closure of G_0 in $G^{\ddagger}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} := \mathrm{Stab}_{G^{\ddagger}}(V_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}})$. Let Z_0 be the center of G_0. Let $Z_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$ be the schematic closure of Z_0 in $G_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$. Then $Z_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$ is a flat affine group scheme of finite type over $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$. When $\square = \emptyset$, $G_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}} = G_0$, $Z_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}} = Z_0$, etc.

Let $\mathcal{A}$ be the pullback to $\mathcal{S}_{K_0}$ of the universal abelian scheme over $\mathcal{S}_{K^{\ddagger}}$. By [KP18, Lem. 4.5.2], there is a natural embedding

$$\mathbf{z} : Z_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \hookrightarrow \underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}(\mathcal{A});$$

on the other hand, there is a natural embedding $Z_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \hookrightarrow G_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{GL}(V_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}})$ by the construction. Then there are natural $Z_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}}$-actions on both $V^{\square}\mathcal{A}$ and $V_{\mathbb{A}_f^{\square}}$ induced by the two embeddings above.

We denote by $(\mathcal{A}, \lambda, [\varepsilon_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^{\square}}]_{K^{\ddagger,\square}})$ the pullback to $\mathcal{S}_{K_0}$ (resp. Sh_{K_0}) of the universal family over $\mathcal{S}_{K^{\ddagger}}$ (resp. $\mathrm{Sh}_{K^{\ddagger}}$) obtained from the moduli problem $\mathbf{M}^{\mathrm{iso}}_{(V_{\mathbb{Z}},\psi_{\mathbb{Z}}),K^{\ddagger,\square}}$ when $\square = \{p\}$ (resp. $\emptyset$). Let $[\varepsilon_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^{\square}}]_{K_0^{\square}} := \varprojlim_{K_0^{\square} \subset K^{\ddagger,\square}} [\varepsilon_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^{\square}}]_{K^{\ddagger,\square}}$.

Lemma 3.7 ([Kis17, Lem. 4.2.4]). *With the conventions above, fix any representative $\varepsilon_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}$ in $[\varepsilon_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}]_{K_0^p}$. Let R be a $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$-algebra contained in $\mathbb{C}$. Then the isomorphism*

$$\varepsilon_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p} : V_{\mathbb{A}_f^p} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} R \longrightarrow V^p\mathcal{A} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} R$$

is $Z_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}(R)$-equivariant.

3.2.2. We equip $V_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$ with the action of $Z_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$ induced by the embedding $Z_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \hookrightarrow G_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{GL}(V_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}})$.

We denote by $\mathbf{V}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$ the $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$-module $V_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$ equipped with the trivial $Z_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$-action. Let $\mathbf{V}_{\mathbb{Z}} := \mathbf{V}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \cap V_{\mathbb{Z}}$. We denote by $\mathbf{V} := \mathbf{V}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \mathbb{Q}$ (resp. $V := V_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \mathbb{Q}$) the vector space V with Z_0-action induced by the $Z_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$-action on $\mathbf{V}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$ (resp. $V_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$).

Let $G^{\mathrm{ad}}_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} := G_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}/Z_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$. Let $G^{\mathrm{ad}}_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})_1$ be the subgroup of $G^{\mathrm{ad}}_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}(\mathbb{Q}) = G^{\mathrm{ad}}_0(\mathbb{Q})$ that stabilizes $X_0 \hookrightarrow X_0^{\mathrm{ad}}$, that is, $G^{\mathrm{ad}}_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})_1 := G^{\mathrm{ad}}_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}) \cap G^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{R})_1$. Let $\gamma \in G^{\mathrm{ad}}_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})_1$ and let $\mathcal{P}$ be the fiber of $G_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \to G^{\mathrm{ad}}_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$ at γ. As in §3.1.4, there is a finite Galois extension F over $\mathbb{Q}$ such that $\mathcal{P}(\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)})$ is non-empty.

Let $\tilde{\gamma}$ be any element in $\mathcal{P}(\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)})$ lifting γ. Then the $Z_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$-action on $\mathbf{V}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$ (resp. $V_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$) specializes to a $\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}$-semilinear $\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})$-action on $\mathbf{V}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}$ (resp. $V_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}$).

With the conventions above, the isomorphism between $\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}$-modules $(\tilde{\gamma}^{-1}\cdot) : \mathbf{V}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \mathcal{O}_{F,(p)} \to V_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \otimes \mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}$ formed by left-multiplying $\tilde{\gamma}^{-1}$ on the underlying $\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}$-modules is $\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})$-equivariant: Indeed, $z_\sigma^{\tilde{\gamma}}(1\otimes\sigma)\tilde{\gamma}^{-1} = (z_\sigma^{\tilde{\gamma}} z_\sigma^{\tilde{\gamma}^{-1}} \tilde{\gamma}^{-1})(1\otimes\sigma) = \tilde{\gamma}^{-1}(1\otimes\sigma)$ since $\tilde{\gamma}\tilde{\gamma}^{-1} = 1 \in G_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}(\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)})$. Together with Lemma 3.7, we obtain that

Proposition 3.8. *The composition*

$$\mathbf{V}_{\mathbb{A}_f^p} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \mathcal{O}_{F,(p)} \xrightarrow[\sim]{(\tilde{\gamma}^{-1}\cdot)} V_{\mathbb{A}_f^p} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \mathcal{O}_{F,(p)} \xrightarrow[\sim]{\varepsilon_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}\otimes 1} V^p\mathcal{A}^{\mathcal{O}_F} \tag{3.5}$$

is $\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})$-equivariant.

Then ${}^{\gamma}K_0^p := \gamma K_0^p \gamma^{-1}$ (see the convention list after the introduction) acts on $(\varepsilon_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p} \otimes 1) \circ (\tilde{\gamma}^{-1}\cdot)$ by right-composition, i.e., $\gamma g \gamma^{-1} \in {}^{\gamma}K_0^p$ sends

$$(\varepsilon_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p} \otimes 1) \circ (\tilde{\gamma}^{-1}\cdot) \mapsto (\varepsilon_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p} \otimes 1) \circ (\tilde{\gamma}^{-1}\cdot) \circ \gamma g \gamma^{-1}.$$

Then $(\varepsilon_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p} \otimes 1) \circ \tilde{\gamma}^{-1}(\mathbf{V}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p} \otimes F)$ is $\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})$-stable, and the K_0^p-orbit of it is $\pi_1(S, \overline{s})$-invariant when specializing to any geometric point $\overline{s}$ of S.

Assume now that ${}^{\gamma}K_0^p$ stabilizes $\mathbf{V}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}$. Consider the image of $\mathbf{V}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p} \otimes \mathcal{O}_F \subset \mathbf{V}_{\mathbb{A}_f^p} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}$ in $V^p\mathcal{A}^{\mathcal{O}_F}$ via $(\varepsilon_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p} \otimes 1) \circ \tilde{\gamma}^{-1}$. Then there is a $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}^{\times}$-isogeny

$$f : \mathcal{A}^{\mathcal{O}_F} \longrightarrow \mathcal{A}'$$

over S which induces an isomorphism $V^p f : V^p\mathcal{A}^{\mathcal{O}_F} \xrightarrow{\sim} V^p\mathcal{A}'$ such that $V^p f \circ (\varepsilon_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p} \otimes 1) \circ \tilde{\gamma}^{-1}(\mathbf{V}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p} \otimes \mathcal{O}_F) = T^p\mathcal{A}'$; the sheaf $[\mathcal{A}']$ is equipped with a $\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})$-action induced by f.

By Proposition 3.8, we can take the $\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})$-invariant part so that there is an isomorphism

$$\varepsilon_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}^{\tilde{\gamma}} : \mathbf{V}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p} \longrightarrow (T^p\mathcal{A}')^{\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})}.$$

The open compact subgroup $V^pf\circ(\varepsilon_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p,\overline{s}}\otimes 1)\circ\tilde{\gamma}^{-1}(\mathbf{V}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}\otimes 1)$ of $V^p\mathcal{A}^{\mathcal{O}_F}_{\overline{s}}$ is $\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})$-invariant and $\pi_1(S,\overline{s})$-invariant (by the assumption on ${}^{\gamma}K_0^p$), so it is contained in $V^p\mathcal{A}^{\tilde{\gamma}}_{\overline{s}}$, where $\mathcal{A}^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ is the twisted abelian scheme constructed in §3.1. Then, from the construction above, there is a $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}^{\times}$-isogeny $f^{\tilde{\gamma}}:\mathcal{A}^{\tilde{\gamma}}\to\mathcal{A}^{\tilde{\gamma},\prime}$ such that $T^p\mathcal{A}^{\tilde{\gamma},\prime}=(T^p\mathcal{A}')^{\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})}$. Hence, we write $\varepsilon^{\tilde{\gamma}}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}$ as

$$\varepsilon^{\tilde{\gamma}}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}:\mathbf{V}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}\longrightarrow T^p\mathcal{A}^{\tilde{\gamma},\prime}.$$

Lemma 3.9. *The isomorphism $\varepsilon^{\tilde{\gamma}}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}$ is independent of the choice of $\tilde{\gamma}\in\mathcal{P}(\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)})$ lifting γ.*

Proof. Let $\tilde{\gamma}'\in\mathcal{P}(\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)})$ such that $\tilde{\gamma}'=z\tilde{\gamma}$ for some $z\in Z_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}(\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)})$. There is a commutative diagram

(3.6)
$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
\mathbf{V}_{\mathbb{A}_f^p}\otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)} & \xrightarrow{(\tilde{\gamma}^{-1}\cdot)} & V_{\mathbb{A}_f^p}\otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)} & \xrightarrow{\varepsilon_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}\otimes 1} & V^p\mathcal{A}^{\mathcal{O}_F} & \xrightarrow{V^pf} & V^p\mathcal{A}' \\
 & \searrow^{(\tilde{\gamma}',-1\cdot)} & \downarrow z^{-1} & & \downarrow z^{-1} & \nearrow_{V^pf'} & \\
 & & V_{\mathbb{A}_f^p}\otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)} & \xrightarrow{\varepsilon_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}\otimes 1} & V^p\mathcal{A}^{\mathcal{O}_F} & &
\end{array}$$

The composition $(\varepsilon_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}\otimes 1)\circ(\tilde{\gamma}^{-1}\cdot)$ (resp. $(\varepsilon_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}\otimes 1)\circ(\tilde{\gamma}'^{,-1}\cdot)$) induces a $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}^{\times}$-isogeny $f:\mathcal{A}^{\mathcal{O}_F}\to\mathcal{A}'$ (resp. $f':\mathcal{A}^{\mathcal{O}_F}\to\mathcal{A}'$), such that $f=f'\circ z^{-1}$, since the images of $\mathbf{V}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}\otimes\mathcal{O}_F$ in $V^p\mathcal{A}^{\mathcal{O}_F}$ via $z^{-1}\circ(\varepsilon_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}\otimes 1)\circ(\tilde{\gamma}^{-1}\cdot)$ and $(\varepsilon_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}\otimes 1)\circ(\tilde{\gamma}'^{,-1}\cdot)$ coincide with each other. Then we have a commutative diagram above by [Lan13, Cor. 1.3.5.4] and Lemma 3.7, and we have the desired claim by taking the $\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})$-invariant part. □

Denote $\varepsilon^{\tilde{\gamma}}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}$ as $\varepsilon^{\gamma}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}$. We then call the ${}^{\gamma}K_0^p$-orbit $[\varepsilon^{\gamma}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}]_{{}^{\gamma}K_0^p}$ a **twisted (integral) level structure**.

3.2.3. Recall that $\nu:G^{\ddagger}\to\mathbb{G}_m$ denotes the similitude character. Denote by $\psi^{\mathbf{V}}_{\mathbb{Z}}:\mathbf{V}_{\mathbb{Z}}\times\mathbf{V}_{\mathbb{Z}}\to\mathbb{Z}(1)$ the pairing $\psi_{\mathbb{Z}}$ viewed as a pairing for $\mathbf{V}_{\mathbb{Z}}$. We can also obtain a pairing

$$\psi_{\mathbb{Z}}\otimes 1:(V_{\mathbb{Z}}\otimes\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)})\times(V_{\mathbb{Z}}\otimes\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)})\to\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}(\nu)$$

by the base change of $\psi_{\mathbb{Z}}$ to $\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}$. Similarly, define

$$\psi^{\mathbf{V}}_{\mathbb{Z}}\otimes 1:(\mathbf{V}_{\mathbb{Z}}\otimes\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)})\times(\mathbf{V}_{\mathbb{Z}}\otimes\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)})\to\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}(\nu).$$

Note that $\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})$ acts on $\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}(\nu)$ via $\sigma\mapsto\nu(z^{\tilde{\gamma}}_{\sigma})\sigma$ for $\psi_{\mathbb{Z}}\otimes 1$ and via σ for $\psi^{\mathbf{V}}_{\mathbb{Z}}\otimes 1$. Hence, there is a $\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})$-equivariant map

$$\tilde{\gamma}^{-1}:(\mathbf{V}\otimes\mathcal{O}_F\otimes\mathbb{Z}_{(p)},\psi^{\mathbf{V}}_{\mathbb{Z}}\otimes 1)\to(V\otimes\mathcal{O}_F\otimes\mathbb{Z}_{(p)},\nu(\tilde{\gamma})\circ\psi_{\mathbb{Z}}\otimes 1).$$

On the other hand, we do the same procedures for $\mathcal{A}^{\vee}$ as above. First, we obtain an abelian scheme $\mathcal{A}^{\vee,\tilde{\gamma}}$, which is defined by the $Z_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$-action given by the canonical isomorphism (B.2).

We then consider the diagram below.

(3.7)
$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
\mathbf{V}_{\mathbb{A}_f^p}\otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)} & \xrightarrow{(\tilde{\gamma}^{-1}\cdot)} & V_{\mathbb{A}_f^p}\otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)} & \xrightarrow{\varepsilon_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}\otimes 1} & V^p\mathcal{A}^{\mathcal{O}_F} & \xrightarrow{V^pf} & V^p\mathcal{A}' \\
\downarrow{\scriptstyle \psi^{\mathbf{V}}\otimes 1} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \psi\otimes 1} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle V^p\lambda\otimes 1} & & \vdots{\scriptstyle V^p\lambda^{\mathbf{V},\mathcal{O}_F}} \\
\mathbf{V}^{\vee}_{\mathbb{A}_f^p}\otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}(\nu) & \longrightarrow & V^{\vee}_{\mathbb{A}_f^p}\otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}(\nu) & \longrightarrow & V^p\mathcal{A}^{\vee}\otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}(\nu) & \overset{V^pf'}{\dashrightarrow} & V^p\mathcal{A}^*(\nu)
\end{array}$$

The first two vertical maps are canonically induced by the perfect pairings marked on the arrows. Let us explain how to produce the arrows in the lower-right corner. In fact, let $\mathcal{U}^{\vee}$ be the image of $\mathbf{V}^{\vee}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}\otimes\mathcal{O}_F$ in $V^p\mathcal{A}^{\vee}\otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}(\nu)$ via the composition $(V^p\lambda\otimes 1)\circ(\varepsilon_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}\otimes 1)\circ(\tilde{\gamma}^{-1}\cdot)\circ(\psi^{\mathbf{V}}\otimes 1)^{-1}$. Then, by [Lan13, Cor. 1.3.5.4] (see also [Mum91, Lem. 4.22]), $\mathcal{U}^{\vee}$ determines a $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}^{\times}$-isogeny

$f' : (\mathcal{A}^\vee)^{\mathcal{O}_F} \to \mathcal{A}^*$ and a prime-to-p isogeny $\lambda^{\mathbf{V},\mathcal{O}_F} : \mathcal{A}' \to \mathcal{A}^*$ so that the right square of the diagram above commutes.

By Lemma 3.7, $\varepsilon_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p} \otimes 1$ is $Z_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}(\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)})$-equivariant. Combining this with the facts that $\varepsilon_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p} \otimes 1$ sends $\psi_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}$ to a $\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^{p,\times}$-multiple of e^λ, and that $\psi_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}$ is $Z_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}(\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)})$-equivariant, we obtain that $V^p\lambda \otimes 1$ is $Z_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}(\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)})$-equivariant and therefore is $\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})$-equivariant. Hence, this is also true for $V^p f'$ and $V^p\lambda^{\mathbf{V},\mathcal{O}_F}$.

Moreover, since

$$V^p(\mathcal{A}^\vee)^{\tilde{\gamma}} = (\lambda^{\mathbf{V},\mathcal{O}_F} \circ V^p f \circ (\varepsilon_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p} \otimes 1) \circ (\tilde{\gamma}^{-1}\cdot) \circ (\psi^{\mathbf{V}} \otimes 1)^{-1})(\mathbf{V}^\vee_{\mathbb{A}_f^p} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}(\nu))^{\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})},$$

the image of $\mathbf{V}^\vee_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}$ in $V^p(\mathcal{A}^\vee)^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ induces a $\mathbb{Z}^\times_{(p)}$-isogeny $(\mathcal{A}^\vee)^{\tilde{\gamma}} \to \mathcal{A}''$ such that $T^p\mathcal{A}'' = (T^p\mathcal{A}^*)^{\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})}$. There is also a prime-to-p isogeny $\lambda^{\tilde{\gamma},\prime} : \mathcal{A}^{\tilde{\gamma},\prime} \to \mathcal{A}''$ which is the $\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})$-invariant of $\lambda^{\mathbf{V},\mathcal{O}_F} : \mathcal{A}' \to \mathcal{A}^*$.

Lemma 3.10. *With the conventions above, the abelian scheme $\mathcal{A}''$ is isomorphic to the dual of $\mathcal{A}^{\tilde{\gamma},\prime}$, and the isogeny*

$$\lambda^{\tilde{\gamma},\prime} : \mathcal{A}^{\tilde{\gamma},\prime} \to \mathcal{A}''$$

is a polarization.

Proof. Choose any positive definite perfect pairing $\mathrm{e}_0 : \mathcal{O}_F \times \mathcal{O}_F \to \mathbb{Z}$ which canonically induces an isomorphism of $\mathbb{Z}$-modules $i_F : \mathcal{O}_F \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbb{Z}}(\mathcal{O}_F, \mathbb{Z})$. Since $\lambda(i_F) : \mathcal{A}^{\mathcal{O}_F} \xrightarrow{\lambda} \mathcal{A}^\vee \otimes \mathcal{O}_F \xrightarrow{i_F} \mathcal{A}^\vee \otimes \mathcal{O}_F^\vee$ is a polarization (see [AK18]), so is $\lambda^{\mathbf{V},\mathcal{O}_F}(i_F) : \mathcal{A}' \xrightarrow{\lambda^{\mathbf{V},\mathcal{O}_F}} \mathcal{A}^* \xrightarrow{i_F} \mathcal{A}^* \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_F, i_F} \mathcal{O}_F^\vee$. Hence, we have obtained a polarization

$$\mathcal{A}^{\tilde{\gamma},\prime} \otimes \mathcal{O}_F \xrightarrow{\lambda^{\tilde{\gamma},\prime}\otimes 1} \mathcal{A}'' \otimes \mathcal{O}_F \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathcal{A}'' \otimes \mathcal{O}_F^\vee.$$

Taking the $\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})$-invariant part, we obtain a polarization $\mathcal{A}^{\tilde{\gamma},\prime} \otimes \mathbb{Z} \xrightarrow{\lambda^{\tilde{\gamma},\prime}\otimes 1} \mathcal{A}'' \otimes \mathbb{Z} \xrightarrow[\sim]{i_F} \mathcal{A}'' \otimes \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbb{Z}}(\mathbb{Z}, \mathbb{Z})$ (where the second isomorphism is induced by the unique positive definite perfect duality $\mathbb{Z} \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbb{Z}}(\mathbb{Z}, \mathbb{Z})$ and does not depend on i_F), which implies that $\lambda^{\tilde{\gamma},\prime}$ is also a polarization. □

Let $\mathcal{A}^\gamma := \mathcal{A}^{\tilde{\gamma},\prime}$ and $\lambda^\gamma := \lambda^{\tilde{\gamma},\prime}$.

Proposition 3.11. *Let $\gamma \in G^{\mathrm{ad}}_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})_1$. For the tuple $(\mathcal{A}, \lambda, [\varepsilon_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}]_{K_0^p})$, we can associate with it a tuple $(\mathcal{A}^\gamma, \lambda^\gamma, [\varepsilon^\gamma_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}]_{{}^\gamma K_0^p})$, which is independent of the choice of $\tilde{\gamma}$ lifting γ. For any open compact subgroup $K^{\ddagger,p,\prime}$ of $G^\ddagger(\mathbb{A}_f^p)$ containing ${}^\gamma K^p$ that stabilizes $\mathbf{V}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}$, the tuple $(\mathcal{A}^\gamma, \lambda^\gamma, [\varepsilon^\gamma_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}]_{K^{\ddagger,p,\prime}})$ is an object in $\mathbf{M}^{\mathrm{iso}}_{(\mathbf{V}_{\mathbb{Z}}, \psi^{\mathbf{V}}_{\mathbb{Z}}), K^{\ddagger,p,\prime}}$.*

This association defines a morphism $\gamma^{-1} : \mathcal{S}_K \to \mathcal{S}_{{}^\gamma K}$, whose generic fiber $\gamma^{-1} : \mathrm{Sh}_{K_0} \to \mathrm{Sh}_{{}^\gamma K_0}$ is determined by the map $[(x, g)] \mapsto [(\gamma(x), \gamma g \gamma^{-1})]$ over complex points.

Proof. The first paragraph is from the main construction in §3.2.2 and the paragraphs above. The tuple $(\mathcal{A}^\gamma, \lambda^\gamma, [\varepsilon^\gamma_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}]_{K^{\ddagger,p,\prime}})$ viewed as an object in $\mathbf{M}^{\mathrm{isog}}_{K^{\ddagger,p,\prime}}$ is exactly the twisting construction in [KP18, Sec. 4.5]. Combining it with [Kis10, Lem. 3.2.6], we obtain the second paragraph as in [KP18, Lem. 4.5.7] by normalization. □

3.2.4. Let Σ_0 be any admissible polyhedral cone decomposition for $\mathcal{S}_{K_0}$ that is compatible with an admissible polyhedral cone decomposition $\Sigma^\ddagger$ for $\mathcal{S}_{K^\ddagger}$. Let $\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma_0}_{K_0}$ (resp. $\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma^\ddagger}_{K^\ddagger}$) be the toroidal compactification of $\mathcal{S}_{K_0}$ (resp. $\mathcal{S}_{K^\ddagger}$) associated with Σ_0 (resp. $\Sigma^\ddagger$). Let $S := \mathcal{S}^{\Sigma_0}_{K_0}$ and $U := \mathcal{S}_{K_0}$.

For any K_0^p contained in $K^{\ddagger,p}$ as in §2.1, we denote by $(\mathcal{G}, \lambda_S, [\varepsilon_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}]_{K^{\ddagger,p}})$ the pullback of the degenerating family over $\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma^\ddagger}_{K^\ddagger}$ to S. Then $(\mathcal{G}, \lambda_S, [\varepsilon_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}]_{K^{\ddagger,p}})$ is a degenerating family in $\mathbf{DEG}_{(V_{\mathbb{Z}}, \psi_{\mathbb{Z}}), K^{\ddagger,p}}(S, U)$ extending $(\mathcal{A}, \lambda, [\varepsilon_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}]_{K^{\ddagger,p}})$. From §3.2.1, we obtain a tuple $(\mathcal{G}, \lambda_S, [\varepsilon_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}]_{K_0^p})$.

Denote $[\mathcal{G}] := \mathcal{G} \otimes \mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$, which represents $\mathcal{G}$ up to prime-to-p isogenies.

Lemma 3.12. *There is a natural isomorphism* $\underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}([\mathcal{G}]) \cong \underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}([\mathcal{A}])$ *induced by restricting automorphisms of* $[\mathcal{G}]$ *from* S *to* U*. In particular,* $\mathbf{z} : Z_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \to \underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}([\mathcal{A}])$ *extends uniquely to a homomorphism*

$$\mathbf{z}^{\mathcal{G}} : Z_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \longrightarrow \underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}([\mathcal{G}]).$$

Proof. The second statement follows from the first. By [FC90, I. Prop. 2.7], any homomorphism $f_U \in \mathrm{End}_U(\mathcal{A})$ extends uniquely to a homomorphism $f_S \in \mathrm{End}_S(\mathcal{G})$. Moreover, f_S is a prime-to-p isogeny if and only if f_U is so. (Indeed, if $f_U \circ g_U = g_U \circ f_U = [M]$ for some $g_U \in \mathrm{End}_U(\mathcal{A})$ and $(M,p)=1$, then g_U extends uniquely to $g_S \in \mathrm{End}_S(\mathcal{G})$ such that $f_S \circ g_S = g_S \circ f_S = [M]$, so the claim is true since $[M]$ is a prime-to-p isogeny for $\mathcal{G}$.) Hence, $\mathrm{End}_S(\mathcal{G}) \cong \mathrm{End}_U(\mathcal{A})$, which induces an isomorphism $\mathrm{End}_S([\mathcal{G}]) \cong \mathrm{End}_U([\mathcal{A}])$. So $(\mathrm{End}_S([\mathcal{G}]) \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} R)^\times \cong (\mathrm{End}_U([\mathcal{A}]) \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} R)^\times$, as desired. □

For any $\gamma \in G^{\mathrm{ad}}_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})_1$ as in §3.2.2, we describe the twisting of $(\mathcal{G}, \lambda, [\varepsilon_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}])$ by γ. Let F and $\tilde{\gamma}$ be as in §3.1. Denote by $f_N^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ the homomorphism defining $\mathcal{A}^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ as in §3.1. Then Lemma 3.12 implies that $f_N^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ extends uniquely to a homomorphism

$$f_{N,S}^{\tilde{\gamma}} : \mathcal{G}^{\mathcal{O}_F} \longrightarrow (\mathcal{G}^{\mathcal{O}_F})^{\oplus |\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})|-1}$$

over S, which can still be written as $f_{N,S}^{\tilde{\gamma}} = \bigoplus_{\sigma \in \mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q}) \text{ and } \sigma \neq \mathrm{id}} ((N z_\sigma^{\tilde{\gamma}})\sigma - N \cdot \mathrm{id})$. Denote by $(\ker f_{N,S}^{\tilde{\gamma}})^\circ$ the identity component of the kernel of $f_{N,S}^{\tilde{\gamma}}$.

Lemma 3.13. $(\ker f_{N,S}^{\tilde{\gamma}})^\circ$ *is a semi-abelian scheme over* S*.*

Proof. Arguing as in the first paragraph of the proof of Proposition 3.3, we only need to show that the fiber $(\ker f_{N,S}^{\tilde{\gamma}})^\circ_t$ at t is an extension of an abelian variety by a torus for $t \in S \backslash U$.

Write $\mathcal{G}_t$ as an extension $0 \to T_t \to \mathcal{G}_t \to \mathcal{A}_t \to 0$. Let f be any *surjective* homomorphism between $\mathcal{G}_t^{\mathcal{O}_F}$. Then f maps $T_t^{\mathcal{O}_F}$ to itself and also induces an endomorphism of $\mathcal{A}_t^{\mathcal{O}_F}$ by taking the quotient of $\mathcal{G}_t^{\mathcal{O}_F}$ by $T_t^{\mathcal{O}_F}$: To see this, note that $\mathcal{G}_t^{\mathcal{O}_F}/f(T_t^{\mathcal{O}_F})$ only has abelian part since it is the image of the proper scheme $\mathcal{A}_t^{\mathcal{O}_F}$.

By applying the last paragraph to $N z_\sigma^{\tilde{\gamma}} \sigma$ and $N \cdot \mathrm{id}$, we see that $f_{N,t}^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ maps the torus part of $\mathcal{G}_t^{\mathcal{O}_F}$ to the torus part of its target, and induces a homomorphism $f_{N,t}^{\tilde{\gamma},ab}$ from the abelian part of $\mathcal{G}_t^{\mathcal{O}_F}$ to the abelian part of its target. By Proposition 3.3, $(\ker f_{N,t}^{\tilde{\gamma},ab})^\circ$ is an abelian variety, and $(\ker f_{N,t}^{\tilde{\gamma}}|_{T_t^{\mathcal{O}_F}})^\circ$ is a torus. Finally, we note that there is an exact sequence

$$0 \longrightarrow \ker f_{N,t}^{\tilde{\gamma}}|_{T_t^{\mathcal{O}_F}} \longrightarrow \ker f_{N,t}^{\tilde{\gamma}} \longrightarrow \ker f_{N,t}^{\tilde{\gamma},ab} \longrightarrow \Lambda$$

with Λ some finite algebraic group. Indeed, $\ker f_{N,t}^{\tilde{\gamma},ab}$ is proper and $\mathrm{coker}\, f_{N,t}^{\tilde{\gamma}}|_{T_t^{\mathcal{O}_F}}$ is an affine group, so it follows by snake lemma. So the homomorphism $(\ker f_{N,t}^{\tilde{\gamma}})^\circ \to (\ker f_{N,t}^{\tilde{\gamma},ab})^\circ$ must be surjective: $(\ker f_{N,t}^{\tilde{\gamma},ab})^\circ$ is covered by its fiber in $\ker f_{N,t}^{\tilde{\gamma}}$, which is a union of connected components of $\ker f_{N,t}^{\tilde{\gamma}}$. Then the images of any two connected components of the fiber are equal.

After taking the identity component of $\ker f_{N,t}^{\tilde{\gamma}}$, we have an exact sequence

$$1 \longrightarrow \widetilde{T} \longrightarrow (\ker f_{N,t}^{\tilde{\gamma}})^\circ \longrightarrow \mathcal{A}_t^{\tilde{\gamma}} \longrightarrow 1,$$

where the first term $\widetilde{T}$ is an algebraic group of multiplicative type. Then we see that the quotient $(\ker f_{N,t}^{\tilde{\gamma}})^\circ/\widetilde{T}^\circ$ is a connected commutative group variety which is an étale cover of $\mathcal{A}_t^{\tilde{\gamma}}$, and therefore is also an abelian variety. Then we have proved the desired result. □

We denote $\mathcal{G}^{\tilde{\gamma}} := (\ker f_{N,S}^{\tilde{\gamma}})^\circ$.

Proposition 3.14. *With the conventions and constructions above, $(\mathcal{A}^\gamma, \lambda^\gamma)$ extends uniquely to a pair $(\mathcal{G}^\gamma, \lambda_S^\gamma)$ with $\mathcal{G}^\gamma$ a semi-abelian scheme over S and λ_S^γ an isogeny $\lambda_S^\gamma : \mathcal{G}^\gamma \to \mathcal{G}^{\gamma,\vee}$.*

Proof. By [FC90, I. Prop. 2.7], $\lambda^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ extends uniquely to an isogeny λ_S^γ if $\mathcal{A}^\gamma$ and $\mathcal{A}^{\gamma,\vee}$ extend to $\mathcal{G}^\gamma$ and $\mathcal{G}^{\gamma,\vee}$; the uniqueness of such $\mathcal{G}^\gamma$ and $\mathcal{G}^{\gamma,\vee}$ also follows from *loc. cit.*

There is a natural $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}^\times$-isogeny $f^{\tilde{\gamma}} : (\mathcal{A}^{\tilde{\gamma}}, \lambda^{\tilde{\gamma}}) \to (\mathcal{A}^\gamma, \lambda^\gamma)$ by Proposition 3.11. Choose any prime-to-p integer $M > 0$ such that $[M] \circ f^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ is a prime-to-p isogeny. Denote by d the degree of $[M] \circ f^{\tilde{\gamma}}$. Then $\ker[M] \circ f^{\tilde{\gamma}} \subset \mathcal{A}^{\tilde{\gamma}}[d]$. Denote by $\overline{K}$ the closure of $\ker[M] \circ f^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ in $\mathcal{G}^{\tilde{\gamma}}[d]$. By the following general fact Lemma 3.15, $\overline{K}$ is quasi-finite and étale. Then the quotient $\mathcal{G}^\gamma := \mathcal{G}^{\tilde{\gamma}}/\overline{K}$ is a semi-abelian scheme extending $\mathcal{A}^\gamma$ by [MB85, IV, 7.1.2] (see also [Lan13, Lem. 3.4.3.1]). □

Lemma 3.15. *Let X be a quasi-finite separated commutative group scheme over a locally Noetherian normal scheme S over $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$. Suppose that the order of X over every fiber is prime-to-p, and that there is a dense open subscheme U of S over which X is quasi-finite and étale. Then the schematic closure $\overline{X}$ of X_U in X is étale over S.*

Proof. We can show this by passing to the strict Henselization $\mathcal{O}_t^{sh} := \widehat{\mathcal{O}}_{S,t}^{sh}$ of the complete local ring $\widehat{\mathcal{O}}_{S,t}$, for any $t \in S\backslash U$. Moreover, we can replace U with the étale locus of $\overline{X}$ over S. If the lemma were not true, the complement $D := S\backslash U$ would be closed and *nonempty*. We can further let t be a minimal prime ideal in D. Denote the special fiber of $\mathcal{O}_t^{sh}$ by $\bar{t}$ and the complement of $\bar{t}$ in $\mathcal{O}_t^{sh}$ by U_t. To find the contradiction, we show the claim that $\overline{X}_{\mathcal{O}_t^{sh}}$ is étale over $\mathcal{O}_t^{sh}$.

As $\overline{X}$ is quasi-finite and separated, it can be decomposed as a disjoint union of schemes $\overline{X}_{\mathcal{O}_t^{sh}} = \overline{X}^f \coprod \overline{X}^\emptyset$, where $\overline{X}^f$ is a finite, open, and closed subgroup of $\overline{X}_{\mathcal{O}_t^{sh}}$ and $\overline{X}_{\bar{t}}^\emptyset = \emptyset$ (see, e.g., [Lan13, 3.4.1]). Over U_t, $\overline{X}_{U_t} = X_{U_t}$ is étale (and therefore quasi-finite étale over $\mathcal{O}_t^{sh}$). So it suffices to show the claim for $\overline{X}^f$. Since the commutative group scheme $\overline{X}_{\bar{t}}^f$ is contained in $X_{\bar{t}}$, it is of prime-to-p order, so each of its geometrically connected components must be trivial. Hence, $\overline{X}_{\bar{t}}^f \cong \pi_0(\overline{X}_{\bar{t}}^f)$ is finite étale over $\bar{t}$. By [GD64, 18.8.3, d)], for any point $x_0 \in \overline{X}_{\bar{t}}^f$, there is an affine open neighborhood U_{x_0} of x_0 in $\overline{X}^f$ such that the restriction to U_{x_0} of the structure morphism to $\operatorname{Spec} \mathcal{O}_t^{sh}$ is a closed embedding. Hence, we can write U_t as a disjoint union of open and closed subschemes U_1 and U_2 such that U_1 is the intersection of U_t and the image of U_{x_0} under the structure morphism. However, the closures of U_1 and U_2 in $\mathcal{O}_t^{sh}$ are two closed subschemes. Since $\mathcal{O}_{S,t}$ is a normal domain, so is $\mathcal{O}_t^{sh}$. So either U_1 or U_2 is empty. But the former case would imply that x_0 is not in the closure $\overline{X}_{\mathcal{O}_t^{sh}}$. So U_2 is empty, and therefore the morphism of U_{x_0} to $\operatorname{Spec} \mathcal{O}_t^{sh}$ is a surjective closed immersion. So the claim is true and the lemma is proved. □

Let $[\varepsilon_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}^\gamma]_{\gamma K_0}$ be the twisted level structure induced from $[\varepsilon_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}]_{K_0}$ by Proposition 3.11. Then the tuple $(\mathcal{G}^\gamma, \lambda_S^\gamma, [\varepsilon_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}^\gamma]_{\gamma K_0})$ is the desired **twisted degenerating family**.

3.2.5. Let us recall the construction of Hecke twists on $\mathcal{S}_{K_0}$ and $\mathcal{S}_{K_0}^{\Sigma_0}$; see [Lan13, 6.4.3]. Choose any $g \in G_0(\mathbb{A}_f^p)$ such that $K_0^{p,g} := (K_0^p)^g$ stabilizes some $\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p$-lattice $V'_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p} \subset V_{\mathbb{A}_f^p}$. Recall that $\nu(g)$ can be uniquely decomposed as $\nu(g) = r(g)h(g)$ for some $r(g) \in \mathbb{Z}_{(p),>0}^\times$ and $h(g) \in \widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^{p,\times}$.

Consider the sequence

$$V'_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p} \subset V_{\mathbb{A}_f^p} \xrightarrow{g\cdot} V_{\mathbb{A}_f^p} \xrightarrow{\varepsilon_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p} \otimes 1} V^p\mathcal{A}.$$

Then the image $(\varepsilon_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p} \otimes 1) \circ g(V'_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p})$ of $V_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}$ determines a $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}^\times$-isogeny $f : (\mathcal{A}, \lambda) \longrightarrow (\mathcal{A}^g, \lambda'')$. Since the map

$$g : (V_{\mathbb{A}_f^p}, \psi_{\mathbb{A}_f^p}) \longrightarrow (V_{\mathbb{A}_f^p}, \nu(g)^{-1}\psi_{\mathbb{A}_f^p})$$

sends $\psi_{\mathbb{A}_f^p}$ to $\nu(g)^{-1}\psi_{\mathbb{A}_f^p}$, we adjust λ'' to $\lambda^g := r(g)^{-1}\lambda''$, then $f\circ(\varepsilon_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}\otimes 1)\circ(g\cdot)$ sends $\psi_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}$ to a $\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^{p,\times}$-multiple of e^{λ^g}. By Lemma 3.15 and [FC90, I. Prop. 2.7] and as the proof of Proposition 3.14, $(\mathcal{A}^g,\lambda^g)$ extends uniquely to a pair $(\mathcal{G}^g,\lambda_S^g)$ of a semi-abelian scheme $\mathcal{G}^g$ and an isogeny λ_S^g over S. The tuple $(\mathcal{G}^g,\lambda_S^g,[\varepsilon^g_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}]_{K_0^{p,g}})$ is the desired Hecke twist of the degenerating family $(\mathcal{G},\lambda_S,[\varepsilon_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}]_{K_0^p})$.

Let $g\in G_0(\mathbb{A}_f^p)$ and let $\gamma\in G_0^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})_1$ be chosen as above. Following the sign convention in [Kis10, 3.4.4] and [KP18, 4.5.6], we convert the left action of $G_0^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})_1$ to a right action: the right action of $(g,\gamma^{-1})\in G_0(\mathbb{A}_f^p)\times G_0^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})_1$ is given by

$$(\mathcal{G},\lambda_S,[\varepsilon_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}]_{K_0^p})\mapsto((\mathcal{G}^g)^\gamma,(\lambda^g)^\gamma,[(\varepsilon^g_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p})^\gamma]_{\gamma(K_0^{p,g})}).$$

3.3. **Twisting 1-motives.** In this subsection, we describe the twisting action on 1-motives with additional structures. Note that this construction is similar to, but is not a direct consequence of, the last subsection.

3.3.1. Let us first record Lemma 3.16, which serves as the counterpart to [Kis10, Lem. 3.2.2] and [KP18, Lem. 4.5.2] for 1-motives. Let $Z_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$ and $G_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$ be the groups defined in §3.2.1. Recall that $Z_0(\mathbb{C})\hookrightarrow G_0(\mathbb{C})\hookrightarrow\mathrm{GL}(V_{\mathbb{C}})$ induces an action of $Z_0(\mathbb{C})$ on $V_{\mathbb{C}}$. Fixing an $x\in D_{\Phi_0}\subset D_{\Phi^\ddagger}$, the integral mixed Hodge structure $\mathbb{M}_{\mathrm{MH}}(x)$ corresponds to a 1-motive $\mathcal{Q}_x$. The action of $Z_0(\mathbb{Q})$ on $\mathbf{M}_{\mathrm{MH}}(x)$ induces an embedding

$$Z_0(\mathbb{Q})\hookrightarrow\underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_{\mathbb{Q}}\mathbf{M}_{\mathrm{MH}}(x)\xrightarrow[Thm.2.42]{\sim}\underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_{\mathbb{Q}}\mathcal{Q}_x.$$

The action of $Z_0(\mathbb{C})$ on $\mathbf{M}_{\mathrm{MH}}(x)\otimes_{\mathbb{Q}}\mathbb{C}$ induces an embedding $Z_0(\mathbb{C})\hookrightarrow\underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_{\mathbb{C}}\mathcal{Q}_x$.

Let us fix a $\wp=[(x,\mathbf{p})]$, where $\mathbf{p}\in P_{\Phi_0}(\mathbb{A}_f)$. Since there is a $\mathbb{Q}^\times$-isogeny $f:\mathcal{Q}_x\to\mathcal{Q}_\wp$, f induces an isomorphism $\mathbf{M}_{\mathrm{MH}}(x)\cong T_{\mathbb{Z}}\mathcal{Q}_x\otimes\mathbb{Q}\cong T_{\mathbb{Z}}\mathcal{Q}_\wp\otimes\mathbb{Q}$. So there is an embedding $Z_0(\mathbb{Q})\hookrightarrow\underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_{\mathbb{Q}}\mathbf{M}_{\mathrm{MH}}(x)\cong\underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_{\mathbb{Q}}T_{\mathbb{Z}}\mathcal{Q}_\wp\cong\underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_{\mathbb{Q}}\mathcal{Q}_\wp$; similarly, there is an embedding for $\mathbb{C}$-points, $Z_0(\mathbb{C})\hookrightarrow\underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_{\mathbb{C}}\mathcal{Q}_\wp$. Those embeddings do not depend on the choice of liftings $(x,\mathbf{p})$ of $\wp$. Moreover, we have

Lemma 3.16. *Let Φ_0 and $\Phi^\ddagger$ be the cusp label representatives defined as in §2.4. Let $\mathcal{Q}$ be the pullback of the tautological 1-motive $\mathcal{Q}^\ddagger$ from $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi^\ddagger}}$ to $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0}}$. Then there is an embedding $\mathbf{z}_{\Phi_0}:Z_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}\hookrightarrow\underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}\mathcal{Q}$, such that the pullback to $\wp$ of the $\mathbb{C}$-points of $\mathbf{z}_{\Phi_0}$ is the embedding above.*

Proof. The arguments are similar to those in [Kis10, Lem. 3.2.2] and [KP18, Lem. 4.5.2]. For any 1-motive $\mathcal{Q}$ over $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0}}$, denote by $\mathcal{Q}_\eta$ the generic fiber of $\mathcal{Q}$ over $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_0}}$.

First, let us show that there is an embedding $Z_0\hookrightarrow\underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_{\mathbb{Q}}\mathcal{Q}_\eta$. The idea is completely the same as [Kis10, Lem. 3.2.2]. Let $\wp=[(x,\mathbf{p})]\in\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_0}}(\mathbb{C})$. For any $(x,\mathbf{p})$ lifting $\wp$, x defines an embedding $e_x:G_0(\mathbb{C})\hookrightarrow\underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_{\mathbb{C}}\mathcal{Q}_x\cong\underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_{\mathbb{C}}\mathbf{M}_{\mathrm{MH}}(x)$. This embedding depends only on x. For any other $x'\in D_{\Phi_0}$, e_x and $e_{x'}$ differ by a conjugation of an element in $P_{\Phi_0}(\mathbb{R})U_{\Phi_0}(\mathbb{C})$. Hence, the embedding of $Z_0(\mathbb{C})\hookrightarrow G_0(\mathbb{C})$ composed with e_x does not depend on the choice of $x\in D_{\Phi_0}$. Thus, there is a well-defined embedding $Z(\mathbb{C})\hookrightarrow\underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_{\mathbb{C}}\mathcal{Q}_\eta(\mathbb{C})$, which induces an embedding $Z_0\hookrightarrow\underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_{\mathbb{Q}}\mathcal{Q}_\eta(\mathbb{C})$.

Let $E_0:=E(G_0,X_0)=E(P_{\Phi_0},D_{\Phi_0})$ (see [Pin90, Prop. 12.1]). Since $\mathcal{Q}_\eta[n](\mathbb{C})$ and $\underline{\mathrm{Aut}}\mathcal{Q}_\eta[n](\mathbb{C})$ are defined over $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_0},\overline{E}_0}$, so are $T_p\mathcal{Q}_\eta(\mathbb{C})$ and $\underline{\mathrm{Aut}}T_p\mathcal{Q}_\eta(\mathbb{C})$. So the action of $\mathrm{Aut}(\mathbb{C}/E_0)$ on $T_p\mathcal{Q}_\eta(\mathbb{C})$ and $\underline{\mathrm{Aut}}T_p\mathcal{Q}_\eta(\mathbb{C})$ factors through $\mathrm{Aut}(\overline{E}_0/E_0)$. Also, since $\underline{\mathrm{Aut}}(\mathcal{Q}_\wp(\mathbb{C}))\hookrightarrow\underline{\mathrm{Aut}}(T_p\mathcal{Q}_\wp(\mathbb{C}))$ at any $\wp$ (see Lemma 2.15), $\underline{\mathrm{Aut}}\mathcal{Q}_\eta(\mathbb{C})\cong\underline{\mathrm{Aut}}\mathcal{Q}_\eta(\overline{E}_0)$.

Let (T,X_T) be a Shimura datum of a $\mathbb{Q}$-torus T with an embedding $\mathbf{sp}_T:(T,X_T)\to(P_{\Phi_0},D_{\Phi_0})$. Denote by E_T the reflex field of (T,X_T). The projection of $\mathbf{sp}_T$ under $P_{\Phi_0}\to P_{\Phi_0,h}$ defines a special point $\mathbf{sp}_{T,h}:(T,X_T)\to(P_{\Phi_0,h},D_{\Phi_0,h})$, and we can assume T is maximal without loss of generality. Denote by $\mathcal{Q}_{X_T}$ the 1-motive determined by $X_T\hookrightarrow D_{\Phi_0}$. For any $\tau\in\mathrm{Gal}(\overline{E}_T/E_T)$, by the description in [Pin90, 11.4, p.188], $Z_0(R)$ commutes with τ for any finite $\mathbb{Q}$-algebra R when we view them as elements in $\underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_{\mathbb{Q}}\mathcal{Q}_{X_T,\overline{E}_T}$. Consider the orbit of conjugation of $\mathbf{sp}_T$ by $P_{\Phi_0}(\mathbb{Q})$ in the orbit of conjugation of it by $P_{\Phi_0}(\mathbb{R})U_{\Phi_0}(\mathbb{C})$. As $W_{\Phi_0}(\mathbb{Q})$ is dense in $W_{\Phi_0}(\mathbb{R})U_{\Phi_0}(\mathbb{C})$ under

the topology induced by Zariski topology on W_{Φ_0}, as $P_{\Phi,h}(\mathbb{Q})$ is dense (and in particular, Zariski dense) in $P_{\Phi_0,h}(\mathbb{R})$, and as $P_{\Phi_0}(\mathbb{R})U_{\Phi_0}(\mathbb{C})^+$ acts transitively on $D^+_{\Phi_0}$, $\mathrm{Gal}(\overline{E}_T/E_T)$ commutes with $Z_0(R)$ on the connected component of $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_0},\overline{E}_0}$ containing $\mathbf{sp}_T$; since the action of $\mathbf{p}\in P_{\Phi_0}(\mathbb{A}_f)$ is transitive on connected components of $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_0},\overline{E}_0}$ and is defined over E_0, this is true for all connected components. By [Del71b, 5.1] and [Pin90, Lem. 11.6] (by varying special points), the action of $\mathrm{Gal}(\overline{E}_0/E_0)$ commutes with that of $Z_0(R)$ in $\underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_{\mathbb{Q}}\mathcal{Q}_{\eta,\overline{E}_0}$.

Finally, let us show the statement over the integral model $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0}}$. By Lemma 3.18 below, any endomorphism of $\mathcal{Q}_\eta$ extends uniquely to an endomorphism of $\mathcal{Q}$. Then there is an embedding $Z_0\hookrightarrow\underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_{\mathbb{Q}}\mathcal{Q}$. For any point $\wp=[(x,\mathbf{p})]\in\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_0}}(\mathbb{C})$ as above, there is a map $Z_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}\to G_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}\to\underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}\mathcal{Q}_x\cong\underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}\mathbb{M}_{\mathrm{MH}}(x)\to\mathrm{GL}(V_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}})$; since the composition is injective, the map $Z_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}\hookrightarrow\underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}\mathcal{Q}_x$ is injective. Then there is an embedding $Z_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}\hookrightarrow\underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}\mathcal{Q}$. □

Remark 3.17. *Since any homomorphism between 1-motives respects weight filtrations and graded pieces, $\mathbf{z}_{\Phi_0}$ induces actions $\mathbf{z}_{\Phi_0,-i}:Z_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}\to\underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}W_{-i}\mathcal{Q}$ and $\mathrm{Gr}_{-i}\mathbf{z}_{\Phi_0}:Z_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}\to\underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}\mathrm{Gr}^W_{-i}\mathcal{Q}$.*

Lemma 3.18 (See also [FC90, I. Prop. 2.7])**.** *Let $\mathcal{Q}_1$ and $\mathcal{Q}_2$ be two 1-motives over S, where S is a locally Noetherian and normal scheme. Let U be an open dense subscheme of S. Suppose that $f_U:\mathcal{Q}_{1,U}\to\mathcal{Q}_{2,U}$ is a homomorphism between 1-motives over U. Then f_U uniquely extends to a homomorphism*

$$f:\mathcal{Q}_1\longrightarrow\mathcal{Q}_2.$$

Proof. $f^{et}_U:\underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_1,U}\to\underline{Y}_{\mathcal{Q}_2,U}$ extends uniquely to a homomorphism f^{et} over S. By [FC90, Prop. 2.7], $f^{sab}_U:\mathcal{G}^\natural_{\mathcal{Q}_1,U}\to\mathcal{G}^\natural_{\mathcal{Q}_2,U}$ extends uniquely to $f^{sab}:\mathcal{G}^\natural_{\mathcal{Q}_1}\to\mathcal{G}^\natural_{\mathcal{Q}_2}$. Since $\mathcal{G}^\natural_{\mathcal{Q}_2}$ is separated and $\underline{Y}_1$ is reduced, $f^{sab}\circ\iota_{\mathcal{Q}_1}=\iota_{\mathcal{Q}_2}\circ f^{et}$. So $f=(f^{et},f^{sab})$ is a homomorphism. □

3.3.2. Let $G^{\mathrm{ad}}_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$, $\gamma\in G^{\mathrm{ad}}_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})_1$, the $Z_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$-torsor $\mathcal{P}$ at γ, the finite Galois extension F over $\mathbb{Q}$, the lifting $\tilde{\gamma}\in\mathcal{P}(\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)})$, the 1-cocycle $\{z^{\tilde{\gamma}}_\sigma\}_\sigma$, and the $\mathbb{Z}$-module $\mathbf{V}_{\mathbb{Z}}$ be defined as in §3.2.2 and §3.1.1.

Denote by $\mathcal{Q}^{\mathcal{O}_F}:=\mathrm{Hom}(\mathcal{O}_F^\vee,\mathcal{Q})=(\underline{Y}^{\mathcal{O}_F},\mathcal{G}^{\natural,\mathcal{O}_F},T^{\mathcal{O}_F},A^{\mathcal{O}_F},\iota^{\mathcal{O}_F},c^{\vee,\mathcal{O}_F})$ the *Serre tensor construction* for 1-motives. As before, let $\mathcal{Q}$ be the pullback to $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0}}$ of the tautological family $\mathcal{Q}^\ddagger$ on $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi^\ddagger}}$. It makes sense to write $\mathcal{Q}^{\mathcal{O}_F}$ as $\mathcal{Q}\otimes\mathcal{O}_F$ viewing them as complexes in $D^b_{fppf}(\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0}})$.

As in §3.1.1, there is an action $\iota_{\Phi,\mathrm{Gal}}:\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})\to\underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_{\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}}(\mathcal{Q})\cong\underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}(\mathcal{Q}\otimes\mathcal{O}_F)\cong\underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}(\mathcal{Q}^{\mathcal{O}_F})$ induced by $\mathbf{z}_{\Phi_0}$ and $\tilde{\gamma}$, sending $\sigma\in\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})$ to $\mathbf{z}_{\Phi_0}(z^{\tilde{\gamma}}_\sigma)$; as before, we will omit $\mathbf{z}_{\Phi_0}$ if it is clear in the context.

Construction 3.19. Fix an $N>0$ such that $(N,p)=1$ and $Nz^{\tilde{\gamma}}_\sigma\in\underline{\mathrm{Aut}}\mathcal{Q}^{\mathcal{O}_F}$. We consider a similar homomorphism

$$\mathbf{f}^{\tilde{\gamma}}_N:=\bigoplus_{\sigma\in\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})\text{ and }\sigma\neq\mathrm{id}}((Nz^{\tilde{\gamma}}_\sigma)\sigma-N\cdot\mathrm{id}),$$

which is a homomorphism from $\mathcal{Q}^{\mathcal{O}_F}$ to $(\mathcal{Q}^{\mathcal{O}_F})^{|\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})|-1}$.

By Proposition 3.3, $(\ker\mathbf{f}^{\tilde{\gamma},ab}_N)^\circ=:A^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ is an abelian scheme, and $(\ker\mathbf{f}^{\tilde{\gamma},tr}_N)^\circ:=T^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ is a torus. Since the kernel of any homomorphism between locally constant groups is locally constant, $\ker\mathbf{f}^{\tilde{\gamma},et}_N$ is a locally constant abelian group of finite rank. We see that $\mathcal{G}^{\natural,\tilde{\gamma}}:=(\ker\mathbf{f}^{\tilde{\gamma},sab}_N)^\circ$ is a semi-abelian scheme, which is an extension of $A^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ by $T^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ by the proof of Lemma 3.13. Let $\underline{Y}^{\tilde{\gamma}}:=\iota^{\mathcal{O}_F,-1}\mathcal{G}^{\natural,\tilde{\gamma}}\cap\ker\mathbf{f}^{\tilde{\gamma},et}_N$.

Then the homomorphism $\iota^{\mathcal{O}_F}$ induces a homomorphism $\iota^{\tilde{\gamma}}:\underline{Y}^{\tilde{\gamma}}\to\mathcal{G}^{\natural,\tilde{\gamma}}$. This defines a 1-motive $\mathcal{Q}^{\tilde{\gamma}}:=(\underline{Y}^{\tilde{\gamma}},\mathcal{G}^{\natural,\tilde{\gamma}},T^{\tilde{\gamma}},A^{\tilde{\gamma}},\iota^{\tilde{\gamma}})$, which does not depend on the choice of N satisfying the requirements above: To see this, let M be another positive integer, such that $N|M$ and $(M,p)=1$. Then $\mathbf{f}^{\tilde{\gamma}}_M=\frac{M}{N}\mathbf{f}^{\tilde{\gamma}}_N$. We have that $\mathcal{Q}^{\tilde{\gamma}}/\mathcal{Q}^{\tilde{\gamma}}[\frac{M}{N}]\cong\mathcal{Q}^{\tilde{\gamma}}$. See Lemma 2.14.

Lemma 3.20. *The kernel of $\mathbf{f}_N^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ induces an isomorphism $\mathcal{Q}^{\tilde{\gamma}} \otimes \mathcal{O}_{F,(p)} \cong \mathcal{Q}^{\mathcal{O}_F} \otimes \mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$ of complexes in $D^b_{fppf}(\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0}})$. Moreover,*

$$\boldsymbol{\iota}_N^{\tilde{\gamma}} : \mathcal{Q}^{\tilde{\gamma},\mathcal{O}_F} \longrightarrow \mathcal{Q}^{\mathcal{O}_F} \otimes \mathcal{O}_F \longrightarrow \mathcal{Q}^{\mathcal{O}_F} \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_F} \mathcal{O}_F \cong \mathcal{Q}^{\mathcal{O}_F}$$

is a prime-to-p isogeny.

Proof. By (3.1) and Corollary 3.5, the quotient $(\ker \mathbf{f}_N^{\tilde{\gamma},sab})/\mathcal{G}^{\natural,\tilde{\gamma}}$ is trivial after tensoring $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$, so it is prime-to-p. Then the index of $\underline{Y}^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ in $\ker \mathbf{f}_N^{\tilde{\gamma},et}$ is prime-to-p. Thus, by decomposing $\mathbf{f}_N^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ to $\mathbf{f}_N^{\tilde{\gamma},ab}$, $\mathbf{f}_N^{\tilde{\gamma},tr}$ and $\mathbf{f}_N^{\tilde{\gamma},et}$, and by Corollary 3.5 (resp. Proposition 3.3), we have the first (resp. second) statement. □

The following statement is an immediate corollary of (the proof of) Lemma 3.16; we have re-interpreted a similar statement in Lemma 3.7.

Corollary 3.21. *Let $(\mathcal{Q}, \boldsymbol{\lambda}, [u]_{(K_{\Phi_0}^p)^{g^\ddagger}})$ be the pullback of the tautological family on $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi^\ddagger}}$ to $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0}}$. Let R be a $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$-algebra contained in $\mathbb{C}$.*

On the one hand, the embedding $Z_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \hookrightarrow G_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{GL}(V_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}})$ induces an action of $Z_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}(R)$ on $V_{\mathbb{A}_f^p} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} R$; on the other hand, the embedding $\mathbf{z}_{\Phi_0} : Z_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \hookrightarrow \underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \mathcal{Q}$ induces an action of $Z_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}(R)$ on $V^p\mathcal{Q} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} R$.

Then $u \otimes 1 : V_{\mathbb{A}_f^p} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} R \xrightarrow{\sim} V^p\mathcal{Q} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} R$ is $Z_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}(R)$-equivariant.

Proof. We can assume that $R = \mathbb{C}$ and can just consider the generic fiber $\mathcal{Q}_\eta$ over $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_0}}$ without loss of generality.

In the notation of Construction 2.45, for any lifting $(x, \mathbf{p})$ of $\wp = [(x, \mathbf{p})] \in \mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_0}}(\mathbb{C})$, the map $u_\wp$ fits into a diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} V_{\mathbb{A}_f^p} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \mathbb{C} & \xrightarrow{u_\wp \otimes 1} & V^p\mathcal{Q}_\wp \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \mathbb{C} \cong H_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathcal{Q}_x \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \mathbb{A}_f^p \\ & \searrow^{p^{\ddagger,p}} & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \alpha_x \otimes 1} \\ & & V_{\mathbb{A}_f^p} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \mathbb{C} \cong V_{\mathbb{C}} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \mathbb{A}_f^p. \end{array} \tag{3.8}$$

Since $p^{\ddagger,p}$ commutes with $Z(\mathbb{C})$, it suffices to show that $\alpha_x \otimes 1$ is $Z(\mathbb{C})$-equivariant. By Lemma 3.16 and its proof, the $\mathbb{C}$-value of $\mathbf{z}_{\Phi_0}$ is given by the variation of mixed Hodge structure on $V_{\mathbb{C}}$. Fix any point $x_0 \in D_{\Phi_0}$. We can choose α_{x_0} to be the identity. Then α_x is induced by multiplying some element in $P_{\Phi_0}(\mathbb{C})$, which commutes with $Z(\mathbb{C})$. □

Now, we can construct the twisting of $(\mathcal{Q}, \boldsymbol{\lambda}, [u]_{(K_{\Phi_0})^{g^\ddagger}})$.

Construction 3.22. Consider

$$\mathbf{V}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p} \otimes \mathcal{O}_F \subset \mathbf{V}_{\mathbb{A}_f^p} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \mathcal{O}_{F,(p)} \xrightarrow[\sim]{(\tilde{\gamma}^{-1}\cdot)} V_{\mathbb{A}_f^p} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \mathcal{O}_{F,(p)} \xrightarrow[\sim]{u\otimes 1} V^p\mathcal{Q}^{\mathcal{O}_F} \xrightarrow{V^p f} V^p\mathcal{Q}', \tag{3.9}$$

where $f : \mathcal{Q}^{\mathcal{O}_F} \to \mathcal{Q}'$ is a $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}^\times$-isogeny determined by Lemma 2.44.

(1) We can claim that $(T^p\mathcal{Q}')^{\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})}$ comes from the Tate module of a 1-motive $\mathcal{Q}^{\tilde{\gamma},\prime}$, such that $\mathcal{Q}^{\tilde{\gamma},\prime}$ is $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}^\times$-isogenous to $\mathcal{Q}^{\tilde{\gamma}}$. In fact, by Corollary 3.21, we take the $\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})$-invariant part of both $\mathbf{V}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p} \otimes \mathcal{O}_F$ and $T^p\mathcal{Q}'$, and we have that $\mathbf{V}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}$ is an open compact subgroup of $V^p\mathcal{Q}^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ under $(u \otimes 1) \circ (\tilde{\gamma}^{-1})$, such that $(u \otimes 1) \circ (\tilde{\gamma}^{-1})(\mathbf{V}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p})_{\overline{s}}$ is $\pi_1(S, \overline{s})$-invariant. Hence, there is a $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}^\times$-isogeny

$$f^{\tilde{\gamma}} : \mathcal{Q}^{\tilde{\gamma}} \longrightarrow \mathcal{Q}^{\tilde{\gamma},\prime}$$

by Lemma 2.44.

This construction only depends on γ, but does not depend on the lifting $\tilde{\gamma}$. This is by the same argument as Lemma 3.9. In fact , if $\tilde{\gamma}' = z\tilde{\gamma}$, there is a commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathbf{V}_{\mathbb{A}_f^p} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \mathcal{O}_{F,(p)} & \xrightarrow{(\tilde{\gamma}^{-1}\cdot)} & V_{\mathbb{A}_f^p} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \mathcal{O}_{F,(p)} & \xrightarrow{u\otimes 1} & V^p\mathcal{Q}^{\mathcal{O}_F} \\ & \searrow^{(\tilde{\gamma}'^{,-1}\cdot)} & \downarrow z^{-1} & & \downarrow z^{-1} \\ & & V_{\mathbb{A}_f^p} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \mathcal{O}_{F,(p)} & \xrightarrow{u\otimes 1} & V^p\mathcal{Q}^{\mathcal{O}_F}. \end{array} \tag{3.10}$$

The images of $\mathbf{V}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}$ in $V^p\mathcal{Q}^{\mathcal{O}_F}$ under $(u\otimes 1)\circ(\tilde{\gamma}^{-1}\cdot)$ and $(u\otimes 1)\circ(\tilde{\gamma}'^{,-1}\cdot)$ differ by z^{-1}. Thus, they determine the same $\mathcal{Q}'$ and $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}^\times$-isogenies $f_1 : \mathcal{Q}^{\mathcal{O}_F} \to \mathcal{Q}'$ and $f_2 : \mathcal{Q}^{\mathcal{O}_F} \to \mathcal{Q}'$ such that $f_1 = f_2 \circ z^{-1}$.

Then we can define the twisted level structure as $[u^\gamma]_{(K_{\Phi_0})^{g^\ddagger\gamma^{-1}}}$, where $u^\gamma := (V^p f \circ (u\otimes 1)\circ(\tilde{\gamma}^{-1}\cdot))^{\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})}|_{\mathbf{V}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}}$. This is indeed independent of choice of $\tilde{\gamma}$ lifting γ by the paragraph above. Let $\mathcal{Q}^\gamma := \mathcal{Q}^{\tilde{\gamma},\prime}$. We will see later that this is indeed a level structure as Definition 2.38.

(2) We now define the twisted polarization. The treatment is similar to that in §3.2.3, so we will use the notation there. More precisely, consider the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \mathbf{V}_{\mathbb{A}_f^p} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \mathcal{O}_{F,(p)} & \xrightarrow{(\tilde{\gamma}^{-1}\cdot)} & V_{\mathbb{A}_f^p} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \mathcal{O}_{F,(p)} & \xrightarrow{u\otimes 1} & V^p\mathcal{Q}^{\mathcal{O}_F} & \xrightarrow{V^p f} & V^p\mathcal{Q}' \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \psi^{\mathbf{V}}\otimes 1} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \psi\otimes 1} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle V^p\boldsymbol{\lambda}\otimes 1} & & \vdots{\scriptstyle V^p\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{\mathbf{V},\mathcal{O}_F}} \\ \mathbf{V}^\vee_{\mathbb{A}_f^p} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}(\nu) & \longrightarrow & V^\vee_{\mathbb{A}_f^p} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}(\nu) & \longrightarrow & V^p\mathcal{Q}^\vee \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}(\nu) & \xrightarrow{V^p f'} & V^p\mathcal{Q}^*(\nu) \end{array} \tag{3.11}$$

The image of $\mathbf{V}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}\otimes\mathcal{O}_F$ (resp. $\mathbf{V}^\vee_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}\otimes\mathcal{O}_F$) in $V^p\mathcal{Q}^{\mathcal{O}_F}$ (resp. $V^p\mathcal{Q}^\vee\otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}$) via $(u\otimes 1)\circ(\tilde{\gamma}^{-1}\cdot)$ (resp. $(V^p\boldsymbol{\lambda}\otimes 1)\circ(u\otimes 1)\circ(\tilde{\gamma}^{-1}\cdot)\circ(\psi^{\mathbf{V}}\otimes 1)$) determines a $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}^\times$-isogeny f (resp. f') together with a prime-to-p isogeny $\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{\mathbf{V},\mathcal{O}_F} : \mathcal{Q}' \to \mathcal{Q}^*$ by Lemma 2.44 such that the right square commutes.

By Corollary 3.21, $u\otimes 1$ is $Z_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}(\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)})$-equivariant. Since u sends $\psi_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}$ to a $\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^{p,\times}$-multiple of $\mathrm{e}^{\boldsymbol{\lambda}}$, $V^p\boldsymbol{\lambda}\otimes 1$, $V^p f'$ and $V^p\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{\mathbf{V},\mathcal{O}_F}$ are $Z_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}(\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)})$-equivariant and therefore are $\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})$-equivariant.

Note that, for $\mathcal{Q}^\vee$, we can also define a 1-motive $(\mathcal{Q}^\vee)^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ by the $Z_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$-action given by the canonical isomorphism (B.2). Since

$$V^p(\mathcal{Q}^\vee)^{\tilde{\gamma}} = (V^p\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{\mathbf{V},\mathcal{O}_F}\circ V^p f\circ(u\otimes 1)\circ(\tilde{\gamma}^{-1}\cdot)\circ(\psi^{\mathbf{V}}\otimes 1)^{-1})(\mathbf{V}^\vee_{\mathbb{A}_f^p}\otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}(\nu))^{\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})},$$

the image of $\mathbf{V}^\vee_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}$ in $V^p(\mathcal{Q}^\vee)^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ induces a $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}^\times$-isogeny $(\mathcal{Q}^\vee)^{\tilde{\gamma}} \to \mathcal{Q}''$ such that $T^p\mathcal{Q}'' = (T^p\mathcal{Q}^*)^{\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})}$. There is also a prime-to-p isogeny $\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{\tilde{\gamma},\prime} : \mathcal{Q}^\gamma \to \mathcal{Q}''$ which is the $\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})$-invariant of $\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{\mathbf{V},\mathcal{O}_F} : \mathcal{Q}' \to \mathcal{Q}^*$.

We now check that $\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{\tilde{\gamma},\prime}$ is a polarization. Indeed, choose any positive definite perfect pairing $\mathrm{e}_0 : \mathcal{O}_F\times\mathcal{O}_F \to \mathbb{Z}$ that canonically induces $i_F : \mathcal{O}_F \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbb{Z}}(\mathcal{O}_F,\mathbb{Z})$. As in Lemma 3.10, $\boldsymbol{\lambda}(i_F) = i_F\circ\boldsymbol{\lambda}$ is a polarization implies that $\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{\mathbf{V},\mathcal{O}_F}(i_F) : \mathcal{Q}' \to \mathcal{Q}^* \to \mathcal{Q}^*\otimes_{\mathcal{O}_F,i_F}\mathcal{O}_F^\vee$ is a polarization. By construction, this implies that $\mathcal{Q}^\gamma\otimes\mathcal{O}_F \xrightarrow{\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{\tilde{\gamma},\prime}\otimes 1} \mathcal{Q}''\otimes\mathcal{O}_F \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathcal{Q}''\otimes\mathcal{O}_F^\vee$ is a polarization. Taking the $\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})$-invariant part, we know that $\mathcal{Q}^{\tilde{\gamma},\prime}\otimes\mathbb{Z} \xrightarrow{\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{\tilde{\gamma},\prime}\otimes 1} \mathcal{Q}''\otimes\mathbb{Z} \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathcal{Q}''\otimes\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbb{Z}}(\mathbb{Z},\mathbb{Z})$ and $\boldsymbol{\lambda}^{\tilde{\gamma},\prime}$ are polarizations.

From now on, denote $\boldsymbol{\lambda}^\gamma := \boldsymbol{\lambda}^{\tilde{\gamma},\prime}$.

(3) Let us check that $[u^\gamma]_{(K_{\Phi_0})^{g^\ddagger\gamma^{-1}}}$ is a level structure defined as in Definition 2.38. By the previous part, u^γ sends $\mathbf{V}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}$ to $T^p\mathcal{Q}^\gamma$, and sends $\psi^{\mathbf{V}}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}$ to a $\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^{p,\times}$-multiple of $\mathrm{e}^{\boldsymbol{\lambda}^\gamma}$.

Note that $f:\mathcal{Q}^{\mathcal{O}_F}\to\mathcal{Q}'$ respects weight filtrations $W^{\mathcal{O}_F}$ and W' on $\mathcal{Q}^{\mathcal{O}_F}$ and $\mathcal{Q}'$, and respects their graded pieces. Then f induces $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}^\times$-isogenies $\mathrm{Gr}_0 f:\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\underline{X}^{\mathcal{O}_F},\mathbb{Z}(1))\to\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\underline{X}',\mathbb{Z}(1))$ and $\mathrm{Gr}_{-2} f:\underline{Y}^{\mathcal{O}_F}\to\underline{Y}'$.

Now we can construct the data we need:

- $\mathbf{Z}^{(\gamma g^\ddagger\gamma^{-1}),\mathcal{O}_F}:=\mathbf{V}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}\otimes\mathcal{O}_F\cap(\tilde{\gamma}^{-1})^* Z_{\mathbb{A}_f^p}^{(g^\ddagger)}\otimes\mathcal{O}_F$; we take $\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})$-invariant part and obtain a filtration $\mathbf{Z}^{(\gamma g^\ddagger\gamma^{-1})}$ of $\mathbf{V}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}$. It is a filtration determined by the parabolic group $\gamma g^{\ddagger,-1}Qg^\ddagger\gamma^{-1}$, which explains the superscript in our notation. We denote $\gamma g^\ddagger\gamma^{-1}$ by $g^\dagger$ for simplicity.
- Consider $\alpha_0^{\tilde{\gamma},\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}}:\mathrm{Gr}_0^{F^{(g^\dagger)}}\mathbf{V}_{\mathbb{Z}}^{(g^\dagger)}\otimes\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}\xrightarrow{\mathrm{Gr}_0\tilde{\gamma}^{-1}}\mathrm{Gr}_0^{F^{(g^\ddagger)}}V_{\mathbb{Z}}^{(g^\ddagger)}\otimes\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}\xrightarrow{\alpha_0^{(g^\ddagger)}}\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\underline{X},\mathbb{Z}(1))\otimes\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}\xrightarrow{\mathrm{Gr}_0 f}\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\underline{X}',\mathbb{Z}(1))\otimes\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$. The composition $\alpha_{0,\mathbb{A}_f^p}^{\tilde{\gamma},\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}}\circ(\mathrm{Gr}_0 g^\dagger)_{\mathbb{A}_f^p}$ is $\mathrm{Gr}_0 u_{\mathbb{A}_f^p}^{\gamma,\mathcal{O}_F}$, so it sends $\mathrm{Gr}_0^{\mathbf{Z}^{(g^\dagger)}}\mathbf{V}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}\otimes\mathcal{O}_F$ to $\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\underline{X}',\mathbb{Z}(1))\otimes\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p$. We then see that the restriction of $\alpha_0^{\tilde{\gamma},\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}}$ defines a map $\alpha_0^{\tilde{\gamma},\mathcal{O}_F}:\mathrm{Gr}_0^{F^{(g^\dagger)}}\otimes\mathcal{O}_F\to\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\underline{X}',\mathbb{Z}(1))$. Taking the $\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})$-invariant part, there is a map over $\mathbb{Z}$, $\alpha_0^{\tilde{\gamma}}:\mathrm{Gr}_0^{F^{(g^\dagger)}}\to\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\underline{X}^\gamma,\mathbb{Z}(1))$. Denote $\alpha_0^{(g^\dagger)}:=\alpha_0^{\tilde{\gamma}}$.
- Consider $\alpha_{-2}^{\tilde{\gamma},\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}}:\mathrm{Gr}_{-2}^{F^{(g^\dagger)}}\mathbf{V}_{\mathbb{Z}}^{(g^\dagger)}\otimes\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}\xrightarrow{\mathrm{Gr}_{-2}\tilde{\gamma}^{-1}}\mathrm{Gr}_{-2}^{F^{(g^\ddagger)}}V_{\mathbb{Z}}^{(g^\ddagger)}\otimes\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}\xrightarrow{\alpha_0^{(g^\ddagger)}}\underline{Y}\otimes\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}\xrightarrow{\mathrm{Gr}_{-2} f}\underline{Y}'\otimes\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$. The composition $\alpha_{-2,\mathbb{A}_f^p}^{\tilde{\gamma},\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}}\circ(\mathrm{Gr}_{-2} g^\dagger)_{\mathbb{A}_f^p}$ is a $\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^{p,\times}$-multiple of $\mathrm{Gr}_{-2} u_{\mathbb{A}_f^p}^{\gamma,\mathcal{O}_F}$, so it sends $\mathrm{Gr}_{-2}^{\mathbf{Z}^{(g^\dagger)}}\mathbf{V}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}\otimes\mathcal{O}_F$ to $\underline{Y}'\otimes\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p$. We then see that the restriction of $\alpha_{-2}^{\tilde{\gamma},\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}}$ defines a map $\alpha_{-2}^{\tilde{\gamma},\mathcal{O}_F}:\mathrm{Gr}_{-2}^{F^{(g^\dagger)}}\otimes\mathcal{O}_F\to\underline{Y}'$. Taking the $\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})$-invariant part, there is a map over $\mathbb{Z}$, $\alpha_{-2}^{\tilde{\gamma}}:\mathrm{Gr}_{-2}^{F^{(g^\dagger)}}\to\underline{Y}^\gamma$. Denote $\alpha_{-2}^{(g^\dagger)}:=\alpha_{-2}^{\tilde{\gamma}}$.

Then $[u^\gamma]_{(K_{\Phi_0})^{g^\ddagger\gamma^{-1}}}$ satisfies Definition 2.38. See Proposition 3.23 below.

Let $\Psi_0={}^\gamma\Phi_0:=(\gamma Q\gamma^{-1},\gamma(X_0^+),\gamma g^\ddagger\gamma^{-1})$; Ψ_0 maps to a cusp label representative $\Psi^\ddagger$ of $(G^\ddagger,X^\ddagger)$. Let $K^{\odot,p}:=K^{\ddagger,p,\prime}$ be any neat open compact subgroup of $G^\ddagger(\mathbb{A}_f^p)$ containing ${}^\gamma K_0^p$ and stabilizing $\mathbf{V}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}$. Let $K^\odot:=K_p^\ddagger K^{\odot,p}$. Denote $K_{\Psi^\ddagger}^{\odot,p}:=g^\dagger K^{\odot,p}g^{\dagger,-1}\cap P_{\Psi^\ddagger}(\mathbb{A}_f^p)$. Then we see that $K_{\Psi^\ddagger}^{\odot,p}$ contains ${}^\gamma K_{\Phi_0}^p=K_{\Psi_0}^p$. In fact, we compute as follows:

$$g^\dagger K^{\odot,p}g^{\dagger,-1}\cap P_{\Psi^\ddagger}(\mathbb{A}_f^p)\supset\gamma g^\ddagger K_0^p g^{\ddagger,-1}\gamma^{-1}\cap P_{\Psi^\ddagger}(\mathbb{A}_f^p)=\gamma(g^\ddagger K_0^p g^{\ddagger,-1}\cap P_{\Phi^\ddagger}(\mathbb{A}_f^p))\gamma^{-1}\supset\gamma K_{\Phi_0}^p\gamma^{-1}.$$

Similarly, $K_{\Psi^\ddagger,p}^\odot$ contains ${}^\gamma K_{\Phi_0,p}=K_{\Psi_0,p}$. We then have $(K_{\Phi_0}^p)^{g^\ddagger\gamma^{-1}}\subset(K_{\Psi^\ddagger}^{\odot,p})^{g^\dagger}$.

Proposition 3.23. *With the constructions above,* $[u^\gamma]_{(K_{\Psi^\ddagger}^{\odot,p})^{g^\dagger}}:=[u^\gamma]_{(K_{\Phi_0})^{g^\ddagger\gamma^{-1}}}/(K_{\Psi^\ddagger}^{\odot,p})^{g^\dagger}$ *is a level structure of type* $(\mathbf{V}_{\mathbb{Z}},\psi_{\mathbb{Z}}^{\mathbf{V}},\Psi^\ddagger,K^{\odot,p})$.

Proof. This is a consequence of the construction above. □

This ends the Construction 3.22. □

3.3.3. Twisting of 1-motives sends one cusp label representative of (G_0,X_0) to another one.

Denote by $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Psi_0}^p}^\odot$ the inverse limit $\varprojlim\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Psi^\ddagger}^\odot}\cong\varprojlim\boldsymbol{\xi}_{(\mathbf{V}_{\mathbb{Z}},\psi_{\mathbb{Z}}^{\mathbf{V}}),\Psi^\ddagger,K^{\odot,p}}$, where the inverse system runs over neat open compact subgroups $K_{\Psi^\ddagger}^{\odot,p}$ as above containing $K_{\Psi_0}^p$; similarly, let $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Psi_0}^p}^\odot:=\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Psi_0}^p,\mathbb{Q}}^\odot$.

Proposition 3.24. *With the constructions above,*

(1) The twisting construction

$$(\mathcal{Q},\boldsymbol{\lambda},[u]_{(K_{\Phi_0})^{g^\ddagger}})\mapsto(\mathcal{Q}^\gamma,\boldsymbol{\lambda}^\gamma,[u^\gamma]_{(K_{\Phi_0})^{g^\ddagger\gamma^{-1}}})$$

induces a morphism $\gamma^{-1}:\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0}}\to\mathcal{S}_{K_\Psi^p}^\odot$ *by the universal property.*

(2) *Over* $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_0}}(\mathbb{C}) \cong P_{\Phi_0}(\mathbb{Q})\backslash D_{\Phi_0}\times P_{\Phi_0}(\mathbb{A}_f)g^\ddagger K/K$, γ^{-1} *is identical to a map* $\gamma^{-1}:\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_0}}(\mathbb{C})\to \mathrm{Sh}^{\odot}_{K^p_\Psi}(\mathbb{C})$, *sending* $\wp=[(x,\mathbf{p}g^\ddagger)]$ *to* $\wp^\gamma=[(\gamma(x),\gamma\mathbf{p}g^\ddagger\gamma^{-1})]$. *Hence, it factors as* $\gamma^{-1}:\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_0}}(\mathbb{C})\xrightarrow{\sim}\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Psi_0}}(\mathbb{C})\xrightarrow{\iota_{\Psi_0}}\mathrm{Sh}^{\odot}_{K^p_{\Psi_0}}(\mathbb{C})$, *where the first map is an isomorphism sending* $\wp=[(x,\mathbf{p}g^\ddagger)]$ *to* $\widetilde{\wp}^\gamma=[(\gamma(x),\gamma\mathbf{p}g^\ddagger\gamma^{-1})]$.

(3) *The map* $\gamma^{-1}:\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0}}\to\mathcal{S}^{\odot}_{K^p_{\Psi_0}}$ *factors as* $\gamma^{-1}:\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0}}\xrightarrow{\sim}\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Psi_0}}\xrightarrow{\iota_{\Psi_0}}\mathcal{S}^{\odot}_{K^p_{\Psi_0}}$.

Proof. Given the first and the second part, the third part follows from the construction of $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Psi_0}}$ as the normalization of $\mathcal{S}_{K^{\odot}_{\Psi^\ddagger}}$ in $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Psi_0}}$, and the fact that this normalization is independent of the choice of different $K^{\odot,p}_{\Psi^\ddagger}$ as above. The first part follows from Construction 3.22.

Let us show the second part. This is the same as Kisin's argument in [Kis10, Lem. 3.2.6], and let us explain it now.

Recall that we are working over $\mathbb{C}$. Let $\mathcal{Q}_\wp$ be the 1-motive at a complex point $\wp=[(x,\mathbf{p}g^\ddagger)]\in\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_0}}(\mathbb{C})$, and let $\mathcal{Q}_{\wp^\gamma}$ be the 1-motive corresponding to $\wp^\gamma=[(x^\gamma,\gamma\mathbf{p}g^\ddagger\gamma^{-1})]$. First, there is a diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} T_{\mathbb{Z}}\mathcal{Q}_\wp^{\mathcal{O}_F}\otimes\mathbb{Z}_{(p)} & \xrightarrow{\quad f\quad} & T_{\mathbb{Z}}(\mathcal{Q}_\wp^{\gamma,\mathcal{O}_F})\otimes\mathbb{Z}_{(p)} \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \alpha_x\otimes 1} & & \vdots \\ (V_{\mathbb{Z}}\otimes\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}, r(g^\ddagger)^{-1}\psi\otimes 1, W) & \xrightarrow{\tilde\gamma} & (\mathbf{V}_{\mathbb{Z}}\otimes\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}, r(g^\dagger)^{-1}\nu(\tilde\gamma^{-1})\psi^{\mathbf{V}}\otimes 1, \mathbf{W}), \end{array} \tag{3.12}$$

where W (resp. $\mathbf{W}$) is the filtration determined by $Q^\ddagger$ (resp. $\gamma Q^\ddagger\gamma^{-1}$) and note that $r(g^\dagger)=r(g^\ddagger)$. Denote $\mathbf{T}:=\tilde\gamma\circ(\alpha_x\otimes 1)\circ f^{-1}$. By Construction 3.22 and Construction 2.45, $\mathbf{T}$ sends that weight filtration of $T_{\mathbb{Z}}(\mathcal{Q}_\wp^{\gamma,\mathcal{O}_F})\otimes\mathbb{Q}$ to $\mathbf{W}$. The mixed Hodge structures on $V\otimes\mathcal{O}_F\cong\mathbf{V}\otimes\mathcal{O}_F$ determined by x and x^γ viewed as elements in $\mathrm{Hom}(\mathbb{S}_{\mathbb{C}},V_{\mathbb{C}}\otimes\mathcal{O}_F)$ are conjugated by $\tilde\gamma$. Then the bottom row of the diagram above respects mixed Hodge structures. Hence, $\mathbf{T}$ sends the mixed Hodge structure on $T_{\mathbb{Z}}(\mathcal{Q}_\wp^{\gamma,\mathcal{O}_F})\otimes\mathbb{Q}$ to the mixed Hodge structure on $\mathbf{V}\otimes\mathcal{O}_F$ which corresponds to x^γ.

Then we combine the diagram above with (3.9) and (2.29) to get the following commutative diagram:

(3.13)

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \mathbf{V}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}\otimes\mathcal{O}_F & \xrightarrow{\tilde\gamma^{-1}} & V_{\mathbb{A}_f^p}\otimes\mathcal{O}_F & \xrightarrow{\quad u\quad} & T_{\mathbb{Z}}\mathcal{Q}_\wp^{\mathcal{O}_F}\otimes\mathbb{A}_f^p & \xrightarrow{\quad f\quad} & T_{\mathbb{Z}}(\mathcal{Q}_\wp^{\gamma,\mathcal{O}_F})\otimes\mathbb{A}_f^p \\ & \searrow^{p^{\ddagger,p}} & & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle\alpha_x\otimes 1} & & \downarrow \\ & & & & (V_{\mathbb{A}_f^p}\otimes\mathcal{O}_F, \widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^{p,\times}r(g^\ddagger)^{-1}\nu(\tilde\gamma)\psi, W) & \xrightarrow{\tilde\gamma} & (\mathbf{V}_{\mathbb{A}_f^p}\otimes\mathcal{O}_F, \widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^{p,\times}r(g^\dagger)^{-1}\psi^{\mathbf{V}}, \mathbf{W}). \end{array}$$

The first term is equipped with the pairing $\psi^{\mathbf{V}}\otimes 1$ and the second one is equipped with the pairing $\nu(\tilde\gamma)\psi\otimes 1$. By adjusting $\mathbf{p}$ by an element in $P_{\Phi^\ddagger}(\mathbb{Q})$, we see that the lattice $\mathbf{V}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}\otimes\mathcal{O}_F$ on the top-left is sent to $T^p(\mathcal{Q}_\wp^{\gamma,\mathcal{O}_F})$ via the series of morphisms on the first row, and is sent to $\mathbf{V}^{(g^\dagger)}_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}\otimes\mathcal{O}_F$ via $\tilde\gamma^{-1}\circ p^{\ddagger,p}\circ\tilde\gamma$. Then the second part follows from taking the $\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})$-invariant of the diagram above and (2.29). □

3.4. **Some actions of the adjoint group on toroidal compactifications.** In this subsection, we extend the twisting construction in previous subsections to toroidal compactifications of integral models of Hodge-type Shimura varieties, and relate another "twisting" construction on the toroidal compactifications of Hodge-type Shimura varieties $\mathrm{Sh}^{\Sigma}_{K_0}$ to quasi-isogeny twists in [Lan16]. The notation and the construction in this subsection will be used in the proof of one of the main technical results §4.3.2.

Let $\gamma \in G_0^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})$ and $g \in G_0(\mathbb{A}_f)$. Let $\beta := (g, \gamma^{-1})$ and $(K_0)^\beta := {}^\gamma((K_0)^g)$. Then β induces a morphism $\beta : \mathrm{Sh}_{K_0}(G_0, X_0) \to \mathrm{Sh}_{(K_0)^\beta}(G_0, \gamma \cdot X_0)$ described by

$$[(x, g_0)] \mapsto [(\gamma(x), \gamma g_0 g \gamma^{-1})]$$

on complex points.

For any admissible cone decomposition Σ_2 of $\mathrm{Sh}_{(K_0)^\beta} := \mathrm{Sh}_{(K_0)^\beta}(G_0, \gamma \cdot X_0)$, let $\Sigma_1 := \beta^* \Sigma_2$ be the admissible cone decomposition of $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_0} := \mathrm{Sh}_{K_0}(G_0, X_0)$ induced by β. By [Pin90, Prop. 6.25 and Thm. 12.4], there is a morphism from $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_0}^{\Sigma_1} := \mathrm{Sh}_{K_0}^{\Sigma_1}(G_0, X_0)$ to $\mathrm{Sh}_{(K_0)^\beta}^{\Sigma_2} := \mathrm{Sh}_{(K_0)^\beta}^{\Sigma_2}(G_0, \gamma \cdot X_0)$ extending the morphism of interiors $\beta : \mathrm{Sh}_{K_0}(G_0, X_0) \to \mathrm{Sh}_{(K_0)^\beta}(G_0, \gamma \cdot X_0)$. We still denote this extension by $\beta : \mathrm{Sh}_{K_0}^{\Sigma_1} \to \mathrm{Sh}_{(K_0)^\beta}^{\Sigma_2}$.

Fix a cusp label representative Φ_0 mapping to $\Phi^\ddagger$ as before. Then β induces an action $\beta : \mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_0}} \xrightarrow{g} \mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi^g}} \xrightarrow{\gamma^{-1}} \mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Psi'}}$, corresponding to an action $(Q, X_0^+, g^\ddagger) \mapsto \Phi^g := (Q, X_0^+, g^\ddagger g) \mapsto \Psi' := (\gamma Q \gamma^{-1}, \gamma(X_0^+), \gamma g^\ddagger g \gamma^{-1})$ on cusp label representatives. Over complex points, the action of β sends $[(x, \mathbf{p} g^\ddagger)]$ to $[(\gamma(x), \gamma \mathbf{p} g^\ddagger g \gamma^{-1})]$.

3.4.1. With the constructions in previous subsections, the first result we intended to show is now immediate thanks to a lemma of Madapusi [MP19, Lem. A.3.4]. Note that we have fixed a Hodge embedding $\iota : (G_0, X_0, K_0) \hookrightarrow (G^\ddagger, X^\ddagger, K^\ddagger)$ as §2.1.

Lemma 3.25. *The action $\beta : \mathrm{Sh}_{K_0}^{\Sigma_1} \to \mathrm{Sh}_{(K_0)^\beta}^{\Sigma_2}$ extends to an action*

$$\beta : \mathcal{S}_{K_0}^{\Sigma_1} \longrightarrow \mathcal{S}_{(K_0)^\beta}^{\Sigma_2},$$

which is compatible with the actions $\beta : \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0}} \to \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Psi'}}$ on the boundaries if $\gamma \in G_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})_1$.

Proof. Combine Proposition 3.24, [Pin90, Prop. 6.25 and Thm. 12.4(b)], [MP19, Lem. A.3.4] and [MP19, 4.1.12]. □

3.4.2. We now **assume** that $\gamma \in G_0^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})_1$ and that $g\gamma^{-1}$ is trivial in $G_0^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{A}_f)$. Under this assumption, we have assumed that $(K_0)^\beta = K_0$, and therefore both Φ_0 and Ψ' are representatives of some cusps in $\mathrm{Cusp}_{K_0}(G_0, X_0)$. We can fix an embedding $\iota : (G_0, X_0, K_0) \hookrightarrow (G^\ddagger, X^\ddagger, K^\ddagger)$ satisfying [MP19, Sec. 3.1]; applying the theory of [MP19], this choice of the embedding ι has *fixed* a construction of integral models $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0}}$ for all $\Phi_0 \in \mathcal{CLR}(G_0, X_0)$.

In the following construction, we will mainly work with $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_0}}$'s instead of their integral models.

Construction 3.26. Let F be a finite Galois extension of $\mathbb{Q}$ such that γ is lifted to $\tilde{\gamma} \in G_0(F)$.

We view $V^F := V \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} F$ as a $\mathbb{Q}$-vector space by fixing a $\mathbb{Q}$-isomorphism $V^F \xrightarrow{\sim} V^{\oplus[F:\mathbb{Q}]}$. Denote by ψ^F the symplectic pairing on $V^{\oplus[F:\mathbb{Q}]}$ which is ψ on each factor, and elements from distinct factors are perpendicular.

Define $G^F := \mathrm{GSp}(V^F, \psi^F)$ and let X^F be the union of Siegel upper and lower half spaces defined by G^F.

Then there is a sequence of embeddings of Shimura data:

$$\iota^+ : (G_0, X_0) \xhookrightarrow{\iota} (G^\ddagger, X^\ddagger) \xhookrightarrow{\Delta} (G^F, X^F).$$

The morphism $(G^\ddagger, X^\ddagger) \to (G^F, X^F)$ is defined by the fixed diagonal embedding.

On the other hand, let $\nu : R_{F/\mathbb{Q}} G^\ddagger \to R_{F/\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{G}_m$ be the similitude character. The value of $\nu(\tilde{\gamma})$ remains unchanged if we extend F. We then choose F to be a finite Galois extension such that it contains the square roots of $\nu(\tilde{\gamma})$. We choose a square root $c(\tilde{\gamma})$ of $\nu(\tilde{\gamma})$. We view $c(\tilde{\gamma})$ as a $\mathbb{Q}$-point of $R_{F/\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{G}_m \hookrightarrow R_{F/\mathbb{Q}} G^\ddagger$. Denote $\tilde{\gamma}_1 := \tilde{\gamma}^{-1} c(\tilde{\gamma})$. We view $\tilde{\gamma}_1$ as an element in $\mathrm{GL}(V^F)$.

There is a commutative diagram of algebraic groups:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} G & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{int}(\tilde{\gamma}_1^{-1})} & G \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \iota} & & \\ G^\ddagger & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{int}(\tilde{\gamma}_1^{-1})\iota^+} \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \Delta} & & \\ G^F & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{int}(\tilde{\gamma}_1^{-1})} & \mathrm{int}(\tilde{\gamma}_1^{-1})G^F. \end{array} \tag{3.14}$$

The operation $(\tilde{\gamma}_1 \cdot) \circ (g \cdot)$ on $V_{\mathbb{A}_f}^F$ induces a collection of morphisms

$$\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi^F}} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Sh}_{K_{(\Phi^F)'}},$$

which sends any cusp label representative $\Phi^F := (Q^F, X^{F,+}, g^F)$ of (G^F, X^F) to

$$(\Phi^F)' := (\tilde{\gamma}_1^{-1} Q^F \tilde{\gamma}_1, \tilde{\gamma}_1^{-1}(X^{F,+}), \tilde{\gamma}_1^{-1} g^F g \tilde{\gamma}_1)$$

of $\mathrm{int}(\tilde{\gamma}_1^{-1})(G^F, X^F)$.

Over complex points, the map is $[(x^F, g_0^F g^F)] \mapsto [(\tilde{\gamma}_1^{-1} x^F, \tilde{\gamma}_1^{-1} g_0^F g^F g \tilde{\gamma}_1)]$. Note that this action remains unchanged if we change $\tilde{\gamma}_1$ to $\tilde{\gamma}_1 \cdot c$ for any $c \in \mathbb{G}_m(\mathbb{Q}) \hookrightarrow G^F(\mathbb{Q})$ in the center of G^F. In particular, it remains unchanged if we choose another square root of $\nu(\tilde{\gamma})$.

Suppose that $\Phi_0 \mapsto \Phi^\ddagger \mapsto \Phi^F$ via ι^+ and $\Psi' \mapsto \Psi'^{,\ddagger} \mapsto (\Phi^F)'$ via $\mathrm{int}(\tilde{\gamma}_1^{-1})\iota^+$, and if we choose a suitable neat open compact subgroup $K^F \subset G^F(\mathbb{A}_f)$ containing $K^\ddagger$, we have a commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_0}} & \xrightarrow{\beta} & \mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Psi'}} \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \iota_\Phi} & & \\ \mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi^\ddagger}} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle (\mathrm{int}(\tilde{\gamma}_1^{-1})\iota^+)_{\Psi'}} \\ \downarrow & & \\ \mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi^F}} & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{int}(\tilde{\gamma}_1^{-1}) \circ g} & \mathrm{Sh}_{K_{(\Phi^F)'}}. \end{array} \tag{3.15}$$

We choose a hyperspecial subgroup K_p^F of $G^F(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ such that $K_p^F \cap G^\ddagger(\mathbb{Q}_p) = K_p^\ddagger$ and choose a neat open compact subgroup $K^{F,p} \subset G^F(\mathbb{A}_f^p)$ containing $K^{\ddagger,p}$ and stabilizing $V_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}^F := V_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p} \otimes \mathcal{O}_F$.

Since, by construction, $g^\ddagger$ maps to g^F and Q^F is the unique proper admissible $\mathbb{Q}$-parabolic that contains Q and $Q^\ddagger$, we have $Q \subset Q^\ddagger \subset Q^F$. Since the conjugation of $\tilde{\gamma}_1^{-1}$ on G_0, viewed as a subgroup of G^F, is the conjugation of $\tilde{\gamma}$, we have that $\tilde{\gamma}_1^{-1} Q^F \tilde{\gamma}_1$ contains $\tilde{\gamma} Q \tilde{\gamma}^{-1}$. Hence, $\tilde{\gamma}_1^{-1} Q^F \tilde{\gamma}_1$ is the unique proper admissible $\mathbb{Q}$-parabolic that contains $\tilde{\gamma} Q \tilde{\gamma}^{-1}$ since $\tilde{\gamma}_1^{-1} Q^F \tilde{\gamma}_1$ depends only on the cocharacter that defines $\tilde{\gamma} Q \tilde{\gamma}^{-1}$ (see [Pin90, 4.16]).

We have the following commutative diagram induced by (3.15):

$$\begin{array}{ccc} P_{\Phi_0}(\mathbb{A}_f) \cap g^\ddagger K_0 g^{\ddagger,-1} & \longrightarrow & \gamma P_{\Phi_0} \gamma^{-1}(\mathbb{A}_f) \cap {}^{\gamma g^\ddagger g \gamma^{-1}} K_0 = \gamma P_{\Phi_0} \gamma^{-1}(\mathbb{A}_f) \cap {}^{\gamma g^\ddagger} K_0 \\ \downarrow & & \\ P_{\Phi^\ddagger}(\mathbb{A}_f) \cap g^\ddagger K^\ddagger g^{\ddagger,-1} & & \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ P_{\Phi^F}(\mathbb{A}_f) \cap g^\ddagger K^F g^{\ddagger,-1} & \longrightarrow & P_{(\Phi^F)'}(\mathbb{A}_f) \cap {}^{\tilde{\gamma}_1^{-1} g^\ddagger} K^F. \end{array} \tag{3.16}$$

It follows from the assumption that $\Psi' = (\gamma Q\gamma, \gamma(X_0^+), \gamma g^\ddagger g\gamma^{-1})$ on the top-right corner of (3.15) is a cusp label representative in $\mathcal{CLR}(G_0, X_0)$ and that $K_{\Psi'} = \gamma P_{\Phi_0}\gamma^{-1}(\mathbb{A}_f) \cap {}^{\gamma g^\ddagger g\gamma^{-1}} K_0$. So $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Psi'}}$ is the boundary mixed Shimura variety associated with Ψ' and (G_0, X_0, K_0).

By [MP19, Prop. 4.3.5], the bottom arrow of the diagram (3.15) above extends to $\mathrm{int}(\tilde{\gamma}_1^{-1}) \circ g : \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi^F,p}} \to \mathcal{S}_{K_{(\Phi^F)',p}}$. Since there is an equivariant $(P_{\Phi^F}(\mathbb{A}_f^p) \to P_{(\Phi^F)'}(\mathbb{A}_f^p))$-action on this map, we have a map $\mathrm{int}(\tilde{\gamma}_1^{-1}) \circ g : \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi^F}} \to \mathcal{S}_{K_{(\Phi^F)'}}$. This ends Construction 3.26. □

Combining the construction above with [Lan12] and [Lan16, Sec. 2 and Sec. 3], we obtain the following statement:

Lemma 3.27. *The bottom arrow in (3.15) can be viewed as a collection of morphisms between boundary mixed Shimura varieties induced by a quasi-isogeny twist in the sense of* [Lan16, Sec. 2]. *Let $\mathcal{Q}_{\Phi^F,\eta}$ (resp. $\mathcal{Q}_{(\Phi^F)',\eta}$) be the universal 1-motive on $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi^F}}$ (resp. $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{(\Phi^F)'}}$); let $\mathcal{Q}_{\Phi^F}$ (resp. $\mathcal{Q}_{(\Phi^F)'}$) be its extension over $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi^F}}$ (resp. $\mathcal{S}_{K_{(\Phi^F)'}}$), which is unique if it exists by Lemma 3.18. We then have $\mathbb{Q}^\times$-isogenies between $\mathcal{Q}_{\Phi^F}$ and (the pullback to $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi^F}}$ of) $\mathcal{Q}_{(\Phi^F)'}$, and between the corresponding components $\underline{X}_?$, $\underline{Y}_?$, $A_?$, $A_?^\vee$, $\mathcal{G}_?^\natural$, $\mathcal{G}_?^{\natural,\vee}$, $T_?$ and $T_?^\vee$ of $? = \mathcal{Q}_{\Phi^F}$ and $\mathcal{Q}_{(\Phi^F)'}$.*

Furthermore, for any integer $n \geq 1$, this bottom arrow naturally induces ***isomorphisms*** *over $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi^F}}$:*

$$\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\frac{1}{n}X_{\mathcal{Q}_{\Phi^F}}, A^\vee_{\mathcal{Q}_{\Phi^F}}) \cong \underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\frac{1}{n}X_{\mathcal{Q}_{(\Phi^F)'}}, A^\vee_{\mathcal{Q}_{(\Phi^F)'}}),$$
$$\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\frac{1}{n}Y_{\mathcal{Q}_{\Phi^F}}, A_{\mathcal{Q}_{\Phi^F}}) \cong \underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\frac{1}{n}Y_{\mathcal{Q}_{(\Phi^F)'}}, A_{\mathcal{Q}_{(\Phi^F)'}}),$$
$$\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\frac{1}{n}X_{\mathcal{Q}_{\Phi^F}}, \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\vee}_{\mathcal{Q}_{\Phi^F}}) \cong \underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\frac{1}{n}X_{\mathcal{Q}_{(\Phi^F)'}}, \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\vee}_{\mathcal{Q}_{(\Phi^F)'}}),$$
$$\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\frac{1}{n}Y_{\mathcal{Q}_{\Phi^F}}, \mathcal{G}^{\natural}_{\mathcal{Q}_{\Phi^F}}) \cong \underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(\frac{1}{n}Y_{\mathcal{Q}_{(\Phi^F)'}}, \mathcal{G}^{\natural}_{\mathcal{Q}_{(\Phi^F)'}}),$$
$$\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}^{\mathrm{symm}}(\frac{1}{n}X_{\mathcal{Q}_{\Phi^F}}, \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\vee}_{\mathcal{Q}_{\Phi^F}}) \cong \underline{\mathrm{Hom}}^{\mathrm{symm}}(\frac{1}{n}X_{\mathcal{Q}_{(\Phi^F)'}}, \mathcal{G}^{\natural,\vee}_{\mathcal{Q}_{(\Phi^F)'}}),$$

and

$$\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}^{\mathrm{symm}}(\frac{1}{n}Y_{\mathcal{Q}_{\Phi^F}}, \mathcal{G}^{\natural}_{\mathcal{Q}_{\Phi^F}}) \cong \underline{\mathrm{Hom}}^{\mathrm{symm}}(\frac{1}{n}Y_{\mathcal{Q}_{(\Phi^F)'}}, \mathcal{G}^{\natural}_{\mathcal{Q}_{(\Phi^F)'}}).$$

The objects on the right-hand sides are viewed as objects over $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi^F}}$ by pulling back via $\mathrm{int}(\tilde{\gamma}_1^{-1}) \circ g$.

Moreover, the isomorphisms above can be pulled back to $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0}}$.

Proof. The situation satisfies the assumptions in [Lan16, Sec. 2] to which [Lan16, Sec. 3] applies. In fact, the isogeny twists are induced by the difference of two symplectic lattices. In our case, they are $V_{\mathbb{Z}} \otimes \mathcal{O}_F$ and the pullback to $V_{\mathbb{A}_f} \otimes \mathcal{O}_F$ of $\mathbf{V}_{\mathbb{Z}} \otimes \mathcal{O}_F$. Then we have the first paragraph. For the second paragraph, the best way to see this is to use the description of the tower $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi^F}} \to \overline{\mathrm{Sh}}_{K_{\Phi^F}} \to \mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi^F},h}$ at principal level n in the characteristic zero theory (see, e.g., [Lan12, Lem. 3.5.5, Lem. 3.6.3, and Lem. 3.6.8]) and the fact that $\mathrm{int}(\tilde{\gamma}_1^{-1}) \circ g$ (or rather $\mathrm{int}(\tilde{\gamma}_1^{-1})$) induces an isomorphism between D_{Φ^F} and $D_{(\Phi^F)'}$ and an isomorphism between $P_{\Phi^F}(\mathbb{R})U_{\Phi^F}(\mathbb{C})$ and $P_{(\Phi^F)'}(\mathbb{R})U_{(\Phi^F)'}(\mathbb{C})$. Then the lemma follows from Lemma 3.18. □

4. Toroidal compactifications of integral models of abelian type

In this section, our main goal is to construct good toroidal compactifications of integral models of $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_2}(G_2, X_2)$, given some open compact subgroup $K_{2,p}$ of $G_2(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ and some neat open compact K_2^p. First, we generalize Deligne's induction method in [Del79] to boundary mixed Shimura varieties of abelian type (see §4.1). Then, in Cases (HS), (STB_n) and (DL), we construct toroidal compactifications for $\mathrm{Sh}_K(G, X_b)$ (see §4.2). Finally, we complete the proof of the main theorem in §4.3.

4.1. **Deligne's induction for boundary components.**

4.1.1. Let us recall some group-theoretic definitions following [Del79, 2.0.1] and [Kis10, 3.3.1]. Let H be a group. Suppose that there is an action of Δ on H, that is, a homomorphism $\Delta \to \mathrm{Aut}H$. Suppose that $\Gamma \subset H$ is a Δ-stable subgroup. Suppose that there is a Δ-equivariant map $\varphi : \Gamma \to \Delta$, where Δ acts on itself by inner automorphisms. Suppose that, for any $\gamma \in \Gamma$, the action of $\varphi(\gamma) \in \Delta$ on H is the same as the inner automorphism of γ on H.

Then we denote $H *_\Gamma \Delta := H \rtimes \Delta/(\gamma, \varphi(\gamma)^{-1})_{\gamma\in\Gamma}$; the group structure of $H *_\Gamma \Delta$ is inherited from that of $H \rtimes \Delta$.

There is a well-defined natural projection $H *_\Gamma \Delta \to \Gamma\backslash H$, sending any representative $(h, d) \in H \times \Delta$ of an element in $H *_\Gamma \Delta$ to $\Gamma\backslash H$.

The following lemma is immediate from the definition above:

Lemma 4.1. *We have an isomorphism of cosets $\Gamma *_\Gamma \Delta\backslash H *_\Gamma \Delta \cong \Gamma\backslash H$ via the well-defined natural projection $H *_\Gamma \Delta \to \Gamma\backslash H$. Let H_1 be a Δ-stable subgroup of H containing Γ. Then there is an isomorphism of cosets $H_1 *_\Gamma \Delta\backslash H *_\Gamma \Delta \cong H_1\backslash H$.*

4.1.2. Let us recall the general setup of the so-called Deligne's induction following [Del79, Sec. 2.7] and [Kis10, 3.3.5]. Let O be a base scheme. Let Γ be a locally profinite group. Let $\{S_\mathcal{H}\}_\mathcal{H}$ be an inverse system of quasi-projective O-schemes $S_\mathcal{H}$ labeled by a cofinal collection of open compact subgroups $\mathcal{H} \subset \Gamma$. Let $S := \varprojlim_\mathcal{H} S_\mathcal{H}$ be the inverse limit.

Suppose that there is a right action of Γ given by $\gamma_\mathcal{H} : S_\mathcal{H} \xrightarrow{\sim} S_{\gamma^{-1}\mathcal{H}\gamma}$. Assume that

- $\gamma_\mathcal{H} = \mathrm{id}$ if $\gamma \in \mathcal{H}$.
- For any pair of open compact subgroups $\mathcal{H}_1 \subset \mathcal{H} \subset \Gamma$ such that $\mathcal{H}_1$ is a normal subgroup of $\mathcal{H}$, the quotient $S_{\mathcal{H}_1}/(\mathcal{H}/\mathcal{H}_1)$ given by the action of $\gamma_{\mathcal{H}_1}$ for $\gamma \in \mathcal{H}$ induces an isomorphism $S_{\mathcal{H}_1}/(\mathcal{H}/\mathcal{H}_1) \xrightarrow{\sim} S_\mathcal{H}$; the transition map $S_{\mathcal{H}_1} \to S_\mathcal{H}$ determined by this action is finite and surjective. This implies that the limit S exists as an O-scheme.

We call such an action of Γ a **continuous (right) Γ-action on** S. One can also similarly define continuous left actions of Γ by assigning to $\gamma \in \Gamma$ the inverse $\gamma_\mathcal{H}^{-1}$ for any $\mathcal{H}$ above.

Let $f : \Gamma \to \Gamma'$ be a continuous map of locally profinite groups with a compact kernel $\Delta(\Gamma, \Gamma')$. Define **Deligne's induction functor** as $\mathrm{Ind}_\Gamma^{\Gamma'} S := S \times \Gamma'/\Gamma$, where the action of Γ on $S \times \Gamma'$ is defined by $(s, \gamma') \cdot \gamma = (s \cdot \gamma, \gamma^{-1}\gamma')$. For any compact (but *not necessarily open*) subgroup $\mathcal{H}' \subset \Gamma'$,

$$\begin{aligned} &\mathrm{Ind}_\Gamma^{\Gamma'} S/\mathcal{H}' \\ &\cong (S \times \Gamma'/\mathcal{H}')/\Gamma \\ &\cong \coprod_{j\in J} [S \times (f(\Gamma) j \mathcal{H}'/\mathcal{H}')]/\Gamma \\ &\cong \coprod_{j\in J} S/\ker(\Gamma \to \Gamma'/j\mathcal{H}'j^{-1}), \end{aligned} \tag{4.1}$$

where j runs over a complete set of representatives in Γ' of $J := f(\Gamma)\backslash\Gamma'/\mathcal{H}'$.

Let $\widehat{\pi}$ be a profinite set such that Γ' acts on $\widehat{\pi}$ continuously and transitively. Let Γ'_e be the stabilizer of $e \in \widehat{\pi}$ such that $\Gamma'_e \backslash \Gamma' \xrightarrow{\sim} \widehat{\pi}$ is a homeomorphism. Suppose that the map $\Gamma \to \Gamma'$ factors through a surjective map $\Gamma \twoheadrightarrow \Gamma'_e$. Then $S \times \Gamma'/\Gamma \cong (S/\Delta(\Gamma, \Gamma') \times \Gamma')/\Gamma'_e$. Note that the quotient $S/\Delta(\Gamma, \Gamma')$ exists: Indeed, for any open compact subgroup $\mathcal{H}$ of Γ such that the conjugation of $\Delta(\Gamma, \Gamma')$ stabilizes $\mathcal{H}$, the quotient $S_{\mathcal{H}}/\Delta(\Gamma, \Gamma')$ factors through a finite quotient since $\Delta(\Gamma', \Gamma)$ is compact.

4.1.3. Let (G, X) be any Shimura datum. Denote $Z := Z_G$ and $\mathrm{Sh}(G, X) := \varprojlim_{K \text{ open compact}} \mathrm{Sh}_K(G, X)$. Let

$$\mathscr{A}(G) := \frac{G(\mathbb{A}_f)}{Z(\mathbb{Q})^-} *_{G(\mathbb{Q})_+/Z(\mathbb{Q})} G^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})^+ \cong \frac{G(\mathbb{A}_f)}{Z(\mathbb{Q})^-} *_{G(\mathbb{Q})/Z(\mathbb{Q})} G^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})_1.$$

Let

$$\mathscr{A}^\circ(G) := \frac{G(\mathbb{Q})^-_+}{Z(\mathbb{Q})^-} *_{G(\mathbb{Q})_+/Z(\mathbb{Q})} G^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})^+.$$

The "$-$" denotes the closure of corresponding groups of $\mathbb{Q}$-points in $G(\mathbb{A}_f)$. By [Del79, 2.1.13-2.1.15], $\mathscr{A}(G)$ acts transitively on $\widehat{\pi}_0(G) := \varprojlim_K \pi_0(\mathrm{Sh}_K(G, X)_{\overline{\mathbb{Q}}}) \cong G(\mathbb{A}_f)/G(\mathbb{Q})^-_+$. The group $\widehat{\pi}_0(G)$ is an abelian group. The stabilizer of this action is $\mathscr{A}^\circ(G)$.

Let K be a neat open compact subgroup of $G(\mathbb{A}_f)$. For any $g \in G(\mathbb{A}_f)$ and fix a connected component X^+ of X, the connected component of $\mathrm{Sh}_K(G, X)(\mathbb{C})$ represented by g is $\Gamma_g \backslash X^+$, where $\Gamma_g := G(\mathbb{Q})_+ \cap gKg^{-1}$ is a congruence subgroup. Moreover, Γ_g acts on X^+ through its image in $G^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})^+$. When K runs over all open compact subgroup of $G(\mathbb{A}_f)$, the image of Γ_g in $G^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})^+$ forms a fundamental system of neighborhoods of the identity element $1 \in G^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})^+$, and defines a topology on $G^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})^+$.

The left action of $G^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})^+$ on $\mathrm{Sh}^+(\mathbb{C}) := \varprojlim_K \mathrm{Sh}_K^{+,(g)}(\mathbb{C})$, the inverse limit of $\mathrm{Sh}_K^{+,(g)}(\mathbb{C}) := \Gamma_g \backslash X^+$ for any g, induces an action of the completion $G^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})^{+,\widehat{}}(\text{rel. } G(\mathbb{Q})_+)$ of $G^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})^+$ with respect to the topology defined by congruence subgroups of $G(\mathbb{Q})_+$ as above. By [Del79, 2.0.13 and 2.1.15], $G^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})^{+,\widehat{}}(\text{rel. } G(\mathbb{Q})_+)$ is canonically isomorphic to $G^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})^{+,\widehat{}}(\text{rel. } G^{\mathrm{der}}(\mathbb{Q})_+)$, the completion of $G^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})^+$ with respect to the topology defined by the congruence subgroups of $G^{\mathrm{der}}(\mathbb{Q})_+$. Moreover, we have $\mathscr{A}^\circ(G) \cong G^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})^{+,\widehat{}}(\text{rel. } G^{\mathrm{der}}(\mathbb{Q})_+)$.

Since $\mathrm{Sh}_K^{+,(g)}(\mathbb{C})$ admits a canonical algebraization over $\mathbb{C}$ denoted by $\mathrm{Sh}_{K,\mathbb{C}}^{+,(g)}$, we denote $\mathrm{Sh}^+_{\mathbb{C}} := \varprojlim_K \mathrm{Sh}_{K,\mathbb{C}}^{+,(g)}$, and the action of $\mathscr{A}^\circ(G)$ canonically algebraizes to an action on $\mathrm{Sh}^+_{\mathbb{C}}$. Moreover, the variety $\mathrm{Sh}_{K,\mathbb{C}}^+$ descends to a variety $\mathrm{Sh}_{K,\overline{\mathbb{Q}}}^{+,(g)}$ over $\overline{\mathbb{Q}}$, and the action of $\mathscr{A}^\circ(G)$ is also defined over $\overline{\mathbb{Q}}$. Denote $\mathrm{Sh}^+_{\overline{\mathbb{Q}}} := \varprojlim_K \mathrm{Sh}_{\overline{\mathbb{Q}}}^{+,(g)}$.

Hence, we have that (see [Del79, 2.1.15])

$$\mathrm{Sh}(G, X)_{\overline{\mathbb{Q}}} \cong (\mathrm{Sh}^+_{\overline{\mathbb{Q}}} \times \mathscr{A}(G))/\mathscr{A}^\circ(G).$$

Let (G_2, X_2) be a Shimura datum such that there is a central isogeny $G^{\mathrm{der}} \to G_2^{\mathrm{der}}$ that induces an isomorphism $(G^{\mathrm{ad}}, X^{\mathrm{ad}}) \cong (G_2^{\mathrm{ad}}, X_2^{\mathrm{ad}})$. As any pullback of a congruence subgroup of $G_2^{\mathrm{der}}(\mathbb{Q})$ contains a congruence subgroup of $G^{\mathrm{der}}(\mathbb{Q})$, we see that there is a natural continuous surjective map

$$\mathscr{A}^\circ(G) \longrightarrow \mathscr{A}^\circ(G_2).$$

Let $\Delta^\circ(G, G_2)$ be the kernel of the map above. Following almost the same proof as [Kis17, Lem. E. 6], the group $\Delta^\circ(G, G_2)$ is compact: To see this, it suffices to replace the Galois cohomology input there with the fact that $\ker(H^1(\mathbb{Q}, Z_G) \to \prod H^1(\mathbb{Q}_l, Z_G))$ is finite. Hence, the kernel of $\mathscr{A}(G) \to \mathscr{A}(G^{\mathrm{ad}})$ contains $Z_G(\mathbb{A}_f)/Z_G(\mathbb{Q})^-$ as a finite index subgroup.

From [Del79, 2.7.11] (see also [Kis10, Prop. 3.3.10] and 4.1.2), we have that

$$\mathrm{Sh}(G_2, X_2)_{\overline{\mathbb{Q}}} \cong (\mathrm{Sh}^+_{\overline{\mathbb{Q}}} \times \mathscr{A}(G_2))/\mathscr{A}^\circ(G).$$

4.1.4. Let (G,X) be any Shimura datum. Let $\Phi=(Q,X^+,g)$ be any cusp label representative. Let K be a neat open compact subgroup of $G(\mathbb{A}_f)$.

Let Y_Φ be any connected normal $\mathbb{Q}$-subgroup of Q such that $P_\Phi\subset Y_\Phi\subset ZP_\Phi$. Let $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi^Y}(\mathbb{C}):=\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi^Y}(Y_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f),Y_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})D_\Phi)(\mathbb{C})$, where $K_\Phi^Y:=Y_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)\cap gKg^{-1}$.

Fix a connected component $D_\Phi^+\subset D_\Phi$, then this choice determines an isomorphism between the group $\pi_0(Y_\Phi)_K$ of connected components of the mixed Shimura variety $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi^Y}(\mathbb{C})$ and $Y_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})_+\backslash Y_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)/K_\Phi$, where $Y_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})_+:=\mathrm{Stab}_{Y_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi^+)$. Then $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi^Y}(\mathbb{C})$ is isomorphic to a disjoint union

$$\coprod_{p_f\in Y_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})_+\backslash Y_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)/K_\Phi}\Gamma_{p_f}\backslash D_\Phi^+.$$

In the equation above, $\Gamma_{p_f}:=Y_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})_+\cap p_fK_\Phi^Yp_f^{-1}$.

Fix a $p_f\in Y_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)$. Denote $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi^Y}^{+,(p_f)}(\mathbb{C}):=\Gamma_{p_f}\backslash D_\Phi^+$. By [Pin90, Ch.9], $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi^Y}^{+,(p_f)}(\mathbb{C})$ uniquely algebraizes to an algebraic variety $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi^Y,\mathbb{C}}^{+,(p_f)}$; by [Pin90, Ch.11], this algebraic variety descends to an algebraic variety $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi^Y,\overline{\mathbb{Q}}}^{+,(p_f)}$ over $\overline{\mathbb{Q}}$. Let $\mathrm{Sh}_{Y_\Phi,\overline{\mathbb{Q}}}^{+}:=\varprojlim_K\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi^Y,\overline{\mathbb{Q}}}^{+,(p_f)}$, which does not depend on p_f. Denote $\mathrm{Sh}_{Y_\Phi}:=\varprojlim_{K\text{ open compact}}\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi^Y}\cong\varprojlim_{K_\Phi^Y\text{ open compact in }Y_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)}\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi^Y}$.

We set

$$\mathscr{A}(Y_\Phi):=\frac{Y_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)}{Z_\Phi^Y(\mathbb{Q})^-}*_{Y_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})_+/Z_\Phi^Y(\mathbb{Q})}Y_\Phi^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})^+,$$

and set

$$\mathscr{A}^\circ(Y_\Phi):=\frac{Y_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})_+^-}{Z_\Phi^Y(\mathbb{Q})^-}*_{Y_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})_+/Z_\Phi^Y(\mathbb{Q})}Y_\Phi^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})^+.$$

In the two equations above, $Z_\Phi^Y:=Z_G\cap Y_\Phi$ and $Y_\Phi^{\mathrm{ad}}:=Y_\Phi/Z_\Phi^Y$. So $P_\Phi^{\mathrm{ad}}=Y_\Phi^{\mathrm{ad}}=ZP_\Phi^{\mathrm{ad}}$. The "$^-$" denotes the closure in $Y_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)$. The group $\mathscr{A}(Y_\Phi)$ acts on $\widehat{\pi}_0(Y_\Phi):=\varprojlim\pi_0(Y_\Phi)_K$ transitively with stabilizer $\mathscr{A}^\circ(Y_\Phi)$.

For any closed connected unipotent normal subgroup $W\subset Y_\Phi$, we can also define

$$\mathscr{A}(Y_\Phi/W):=\frac{Y_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)/W(\mathbb{A}_f)}{Z_\Phi^Y(\mathbb{Q})^-}*_{(Y_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})_+/W(\mathbb{Q}))/Z_\Phi^Y(\mathbb{Q})}Y_\Phi^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})^+/W(\mathbb{Q}),$$

and define

$$\mathscr{A}^\circ(Y_\Phi/W):=\frac{Y_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})_+^-/W(\mathbb{Q})^-}{Z_\Phi^Y(\mathbb{Q})^-}*_{(Y_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})_+/W(\mathbb{Q}))/Z_\Phi^Y(\mathbb{Q})}Y_\Phi^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})^+/W(\mathbb{Q}).$$

Lemma 4.2. *With the notation above,*

(1) $\mathscr{A}(Y_\Phi)$ and $\mathscr{A}^\circ(Y_\Phi)$ fit into the following exact sequences induced by Levi quotients:

$$\begin{aligned}0\longrightarrow W_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)\longrightarrow\mathscr{A}(Y_\Phi)\longrightarrow\mathscr{A}(Y_\Phi/W_\Phi)\longrightarrow 0,\\ 0\longrightarrow W_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)\longrightarrow\mathscr{A}^\circ(Y_\Phi)\longrightarrow\mathscr{A}^\circ(Y_\Phi/W_\Phi)\longrightarrow 0.\end{aligned}\tag{4.2}$$

(2) $\mathscr{A}^\circ(Y_\Phi)$ is the completion of $Y_\Phi^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})^+$ with respect to the topology generated by the images of congruence subgroups of $Y_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})_+$ in $Y_\Phi^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})^+$.

(3) Let Y_Φ' be the smallest normal $\mathbb{Q}$-subgroup of Y_Φ such that there is a product $Y_\Phi'\cdot Z_\Phi^Y\cong Y_\Phi$ and such that Y_Φ' and Z_ϕ^Y have finite intersection. Then the definition of $\mathscr{A}^\circ(Y_\Phi)$ depends only on Y_Φ'.

Proof. By [PR94, Lem. 2.7 and Prop. 6.6], $W_\Phi(\mathbb{A})\cong W_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})^-$. Since $W_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)*_{W_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})}W_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})\cong W_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)$, the first part follows. For any open compact subgroup $K\subset Y_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)$, by [PR94, Prop. 6.5, p.296], the image of K in the quotient $Y_\Phi/W_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)$ is open and compact. Combining this fact with strong approximation of unipotent groups, and choosing a Levi decomposition representing

Y_Φ as a semidirect product of W_Φ and Y_Φ/W_Φ, we see that the family of congruence subgroups of $Y_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})$ contains a cofinal system consisting of the products of congruence subgroups of $W_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})$ and $Y_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})/W_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})$. Then the second part follows from [Del79, 2.0.9] and the first part. To show the third part, we can assume that Y_Φ is reductive by the first part. Then the third part is the consequence of the following Lemma 4.3 that can be directly derived from [Del79, 2.0.13]. □

Lemma 4.3. *Let Y be a reductive $\mathbb{Q}$-group. Let Y_1 be a $\mathbb{Q}$-subgroup containing Y^{der}. Let Z_1 be a subgroup of Z_Y such that Z_1 and Y_1 have finite intersection and such that $Z_1 \cdot Y_1 \cong Y$. Then the product of a congruence subgroup in Y_1 and a congruence subgroup in Z_1 is a congruence subgroup of Y.*

Proof. By [Del79, 2.0.13], any congruence subgroup $U_1 \subset Y_1(\mathbb{Q})$ contains a finite index subgroup U', where U' is a product of a congruence subgroup U^{der} of Y^{der} and a congruence subgroup U_Z^1 of $Z^\circ_{Y_1}(\mathbb{Q})$, which is a finite index subgroup of group of units of $Z^\circ_{Y_1}(\mathbb{Q})$ by [Del79, 2.0.10]. By *loc. cit.* again, the product of the congruence subgroup U_Z^1 and a congruence subgroup $U_Z \subset Z_1$ is a congruence subgroup in $Z_1 \cdot Z_{Y_1}(\mathbb{Q}) \cong Z_Y(\mathbb{Q})$. Hence, $U' \cdot U_Z$ is a congruence subgroup of $Y(\mathbb{Q})$ by [Del79, 2.0.13] again, and so is $U_1 \cdot U_Z$. □

4.1.5. By part 2 of Lemma 4.2 and the paragraphs in §4.1.4 before that, we have an $\mathscr{A}(Y_\Phi)$-equivariant isomorphism

$$\mathrm{Sh}_{Y_\Phi,\overline{\mathbb{Q}}} \cong \mathrm{Sh}^+_{Y_\Phi,\overline{\mathbb{Q}}} \times \mathscr{A}(Y_\Phi)/\mathscr{A}^\circ(Y_\Phi).$$

Let E' be a finite extension of $E := E(G,X) = E(P_\Phi, D_\Phi)$ (see [Pin90, Prop. 12.1]).

The action of $\mathrm{Gal}(E'^{,ab}/E')$ on $\widehat{\pi}_0(Y_\Phi) \cong Y_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)/Y_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})^-_+ \cong (Y_\Phi/W_\Phi)(\mathbb{A}_f)/(Y_\Phi/W_\Phi)(\mathbb{Q})^-_+$ is given by

$$r_{E'}(Y_\Phi) : \mathrm{Gal}(E'^{,ab}/E') \xrightarrow{\mathrm{rec}_{E'}} \pi_0(\mathbb{G}_m(\mathbb{A}_{E'})/\mathbb{G}_m(E')) \xrightarrow{\sim} \frac{\mathbb{A}^\times_{E'}}{E'^{,\times}(E'\otimes_{\mathbb{Q}}\mathbb{R})^{\times,+}}$$

(4.3)

$$\cong \mathbb{A}^\times_{E',f}/E'^{,\times,+} \xrightarrow{[\mu_{\Phi,x}]} Y_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_{E',f})/Y_\Phi(E')^-_+ \xrightarrow{N_{E'/\mathbb{Q}}} \frac{Y_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)}{Y_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})^-_+}.$$

In the diagram (4.3) above, $[\mu_{\Phi,x}]$ is the morphism determined by the conjugacy class of Hodge cocharacter $\mu_{\Phi,x}$ for any $x \in Y_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})D_\Phi$ over E'; $N_{E'/\mathbb{Q}}$ is the map determined by norm map $N_{E'/\mathbb{Q}} : R_{E'/\mathbb{Q}}Y_{\Phi,E'} \to Y_\Phi$. Let $\widetilde{r}_{E'}(Y_\Phi)$ be the composition of $r_{E'}(Y_\Phi)$ with the natural map $\mathrm{Gal}(\overline{E}'/E') \to \mathrm{Gal}(E'^{,ab}/E')$.

Let $\mathscr{E}(Y_\Phi)$ be the pullback of

$$0 \longrightarrow \mathscr{A}^\circ(Y_\Phi) \longrightarrow \mathscr{A}(Y_\Phi) \longrightarrow \mathscr{A}^\circ(Y_\Phi)\backslash\mathscr{A}(Y_\Phi) \longrightarrow 0$$

via $-\widetilde{r}_{E'}(Y_\Phi)$. Then $\mathscr{E}(Y_\Phi)$ is the stabilizer of $\mathrm{Sh}^+_{Y_\Phi,\overline{\mathbb{Q}}}$ in $\mathscr{A}(Y_\Phi) \times \mathrm{Gal}(\overline{E}'/E')$.

So there is an action of $\mathscr{A}(Y_\Phi) \times \mathrm{Gal}(\overline{E}'/E')$ on $\mathrm{Sh}_{Y_\Phi,\overline{\mathbb{Q}}}$ such that the natural projection $\widehat{\pi}_0 : \mathrm{Sh}_{Y_\Phi,\overline{\mathbb{Q}}} \to \widehat{\pi}_0(Y_\Phi)$ from $\mathrm{Sh}_{Y_\Phi,\overline{\mathbb{Q}}}$ to its group of connected components is $\mathscr{A}(Y_\Phi) \times \mathrm{Gal}(\overline{E}'/E')$-equivariant.

4.1.6. Let $\Phi = (Q, X^+, g)$ be a cusp label representative of (G,X). The cusp label representative Φ maps to a cusp label representative $\Phi^{\mathrm{ad}} = (Q^{\mathrm{ad}}, X^{\mathrm{ad},+}, g)$ of $(G^{\mathrm{ad}}, X^{\mathrm{ad}})$, where $Q^{\mathrm{ad}} = Q/Z_G$, $X^{\mathrm{ad},+}$ is the image of X^+ and g here abusively denotes the image of g.

Lemma 4.4. *The map $D_{Q,X^+} \to D_{Q^{\mathrm{ad}},X^{\mathrm{ad},+}}$ induced by $\Phi \to \Phi^{\mathrm{ad}}$ is injective and is a homeomorphism on each connected component of D_{Q,X^+}.*

Proof. We have a $P_Q(\mathbb{R})\cdot U_Q(\mathbb{C})$-equivariant diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \longrightarrow & \pi_0(X)\times \mathrm{Hom}(\mathbb{S}_{\mathbb{C}}, P_{Q,\mathbb{C}}) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X^{\mathrm{ad}} & \longrightarrow & \pi_0(X^{\mathrm{ad}})\times \mathrm{Hom}(\mathbb{S}_{\mathbb{C}}, P_{Q^{\mathrm{ad}},\mathbb{C}}). \end{array}$$

By [Pin90, Prop. 2.9], we can write D_{Q,X^+} as a quotient $P_Q(\mathbb{R})U_Q(\mathbb{C})/\mathrm{Stab}(x)$ where $\mathrm{Stab}(x)$ is the stabilizer of a point in D_{Q,X^+}. The map $D_{Q,X^+}\to D_{Q^{\mathrm{ad}},X^{\mathrm{ad},+}}$ is induced by the quotient of $P_Q(\mathbb{R})U_Q(\mathbb{C})$ by $(P_Q\cap Z_G)(\mathbb{R})$, and the latter group is contained in $\mathrm{Stab}(x)$. □

Let (G_2,X_2) be the Shimura datum as in §4.1.3. Let Φ (resp. Φ_2) be a cusp label representative of (G,X) (resp. (G_2,X_2)). Recall that Y'_Φ is the smallest normal $\mathbb{Q}$-subgroup of Y_Φ such that Y'_Φ and Z^Y_Φ have finite intersection and such that $Y'_\Phi\cdot Z^Y_\Phi\cong Y_\Phi$.

We assume that there is an isogeny $Y'_\Phi\to Y'_{\Phi_2}$ whose kernel is in $Z_G\cap Y'_\Phi$.

From Part 2 and Part 3 of Lemma 4.2, we see that there is a natural continuous and surjective map

$$\mathscr{A}^\circ(P_\Phi)\to\mathscr{A}^\circ(Y_{\Phi_2}).$$

Lemma 4.5. *The kernel $\Delta^\circ(P_\Phi,Y_{\Phi_2}):=\ker(\mathscr{A}^\circ(P_\Phi)\to\mathscr{A}^\circ(Y_{\Phi_2}))$ is compact. The intersection $(Z_G\cap P_\Phi)(\mathbb{A}_f)/(Z_G\cap P_\Phi)(\mathbb{Q})^-\cap\Delta^\circ(P_\Phi,Y_{\Phi_2})$ is a finite index subgroup in $\Delta^\circ(P_\Phi,Y_{\Phi_2})$.*

Proof. Combine Part 1 of Lemma 4.2 and [Kis17, Lem. E. 6], with the Galois cohomology input there changed to the fact that $\ker(H^1(\mathbb{Q},Z_G\cap P_\Phi)\longrightarrow\prod H^1(\mathbb{Q}_l,Z_G\cap P_\Phi))$ is finite. □

Note that $\mathrm{Sh}_{Y_{\Phi_2},\overline{\mathbb{Q}}}$ is equipped with a Hecke action of $Y_{\Phi_2}(\mathbb{A}_f)$ on the right (see [Pin90, 11.5]). From the arguments above, we see that

Proposition 4.6. *There is an $\mathscr{A}(Y_{\Phi_2})$-equivariant isomorphism*

$$\mathrm{Sh}_{Y_{\Phi_2},\overline{\mathbb{Q}}}\cong\mathrm{Sh}^+_{P_\Phi,\overline{\mathbb{Q}}}\times\mathscr{A}(Y_{\Phi_2})/\mathscr{A}^\circ(P_\Phi).$$

The $\mathscr{A}(Y_{\Phi_2})$-action of the right-hand side is induced by the right multiplication on its second factor.

From the Proposition above, we see that $\mathscr{E}(Y_{\Phi_2})$ is the pushout of $0\to\mathscr{A}^\circ(P_\Phi)\to\mathscr{E}(P_\Phi)\to\mathrm{Gal}(\overline{E}'/E')\to 0$ under the natural map $\mathscr{A}^\circ(P_\Phi)\to\mathscr{A}^\circ(Y_{\Phi_2})$ given by Part 3 of Lemma 4.2. So $\mathscr{A}(Y_{\Phi_2})*_{\mathscr{A}^\circ(P_\Phi)}\mathscr{E}(P_\Phi)\cong\mathscr{A}(Y_{\Phi_2})\times\mathrm{Gal}(\overline{E}'/E')$.

So there is an action of $\mathscr{A}(Y_{\Phi_2})\times\mathrm{Gal}(\overline{E}'/E')$ on $\mathrm{Sh}_{Y_{\Phi_2},\overline{\mathbb{Q}}}$ such that the natural projection $\widehat{\pi}_0:\mathrm{Sh}_{Y_{\Phi_2},\overline{\mathbb{Q}}}\to\widehat{\pi}_0(Y_{\Phi_2})$ from $\mathrm{Sh}_{Y_{\Phi_2},\overline{\mathbb{Q}}}$ to its group of connected components is $\mathscr{A}(Y_{\Phi_2})\times\mathrm{Gal}(\overline{E}'/E')$-equivariant.

Recall that any $g_2\in G_2(\mathbb{Q})$ induces an isomorphism $\mathrm{Sh}_{Y_{\Phi_2},\overline{\mathbb{Q}}}\xrightarrow{\sim}\mathrm{Sh}_{g_2Y_{\Phi_2},\overline{\mathbb{Q}}}$, where $\mathrm{Sh}_{g_2Y_{\Phi_2},\overline{\mathbb{Q}}}$ is the inverse limit of a tower of mixed Shimura varieties $\mathrm{Sh}_{g_2K^Y_{\Phi_2}}({}^{g_2}Y_{\Phi_2}(\mathbb{A}_f),{}^{g_2}Y_{\Phi_2}(\mathbb{Q})g_2\cdot D_{\Phi_2})_{\overline{\mathbb{Q}}}$. Also, there is a right action of $h_2\in G_2(\mathbb{A}_f)$, mapping $\mathrm{Sh}_{K^Y_{\Phi_2}}(Y_{\Phi_2},Y_{\Phi_2}(\mathbb{Q})D_{\Phi_2})_{\overline{\mathbb{Q}}}$ to $\mathrm{Sh}_{(K^Y_{\Phi_2})^{h_2}}(Y_{\Phi_2},Y_{\Phi_2}(\mathbb{Q})D_{\Phi_2})_{\overline{\mathbb{Q}}}$. Therefore, there is a right action $h_2:\mathrm{Sh}_{Y_{\Phi_2},\overline{\mathbb{Q}}}\xrightarrow{\sim}\mathrm{Sh}_{Y_{\Phi_2},\overline{\mathbb{Q}}}$ on the inverse limit $\mathrm{Sh}_{Y_{\Phi_2},\overline{\mathbb{Q}}}$.

4.1.7. As in [Kis10] and [KP18], we want to decompose $\mathscr{A}(Y_{\Phi_2})$ to smaller groups.

Let us define more "$\mathscr{A}$-type" and "$\mathscr{A}^\circ$-type" groups.

Fix any general (G,X) and Y_Φ. Let $K:=K_pK^p$ be a neat open compact subgroup of $G(\mathbb{A}_f)$ such that $K^p\subset G(\mathbb{A}_f^p)$ is neat open compact. We define

$$\widetilde{\mathscr{A}_{K_p}}(Y_\Phi):=\frac{Y_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f^p)\times K^Y_{\Phi,p}}{Z^Y_{\Phi,K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})^-}*_{Y_{\Phi,K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})_+/Z^Y_{\Phi,K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})}P^{\mathrm{ad}}_{\Phi,K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})^+.$$

In the equation above, $Y_{\Phi,K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})_+ := Y_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})_+ \cap \widetilde{K}^Y_{\Phi,p}$, $Z^Y_{\Phi,K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}) := Z_G(\mathbb{Q}) \cap K^Y_{\Phi,p}$, and $P^{\mathrm{ad}}_{\Phi,K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})^+ := (Y^{\mathrm{ad}}_\Phi)(\mathbb{Q})^+ \cap \mathrm{Im}\, K^Y_{\Phi,p} = (ZP_\Phi/Z_G)(\mathbb{Q})^+ \cap \mathrm{Im}\, K^Y_{\Phi,p}$, where $\mathrm{Im}\, K^Y_{\Phi,p}$ is the image of $K^Y_{\Phi,p}$ in $G^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q}_p)$.

We define

$$\widetilde{\mathscr{A}^\circ_{K_p}}(Y_\Phi) := \frac{Y_{\Phi,K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})^-_+}{Z^Y_{\Phi,K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})^-} *_{Y_{\Phi,K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})_+/Z^Y_{\Phi,K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})} P^{\mathrm{ad}}_{\Phi,K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})^+.$$

Therefore, $\widetilde{\mathscr{A}^\circ}(Y_\Phi)$ is the closure of $P^{\mathrm{ad}}_{\Phi,K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})^+$ in $\mathscr{A}^\circ(Y_\Phi)$ (with respect to the topology on $\mathscr{A}^\circ(Y_\Phi)$ defined in §4.1.4). Moreover, let

$$\mathscr{A}^\circ_{K_p}(Y_\Phi) := \frac{Y_{\Phi,K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})^{\overline{p}}_+}{Z^Y_{\Phi,K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})^{\overline{p}}} *_{Y_{\Phi,K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})_+/Z^Y_{\Phi,K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})} P^{\mathrm{ad}}_{\Phi,K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})^+.$$

In the definition above, "$\overline{p}$" denotes the closure in $Y_\Phi(\mathbb{A}^p_f)$. Then $\mathscr{A}^\circ_{K_p}(Y_\Phi)$ is the completion of $P^{\mathrm{ad}}_{K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})^+$ with respect to the topology generated by the image of the sets of the form $Y'_{K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})_+ \cap K^p$ in $P^{\mathrm{ad}}_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})^+$ by Lemma 4.2 and [Del79, 2.0.12].

Define

$$\mathscr{A}_{K_p}(Y_\Phi) := \frac{Y_\Phi(\mathbb{A}^p_f)}{Z^Y_{\Phi,K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})^{\overline{p}}} *_{Y_{\Phi,K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})_+/Z^Y_{\Phi,K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})} P^{\mathrm{ad}}_{\Phi,K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})^+.$$

Now, let (G,X), (G_2,X_2), Φ, Φ_2, P_Φ and Y_{Φ_2} be the symbols defined as in §4.1.6. Let $K_2 = K_{2,p}K_2^p$ be a neat open compact subgroup of $G_2(\mathbb{A}_f)$ with K_2^p neat open compact. So we have defined $\widetilde{\mathscr{A}^\circ_{K_{2,p}}}(Y_{\Phi_2})$ and $\mathscr{A}^\circ_{K_{2,p}}(Y_{\Phi_2})$ as above.

Define $\widetilde{\mathscr{A}^\circ_{K_{2,p}}}(P_\Phi)$ as the closure of $P^{\mathrm{ad}}_{\Phi_2,K_{2,p}}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})^+$ in $\mathscr{A}^\circ(P_\Phi)$. Since there is a central isogeny $P'_\Phi \to Y'_{\Phi_2}$, we can choose a neat open compact subgroup $K_p \subset G(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ such that $g_\Phi K_p g_\Phi^{-1} \cap P'_\Phi(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ is a normal subgroup contained in the pullback of $g_{\Phi_2}K_{2,p}g_{\Phi_2}^{-1} \cap Y'_{\Phi_2}(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ under this central isogeny.

Define $\mathscr{A}^\circ_{K_{2,p}}(P_\Phi)$ to be the completion of $P^{\mathrm{ad}}_{\Phi_2,K_{2,p}}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})^+$ with respect to the topology generated by the image of the sets of the form $P'_{K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})_+ \cap K^p$ in $P^{\mathrm{ad}}_{\Phi_2}(\mathbb{Q})^+$.

Explicitly, we can write

$$\widetilde{\mathscr{A}^\circ_{K_{2,p}}}(P_\Phi) := \frac{P_{\Phi,K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})^-_+}{Z_{\Phi,K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})^-} *_{P_{\Phi,K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})_+/Z_{\Phi,K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})} P^{\mathrm{ad}}_{\Phi_2,K_{2,p}}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})^+,$$

and write

$$\mathscr{A}^\circ_{K_{2,p}}(P_\Phi) := \frac{P_{\Phi,K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})^{\overline{p}}_+}{Z_{\Phi,K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})^{\overline{p}}} *_{P_{\Phi,K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})_+/Z_{\Phi,K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})} P^{\mathrm{ad}}_{\Phi_2,K_{2,p}}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})^+.$$

The maps $\widetilde{\mathscr{A}^\circ_{K_{2,p}}}(P_\Phi) \to \widetilde{\mathscr{A}^\circ_{K_{2,p}}}(Y_{\Phi_2})$ and $\mathscr{A}^\circ_{K_{2,p}}(P_\Phi) \to \mathscr{A}^\circ_{K_{2,p}}(Y_{\Phi_2})$ are surjective; their kernels are compact by Lemma 4.5.

4.1.8. For a general (G,X), define

$$\mathscr{J}_{K^Y_{\Phi,p}}(Y_\Phi) := Y_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})_+ \backslash Y_\Phi(\mathbb{Q}_p)/K^Y_{\Phi,p}.$$

We simplify this notation to $\mathscr{J}_{K_p}(Y_\Phi)$ if we know how to form the group $K^Y_{\Phi,p}$ from some $K_p \subset G(\mathbb{Q}_p)$. Then $\mathscr{J}_{K_p}(Y_\Phi) \cong (Y_\Phi/W_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})_+)\backslash(Y_\Phi/W_\Phi(\mathbb{Q}_p))/K^Y_{\Phi,h,p}$ is an abelian group by [Del79, 2.1.3], where $K^Y_{\Phi,h,p}$ is the image of $K^Y_{\Phi,p}$ in $Y_\Phi/W_\Phi(\mathbb{Q}_p)$. If we assume that K_p is hyperspecial, $K^Y_{\Phi,h,p}$ is also hyperspecial. By [Kis10, Lem. 2.2.6], $\mathscr{J}_{K_p}(Y_\Phi)$ is trivial.

Lemma 4.7. *With the previous definitions, there is a natural injective map*

$$\widetilde{\mathscr{A}^\circ_{K_p}}(Y_\Phi)\backslash\widetilde{\mathscr{A}_{K_p}}(Y_\Phi)/K^Y_{\Phi,p} \hookrightarrow \mathscr{A}^\circ(Y_\Phi)\backslash\mathscr{A}(Y_\Phi)/K^Y_{\Phi,p},$$

where $\widetilde{\mathscr{A}^\circ_{K_p}}(Y_\Phi)\backslash\widetilde{\mathscr{A}_{K_p}}(Y_\Phi)/K^Y_{\Phi,p} \cong \mathscr{A}^\circ_{K_p}(Y_\Phi)\backslash\mathscr{A}_{K_p}(Y_\Phi)$. *The index of the left-hand side in the right-hand side is isomorphic to* $\mathscr{J}_{K_p}(Y_\Phi)$.

Therefore, we can write $\mathscr{A}(Y_\Phi)$ *as a fiber bundle over* $\mathscr{J}_{K_p}(Y_\Phi)$*; at each* $j \in \mathscr{J}_{K_p}(Y_\Phi)$*, the fiber is* $\mathscr{A}^\circ_{jK_p}(Y_\Phi)\backslash\mathscr{A}_{jK_p}(Y_\Phi) \cong \mathscr{A}^\circ_{K_p}(Y_\Phi)\backslash\mathscr{A}_{K_p}(Y_\Phi)$. *When* K_p *is hyperspecial, we have that* $\mathscr{A}^\circ_{K_p}(Y_\Phi)\backslash\mathscr{A}_{K_p}(Y_\Phi) \cong \mathscr{A}^\circ(Y_\Phi)\backslash\mathscr{A}(Y_\Phi)/K^Y_{\Phi,p}$.

Proof. By Lemma 4.1, $\mathscr{A}^\circ(Y_\Phi)\backslash\mathscr{A}(Y_\Phi) \cong Y_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})^-_+\backslash Y_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)$, $\widetilde{\mathscr{A}^\circ_{K_p}}(Y_\Phi)\backslash\widetilde{\mathscr{A}_{K_p}}(Y_\Phi) \cong Y_{\Phi,K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})^-_+\backslash Y_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f^p)\times K^Y_{\Phi,p}$ and $\mathscr{A}^\circ_{K_p}(Y_\Phi)\backslash\mathscr{A}_{K_p}(Y_\Phi) \cong Y_{\Phi,K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})^{\overline{p}}_+\backslash Y_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f^p)$. Moreover,

$$\begin{aligned}
&Y_{\Phi,K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})^{\overline{p}}_+\backslash Y_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f^p)\\
&\cong \varprojlim_{K^p} Y_{\Phi,K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})_+\backslash Y_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f^p)/K_\Phi^{Y,p}\\
&\cong \varprojlim_{K^p} Y_{\Phi,K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})_+\backslash Y_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f^p)\times K^Y_{\Phi,p}/K^Y_{\Phi,p}K_\Phi^{Y,p}\\
&\cong \varprojlim_{K'_pK^p,\ K'_p\subset K_p} \{[Y_{\Phi,K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})_+\backslash Y_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f^p)\times K^Y_{\Phi,p}/K'^{,Y}_{\Phi,p}K_\Phi^{Y,p}]/K^Y_{\Phi,p}\}\\
&\cong \{\varprojlim_{K'_pK^p,\ K'_p\subset K_p} [Y_{\Phi,K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})_+\backslash Y_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f^p)\times K^Y_{\Phi,p}/K'^{,Y}_{\Phi,p}K_\Phi^{Y,p}]\}/K^Y_{\Phi,p}\\
&\cong Y_{\Phi,K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})^-_+\backslash Y_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f^p)\times K^Y_{\Phi,p}/K^Y_{\Phi,p}.
\end{aligned}$$

The fourth line to the fifth line is by the Mittag-Leffler criterion. So the lemma follows. □

The "$\mathscr{E}$-type" groups also decompose over $\mathscr{J}_{K_p}(Y_\Phi)$.

By weak approximation for $\mathbb{G}_m$, the map defined by the quotient of $r_{E'}(Y_\Phi)$ by $K^Y_{\Phi,p}$, namely,

$$r_{E',K_p}(Y_\Phi) : \mathrm{Gal}(E'^{,ab}/E') \xrightarrow{\mathrm{rec}_{E'}} \pi_0(\mathbb{G}_m(\mathbb{A}_{E'})/\mathbb{G}_m(E')) \xrightarrow{\sim} \frac{\mathbb{A}^\times_{E'}}{E'^{,\times}(E'\otimes_{\mathbb{Q}}\mathbb{R})^{\times,+}}$$

(4.4)

$$\cong \mathbb{A}^\times_{E',f}/E'^{,\times,+} \xrightarrow{[\mu_{\Phi,x}]} Y_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_{E',f})/Y_\Phi(E')^-_+ \xrightarrow{N_{E'/\mathbb{Q}}/K^Y_{\Phi,p}} \frac{Y_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)}{Y_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})^-_+K^Y_{\Phi,p}},$$

factors through

$$Y_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f^p)/Y_{\Phi,K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})^{\overline{p}}_+ \cong Y_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f^p)\times K^Y_{\Phi,p}/Y_{\Phi,K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})^-_+K^Y_{\Phi,p} \subset \frac{Y_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)}{Y_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})^-_+K^Y_{\Phi,p}}.$$

We abusively denote the resulting map $\mathrm{Gal}(E'^{,ab}/E') \to Y_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f^p)/Y_{\Phi,K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})^{\overline{p}}_+$ by $r_{E',K_p}(Y_\Phi)$. Let $\widetilde{r}_{E',K_p}(Y_\Phi)$ be the composition of $r_{E',K_p}(Y_\Phi)$ with the natural map $\mathrm{Gal}(\overline{E}'/E') \to \mathrm{Gal}(E'^{,ab}/E')$. Let $\mathscr{E}_{K_p}(Y_\Phi)$ be the pullback of the extension

$$0 \longrightarrow \mathscr{A}^\circ_{K_p}(Y_\Phi) \longrightarrow \mathscr{A}_{K_p}(Y_\Phi) \longrightarrow Y_{\Phi,K_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})^{\overline{p}}_+\backslash Y_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f^p) \longrightarrow 0$$

along $-\widetilde{r}_{E',K_p}(Y_\Phi)$.

Lemma 4.8. *With the previous definitions, for any* $j \in \mathscr{J}_{K_p}(Y_\Phi)$*, there is a natural map* $\mathscr{E}_{jK_p}(Y_\Phi) \to \mathscr{E}(Y_\Phi)$ *that fits the following diagram:*

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccc}
0 & \longrightarrow & \mathscr{A}^\circ_{jK_p}(Y_\Phi) & \longrightarrow & \mathscr{E}_{jK_p}(Y_\Phi) & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Gal}(\overline{E}'/E') & \longrightarrow & 0\\
 & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \| & & \\
0 & \longrightarrow & \mathscr{A}^\circ(Y_\Phi) & \longrightarrow & \mathscr{E}(Y_\Phi) & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Gal}(\overline{E}'/E') & \longrightarrow & 0.
\end{array} \tag{4.5}$$

Moreover, the group $\mathscr{E}_{^jK_p}(Y_\Phi)$ is the pullback of the extension

$$0 \longrightarrow \mathscr{A}^\circ_{^jK_p}(Y_\Phi) \longrightarrow \mathscr{A}_{^jK_p}(Y_\Phi) \longrightarrow Y_{\Phi,^jK_p}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)})^{\overline{p}}_+ \backslash Y_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f^p) \longrightarrow 0$$

along $-\widetilde{r}_{E',^jK_p}(Y_\Phi)$.

Proof. This is self-explanatory from the constructions above. □

4.1.9. Let us return to the settings for (G_0, X_0) and (G_2, X_2). Let Φ_0 be a cusp label representative of (G_0, X_0) and let Φ_2 be a cusp label representative of (G_2, X_2). Assume that there is an isogeny $P'_{\Phi_0} \to Y'_{\Phi_2}$ whose kernel is in $Z_{G_0} \cap P'_{\Phi_0}$.

We assume that $K_{\Phi_0,p} \cap \mathscr{A}^\circ(P_{\Phi_0})$ maps to $K^Y_{\Phi_2,p} \cap \mathscr{A}^\circ(Y_{\Phi_2})$ and that $g_\Phi K_p g_\Phi^{-1} \cap P'_\Phi(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ is the pullback of $g_{\Phi_2} K_{2,p} g_{\Phi_2}^{-1} \cap Y'_{\Phi_2}(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ under the isogeny $P'_{\Phi_0} \to Y'_{\Phi_2}$.

Combining Lemma 4.7, Lemma 4.8 and Proposition 4.6, we obtain a $Y_{\Phi_2}(\mathbb{A}_f^p) \times \mathrm{Gal}(\overline{E}'/E')$-equivariant isomorphism (cf. (4.1))

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{Sh}_{K^Y_{\Phi_2,p},\overline{\mathbb{Q}}} &\cong (\mathrm{Sh}^+_{P_{\Phi_0},\overline{\mathbb{Q}}} \times (\mathscr{A}(Y_{\Phi_2})/K^Y_{\Phi_2,p}))/\mathscr{A}^\circ(P_{\Phi_0}) \\
&\cong \coprod_{j \in \mathscr{J}_{K_{2,p}}(Y_{\Phi_2})} (\mathrm{Sh}^+_{^jK_{\Phi_0,p},\overline{\mathbb{Q}}} \times (\widetilde{\mathscr{A}_{^jK_{2,p}}}(Y_{\Phi_2})/jK^Y_{\Phi_2,p}j^{-1}))/\widetilde{\mathscr{A}^\circ_{^jK_{2,p}}}(P_{\Phi_0}) \\
&\cong \coprod_{j \in \mathscr{J}_{K_{2,p}}(Y_{\Phi_2})} (\mathrm{Sh}^+_{^jK_{\Phi_0,p},\overline{\mathbb{Q}}} \times \mathscr{A}_{^jK_{2,p}}(Y_{\Phi_2}))/\mathscr{A}^\circ_{^jK_{2,p}}(P_{\Phi_0}).
\end{aligned} \tag{4.6}$$

Since every component in the disjoint union above descends to E', we can write $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_0,p}}$ as a disjoint union over E',

$$\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_0,p}} \cong \coprod_{j \in \mathscr{J}_{K_{0,p}}(P_{\Phi_0})} {}^j\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_0,p}}.$$

Let ${}^j\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0,p}K^p_{\Phi_0}}$ be the normalization in ${}^j\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_0,p}K^p_{\Phi_0}}$ of $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0,p}K^p_{\Phi_0}}$.

Define ${}^j\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0,p}} := \varprojlim_{K^p_{\Phi_0} \text{ neat open compact}} {}^j\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0,p}K^p_{\Phi_0}}$.

We also record a lemma.

Lemma 4.9. *Let K_p be an open compact subgroup of $G(\mathbb{Q}_p)$. Let Φ be a cusp label representative of (G, X). Then there is a finite Galois extension F of the reflex field $E := E(G, X)$ depending on K_p and Φ, such that all connected components of $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi,p}}(G, X)_{\mathbb{C}}$ are defined over $F \cdot E^p$, where E^p is the union of all finite extensions of E that are unramified at p.*

Proof. By [Pin90, Prop. 11.2 (c)], it suffices to show the lemma after replacing (G, X) with $(P_{\Phi,h}, \hbar(D_{\Phi,h}))$. So we assume that $P_\Phi = G$ is reductive without loss of generality.

Recall that by [Del79, Thm. 2.6.3], the Galois group $\mathrm{Gal}(E^{ab}/E)$ acts on the connected components by

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{Gal}(E^{ab}/E) \xrightarrow{rec_E} \pi_0(\mathbb{G}_m(\mathbb{A}_E)/\mathbb{G}_m(E)) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathbb{A}_E^\times/E^\times(E \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{R})^{\times,+} \xrightarrow{[\mu_x]} \\
G(\mathbb{A}_{E,f})/G(E)^-_+ \xrightarrow{N_{E/\mathbb{Q}}} G(\mathbb{A}_f)/G(\mathbb{Q})^-_+ K_p.
\end{aligned} \tag{4.7}$$

This map sends open compact groups of $\mathbb{G}_m(E \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{Q}_p)$ to compact subgroups of $G(\mathbb{Q}_p)$. So there is a possibly ramified finite field extension F of E, such that the image of $\mathrm{Gal}(E^{ab}/F)$ under the map above is trivial at p. So we have the desired result. □

4.2. **Construction of strata and compactifications by quotients.** We continue with the settings in §1.4.4. Let (G, X_a), (G, X_b) and $K = K_p K^p \subset G(\mathbb{A}_f)$ be the Shimura data and the neat open compact subgroup chosen there. Since in most occasions only (G, X_b) will appear in this subsection, we will omit the superscript b from many symbols in the first section.

Let $\Phi := \Phi_b = (Q, X_b^+, g^b)$ be any cusp label representative of (G, X_b). Set $P_\Phi := P_\Phi^b$ and $ZP_\Phi := ZP_\Phi^b$. Let $K_\Phi := K_\Phi^b = P_\Phi^b(\mathbb{A}_f) \cap g^b K g^{b,-1}$ and let $\widetilde{K}_\Phi := \widetilde{K}_\Phi^b = ZP_\Phi^b(\mathbb{A}_f) \cap g^b K g^{b,-1}$. Recall that $\mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi} := \mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^b}(ZP_\Phi^b, ZP_\Phi^b(\mathbb{Q})D_{\Phi_b})$ is the mixed Shimura variety defined by $(ZP_\Phi^b, ZP_\Phi^b(\mathbb{Q})D_{\Phi_b})$. In our conventions σ are cones in $\Sigma(\Phi)$, σ_0^α are cones in $\Sigma_0^\alpha(\Phi_0^\alpha)$, etc. Recall that we chose Σ_0^α to be *induced* by Σ (see Proposition 1.47). Let us explain how to use quotients to construct integral models $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$, $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi,\sigma}$ and $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}(\sigma)$ for $\mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$, $\mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi,\sigma}$ and $\mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}(\sigma)$, respectively.

We will study the following cases, where each of them is a special case of the one following it:

- (Hyperspecial levels; **HS**) See [Kis10] and [KMP16]. Suppose that G_2 is quasi-split and unramified at p. By [Kis10, Lem. 3.4.13], we can assume that G_0 is chosen such that $G_{0,\mathbb{Q}_p}$ is unramified. Then we can choose G such that the center of G is quasi-split and unramified at p (and $G^{\mathrm{der}} = G_2^{\mathrm{der}}$). Hence, we can and we shall choose G_0 and G such that G_0 and G are both quasi-split and unramified at p. Furthermore, we choose all of g_α in $G(\mathbb{A}_f^p)$ by [Kis10, Lem. 2.2.6].

  Let $G_{2,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$ be a smooth reductive model over $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$ such that $G_{2,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}(\mathbb{Z}_p) = K_{2,p}$. As in the proof of [Kis10, Cor. 3.4.14], the center Z' of G extends to a smooth reductive model $Z'_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$ over $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$, and the kernel of the isogeny $G_2^{\mathrm{der}} \times Z' \to G$ also extends to a finite flat group over $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$. Hence, we choose a smooth reductive model $G_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$ of G over $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$ such that $G_{2,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$ embeds into $G_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$ and $K_p = G_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}(\mathbb{Z}_p)$. By *loc. cit.*, we can choose a hyperspecial level $K_{0,p}^\alpha = G_{0,\mathbb{Z}_p}(\mathbb{Z}_p)$, where $G_{0,\mathbb{Z}_p}$ is a reductive group scheme over $\mathbb{Z}_p$, such that the kernel of $G_{0,\mathbb{Z}_p} \to G_{\mathbb{Z}_p}$ is finite and is contained in the center of $G_{0,\mathbb{Z}_p}^{\mathrm{der}}$. Here the subgroups $K_{0,p}^\alpha$ are chosen to be the same. Write this group as $K_{0,p} := K_{0,p}^\alpha$. Then we can choose $K_p^{\ddagger,\alpha} =: K_p^\ddagger$ to be the same. We also require the embeddings to be **p-integral** as in [MP19, Sec. 4.3].
- (Bruhat-Tits stabilizer levels; **STB**) Fix a Bruhat-Tits stabilizer group scheme $\mathscr{G}_{x_2}$ corresponding to a point x_2 in the extended Bruhat-Tits building $\mathcal{B}(G_{2,\mathbb{Q}_p}, \mathbb{Q}_p)$. Choose a Hodge-type Shimura datum (G_0, X_0) such that there is a central isogeny $G_0^{\mathrm{der}} \to G_2^{\mathrm{der}}$ which induces an isomorphism $(G_2^{\mathrm{ad}}, X_2^{\mathrm{ad}}) \cong (G_0^{\mathrm{ad}}, X_0^{\mathrm{ad}})$. We further require that (G_0, X_0) satisfies the condition (3) in [KP18, Lem. 4.6.22]. By making this choice, we have that, for any place $v_2|p$ of E_2 and any place $v'|v_2$ of E', $\mathcal{O}_{E_{2,v_2}} \cong \mathcal{O}_{E'_{v'}}$. Note that the argument in the proof of *loc. cit.* for only part (3) still works for general cases. Let x be the image of x_2 in $\mathcal{B}(G_{\mathbb{Q}_p}, \mathbb{Q}_p)$ and x determines a Bruhat-Tits stabilizer group scheme $\mathscr{G}_x$. By our construction and by the definition of Bruhat-Tits stabilizer group schemes, we see that $\mathscr{G}_x(\mathbb{Z}_p) \cap G_2(\mathbb{Q}_p) = \mathscr{G}_{x_2}(\mathbb{Z}_p)$. Let $K_{2,p} := \mathscr{G}_{x_2}(\mathbb{Z}_p)$ and let $K_p := \mathscr{G}_x(\mathbb{Z}_p)$.

  For any g_α, let $K_{0,p}^\alpha$ be be the preimage of $g_\alpha K_p g_\alpha^{-1}$ under π^b; since the kernel of $G_0 \to G$ is finite and is contained in the center of G_0^{der}, $K_{0,p}^\alpha$ is a Bruhat-Tits stabilizer subgroup of $G_0(\mathbb{Q}_p)$. Write $K_{0,p}^\alpha := \mathscr{G}_0^\alpha(\mathbb{Z}_p)$, where $\mathscr{G}_0^\alpha$ is a Bruhat-Tits stabilizer group scheme corresponding to a point x_0^α in the extended building $\mathcal{B}(G_{0,\mathbb{Q}_p}, \mathbb{Q}_p)$. By [Lan00] and as explained in [PR24, 4.5.2, p. 86], for any Hodge embedding $(G_0, X_0) \hookrightarrow (\mathrm{GSp}(V, \psi), X^\ddagger)$, up to replacing V with $V^{\oplus n}$ for some n, we can choose a $\mathbb{Z}_p$-lattice $V_{\mathbb{Z}_p}^\alpha$ such that $K_{0,p}^\alpha$ is the stabilizer in $G_0(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ of $V_{\mathbb{Z}_p}^\alpha$. By Zarhin's trick, we can further replace V with $V^{\oplus 8}$, so that there is a self-dual $\mathbb{Z}$-lattice $V_{\mathbb{Z}}^\alpha$, such that $\mathrm{Stab}_{G_0(\mathbb{Q}_p)}(V_{\mathbb{Z}_p}^\alpha) = K_{0,p}^\alpha$ and $K_p^{\ddagger,\alpha} := \mathrm{Stab}_{G^\ddagger(\mathbb{Q}_p)}(V_{\mathbb{Z}_p}^\alpha)$. Now we have chosen for any g_α a Hodge embedding $\iota^\alpha : (G_0, X_0) \hookrightarrow (\mathrm{GSp}((V, \psi)^{\perp r(\alpha)}), X^{\ddagger, r(\alpha)})$ for some positive integer $r(\alpha)$ and a $\mathbb{Z}$-lattice $V_{\mathbb{Z}}^\alpha$ satisfying the

setup in [MP19, Sec. 3.1] and §2.1. We can further assume that $r(\alpha) = r(\alpha')$ for different $\alpha \neq \alpha' \in I_{G/G_0}$ by further replacing all $r(\alpha)$ with their lcm. Hence, we can and we will write $(\mathrm{GSp}((V,\psi)^{\perp r(\alpha)}), X^{\ddagger,\alpha})$ as $(G^\ddagger, X^\ddagger)$.

- (Finite Intersections of Bruhat-Tits stabilizers; $\mathbf{STB}_n$) Slightly generalizing the case above, we still assume that $K_p \cap G_2(\mathbb{Q}_p) = K_{2,p}$ but only require that $K_p := \cap_{i=1}^n \mathscr{G}_{x_i}(\mathbb{Z}_p)$, where $\{x_i\}_{i=1}^n$ is a set of n points in $\mathcal{B}(G_{\mathbb{Q}_p}, \mathbb{Q}_p)$ and $\mathscr{G}_{x_i}$ are corresponding Bruhat-Tits stabilizer group schemes of x_i. Pulling back to G_0, we have an intersection $K_{0,p}^\alpha := \pi^{b,-1}(g_\alpha \cap_{i=1}^n \mathscr{G}_{x_i}(\mathbb{Z}_p) g_\alpha^{-1}) = \cap_{i=1}^n \pi^{b,-1}(g_\alpha \mathscr{G}_{x_i}(\mathbb{Z}_p) g_\alpha^{-1})$. Each $\pi^{b,-1}(g_\alpha \mathscr{G}_{x_i}(\mathbb{Z}_p) g_\alpha^{-1}) = \mathscr{G}_{x_{i,0}^\alpha}(\mathbb{Z}_p)$, where $\mathscr{G}_{x_{i,0}^\alpha}$ is a Bruhat-Tits stabilizer group scheme correspoinding to $x_{i,0}^\alpha \in \mathcal{B}(G_{0,\mathbb{Q}_p}, \mathbb{Q}_p)$ and $x_{i,0}^\alpha$ corresponds to the same point as $g_\alpha \cdot x_i$ in the (reduced) Bruhat-Tits Building of G^{ad} over $\mathbb{Q}_p$. Write $K_{0,p}^{(\alpha,i)} := \mathscr{G}_{x_{i,0}^\alpha}(\mathbb{Z}_p)$. Exactly as above, by [PR24, 4.5.2] and by Zarhin's trick, we find a Hodge embedding $\iota^{(\alpha,i)} : (G_0, X_0) \hookrightarrow (\mathrm{GSp}((V,\psi)^{\perp r(\alpha,i)}), X^{\ddagger, r(\alpha,i)})$ for some positive integer $r(\alpha,i)$ for each (α,i) and a $\mathbb{Z}$-lattice $V_{\mathbb{Z}}^{(\alpha,i)} \subset V^{\oplus r(\alpha,i)}$ satisfying the setup in [MP19, Sec. 3.1] and §2.1, such that $K_{0,p}^{(\alpha,i)}$ is exactly the stabilizer of $V_{\mathbb{Z}_p}^{(\alpha,i)}$ in $G_0(\mathbb{Q}_p)$. Let $r_{\mathrm{sum}}(\alpha) := \sum_{i=1}^n r(\alpha,i)$ and $V_{\mathrm{sum},\mathbb{Z}}^\alpha := \oplus_{i=1}^n V_{\mathbb{Z}}^{(\alpha,i)} \subset V^{\oplus r_{\mathrm{sum}}(\alpha)}$. Let r be the lcm of all $r_{\mathrm{sum}}(\alpha)$ for all α. Hence, up to replacing (V,ψ) with its r-th orthogonal direct sum, and replacing $V_{\mathrm{sum},\mathbb{Z}}^\alpha$ with its $r/r_{\mathrm{sum}}(\alpha)$-th copies for each α, we have found a Hodge embedding $(G_0, X_0) \hookrightarrow (G^\ddagger, X^\ddagger)$ and a lattice $V_{\mathbb{Z}}^\alpha$ satisfying [MP19, Sec. 3.1] for each α. Let $K_p^{\ddagger,\alpha} := \mathrm{Stab}_{G^\ddagger(\mathbb{Q}_p)}(V_{\mathbb{Z}_p}^\alpha)$ for each α. By definition, (STB)=(STB$_1$).
- (Deeper levels in (HS) and (STB$_n$); **DL**) Under the assumptions of either (HS) or (STB$_n$), we choose an open compact subgroup $K_p \subset K_p^*$ where K_p^* is a hyperspecial subgroup in Case (HS), or an intersection of Bruhat-Tits stabilizer subgroups in Case (STB$_n$). Let I_{G/G_0} (resp. I_{G/G_0}^*) be the double coset $I_{G/G_0,K}$ (resp. $I_{G/G_0,K^*}$) defined in §1.4.4 with $K = K_p K^p$ (resp. $K^* := K_p^* K^p$). Fix a choice of objects (G_0, X_0) and $(G^\ddagger, X^\ddagger)$; for any $\alpha^* \in I_{G/G_0}^*$, fix a choice of representatives g_{α^*}, and open compact subgroups $K_{0,p}^{\alpha^*}$ and $K_p^{\ddagger,\alpha^*}$ as in (HS) or (STB$_n$). For any $\alpha \in I_{G/G_0}$ mapping to $\alpha^* \in I_{G/G_0}^*$, we choose the representative g_α to be $g_\alpha = g_{\alpha^*} \cdot k_{\alpha^*}$ for some $k_{\alpha^*} \in K_p^*$. Let $K_{0,p}^\alpha$ be the preimage of $g_\alpha K_p g_\alpha^{-1}$ under π^b. Then $K_{0,p}^\alpha \subset K_{0,p}^{\alpha^*} \subset K_p^{\ddagger,\alpha^*}$ by construction. Hence, the conditions in [MP19, Sec. 3.1] and §2.1 are still satisfied. Note that for different choices of intersections of Bruhat-Tits stabilizer subgroups K_p^* of $G(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ containing K_p, the integral models constructed later might be different.

In all four cases, let $K_0^{\alpha,p}$ be a neat open compact subgroup of $G_0(\mathbb{A}_f^p)$ contained in $\pi^{b,-1}(g_\alpha K^p g_\alpha^{-1})$. Let $K_0^\alpha = K_{0,p}^\alpha K_0^{\alpha,p}$. Since any open compact subgroup of $G_2(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ has a fixed point in the extended building $\mathcal{B}(G_{2,\mathbb{Q}_p}, \mathbb{Q}_p)$ (see, e.g., [Lan00, Thm. 1.4.4]), for any open compact subgroup $K_{2,p}$, we can choose n Bruhat-Tits stabilizer subgroups in $G_2(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ for some n and implement one of the constructions above.

In summary, for all four cases, we have chosen $(G_0, X_0, K_{0,p}^\alpha, K_0^{\alpha,p}) \to (G^\ddagger, X^\ddagger, K_p^{\ddagger,\alpha}, K^{\ddagger,\alpha,p})$ from $(G_2, X_2, K_{2,p}, K_2^p)$ for each $\alpha \in I_{G/G_0}$ with the settings in [MP19]. In Case (HS) (resp. (STB)), we shall additionally require the embeddings to satisfy the settings in [MP19, 4.3.2] (resp. [DvHKZ24]). Let $\mathcal{S}_{K_0^\alpha}$ be the relative normalization of $\mathcal{S}_{K^{\ddagger,\alpha}}$ in $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_0^\alpha}$, and by the main theorem of [MP19] (cf. Theorem 2.46), $\mathcal{S}_{K_0^\alpha}$ admits good toroidal compactifications $\mathcal{S}_{K_0^\alpha}^{\Sigma_0^\alpha}$ with integral models of boundary mixed Shimura varieties $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0^\alpha}}$. The integral model $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0^\alpha}}$ (resp. $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_0^\alpha}}$ and resp. $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0^\alpha},h}$) is constructed as the relative normalization in $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_0^\alpha}}$ (resp. $\overline{\mathrm{Sh}}_{K_{\Phi_0^\alpha}}$ and resp. $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_0^\alpha},h}$) of $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi^{\ddagger,\alpha}}}$ (resp. $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi^{\ddagger,\alpha}}}$ and resp. $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi^{\ddagger,\alpha},h}}$) where $\Phi_0^\alpha \in \mathcal{CLR}(G_0, X_0)$ maps to $\Phi^\ddagger \in \mathcal{CLR}(G^\ddagger, X^\ddagger)$.

Fix any place $v|p$ of E_0. Let $\mathcal{O}'_{(v)} := \mathcal{O}_{E'} \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_{E_0}} \mathcal{O}_{E_0,(v)}$ and let $\mathcal{O}'_v := \mathcal{O}_{E'} \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_{E_0}} \mathcal{O}_{E_0,v}$. We will mainly work over $\mathcal{O}'_{(v)}$; but we will finally state the main results over $\mathcal{O}_{E_2,(v_2)}$ in Case (HS) and its deep-level case, and over $\mathcal{O}_{E_2,v_2}$ in (STB_n) and its deep-level case. We will clarify the base ring if it is needed. Let $E'^{,p}$ be the maximal field extension of E' that is unramified at all primes dividing p. Write $\mathcal{O}'^{,ur}_{(v)} := \mathcal{O}_{E'^{,p}} \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_{E'}} \mathcal{O}'_{(v)}$.

4.2.1. We will omit and the readers can ignore the superscript α before introducing Lemma 4.10. Recall that $\pi := \pi^b : (G_0, X_0) \to (G, X_b)$ is a map such that the kernel of $G_0 \to G$ is finite and is in the center of G_0^{der}. Let $\Phi_0 := (Q_0, X_0^+, g_0)$ be a cusp label representative in $\mathcal{CLR}(G_0, X_0)$ mapping to $\Phi^\ddagger := (Q^\ddagger, X^{\ddagger,+}, g^\ddagger) \in \mathcal{CLR}(G^\ddagger, X^\ddagger)$. Recall that for $\gamma \in G_0^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})$, there is a natural morphism $\mathrm{int}(\gamma) : (G_0, X_0) \to (G_0, \gamma \cdot X_0)$, which induces isomorphisms (see [Pin90, 4.16])

$$\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_0}} \to \mathrm{Sh}_{{}^\gamma K_{\Phi_0}},$$

which maps $[(x,p)]_{P_{\Phi_0}(\mathbb{A}_f) \cap g_0 K g_0^{-1}}$ to $[(\gamma(x), \gamma p \gamma^{-1})]_{\gamma(P_{\Phi_0}(\mathbb{A}_f) \cap g_0 K g_0^{-1})}$ over complex points. Similarly, we have morphisms induced by γ for $\overline{\mathrm{Sh}}_{K_{\Phi_0}}$ and $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_0},h}$.

By [Mao25a, Thm. 3.58(3)], if $K_{0,p}$ is a Bruhat-Tits stabilizer subgroup, so is $K_{\Phi_0,h,p}$, and we have $K_{\Phi_0,h,p} = G_0(\mathbb{Q}_p) \cap K_{\Phi^\ddagger,h,p}$. Note that if $K_{0,p}$ is parahoric, we can only assume that $K_{\Phi_0,h,p}$ is quasi-parahoric (see Notation and Conventions).

Note that γ maps Φ_0 to $\gamma \cdot \Phi_0 := (\gamma Q_0 \gamma^{-1}, \gamma(X_0^+), \gamma g_0 \gamma^{-1}) \in \mathcal{CLR}(G_0, \gamma \cdot X_0)$ (see §1.1.4). If $K_{0,p}$ is a Bruhat-Tits stabilizer subgroup, so is ${}^\gamma K_{0,p} := \gamma K_{0,p} \gamma^{-1}$.

As in (STB), we can choose a Hodge embedding $(G_0, \gamma \cdot X_0) \hookrightarrow (G^{\ddagger,\prime}, X^{\ddagger,\prime})$ and a Bruhat-Tits stabilizer subgroup $K_p^{\ddagger,\prime}$ of $G^{\ddagger,\prime}(\mathbb{Q}_p)$, such that $K_p^{\ddagger,\prime}$ is the stabilizer in $G^{\ddagger,\prime}(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ of a self-dual lattice satisfying the settings in [MP19, Sec. 3.1] and such that ${}^\gamma K_{0,p} = K_p^{\ddagger,\prime} \cap G_0(\mathbb{Q}_p)$. Suppose that $\gamma \cdot \Phi_0$ maps to a cusp label representative $\Phi^{\ddagger,\prime} \in \mathcal{CLR}(G^{\ddagger,\prime}, X^{\ddagger,\prime})$. Then one can define an integral model $\mathcal{S}_{{}^\gamma K_{\Phi_0}}$ (resp. $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{{}^\gamma K_{\Phi_0}}$ and resp. $\mathcal{S}_{{}^\gamma K_{\Phi_0},h}$) of $\mathrm{Sh}_{{}^\gamma K_{\Phi_0}}$ (resp. $\overline{\mathrm{Sh}}_{{}^\gamma K_{\Phi_0}}$ and resp. $\mathrm{Sh}_{{}^\gamma K_{\Phi_0},h}$) as the relative normalization of $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi^{\ddagger,\prime}}}$ (resp. $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi^{\ddagger,\prime}}}$ and resp. $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi^{\ddagger,\prime},h}}$) in $\mathrm{Sh}_{{}^\gamma K_{\Phi_0}}$ (resp. $\overline{\mathrm{Sh}}_{{}^\gamma K_{\Phi_0}}$ and resp. $\mathrm{Sh}_{{}^\gamma K_{\Phi_0},h}$) as [MP19].

Lemma 4.10. *Let v be any place of E_0 over p. Under the assumptions in (HS), (STB) or (DL) of (HS)/(STB), the action of $\gamma \in G_0^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})$, $\gamma : \mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_0^\alpha}} \to \mathrm{Sh}_{{}^\gamma K_{\Phi_0^\alpha}}$, extends to an isomorphism $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0^\alpha}} \to \mathcal{S}_{{}^\gamma K_{\Phi_0^\alpha}}$ over $\mathcal{O}_{E_0,(v)}$ for any cusp label representative Φ_0^α and neat open compact subgroup $K_0^\alpha = K_{0,p}^\alpha K_0^{\alpha,p}$. Moreover, the morphism $\gamma : \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0^\alpha}} \to \mathcal{S}_{{}^\gamma K_{\Phi_0^\alpha}}$ as a morphism between torus torsors is equivariant under the action of $\mathbf{E}_{K_{\Phi_0^\alpha}} \to \mathbf{E}_{{}^\gamma K_{\Phi_0^\alpha}}$. Similarly, there are morphisms $\gamma : \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_0^\alpha}} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{{}^\gamma K_{\Phi_0^\alpha}}$ and $\gamma : \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0^\alpha},h} \to \mathcal{S}_{{}^\gamma K_{\Phi_0^\alpha},h}$ extending the conjugation of γ over the generic fiber.*

The integral models we constructed depend only on the choice of a Bruhat-Tits stabilizer subgroup in $G_0(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ and are independent of the choice of the Hodge embedding in the construction made above.

Proof. Write $\Phi_0 := \Phi_0^\alpha$ and $K_0 := K_0^\alpha$ to simplify the notation. We only have to show the first two cases since the last case follows from taking relative normalizations. In Case (HS), it follows from [MP19, Prop. 4.3.5] that the action of γ extends to $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0},p} \to \mathcal{S}_{{}^\gamma K_{\Phi_0},p}$. With the same reference, we see that this extended map is $P_{\Phi_0}(\mathbb{A}_f^p)$-equivariant, and this proves the desired statement.

Since the schemes involved are normal and separated, and by gluing two morphisms over $\mathcal{O}_{E_0,v}$ and E_0 that are identified over $E_{0,v}$, it suffices to show the statement over $\mathcal{O}_{E_0,v}$. In Case (STB), by [MP19, Thm. 4.1.5(1)], the tower $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0}} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_0}} \to \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0},h}$ is a torus torsor $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0}} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_0}}$ under $\mathbf{E}_{K_{\Phi_0}}$ composing with an abelian scheme torsor $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_0}}$ over $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0},h}$ under $\mathcal{A}_{K_{\Phi_0}}$.

From the theory of canonical integral models of Shimura varieties of Hodge type (see [PR24, Cor. 4.3.2], [DY25, Thm. 4.14] and [DvHKZ24, Cor. 4.1.10]) and Corollary 1.9, there is a morphism $\gamma : \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0},h} \to \mathcal{S}_{{}^\gamma K_{\Phi_0},h}$ extending the one over the generic fiber. By the valuative criterion of

properness and Weil's extension theorem (see [BLR90, Sec. 4.4, Thm. 1]), there is an extension $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_0}} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\gamma K_{\Phi_0}}$. For the extension of the whole $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0}}$, we adopt the following method (with which we can also obtain the extension $\gamma : \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_0}} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\gamma K_{\Phi_0}}$).

Suppose that $\mathcal{S}_{K_0}$ and $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0}}$ are constructed from a Hodge embedding $\iota : (G_0, X_0, K_{0,p}) \hookrightarrow (\mathrm{GSp}(V,\psi), X^\ddagger, K_p^\ddagger)$, and $\mathcal{S}_{\gamma K_0}$ and $\mathcal{S}_{\gamma K_{\Phi_0}}$ are constructed from another Hodge embedding $\iota' : (G_0, \gamma \cdot X_0, {}^\gamma K_{0,p}) \hookrightarrow (\mathrm{GSp}(V',\psi'), X^{\ddagger,\prime}, K_p^{\ddagger,\prime})$. Let $V'' := V \oplus V'$ with symplectic pairing ψ'' on it defined by the direct sum of the two factors. Let $\iota'' := \iota \times (\iota' \circ \mathrm{int}(\gamma))$. Suppose that $K_p^\ddagger$ (resp. $K_p^{\ddagger,\prime}$) is the stabilizer in $\mathrm{GSp}(V,\psi)(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ (resp. $\mathrm{GSp}(V',\psi')(\mathbb{Q}_p)$) of Λ (resp. Λ'), where Λ (resp. Λ') is the base change to $\mathbb{Z}_p$ of some self-dual $\mathbb{Z}$-lattice $V_\mathbb{Z}$ (resp. $V'_\mathbb{Z}$). Set $\Lambda'' := \Lambda \oplus \Lambda'$, $V''_\mathbb{Z} := V_\mathbb{Z} \oplus V'_\mathbb{Z}$ and $K_p^{\ddagger,\prime\prime} := \mathrm{Stab}_{\mathrm{GSp}(V'',\psi'')(\mathbb{Q}_p)}(\Lambda'')$. Let $G^\ddagger_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$ (resp. $G^{\ddagger,\prime}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$ and resp. $G^{\ddagger,\prime\prime}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$) be the smooth reductive group scheme over $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$ whose group of $\mathbb{Z}_p$-points is $K_p^\ddagger$ (resp. $K_p^{\ddagger,\prime}$ and resp. $K_p^{\ddagger,\prime\prime}$). Then there are integral models $\mathcal{S}''_{K_0}$ and $\mathcal{S}''_{K_{\Phi_0}}$ of Sh_{K_0} and $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_0}}$, respectively, constructed from ι'' and Λ'' as in [PR24], [DvHKZ24] and [MP19] by taking relative normalizations.

We claim that we have a diagram

$$\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0}} \longleftarrow \mathcal{S}''_{K_{\Phi_0}} \longrightarrow \mathcal{S}_{\gamma K_{\Phi_0}}. \tag{4.8}$$

In fact, let $H'' := (\mathrm{GSp}(V,\psi) \times \mathrm{GSp}(V',\psi')) \times_{\mathbb{G}_m \times \mathbb{G}_m} \mathbb{G}_m$, where the left factor maps to $\mathbb{G}_m \times \mathbb{G}_m$ by a product of similitude characters, and $\mathbb{G}_m$ maps to $\mathbb{G}_m \times \mathbb{G}_m$ by diagonal embedding. Then the embedding $G_0 \hookrightarrow \mathrm{GSp}(V'',\psi'')$ factors through H'', and this induces a Shimura datum (H'', X'') associated with H''. The morphism $(H'', X'') \hookrightarrow (\mathrm{GSp}(V'',\psi''), X^{\ddagger,\prime\prime})$ is an embedding, and there are natural projections (see Remark 4.12)

$$(\mathrm{GSp}(V,\psi), X^\ddagger) \longleftarrow (H'', X'') \longrightarrow (\mathrm{GSp}(V',\psi'), X^{\ddagger,\prime}).$$

Let h be any element in X''. Its weight cocharacter ω_h sends $\mathbb{G}_m$ to $\omega_h(\mathbb{G}_m)$, and the intersection C'' of $\omega_h(\mathbb{G}_m)$ and $\mathrm{Sp}(V,\psi) \times \mathrm{Sp}(V',\psi')$ is isomorphic to μ_2. The split torus $\omega_h(\mathbb{G}_m)$ canonically extends to a split torus $\omega_h(\mathbb{G}_m)_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$ over $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$, and the finite group C' extends to a finite flat group scheme $C'_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$ over $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$. Let $H''_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} := (G^{\ddagger,\mathrm{der}}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \times G^{\ddagger,\prime,\mathrm{der}}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \times \omega_h(\mathbb{G}_m)_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}})/C'_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$ be a reductive model over $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$ extending H''. By [PY06, Cor. 1.3] and the proof of [KMP16, Lem. 4.7], there is an embedding $H''_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \hookrightarrow G^{\ddagger,\prime\prime}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$ between reductive group schemes over $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$ extending the embedding $H'' \hookrightarrow \mathrm{GSp}(V'',\psi'')$. Let $K''_p = H''_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}(\mathbb{Z}_p)$. Then $\iota''_H : (H'', X'', K''_p) \hookrightarrow (\mathrm{GSp}(V'',\psi''), X^{\ddagger,\prime\prime}, K_p^{\ddagger,\prime\prime})$ is p-integral in the sense of [MP19, 4.3.2]. Suppose that Φ_0 maps to $\Phi'' \in \mathcal{CLR}(H'', X'')$, and then to $\Phi^{\ddagger,\prime\prime} \in \mathcal{CLR}(G^{\ddagger,\prime\prime}, X^{\ddagger,\prime\prime})$. Then by [MP19, Prop. 4.3.5], the integral model $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi'',p}} := \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi'',p}}(P_{\Phi''}, D_{\Phi''})$ associated with any cusp label representative $\Phi'' \in \mathcal{CLR}(H'', X'')$ (constructed from taking relative normalization of $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi^{\ddagger,\prime\prime}}}$ in $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi''}}$ as in [MP19, Sec. 4.1]) has the extension property. Then $\mathcal{S}''_{K_{\Phi_0}}$ constructed from $\Phi^{\ddagger,\prime\prime}$ can also be constructed from taking relative normalization of $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi''}}$ in $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_0}}$ for suitable away-from-p levels. By the extension property and by taking quotient of away-from-p levels as in the first paragraph, we have a diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_0}} & \xleftarrow{\mathrm{id}} & \mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_0}} & \xrightarrow{\gamma} & \mathrm{Sh}_{\gamma K_{\Phi_0}} \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi^\ddagger}} & \longleftarrow & \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi''}} & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi^{\ddagger,\prime}}}.
\end{array}$$

Now we have obtained the desired diagram by functoriality of relative normalizations.

By [MP19, Thm. 4.1.5 (4)], the two morphisms in (4.8) are morphisms between $\mathbf{E}_{K_{\Phi_0}} \cong \mathbf{E}_{\gamma K_{\Phi_0}}$-torsors over $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_0}} \leftarrow \overline{\mathcal{S}}''_{K_{\Phi_0}} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\gamma K_{\Phi_0}}$ since this is so over generic fibers. Similarly, $\overline{\mathcal{S}}''_{K_{\Phi_0}}$ (resp.

$\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\gamma K_{\Phi_0}}$) is also an abelian scheme torsor under some $\mathcal{A}''$ (resp. ${}^{\gamma}\mathcal{A}$) over $\mathcal{S}''_{K_{\Phi_0},h}$ (resp. $\mathcal{S}_{\gamma K_{\Phi_0},h}$) by [MP19, Thm. 4.1.5(1)]. More precisely, we have a commutative diagram of schemes

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0}} & \longleftarrow & \mathcal{S}''_{K_{\Phi_0}} & \xrightarrow{\gamma} & \mathcal{S}_{\gamma K_{\Phi_0}} \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_0}} & \longleftarrow & \overline{\mathcal{S}}''_{K_{\Phi_0}} & \xrightarrow{\gamma} & \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\gamma K_{\Phi_0}} \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0},h} & \xleftarrow[\cong]{} & \mathcal{S}''_{K_{\Phi_0},h} & \xrightarrow[\cong]{\gamma} & \mathcal{S}_{\gamma K_{\Phi_0},h}
\end{array} \tag{4.9}$$

By [FC90, I. Prop. 2.7] and characteristic zero theory, there is a diagram of isomorphisms between abelian schemes $\mathcal{A}_{K_{\Phi_0}} \xleftarrow{\sim} \mathcal{A}'' \xrightarrow[\sim]{\gamma} {}^{\gamma}\mathcal{A}$; checking over an étale cover of the third row such that the abelian scheme torsors in the second row all split, the second row of (4.9) are isomorphisms between abelian scheme torsors. Similarly, the arrows in the first row of (4.9) are isomorphisms between torus torsors. Now we have obtained the desired extended isomorphism $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0}} \cong \mathcal{S}''_{K_{\Phi_0}} \to \mathcal{S}_{\gamma K_{\Phi_0}}$.

The last sentence follows from taking $\gamma = 1$. □

The proof above essentially implies the following result:

Corollary 4.11. *Assume that (G_2, X_2) is of Hodge type and choose $(G_0, X_0) = (G_2, X_2)$. In the second case (STB) or its (DL) case, choose any open compact subgroup $K_{0,p}$ contained in a **fixed** Bruhat-Tits stabilizer subgroup $K^*_{0,p}$ of $G_0(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ and any K_0^p neat open compact in $G_0(\mathbb{A}_f^p)$ as before. **Fix** an admissible cone decomposition Σ_0 of (G_0, X_0, K_0).*

The good toroidal compactification $\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma_0}_{K_0}$ of $\mathcal{S}_{K_0}$ over $\mathcal{O}_{E_0,(v)}$ for the fixed cone decomposition Σ_0 with associated integral models of boundary mixed Shimura varieties $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0}}$ satisfying [MP19, Thm. 4.1.5] *and constructed from a Hodge embedding chosen as in* [DvHKZ24] *(and (STB)), if it exists, is independent of the choice of such embedding.*

Proof. The argument above works for any isomorphism between Shimura data $(G_0, X_0) \to (G_0', X_0')$. Let $\gamma = 1$. Since the integral models with deeper level structures are constructed by taking relative normalizations from the integral models defined with the fixed Bruhat-Tits level structures, we assume $K_{0,p} = K^*_{0,p}$. We see that $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0}} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_0}} \to \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0},h}$ is independent of the choice of the embedding as above. Combining this with [MP19, Lem. A.3.4], we see the uniqueness of such toroidal compactifications. □

Remark 4.12. *In* [Mao25a, Prop. 4.3]*, this result was also proved to study the change-of-parahoric morphisms of Hodge-type compactifications. We learned the construction of (H'', X'') from the second version of* [KZ21, Prop. 4.3.2]*, but this part is now replaced by a new proof in the published version. The same argument above can extend the* full *functoriality result in* loc. cit. *to toroidal compactifications. We do not need to pursue this generality in this paper, but hope to record it in a future project with Shengkai Mao (see Remark 5.24).*

4.2.2. Now we consider Case (STB$_n$). Suppose $K_{0,p} = \cap_{i=1}^n K^i_{0,p}$, where $K^i_{0,p}$ are Bruhat-Tits stabilizer subgroups of $G_0(\mathbb{Q}_p)$. As in the discussion under the third item (STB$_n$), we can choose a Hodge embedding $(G_0, X_0) \hookrightarrow (G^{\ddagger,i,\prime}, X^{\ddagger,i,\prime})$ where $G^{\ddagger,i,\prime} = \mathrm{GSp}(V^i, \psi^i)$ and a self-dual lattice $V^i_{\mathbb{Z}}$ for each i, such that $K^i_{0,p}$ is exactly the stabilizer of $V^i_{\mathbb{Z}_p}$ in $G_0(\mathbb{Q}_p)$. Let $K_p^{\ddagger,i,\prime}$ be the stabilizer in $G^{\ddagger,i,\prime}(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ of $V^i_{\mathbb{Z}_p}$. Let $V_{\mathrm{sum}} := \oplus_{i=1}^n V^i$ and $V_{\mathrm{sum},\mathbb{Z}} := \oplus_{i=1}^n V^i_{\mathbb{Z}}$. Let $K_p^{\ddagger,\prime}$ be the stabilizer of $V_{\mathrm{sum},\mathbb{Z}_p}$ in $G^{\ddagger,\prime}(\mathbb{Q}_p)$, where $G^{\ddagger,\prime} := \mathrm{GSp}(V_{\mathrm{sum}}, \perp \psi^i)$. Let $X^{\ddagger,\prime}$ be the union of Siegel upper and lower half-spaces induced by a $G^{\ddagger,\prime}(\mathbb{R})$-conjugacy class of an element in X_0. Define $H' := \prod_{i=1}^n G^{\ddagger,i,\prime} \times_{\prod_{i=1}^n \mathbb{G}_m}$

$\mathbb{G}_m$, where the homomorphism from $\prod_{i=1}^n G^{\ddagger,i,\prime}$ to $\prod_{i=1}^n \mathbb{G}_m$ is given by the product of similitude characters of $G^{\ddagger,i,\prime}$, and the homomorphism from $\mathbb{G}_m$ to $\prod_{i=1}^n \mathbb{G}_m$ is given by the diagonal embedding. Note that the embedding $G_0 \hookrightarrow \prod_{i=1}^n G^{\ddagger,i,\prime}$ factors through H': Indeed, G_0 is generated by G_0^{der} and $\omega(\mathbb{G}_m)$ (see Lemma 1.6) and the restriction of the similitude character to $\omega(\mathbb{G}_m)$ is independent of the choice of Hodge embedding. Let $X_{H'}$ be the $H'(\mathbb{R})$-conjugacy class generated by an element in X_0 and the embedding $G_0 \to H'$. The Shimura datum $(H', X_{H'})$ is of Hodge type. Moreover, there is a diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} (G_0, X_0) & \hookrightarrow & (H', X_{H'}) & \hookrightarrow & (\prod_{i=1}^n G^{\ddagger,i,\prime}, \prod_{i=1}^n X^{\ddagger,i,\prime}) \\ & & \downarrow & & \\ & & (G^{\ddagger,\prime}, X^{\ddagger,\prime}). & & \end{array} \tag{4.10}$$

Let $G^{\ddagger,i,\prime}_{\mathbb{Z}_p}$ (resp. $G^{\ddagger,\prime}_{\mathbb{Z}_p}$) be a smooth reductive model of $G^{\ddagger,i,\prime}_{\mathbb{Q}_p}$ (resp. $G^{\ddagger,\prime}_{\mathbb{Q}_p}$) over $\mathbb{Z}_p$ such that $G^{\ddagger,i,\prime}_{\mathbb{Z}_p}(\breve{\mathbb{Z}}_p)$ (resp. $G^{\ddagger,\prime}_{\mathbb{Z}_p}(\breve{\mathbb{Z}}_p)$) is exactly the stabilizer of $V^i_{\breve{\mathbb{Z}}_p}$ (resp. $V_{\mathrm{sum},\breve{\mathbb{Z}}_p}$). By [BT84, Prop. 1.7.6] and [PY06, Cor. 1.3] (and the proof of [KMP16, Lem. 4.7]), there are closed embeddings between reductive group schemes over $\mathbb{Z}_p$, $\prod_{i=1}^n G^{\ddagger,i,\prime}_{\mathbb{Z}_p} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{GL}(V_{\mathrm{sum},\mathbb{Z}_p})$ and $G^{\ddagger,\prime}_{\mathbb{Z}_p} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{GL}(V_{\mathrm{sum},\mathbb{Z}_p})$ extending $\prod_{i=1}^n G^{\ddagger,i,\prime}_{\mathbb{Q}_p} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{GL}(V_{\mathrm{sum},\mathbb{Q}_p})$ and $G^{\ddagger,\prime}_{\mathbb{Q}_p} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{GL}(V_{\mathrm{sum},\mathbb{Q}_p})$, respectively; moreover, the flat base change from $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$ to $\mathbb{Z}_p$ of the schematic closure $G^{\ddagger,i,\prime}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$ (resp. $G^{\ddagger,\prime}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$) of $G^{\ddagger,i,\prime}$ (resp. $G^{\ddagger,\prime}$) in $\mathrm{GL}(V^i_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}})$ (resp. $\mathrm{GL}(V_{\mathrm{sum},\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}})$) is isomorphic to $G^{\ddagger,i,\prime}_{\mathbb{Z}_p}$ (resp. $G^{\ddagger,\prime}_{\mathbb{Z}_p}$) (cf. [Kis10, 2.3.1 and 2.3.2]). Let h be any element in $X_{H'}$. Its weight cocharacter ω_h sends $\mathbb{G}_m$ to $\omega_h(\mathbb{G}_m)$, and the intersection C' of $\omega_h(\mathbb{G}_m)$ and $\prod_{i=1}^n G^{\ddagger,i,\prime,\mathrm{der}}$ is isomorphic to μ_2. The split torus $\omega_h(\mathbb{G}_m)$ canonically extends to a split torus $\omega_h(\mathbb{G}_m)_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$ over $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$. The finite group C' extends to a finite flat group scheme $C'_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$ over $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$. So $H'_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} := \prod_{i=1}^n G^{\ddagger,i,\prime,\mathrm{der}}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \times \omega_h(\mathbb{G}_m)_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}/C'_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$ is a reductive model over $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$ extending H'. By [PY06, Cor. 1.3] and the proof of [KMP16, Lem. 4.7] again, there is a diagram of embeddings between reductive group schemes over $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$ induced by (4.10)

$$\begin{array}{ccc} H'_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} & \hookrightarrow & \prod_{i=1}^n G^{\ddagger,i,\prime}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ G^{\ddagger,\prime}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} & \hookrightarrow & \mathrm{GL}(V_{\mathrm{sum},\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}). \end{array}$$

Let $\mathcal{H}_p := H'_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}(\mathbb{Z}_p)$. Then the embedding $(H', X_{H'}, \mathcal{H}_p) \hookrightarrow (G^{\ddagger,\prime}, X^{\ddagger,\prime}, K_p^{\ddagger,\prime})$ is p-integral (see [MP19, 4.3.2]). Choose any cusp label representative $\Phi \in \mathcal{CLR}(H', X_{H'})$ mapping to $\Phi^{\ddagger,\prime} \in \mathcal{CLR}(G^{\ddagger,\prime}, X^{\ddagger,\prime})$ and to $\Phi^i \in \mathcal{CLR}(G^{\ddagger,i,\prime}, X^{\ddagger,i,\prime})$. Choose a neat open compact subgroup $K^{\ddagger,\prime,p} \subset G^{\ddagger,\prime}(\mathbb{A}_f^p)$ (resp. $K^{\ddagger,i,\prime}$) stabilizing $V_{\mathrm{sum},\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}$ (resp. $V^i_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p}$) and choose a neat open compact subgroup $\mathcal{H}^p \subset H'(\mathbb{A}_f^p)$ contained in both $K^{\ddagger,\prime,p}$ and $\prod_{i=1}^n K^{\ddagger,i,\prime}$. Define $\mathcal{H} := \mathcal{H}_p\mathcal{H}^p$, $K^{\ddagger,\prime} := K_p^{\ddagger,\prime}K^{\ddagger,\prime,p}$ and $K^{\ddagger,i,\prime} := K^{\ddagger,i,\prime,p}K_p^{\ddagger,i,\prime}$. Let $\mathrm{Sh}_{\mathcal{H}_\Phi} := \mathrm{Sh}_{P_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)\cap g_\Phi \mathcal{H} g_\Phi^{-1}}(P_\Phi, D_\Phi)$, and let $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi^{\ddagger,\prime}}}$ (resp. $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi^i}}$) be the integral model corresponding to $\boldsymbol{\xi}_{(V_{\mathrm{sum},\mathbb{Z}}, \perp \psi^i_{\mathbb{Z}}), \Phi^\ddagger, K^{\ddagger,\prime,p}}$ (resp. $\boldsymbol{\xi}_{(V^i_{\mathbb{Z}}, \psi^i_{\mathbb{Z}}), \Phi^i, K^{\ddagger,i,\prime,p}}$). Let $\mathcal{S}_{\mathcal{H}_\Phi}$ be the normalization in $\mathrm{Sh}_{\mathcal{H}_\Phi}$ of $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi^\ddagger}}$. By [MP19, Prop. 4.3.5], the inverse limit $\mathcal{S}_{\mathcal{H}_{\Phi,p}} := \varprojlim_{\mathcal{H}^p} \mathcal{S}_{\mathcal{H}_\Phi}$ has the extension property. By Proposition 1.35 and [Lov17, Lem. 2.1.4], $\mathcal{S}_{\mathcal{H}_{\Phi,p}}$ is canonically isomorphic to the inverse limit $\varprojlim_{\prod_{i=1}^n K^{\ddagger,i,\prime,p}} \prod_{i=1}^n \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi^i}}$. Moreover, let $\mathcal{S}_{\mathcal{H}}$ be the normalization of $\mathcal{S}_{K^{\ddagger,\prime}}$ in $\mathrm{Sh}_{\mathcal{H}}$. By [Kis10] and [KMP16], $\mathcal{S}_{\mathcal{H}_p} := \varprojlim_{\mathcal{H}^p} \mathcal{S}_{\mathcal{H}}$ has the extension property. Similarly, by Proposition 1.35 and [Lov17, Lem. 2.1.4], $\mathcal{S}_{\mathcal{H}_p}$ is an open and closed subscheme of $\varprojlim_{\prod_{i=1}^n K^{\ddagger,i,\prime,p}} \prod_{i=1}^n \mathcal{S}_{K^{\ddagger,i,\prime}}$.

Hence, $\mathcal{S}_{\mathcal{H}_\Phi}$ is also the normalization in $\mathrm{Sh}_{\mathcal{H}_\Phi}$ of $\prod_{i=1}^n \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi^i}}$, and $\mathcal{S}_{\mathcal{H}}$ is also the normalization in $\mathrm{Sh}_{\mathcal{H}}$ of $\prod_{i=1}^n \mathcal{S}_{K^{\ddagger,i,\prime}}$.

Hence, the discussion above implies the following lemma:

Lemma 4.13. *With the conventions above, let $\Phi'_0 \in \mathcal{CLR}(G_0, X_0)$ be a cusp label representative mapping to Φ. Choose any open compact subgroup $K'_{0,p} \subset G_0(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ contained in $K_p^{\ddagger,\prime}$ (and therefore in $\mathcal{H}_p$) and any neat open compact subgroup $K_0^{\prime,p} \subset G_0(\mathbb{A}_f^p)$. Choose neat open compact subgroups $K^{\ddagger,\prime,p}$ and $\prod_{i=1}^n K^{\ddagger,i,\prime,p}$ containing $K_0^{\prime,p}$. Let $K'_0 := K'_{0,p}K_0^{\prime,p}$. Then the normalizations in $\mathrm{Sh}_{K'_0}(G_0, X_0)$ of $\mathcal{S}_{K^{\ddagger,\prime}}$ and of $\prod_{i=1}^n \mathcal{S}_{K^{\ddagger,i,\prime}}$ are isomorphic, and the normalizations in $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi'_0}}$ (resp. $\overline{\mathrm{Sh}}_{K_{\Phi'_0}}$ and resp. $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi'_0},h}$) of $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi^{\ddagger,\prime}}}$ (resp. $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi^{\ddagger,\prime}}}$ and resp. $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi^{\ddagger,\prime},h}}$) and of $\prod_{i=1}^n \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi^i}}$ (resp. $\prod_{i=1}^n \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi^i}}$ and resp. $\prod_{i=1}^n \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi^i},h}$) are isomorphic.*

Proof. Choose $\mathcal{H}^p$ as above and containing $K_0^{\prime,p}$. By the discussion above, the normalizations in the statement are isomorphic to the normalization in $\mathrm{Sh}_{K'_0}$ of $\mathcal{S}_{\mathcal{H}}$ and the normalization in $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi'_0}}$ (resp. $\overline{\mathrm{Sh}}_{K_{\Phi'_0}}$ and resp. $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi'_0},h}$) of $\mathcal{S}_{\mathcal{H}_\Phi}$ (resp. $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\mathcal{H}_\Phi}$ and resp. $\mathcal{S}_{\mathcal{H}_\Phi,h}$), respectively. □

4.2.3. Now we come back to the situation that γ maps Φ_0 to $\gamma \cdot \Phi_0 := (\gamma Q_0 \gamma^{-1}, \gamma(X_0^+), \gamma g_0 \gamma^{-1})$ in Case (STB_n) and its (DL).

Suppose that $K_{0,p}$ is contained in $K'_{0,p}$, an intersection of n Bruhat-Tits stabilizer subgroups of $G_0(\mathbb{Q}_p)$. Then ${}^\gamma K_{0,p} \subset {}^\gamma K'_{0,p}$. We can now follow ($\mathrm{STB}_n$) to choose a Hodge embedding $(G_0, \gamma \cdot X_0) \hookrightarrow (G^{\ddagger,\gamma}, X^{\ddagger,\gamma})$ as follows: Suppose $K'_{0,p} = \cap_{i=1}^n K^i_{0,p}$, where $K^i_{0,p}$ are Bruhat-Tits stabilizer subgroups of $G_0(\mathbb{Q}_p)$. As in the discussion under the third item (STB_n), we can choose a Hodge embedding $(G_0, \gamma \cdot X_0) \hookrightarrow (G^{\ddagger,i,\gamma}, X^{\ddagger,i,\gamma})$ where $G^{\ddagger,i,\gamma} = \mathrm{GSp}(V^i, \psi^i)$ and a self-dual lattice $V^i_{\mathbb{Z}}$ for each i, such that ${}^\gamma K^i_{0,p}$ is exactly the stabilizer of $V^i_{\mathbb{Z}_p}$ in $G_0(\mathbb{Q}_p)$. Let $V_{\mathrm{sum}} := \oplus_{i=1}^n V^i$ and $V_{\mathrm{sum},\mathbb{Z}} := \oplus_{i=1}^n V^i_{\mathbb{Z}}$. Let $K_p^{\ddagger,\gamma}$ be the stabilizer of $V_{\mathrm{sum},\mathbb{Z}_p}$ in $G^{\ddagger,\gamma}(\mathbb{Q}_p)$, where $G^{\ddagger,\gamma} := \mathrm{GSp}(V_{\mathrm{sum}}, \perp \psi^i)$.

Suppose $\gamma \cdot \Phi_0$ maps to a cusp label representative $\Phi^{\ddagger,\gamma} \in \mathcal{CLR}(G^{\ddagger,\gamma}, X^{\ddagger,\gamma})$. Let $K^{\ddagger,\gamma} := K_p^{\ddagger,\gamma} K^{\ddagger,\gamma,p}$ for suitable neat open compact $K^{\ddagger,\gamma,p} \subset G^{\ddagger,\gamma}(\mathbb{A}_f)$ containing ${}^\gamma K_0^p$. Denote $K_{\Phi^{\ddagger,\gamma}} = g_{\Phi^{\ddagger,\gamma}} K^{\ddagger,\gamma} g^{-1}_{\Phi^{\ddagger,\gamma}} \cap P_{\Phi^{\ddagger,\gamma}}(\mathbb{A}_f)$. We can still define an integral model $\mathcal{S}_{\gamma K_{\Phi_0}}$ (resp. $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\gamma K_{\Phi_0}}$ and resp. $\mathcal{S}_{\gamma K_{\Phi_0},h}$) of $\mathrm{Sh}_{\gamma K_{\Phi_0}}$ (resp. $\overline{\mathrm{Sh}}_{\gamma K_{\Phi_0}}$ and resp. $\mathrm{Sh}_{\gamma K_{\Phi_0},h}$) as the normalization of $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi^{\ddagger,\gamma}}}$ (resp. $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi^{\ddagger,\gamma}}}$ and resp. $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi^{\ddagger,\gamma},h}}$) in $\mathrm{Sh}_{\gamma K_{\Phi_0}}$ (resp. $\overline{\mathrm{Sh}}_{\gamma K_{\Phi_0}}$ and resp. $\mathrm{Sh}_{\gamma K_{\Phi_0},h}$).

Lemma 4.14. *Under the assumptions in (STB_n) or its (DL), we have the same result as Lemma 4.10. The integral models we constructed depend only on the choice of the collection of Bruhat-Tits stabilizers $\{K^i_{0,p}\}_{i=1}^n$ and are independent of the choice of the collection of Hodge embeddings made above.*

Proof. Combine Lemma 4.10 with Lemma 4.13. □

4.2.4. Note that $\mathrm{Sh}_K(G, X_b)(\mathbb{C})$ is covered by $\coprod_{\alpha \in I_{G/G_0}} \mathrm{Sh}_{K_0^\alpha}(G_0, X_0)(\mathbb{C})$. We can write $\mathrm{Sh}_K(G, X_b)_{\overline{\mathbb{Q}}}$ as

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\mathrm{Sh}^+(G_0, X_0)_{\overline{\mathbb{Q}}} \times (\mathscr{A}(G)/K)/\mathscr{A}^\circ(G_0) \\
&\cong \coprod_{\alpha \in I_{G/G_0}} (\mathrm{Sh}^+(G_0, X_0)_{\overline{\mathbb{Q}}} \times (\mathscr{A}^\circ(G)\pi(G_0(\mathbb{A}_f))g_\alpha K/K))/\mathscr{A}^\circ(G_0) \\
&\cong (\coprod_{\alpha \in I_{G/G_0}} \mathrm{Sh}_{K_0^\alpha}(G_0, X_0)_{\overline{\mathbb{Q}}}/\Delta(G_0, G) \cdot g_\alpha K)/K \qquad (4.11) \\
&\cong \coprod_{\alpha \in I_{G/G_0}} (\mathrm{Sh}_{K_0^\alpha}(G_0, X_0)_{\overline{\mathbb{Q}}}/\Delta(G_0, G))/^{g_\alpha} K.
\end{aligned}
$$

In the equation above, $\Delta(G_0, G) := \ker(\mathscr{A}(G_0) \to \mathscr{A}(G))$. Moreover, (4.11) is defined over E_0.

Now we construct the toroidal compactification $\mathcal{S}_K^\Sigma := \mathcal{S}_K^\Sigma(G, X_b)$ as a disjoint union of quotients.

Denote ${}^{g_\alpha}K = g_\alpha K g_\alpha^{-1}$ as ${}^\alpha K$. Similarly, write ${}^\alpha K^p = {}^{g_\alpha}K^p$ and ${}^\alpha K_p = {}^{g_\alpha}K_p$. Denote $\Delta_{{}^\alpha K}(G_0, G) := \ker(\mathscr{A}(G_0) \to \mathscr{A}(G)/{}^\alpha K)$. Choose a neat open compact subgroup $K_0^{\alpha,p}$ for each α such that it is stabilized by $\Delta_{{}^\alpha K}(G_0, G)$. This can be achieved because

Lemma 4.15. *$\Delta_{{}^\alpha K}(G_0, G)$ is compact.*

Proof. Without loss of generality, assume α is trivial. For any open compact $K_0 \subset G_0(\mathbb{A}_f)$, write $\mathscr{A}(G_0) = \coprod_{[g_0] \in \pi_0(\mathrm{Sh}_{K_0,\mathbb{C}}(G_0, X_0))} \mathscr{A}^\circ(G_0) g_0 K_0$. Also, write $\mathscr{A}(G) = \coprod_{[g] \in \pi_0(\mathrm{Sh}_{K,\mathbb{C}}(G, X_b))} \mathscr{A}^\circ(G) g K$. We now assume that K_0 maps to K under π. We have decompositions

$$\mathscr{A}(G_0)/K_0 = \coprod_{[g_0] \in \pi_0(\mathrm{Sh}_{K_0,\mathbb{C}}(G_0, X_0))} \mathscr{A}^\circ(G_0)/\mathscr{A}^\circ(G_0) \cap {}^{g_0}K_0$$

and

$$\mathscr{A}(G)/K = \coprod_{[g] \in \pi_0(\mathrm{Sh}_{K,\mathbb{C}}(G, X_b))} \mathscr{A}^\circ(G)/\mathscr{A}^\circ(G) \cap {}^{g}K.$$

Both $\mathscr{A}^\circ(G_0) \cap {}^{g_0}K_0$ and $\mathscr{A}^\circ(G) \cap {}^{g}K$ are arithmetic subgroups of $G^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})^+$, and $\mathscr{A}^\circ(G_0)/\mathscr{A}^\circ(G_0) \cap {}^{g_0}K_0 \cong G^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})^+/\mathscr{A}^\circ(G_0) \cap {}^{g_0}K_0$ and $\mathscr{A}^\circ(G)/\mathscr{A}^\circ(G) \cap {}^{g}K \cong G^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})^+/\mathscr{A}^\circ(G) \cap {}^{g}K$. Then we see that the preimage of $[K]$ under $\mathscr{A}(G_0)/K_0 \to \mathscr{A}(G)/K$ is finite. □

Construction 4.16. Recall that we choose Σ_0^α induced by Σ and we can choose them to be projective as in Proposition 1.47. Let

$$\mathcal{S}_K^\Sigma := \coprod_{\alpha \in I_{G/G_0}} \mathcal{S}_{K_0^\alpha}^{\Sigma_0^\alpha}/\Delta_{{}^\alpha K}(G_0, G). \tag{4.12}$$

We shall check that:

Lemma 4.17. *In (4.12) above, the action of $\Delta_{{}^\alpha K}(G_0, G)$ on $\mathcal{S}_{K_0^\alpha}^{\Sigma_0^\alpha}$ and the quotient of it are well defined. Hence, (4.12) defines a normal algebraic space that is proper over $\mathcal{O}'_{(v)}$, and is representable by a normal scheme which is projective over $\mathcal{O}'_{(v)}$ if Σ_0^α are induced by projective cone decompositions $\Sigma^{\ddagger,\alpha}$ for all $\alpha \in I_{G/G_0}$.*

Proof. By Lemma 4.10, Lemma 4.14 and [MP19, 4.1.3 and 4.1.12], there is an action of $\Delta_{{}^\alpha K} := \Delta_{{}^\alpha K}(G_0, G)$ on the disjoint union of integral models $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0^\alpha}}$ for all $\Phi_0^\alpha \in \mathcal{CLR}(G_0, X_0)$. Since the cone decompositions Σ_0^α are *induced* by Σ and since any element $d \in \Delta_{{}^\alpha K}$ maps to $g_\alpha d' g_\alpha^{-1} \in {}^\alpha K$, the action of d' on Σ is trivial by admissibility of Σ, and therefore the action of $\Delta_{{}^\alpha K}$ on the integral models $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0^\alpha}}$ induces an action of it on the disjoint union of strata $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0^\alpha},\sigma_0^\alpha} \cong \mathcal{Z}_{\Upsilon_0^\alpha, K_0^\alpha}$ for all $\Upsilon_0^\alpha := [(\Phi_0^\alpha, \sigma_0^\alpha)] \in \mathrm{Cusp}_{K_0^\alpha}(G_0, X_0, \Sigma_0^\alpha)$. Finally, by [MP19, Lem. A.3.4], we have an action of $\Delta_{{}^\alpha K}$ on $\mathcal{S}_{K_0^\alpha}^{\Sigma_0^\alpha}$ that extends the actions on the individual strata.

Next, we shall explain why this quotient makes sense. By Lemma 4.15 above, the action of $\Delta_{{}^\alpha K}$ on $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_0^\alpha}$ factors through a finite quotient, and therefore the same is true for $\mathcal{S}_{K_0^\alpha}^{\Sigma_0^\alpha}$ since $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_0^\alpha}$ is dense in $\mathcal{S}_{K_0^\alpha}^{\Sigma_0^\alpha}$.

Consequently, the quotients in (4.12) exist as algebraic spaces by the Keel-Mori theorem [KM97]. (See also [CLO12, Thm. 3.1.13] and [Knu71, Intro. p.17].) The algebraic space $\mathcal{S}_K^\Sigma$ is separated over the base by [CLO12, Thm. 3.1.12(i)] (cf. [Sta24, Lem. 05Z2]), and the morphism $\coprod_{\alpha \in I_{G/G_0}} \mathcal{S}_{K_0^\alpha}^{\Sigma_0^\alpha} \to \mathcal{S}_K^\Sigma$ is finite by [CLO12, Thm. 3.1.13(i)(ii)] and [Sta24, Lem. 04NX]. Combining it with [Sta24, Lem. 08AJ] and [CLO12, Thm. 3.1.13(iii)], we have that the algebraic space $\mathcal{S}_K^\Sigma$ is proper over $\mathcal{O}'_{(v)}$. Finally, $\mathcal{S}_K^\Sigma$ is normal as we can check normality over étale covers and combine *loc. cit.* again.

For the projectivity, note that $\mathcal{S}_{K_0^\alpha}^{\Sigma_0^\alpha}$ will be projective if all Σ_0^α's for varying α satisfy the condition in the second sentence of the statement (see [FC90, Ch. V., Thm. 5.8] and [Lan13, Thm. 7.3.3.4]). Then $\mathcal{S}_K^\Sigma$ is projective over the base since the quotient of a projective scheme by a finite group is projective (see [Knu71, Ch. 4, Prop. 1.5]). □

The action of $\Delta_\alpha K(G_0, G)$ is trivial on Sh_K^Σ. So the finite morphism $\coprod_{\alpha\in I_{G/G_0}} \mathrm{Sh}_{K_0^\alpha}^{\Sigma_0^\alpha} \to \mathrm{Sh}_K^\Sigma$ factors through the generic fiber of (4.12). By Zariski's main theorem, the generic fiber of (4.12) is isomorphic to Sh_K^Σ. Hence, (4.12) is indeed an integral model of Sh_K^Σ over $\mathcal{O}'_{(v)}$. □

4.2.5. Next, let us construct the strata for $\mathcal{S}_K^\Sigma$ over $\mathcal{O}'_{(v)}$. Let $Q_0 := \pi^{-1}(Q)$ and $X_0^+ := \pi^{-1}(X_b^+)$. Up to an action of $Q_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})$, we can assume that X_0^+ is nonempty.

Write $P_0 := P_{Q_0}$. There is a surjective map $P_0 \to P_\Phi$. We can write $G(\mathbb{Q})_+ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)g^bK$ as a disjoint union

$$\coprod_{\alpha\in I_{G/G_0}} G(\mathbb{Q})_+\pi(G_0(\mathbb{A}_f))\alpha K \cap G(\mathbb{Q})_+ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)g^bK,$$

where $I_{G/G_0} \cong G(\mathbb{Q})_+\pi(G_0(\mathbb{A}_f))\backslash G(\mathbb{A}_f)/K$.

Lemma 4.18. $G(\mathbb{Q})_+ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)g^bK = G(\mathbb{Q})_+^-ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)g^bK =$

$$\coprod_{\alpha\in I_{G/G_0}} \coprod_{\pi(g_0^\alpha)\alpha\sim g^b} G(\mathbb{Q})_+\pi(P_0(\mathbb{A}_f)g_0^\alpha)g_\alpha K.$$

In the equation above, the second index runs over a complete set of representatives $\{\pi(g_0^\alpha)\}$ in $\pi(G_0(\mathbb{A}_f))$ of $J^\alpha_{G_0/P_0} := G(\mathbb{Q})_+^-\pi(P_0(\mathbb{A}_f))\backslash G(\mathbb{Q})_+^-\pi(G_0(\mathbb{A}_f))g_\alpha K/K$ such that $\pi(g_0^\alpha)g_\alpha$ and g^b are equivalent in $G(\mathbb{Q})_+^-ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)\backslash G(\mathbb{A}_f)/K$.

Proof. The first equation follows from the fact that $G(\mathbb{Q})_+^-\mathcal{H} = G(\mathbb{Q})_+\mathcal{H}$ for any open compact subgroup $\mathcal{H}$ in $G(\mathbb{A}_f)$. Write $G_0(\mathbb{A}_f) = \coprod_{g_0^\alpha} P_0(\mathbb{A}_f)g_0^\alpha K_0^\alpha$. Then, for any g_0^α,

$$G(\mathbb{Q})_+^-\pi(P_0(\mathbb{A}_f)g_0^\alpha K_0^\alpha)g_\alpha K = G(\mathbb{Q})_+^-\pi(P_0(\mathbb{A}_f)g_0^\alpha)g_\alpha K$$

is contained in $G(\mathbb{Q})_+^-ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)g^bK$ if and only if $\pi(g_0^\alpha)g_\alpha \sim g^b$. □

Here we add a "$-$" to $G(\mathbb{Q})_+ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)$ since $G(\mathbb{Q})_+^-ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)$ is a group but $G(\mathbb{Q})_+ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)$ is not.

By Lemma 4.4, Lemma 4.18 and [Pin90, Thm. 12.4], we have that

Proposition 4.19. *With the notation as above, there are surjective maps*

$$\coprod_{\alpha\in I_{G/G_0}} \coprod_{[\Phi_0^\alpha]=[(P_0,X_0^+,g_0^\alpha)]\xrightarrow{\pi(\alpha)}[ZP^b(\Phi)]} \mathrm{Z}_{[\Phi_0^\alpha],K_0^\alpha,\mathbb{C}} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi)],K,\mathbb{C}}, \tag{4.13}$$

$$\coprod_{\alpha\in I_{G/G_0}} \coprod_{[\Phi_0^\alpha]=[(P_0,X_0^+,g_0^\alpha)]\xrightarrow{\pi(\alpha)}[ZP^b(\Phi)]} \Delta_{\Phi_0^\alpha,K_0^\alpha}\backslash\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_0^\alpha},h,\mathbb{C}} \longrightarrow \Delta_{\Phi,K}^{ZP}\backslash\mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi,h,\mathbb{C}}, \tag{4.14}$$

$$\coprod_{\alpha\in I_{G/G_0}} \coprod_{[(\Phi_0^\alpha,\sigma_0^\alpha)]\xrightarrow{\pi(\alpha)}[ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)]} \mathrm{Z}_{[(\Phi_0^\alpha,\sigma_0^\alpha)],K_0^\alpha,\mathbb{C}} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)],K,\mathbb{C}}, \tag{4.15}$$

$$\coprod_{\alpha\in I_{G/G_0}} \coprod_{[(\Phi_0^\alpha,\sigma_0^\alpha)]\xrightarrow{\pi(\alpha)}[ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)]} \Delta^\circ_{\Phi_0^\alpha,K_0^\alpha}\backslash\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_0^\alpha},\mathbb{C}}(\sigma_0^\alpha) \longrightarrow \Delta_{\Phi,K}^{ZP,\circ}\backslash\mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi,\mathbb{C}}(\sigma), \tag{4.16}$$

and

$$\coprod_{\alpha\in I_{G/G_0}}\coprod_{[(\Phi_0^\alpha,\sigma_0^\alpha)]\xrightarrow{\pi(\alpha)}[ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)]}\Delta^\circ_{\Phi_0^\alpha,K_0^\alpha}\backslash \mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_0^\alpha},\sigma_0^\alpha,\mathbb{C}}\longrightarrow \Delta^{ZP,\circ}_{\Phi,K}\backslash \mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi,\sigma,\mathbb{C}}, \tag{4.17}$$

such that the images to right-hand sides of any two components in the disjoint unions of the left-hand sides of (4.13) (4.14) (4.15), (4.16) and (4.17) are disjoint or the same. All of the maps above algebraize and descend to the reflex field of (G_0,X_0).

Construction 4.20. By Lemma 4.18 and Proposition 4.19, $\mathrm{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)],K,\mathbb{C}}\cong\Delta^{ZP,\circ}_{\Phi,K}\backslash\mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi,\sigma,\mathbb{C}}$ is isomorphic to the quotient

$$\coprod_{\alpha\in I_{G/G_0}}\coprod_{\pi(g_0^\alpha)\alpha\sim g^b}\coprod_{[\sigma]_{ZP}}(\Delta_{\alpha_K}(G_0,G)(G_0(\mathbb{Q})_+\backslash G_0(\mathbb{Q})_+\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_0^\alpha},\sigma_0^\alpha,\mathbb{C}}))/\Delta_{\alpha_K}(G_0,G),$$

where σ_0^α is the unique cone in $\mathbf{P}_{\Phi_0^\alpha}$ induced by the cone σ' and σ' runs over the representatives of $\Delta_{\Phi_0^\alpha,K_0^\alpha}$-orbits in the $\Delta^{ZP}_{\Phi,K}$-orbit $[\sigma]_{ZP}$ of σ. Hence, we define an $\mathcal{O}'_{(v)}$-scheme associated with $[ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)]$:

$$\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)],K}:=\coprod_{\alpha\in I_{G/G_0}}\coprod_{\pi(g_0^\alpha)\alpha\sim g^b}\coprod_{[\sigma]_{ZP}}(\Delta_{\alpha_K}(G_0,G)(G_0(\mathbb{Q})_+\backslash G_0(\mathbb{Q})_+\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0^\alpha},\sigma_0^\alpha}))/\Delta_{\alpha_K}(G_0,G).$$

It is isomorphic to

$$\coprod_{\alpha\in I_{G/G_0}}\coprod_{\pi(g_0^\alpha)\alpha\sim g^b}\coprod_{[\sigma]_{ZP}}(\Delta_{\alpha_K}(G_0,G)\Delta^\circ_{\Phi_0^\alpha,K_0^\alpha}\backslash\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0^\alpha},\sigma_0^\alpha})/\Delta_{\alpha_K}(G_0,G)$$

and to

$$\coprod_{\alpha\in I_{G/G_0}}\coprod_{\pi(g_0^\alpha)\alpha\sim g^b}\coprod_{[\sigma]_{ZP}}(\Delta_{\alpha_K}(G_0,G)\mathcal{Z}_{[(\Phi_0^\alpha,\sigma_0^\alpha)],K_0^\alpha})/\Delta_{\alpha_K}(G_0,G)$$

by [MP19, Thm. 4.1.5(5)]. When K_0^α are neat, $\Delta^\circ_{\Phi_0^\alpha,K_0^\alpha}$ are trivial. Since all the strata in the second disjoint union are locally closed in $\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma_0^\alpha}_{K_0^\alpha}$ and since the actions of $\Delta_{\alpha_K}(G_0,G)$ on those strata and toroidal compactifications are equivariant, we see that the action of $\Delta_{\alpha_K}(G_0,G)$ on those strata factors through a finite quotient, and that we have a finite morphism $\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)],K}\hookrightarrow\mathcal{S}^\Sigma_K$. We shall check the following statement:

Lemma 4.21. *The induced map* $i:\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)],K}\to\mathcal{S}^\Sigma_K$ *is a locally closed embedding. Thus we obtain a stratification on* $\mathcal{S}^\Sigma_K$ *by all* ZP*-cusp labels with cones.*

Proof. Denote by $[\mathcal{Z}]$ the image of i. (The image here is inductively defined, which means the schematic image defined in $\mathcal{S}^\Sigma_K$ removing the images defined by other $\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)],K}$'s with strictly smaller dimensions. In particular, it is automatically locally closed.) The map $i:\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)],K}\to[\mathcal{Z}]$ is finite, birational and a bijection over geometric points (see, e.g., [KM85, Cor. A.7.2.2]). To check this map is an embedding, we can check over the complete local ring at every geometric point. At any geometric point $\bar{y}$ of $\mathcal{Z}_{[(\Phi_0^\alpha,\sigma_0^\alpha)],K_0^\alpha}$, note that there is a structural morphism

$$(\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma_0^\alpha}_{K_0^\alpha})^\wedge_{\bar{y}}\cong(\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0^\alpha}}(\sigma_0^\alpha))^\wedge_{\bar{y}}\twoheadrightarrow(\mathcal{Z}_{[(\Phi_0^\alpha,\sigma_0^\alpha)],K_0^\alpha})^\wedge_{\bar{y}}$$

whose pre-composition with the natural inclusion $(\mathcal{Z}_{[(\Phi_0^\alpha,\sigma_0^\alpha)],K_0^\alpha})^\wedge_{\bar{y}}\hookrightarrow(\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma_0^\alpha}_{K_0^\alpha})^\wedge_{\bar{y}}$ is the identity. The structural morphism is defined by the canonical projection of a twisted affine torus embedding with respect to a cone σ_0^α to its σ_0^α-stratum.

Let $\bar{x}$ be any geometric point on $\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)],K}$. Denote the image of $\bar{x}$ on $[\mathcal{Z}]$ by $[\bar{x}]$, and suppose $[\bar{x}]$ can be lifted to a geometric point on $\mathcal{Z}_{[(\Phi_0^\alpha,\sigma_0^\alpha)],K_0^\alpha}$. We then obtain a sequence

$$(\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)],K})^\wedge_{\bar{x}} \to (\mathcal{S}_K^\Sigma)^\wedge_{[\bar{x}]} \cong ((\mathcal{S}_{K_0^\alpha}^{\Sigma_0^\alpha})^\wedge_{\pi^{b,-1}([\bar{x}])})^{\Delta_{\alpha K}(G_0,G)} \to (\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)],K})^\wedge_{\bar{x}}$$

whose composition is the identity. This induces an isomorphism $(\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)],K})^\wedge_{\bar{x}} \cong ([\mathcal{Z}])^\wedge_{[\bar{x}]}$. The desired assertion that $\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)],K} \cong [\mathcal{Z}]$ is now proved. □

Since the quotient map from the disjoint union of $\mathcal{Z}_{[(\Phi_0^\alpha,\sigma_0^\alpha)],K_0^\alpha}$ to $\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)],K}$ is finite, by induction on the dimension of $\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)],K}$ and by Lemma 4.21, we have a stratification of $\mathcal{S}_K^\Sigma$ by all $\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)],K}$ extending that defined by ZP-cusp labels with cones on the generic fiber, and we have that those strata are normal, are locally closed in $\mathcal{S}_K^\Sigma$, and are flat over $\mathcal{O}'_{(v)}$.

We then define finer strata $\mathcal{Z}_{[(\Phi,\sigma)],K}$ as relative normalizations of $\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)],K}$ in $\mathrm{Z}_{[(\Phi,\sigma)],K}$. Since the embedding of $\mathrm{Z}_{[(\Phi,\sigma)],K}$ in $\mathrm{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)],K}$ is open and closed, $\mathcal{Z}_{[(\Phi,\sigma)],K}$ is open and closed in $\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)],K}$. Hence, $\mathcal{Z}_{[(\Phi,\sigma)],K}$ are locally closed in $\mathcal{S}_K^\Sigma$. Moreover, by construction, we have that

$$\mathcal{S}_K^\Sigma \cong \coprod_{[ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)]\in \mathrm{Cusp}_K^{ZP}(G,X_b,\Sigma)} \mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)],K} \cong \coprod_{\Upsilon=[(\Phi,\sigma)]\in \mathrm{Cusp}_K(G,X_b,\Sigma)} \mathcal{Z}_{[(\Phi,\sigma)],K},$$

which gives us stratifications of $\mathcal{S}_K^\Sigma$ given by ZP-cusp labels and cusp labels with cones, extending the stratifications of both types of cusp labels with cones over the generic fiber. □

4.2.6. Now we are ready to find an integral model of $\mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi} := \mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi}(ZP^b_\Phi, ZP^b_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})D_\Phi)$. Set

$$I_{ZP_\Phi/P_0,K} := \mathrm{Stab}_{ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})}(D_{Q_0,X_0^+})\pi(P_0(\mathbb{A}_f))\backslash ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)g^bK/K.$$

Since $P_0(\mathbb{Q})$ acts on connected components of D_{Q_0,X_0^+} transitively, we have

$$I_{ZP_\Phi/P_0,K} \cong \mathrm{Stab}_{ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})}(D^+_{Q_0,X_0^+})\pi(P_0(\mathbb{A}_f))\backslash ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)g^bK/K.$$

For any $\beta \in I_\Phi := I_{ZP_\Phi/P_0,K}$, we consider the image of β in

$$J_\Phi := G(\mathbb{Q})^-_+\pi(P_0(\mathbb{A}_f))\backslash G(\mathbb{Q})^-_+ ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)g^bK/K.$$

By Proposition 4.19, for any β, we choose any representative $e_\beta \in ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)g^bK$ for β, and there is a $\gamma_\beta \in G(\mathbb{Q})_+$ and a cusp label representative $\Phi_\beta = (Q_0^{\gamma_\beta}, X_0^+, g_\beta)$ in $\mathcal{CLR}(G_0,X_0)$ such that $\gamma_\beta g_\beta g_\alpha = e_\beta k$ for some $k \in K$,

$$\mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi} \cong \coprod_{\beta\in I_\Phi} \gamma_\beta \cdot \mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_\beta}}/\Delta(P_0, ZP_\Phi/ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)\cap {}^{\gamma_\beta g_\beta g_\alpha}K),$$

where $\Delta(P_0, ZP_\Phi/ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)\cap {}^{\gamma_\beta g_\beta g_\alpha}K) := \ker(\mathscr{A}(P_0) \to \mathscr{A}(ZP_\Phi)/ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)\cap {}^{\gamma_\beta g_\beta g_\alpha}K)$ and g_α is determined by the image of β in I_{G/G_0}. Set $K^\beta := ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)\cap {}^{\gamma_\beta g_\beta g_\alpha}K$ and $\Delta_{K^\beta}(P_0, ZP_\Phi) := \Delta(P_0, ZP_\Phi/ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)\cap {}^{\gamma_\beta g_\beta g_\alpha}K)$.

Lemma 4.22. *$\Delta_{K^\beta}(P_0, ZP_\Phi)$ is compact.*

Proof. For any open compact subgroup $K_{\Phi_0} \subset P_0(\mathbb{A}_f)$ mapping to K^β under π, we have decompositions

$$\mathscr{A}(P_0)/K_{\Phi_0} = \coprod_{[p_0]\in P_0(\mathbb{Q})_+\backslash P_0(\mathbb{A}_f)/K_{\Phi_0}} \mathscr{A}^\circ(P_0)/\mathscr{A}^\circ(P_0)\cap {}^{p_0}K_{\Phi_0}$$

and

$$\mathscr{A}(ZP_\Phi)/K^\beta = \coprod_{[p]\in ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})_+\backslash ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)/K^\beta} \mathscr{A}^\circ(ZP_\Phi)/\mathscr{A}^\circ(ZP_\Phi)\cap {}^{p}(K^\beta).$$

Both $\mathscr{A}^\circ(P_0)\cap {}^{p_0}K_{\Phi_0}$ and $\mathscr{A}^\circ(ZP_\Phi)\cap^p(K^\beta)$ are arithmetic subgroups of $P_0^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})^+$, and $\mathscr{A}^\circ(P_0)/\mathscr{A}^\circ(P_0)\cap {}^{p_0}K_{\Phi_0}\cong P_0^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})^+/\mathscr{A}^\circ(P_0)\cap^{p_0}K_{\Phi_0}$ and $\mathscr{A}^\circ(ZP_\Phi)/\mathscr{A}^\circ(ZP_\Phi)\cap^p(K^\beta)\cong P_0^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})^+/\mathscr{A}^\circ(ZP_\Phi)\cap^p(K^\beta)$. Then we see that the preimage of $[K^\beta]$ under $\mathscr{A}(P_0)/K_{\Phi_0}\to\mathscr{A}(G)/K^\beta$ is finite. □

Hence, we can write $\mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$ as

$$\coprod_{\beta\in I_\Phi}\gamma_\beta\cdot\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_\beta}}/\Delta_{K^\beta}(P_0,ZP_\Phi).$$

Construction 4.23. Set $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}:=\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi}(ZP^b_\Phi,ZP^b_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})D_\Phi):=$

$$\coprod_{\beta\in I_\Phi}\gamma_\beta\cdot\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_\beta}}/\Delta_{K^\beta}(P_0,ZP_\Phi)$$

The quotient makes sense since the action of $\Delta_{K^\beta}(P_0,ZP_\Phi)$ makes sense by Lemma 4.10, Lemma 4.14, and [MP19, 4.1.3], and factors through a finite group by Lemma 4.22.

Similarly, we construct

$$\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}:=\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi}(ZP^b_\Phi,ZP^b_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})D_{\Phi_b}):=\coprod_{\beta\in I_\Phi}\gamma_\beta\cdot\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_\beta}}/\Delta_{K^\beta}(P_0,ZP_\Phi),$$

and

$$\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi,h}:=\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,h}(ZP^b_\Phi,ZP^b_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})D_{\Phi_b}):=\coprod_{\beta\in I_\Phi}\gamma_\beta\cdot\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_\beta},h}/\Delta_{K^\beta}(P_0,ZP_\Phi).$$

Consequently, there is a tower of $\mathcal{O}'_{(v)}$-schemes

$$\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}\longrightarrow\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}\longrightarrow\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi,h}.$$

By the construction above and by [MP19, 4.1.5(4)] (cf. Theorem 2.46 (3)), the first morphism above is affine, while the second morphism is proper. □

Denote $\Phi_{\beta'}:=\gamma_\beta\cdot\Phi_\beta$.

Now we shall check the following statement:

Proposition 4.24. *In Cases (HS), (STB$_n$) and (DL), $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$, $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$ and $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi,h}$ are independent of the choice of representatives e_β and the pairs (γ_β,g_β) for all β in the construction.*

Moreover, for any $\gamma\in G(\mathbb{Q})$ and $q'\in ZP_{\Phi_2}(\mathbb{A}_f)$ such that $\Phi_1\sim_{ZP}\Phi_2$ under the equivalence $\Phi_1\xrightarrow[\sim]{(\gamma,q')_K}\Phi_2$, the isomorphism of mixed Shimura varieties induced by this equivalence extends to an isomorphism between integral models $(\gamma,q'):\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_{\Phi_1}}\xrightarrow{\sim}\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_{\Phi_2}}$.

The statement in the last paragraph also holds if we replace $\mathcal{S}_?$ with $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_?$ and $\mathcal{S}_{?,h}$. The isomorphisms induced by (γ,q') are compatible with the towers $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}\to\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}\to\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi,h}$.

Proof. By Lemma 4.10, Lemma 4.14 and [MP19, 4.1.3], different choices of $(e_\beta;\gamma_\beta,g_\beta)$ for the same β will induce isomorphisms between the models $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}}}$ constructed as above. Now we show the second paragraph.

By Lemma 4.14 and the constructions above, the statements hold for $(\gamma,1)$ since the morphism $\gamma:\mathcal{S}_{K_{\beta'}}\to\mathcal{S}_{\gamma K_{\beta'}}$ is well defined. We only need to show the case where $\gamma=1$ and q' is non-trivial. In fact, we can directly define a morphism of q'; if we can do so, then the statement follows from separatedness and normality of the schemes involved. Suppose $\Phi\xrightarrow[\sim]{(1,q')_K}\Phi_1$. Fix a complete set of representatives $\{e_\beta\}$ for I_{ZP_Φ/P_0}. For any $q'\in ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)$, $\{e_\beta^{q'}:=e_\beta q'\}$ is a complete set of representatives for $\mathrm{Stab}_{ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})}(D_{Q_0,X_0^+})\pi(P_0(\mathbb{A}_f))\backslash ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)(q')^{-1}g^bK/K$. We still assign (γ_β,g_β) to $e_\beta^{q'}$ and construct $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_{\Phi_1}}$ as above. By the last paragraph, the construction of $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_{\Phi_1}}$ is independent

of the choice of such assignment. Then there is an isomorphism $q' : \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi} \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_{\Phi_1}}$ induced by the map $e_\beta \mapsto e_\beta^{q'}$ extending the isomorphism over the generic fiber sending the scheme $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}}}$ constructed for the index e_β identically to the scheme constructed for the index $e_\beta^{q'}$. □

4.2.7. Let us study the integral models we just constructed.

For any admissible cone decomposition Σ_0 of (G_0, X_0, K_0^α) and $\Phi_{\beta'}$, define $\Delta^\circ_{K^\beta}(P_0, G)$ to be the group consisting of the elements $(h, \gamma^{-1}) \in \Delta_{K^\beta}(P_0, G) := \ker(\mathscr{A}(P_0) \times^{P_0^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})^+} Q_0^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})^+ \to \mathscr{A}(G)/{}^{\gamma_\beta g_\beta g_\alpha}K)$ such that γ stabilizes $\Sigma(\Phi_{\beta'})$, where we denote $Q_0^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})^+ := Q_0^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q}) \cap G_0^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})^+$.

In fact, $\Delta_\beta := \Delta_{K^\beta}(P_0, G)$ is a generalization of the group $\Delta_{\Phi,K}$ defined by Pink (see [Pin90, 6.3 and 7.3]). To explain this similarity, we convert the right action of $(h, \gamma^{-1}) \in \Delta_\beta$ to $[\gamma h \gamma^{-1}] \circ [\gamma]$, where $[\gamma]$ is the left action of γ and $[\gamma h \gamma^{-1}]$ is the right action of $\gamma h \gamma^{-1}$. Let

$$\widetilde{\Delta}_\beta := \{(h_1, \gamma_1) \in P_0(\mathbb{A}_f) \times Q_\Phi^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})^+ | \gamma_1 \text{ is lifted to an element } \gamma_1^* \in Q_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})_+, \\ \text{and } \gamma_1^* = h_1 \text{ modulo } {}^{\gamma_\beta g_\beta g_\alpha}K \text{ on the right in } G(\mathbb{A}_f)\},$$

where $Q_\Phi^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})^+ := Q_\Phi^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q}) \cap G^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})^+ = Q_0^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})^+$. We have that $(h, \gamma^{-1}) \in \Delta_\beta$ if and only if there is a lifting γ_1^* of γ to $Q_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})_+$ such that $(h, \gamma^{-1})(\gamma_1^{*,-1}, \gamma) = (h\gamma^{-1}\gamma_1^{*,-1}\gamma, 1) = (h\gamma_1^{*,-1}, 1) = (k, 1)$ for some $k \in {}^{\gamma_\beta g_\beta g_\alpha}K$. We then have $(h, \gamma^{-1}) \in \Delta_\beta$ if and only if $\gamma_1^* = \gamma h \gamma^{-1}$ modulo ${}^{\gamma_\beta g_\beta g_\alpha}K$. As a result, there is a surjective homomorphism

$$\widetilde{\Delta}_\beta \longrightarrow \Delta_\beta$$

with the assignment $(\gamma h \gamma^{-1}, \gamma) \mapsto (h, \gamma^{-1})$, which converts the right action of Δ_β to $[\gamma h \gamma^{-1}] \circ [\gamma]$. Note that the action of $\widetilde{\Delta}_\beta$ modulo $P_0(\mathbb{Q})$ coincides with the action of Pink's group $\Delta_{\Phi,K}$ when $(G_0, X_0) = (G, X_b)$, $P_0 = P_\Phi$ and $\gamma_\beta = g_\alpha = 1$.

By [Pin90, Thm. 6.19(a)] and [MP19, 2.1.19], the definition of $\Delta^\circ_{K^\beta}(P_0, G)$ is independent of the choice of the cone decomposition Σ_0.

Lemma 4.25. *Recall that we assume K^p is **neat**. With the conventions and assumptions above, and in all cases,*

1. *We have $\Delta^\circ_{K^\beta}(P_0, G) = \Delta_{K^\beta}(P_0, ZP_\Phi)$.*
2. *The group $\Delta_{K^\beta}(P_0, ZP_\Phi)$ acts equivariantly on the tower of schemes $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}}} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}}} \to \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}},h}$; the quotient induced by this action on each scheme in the tower is finite étale. More precisely, the action of $\Delta_{K^\beta}(P_0, ZP_\Phi)$ on $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}}}$ (resp. $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}}}$ and resp. $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}},h}$) factors through some finite group H_β (resp. $\overline{H}_\beta$ and resp. $H_{\beta,h}$), and the action of this finite group is free. Consequently, for $K'^{,p}$ any normal subgroup of K^p, we have a tower $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}'_\Phi} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}'_\Phi} \to \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}'_\Phi,h}$ associated with Φ and $K' = K_p K'^{,p}$ by Construction 4.23. The quotient of each scheme in the tower by $\widetilde{K}_\Phi^p$ is finite étale.*
3. *The action of $\Delta_{K^\beta}(P_0, G)$ on $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}},h}$ also factors through a finite group, and the action of it on $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}},h}$ is also free.*

Proof. First, we check the actions factor through finite groups. To check this action factors through a finite group, we argue as in [Pin90]. Indeed, it suffices to check over the generic fiber. The action of $(\gamma h \gamma^{-1}, \gamma) \in \widetilde{\Delta}_\beta$ is determined by γ. There is an almost semi-direct product $Q_0 \cong G_h^* \cdot P_0$ with G_h^* a reductive group over $\mathbb{Q}$ which is a finite cover of Q_0/P_0. The group $G_h^*(\mathbb{Q})$ acts on $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}},h}$ trivially. Hence, the action of Δ_β on $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}},h}$ factors through a finite quotient group by projecting $\widetilde{\Delta}_\beta$ to $Q_0/P_0(\mathbb{Q})$. From Construction 4.23, we see that the action of $\Delta^\circ_{K^\beta}(P_0, G)$ also factors through a finite group if Part 1 is shown.

By Lemma 1.30, the group $\Delta_{K^\beta}(P_0, ZP_\Phi)$ is included in $\Delta^\circ_{K^\beta}(P_0, G)$. The projection of $\Delta^\circ_{K^\beta}(P_0, G)$ to $Q_0^{\mathrm{ad}}/ZP_\Phi^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})$ is an arithmetic subgroup contained in the image of ${}^{\gamma_\beta g_\beta g_\alpha}K$. Moreover, this projection is contained in $P''_\Phi/ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})$ (see §1.2.2 for the notation) by the neatness of K and by [Pin90, Thm. 6.19(a)]. Then the $Q_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})_+$-component of $\Delta^\circ_{K^\beta}(P_0, G)$ centralizes U_Φ and is contained in $ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})$ by Lemma 1.11. This proves Part 1.

Next, we show the freeness of actions. Let $\overline{x} \in \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}}}(\kappa)$ be a geometric point of $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'},p}}$, where κ is an algebraically closed field. Suppose that the action of $\tau = (h, \gamma^{-1}) \in \Delta_{K^\beta}(P_0, ZP_\Phi)$ on $\overline{x}$ is trivial. The aim is to show that τ acts on every point of $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}}}$ trivially. Then τ stabilizes the component ${}^j\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'},p}K^p_{\Phi_{\beta'}}}$ containing $\overline{x}$. Up to replacing $K_{\Phi_{\beta'},p}$ and K_p^β with the right conjugate of a representative in $P_0(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ of j, it suffices to assume that $j = 1$ and to consider the subgroup of $\widetilde{\Delta}_\beta$ that stabilizes ${}^1\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'},p}K^p_{\Phi_{\beta'}}}$. This stabilizer is

$$\widetilde{\Delta}^1_\beta := \{(h_1, \gamma_1) \in P_0(\mathbb{Q})_+ P_0(\mathbb{A}_f^p) K_{\Phi_{\beta'},p} \times Q^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})^+ | \gamma_1 \text{ is lifted to an element } \gamma_1^* \in Q_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})_+, \\ \text{and } \gamma_1^* = h_1 \text{ modulo } {}^{\gamma_\beta g_\beta g_\alpha}K \text{ on the right in } G(\mathbb{A}_f)\}.$$

Modulo the trivial action of $P_0(\mathbb{Q})_+$, we can assume that γ_1's in the second component of elements in $\widetilde{\Delta}^1_\beta$ are all lifted to $Q_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})_+ \cap {}^{\gamma_\beta g_\beta g_\alpha}K_p$. Since we can assume $(h, \gamma^{-1}) \in \Delta_{K^\beta}(P_0, ZP_\Phi)$, we assume that γ can be lifted to $ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})_+ \cap {}^{\gamma_\beta g_\beta g_\alpha}K_p$. By Lemma 4.26 below, the action of the last group can be described by twisting constructions for some $G_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}$ as in Section 3.

Write G as an almost-direct product $G \cong (G_0/\ker(\pi^b) \times S_G)/Z'_G$, where $S_G \subset Z_G$ and Z'_G is a finite group. Then Lemma 4.26 shows that γ lifts to $P_0^\dagger(F) \cap G_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}(\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)})$, where $P_0^\dagger := \pi^{b,-1}(Z'_G) \cdot P_0$.

In all cases, we can pull back the 1-motive with additional structures to $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}}}$ from the integral model of some Siegel-type boundary mixed Shimura variety. Suppose that the image of β is some $\alpha \in I_{G/G_0}$. Suppose that $\Phi_{\beta'}$ maps to $\Phi^{\ddagger,\prime} \in \mathcal{CLR}(G^\ddagger, X^\ddagger)$ as in the notation of §4.2.1 and §4.2.2. With the notation in the above-mentioned subsections, in Cases (HS), (STB) and their deep-level cases, we pull back the tautological 1-motive with additional structures over $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi^{\ddagger,\prime}}}$. In Case ($\mathrm{STB}_n$) and its deep-level case, we choose an i and pull back the tautological family over $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi^i}}$.

By Proposition 3.24, there is a commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} V_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p} \otimes \mathcal{O}_F & \xrightarrow{\widetilde{\gamma}^{-1}\circ h} & V_{\mathbb{A}_f^p} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \mathcal{O}_{F,(p)} & \xrightarrow{u_{\overline{x}}} & V^p\mathcal{Q}_{\overline{x}}^{\mathcal{O}_F} & \xrightarrow{V^p f} & V^p\mathcal{Q}_{\overline{x}}^{\tau,\mathcal{O}_F} \\ & \searrow^{k\cdot} & & & & \nearrow_{V^p s} & \\ & & V_{\mathbb{A}_f^p} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \mathcal{O}_{F,(p)} & \xrightarrow{u_{\overline{x}}} & V^p\mathcal{Q}_{\overline{x}}^{\mathcal{O}_F} & & \end{array} \tag{4.18}$$

where s is induced by an isomorphism between 1-motives $s : \mathcal{Q}_{\overline{x}} \to \mathcal{Q}_{\overline{x}}^\tau$ preserving polarizations, $k \in K^p_{\Phi_{\beta'}}$, $\tilde{\gamma} \in P_0^\dagger(F) \cap G_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}(\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)})$ is a lifting of γ and $h \in P_0(\mathbb{A}_f^p)$.

Since $h\tilde{\gamma}^{-1}$ is in the preimage in $G_0(\mathbb{A}_f)$ of the image of ${}^{\gamma_\beta g_\beta g_\alpha}K$ in $G/S_G(\mathbb{A}_f)$, $(\tilde{\gamma})^{-1}hk^{-1} \in G_0(\mathbb{A}_f^p \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} F)$ lies in an open compact subgroup of $G_0(\mathbb{A}_f^p \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} F)$. We replace $V_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p} \otimes \mathcal{O}_F$ with another $\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p$-lattice $V'_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p} \subset V_{\mathbb{A}_f^p} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}} \mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}$ and replace $\mathcal{Q}_{\overline{x}}^{\mathcal{O}_F}$ with $\mathcal{Q}'$ with a $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}^\times$-isogeny $\mathcal{Q}' \to \mathcal{Q}_{\overline{x}}^{\mathcal{O}_F}$ such that the commutative diagram above induces a commutative diagram preserving polarizations

$$\begin{array}{ccc} V'_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p} & \xrightarrow{u_{\overline{x}}} & T^p\mathcal{Q}' \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle kh^{-1}\tilde{\gamma}} & & \downarrow \\ V'_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p} & \xrightarrow{u_{\overline{x}}} & T^p\mathcal{Q}'. \end{array} \tag{4.19}$$

The automorphism on the right is induced by an automorphism in $\mathrm{Aut}\mathcal{Q}'$. Note that we have

$$\mathrm{Aut}(\mathcal{Q}') \subset \mathrm{Aut}(Y_{\mathcal{Q}'}) \times \mathrm{Aut}(T_{\mathcal{Q}'}) \times \mathrm{Aut}(A_{\mathcal{Q}'}).$$

Indeed, we can check that $\mathrm{Aut}(\mathcal{Q}') \subset \mathrm{Aut}(Y_{\mathcal{Q}'}) \times \mathrm{Aut}(\mathcal{G}^{\natural}_{\mathcal{Q}'})$ by definition; and $\mathrm{Aut}(\mathcal{G}^{\natural}_{\mathcal{Q}'}) \cong \mathrm{Aut}(((\mathcal{Q}')^{\vee})^{\circ}) \subset \mathrm{Aut}(X_{\mathcal{Q}'}) \times \mathrm{Aut}(A^{\vee}_{\mathcal{Q}'}) \cong \mathrm{Aut}(T_{\mathcal{Q}'}) \times \mathrm{Aut}(A_{\mathcal{Q}'})$. Moreover, since the projection to $\mathrm{Aut}(A_{\mathcal{Q}'}) \to \mathrm{Aut}(T^p A_{\mathcal{Q}'})$ of the right vertical arrow of (4.19) is induced by an isomorphism of polarized abelian schemes with level structures, this projection is some multiplication of roots of unity (see, e.g., [Lan13, Cor. 2.3.3.2]). We will use these facts later.

Set $ZP_0 := Z_{G_0}P_0$ and W_0 the unipotent radical of P_0. Set $ZW_0 := Z_{G_0}W_0$. We claim that the image of $q := k^{-1}h\tilde{\gamma}^{-1}$ in $ZP_0/ZW_0(\mathbb{A}_f^p \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} F)$ is trivial. Then it will follow that $q \in ZW_0(\mathbb{A}_f^p \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} F)$. Let us show the claim.

Let $P_{\Phi}^{\dagger}$ be the quotient of $P_0^{\dagger}$ by $\mathbb{K} := \ker(G_0 \to G)$. The projection of q to $P_{\Phi}^{\dagger}/P_{\Phi}(\mathbb{A}_f^p \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} F)$ via $P_0^{\dagger} \to P_{\Phi}^{\dagger} \to P_{\Phi}^{\dagger}/P_{\Phi}$ lies in $P_{\Phi}^{\dagger}/P_{\Phi}(F)$, which is a finite group. Hence, we can replace q with q^m for some positive integer m and assume that q^m is in $P_0(\mathbb{A}_f^p \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} F)$. The quotient $P_0/W_0(\mathbb{A}_f^p \otimes F)$ acts *faithfully* on $\mathrm{Gr}_{-1} V_{\mathbb{A}_f^p} \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} F$. So, by the diagram (4.19) above, the image of q^m in $P_0/W_0(\mathbb{A}_f^p \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} F)$ satisfies the equation $X^M = 1$ for some positive integer M, and therefore it is also true for the image of q in $ZP_0/ZW_0(\mathbb{A}_f^p \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} F)$. But it maps into the image in $ZP_{\Phi}/(Z_G W_0)(\mathbb{A}_f^p) = ZP_0/ZW_0(\mathbb{A}_f^p)$ of a *neat* open compact subgroup $ZP(\mathbb{A}_f^p) \cap {}^{\gamma_\beta g_\beta g_\alpha}K$. Consequently, we have the claim for q.

Since $\mathrm{Aut}(\mathcal{Q}') \subset \mathrm{Aut}(Y_{\mathcal{Q}'}) \times \mathrm{Aut}(T_{\mathcal{Q}'}) \times \mathrm{Aut}(A_{\mathcal{Q}'})$, q is in $Z_{G_0}(\mathbb{A}_f^p \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} F)$. Now we can follow the argument in [Kis10, Prop. 3.6.4] and [KP18, Cor. 4.6.15]. Since $q \in \mathrm{Aut}(\mathcal{Q}') \cap Z_0(\mathbb{A}_f^p \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} F)$, we have $q \in Z_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}(\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)})$. Replacing $\tilde{\gamma}$ with another lifting, we can assume that the prime-to-p factor of q is trivial. Then we know that $\tilde{\gamma} \in ZP_0(\mathbb{Q})$ and $\tilde{\gamma}$ maps into ${}^{\gamma_\beta g_\beta g_\alpha}K_p$ in $G(\mathbb{Q}_p)$. This implies that $\tilde{\gamma} = \gamma \in ZP_0(\mathbb{Q})$ maps to K_p^{β}. Combining this fact with the paragraph above, we see that q acts on every point of $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}}}$ trivially, since over the generic fiber, q acts as the right action of some element in $K_{\Phi_{\beta'},p}$. Note that the last sentence is true because of the condition that $K_{0,p}^{\alpha} = \pi^{-1}({}^{\alpha}K_p)$.

The argument for $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}}}$ is similar to the argument above. The differences are: for $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}}}$, one replaces $V_?$ with $V_?/W_{-2}V_?$, and replaces objects related to 1-motives $?\mathcal{Q}$ with $?\mathcal{Q}/W_{-2}?\mathcal{Q}$.

Let us show Part 3, and the statement in Part 2 for $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}},h}$ will follow immediately. The idea is still similar to the paragraphs above with some changes. We can only assume that γ lifts to $Q_{\Phi}(\mathbb{Q})_+ \cap {}^{\gamma_\beta g_\beta g_\alpha}K_p$ and to $\tilde{\gamma} \in Q_0(F) \cap G_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}(\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)})$. See the definition of $\widetilde{\Delta}^1_{\beta}$.

Let G_l be the smallest connected normal subgroup in Q_0/W_0 such that there is an almost-direct product decomposition $Q_0/W_0 = (P_0/W_0) \cdot G_l$. Let $G'_h := (Q_0/W_0)/(G_l \cdot \mathbb{K})$ and $G_{0,h} := P_0/W_0$. Then there is a natural central isogeny $G_{0,h} \to G'_h$, and this isogeny factors through $P_{\Phi,h} := P_{\Phi}/W_{\Phi}$ since $G_{0,h}/\mathbb{K} = P_{\Phi,h}$. Recall that we have fixed an i and ${}^{\gamma_\beta g_\beta g_\alpha}K_p$ is contained in a Bruhat-Tits stabilizer subgroup $K_p^{i,\prime} := {}^{\gamma_\beta g_\beta g_\alpha}\mathscr{G}_{x_i}(\mathbb{Z}_p)$ of $G(\mathbb{Q}_p)$. The projection to $G'_h(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ of the intersection $K_p^{i,\prime} \cap Q_{\Phi}(\mathbb{A}_f)$ is compact and therefore contained in a Bruhat-Tits stabilizer subgroup $K^{i,\prime}_{\Phi,h,p}$. Denote the image of γ in $P^{\mathrm{ad}}_{\Phi,h}(\mathbb{Q})^+ = G^{\mathrm{ad}}_{0,h}(\mathbb{Q})^+$ by $\overline{\gamma}$. In particular, by Lemma 4.26, the action of $\overline{\gamma}$ on $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}},h}$ can be described by twisting abelian schemes. Moreover, we can check over generic fiber and by reducedness and separatedness that the action of γ on $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}},h}$ is determined by the image $\overline{\gamma}$. We now choose a finite Galois extension F of $\mathbb{Q}$ and lift $\overline{\gamma}$ to $\tilde{\gamma}_{11} \in G_{0,h,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}(\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)})$ via $G_{0,h} \to G'_h$ (in fact by lifting the projection to $G'_h(\mathbb{Q})$).

If (h, γ^{-1}) acts on some geometric point of $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}},h}$ trivially, it follows that the (-1)-graded piece of the diagram (4.19) is commutative. Denote by $\overline{h}$ the projection of h to $G_{0,h}(\mathbb{A}_f^p)$. With similar conventions as before, we then see that the projection to $G'_{0,h}(\mathbb{A}_f^p)$ of $q := k^{-1}\overline{h}\tilde{\gamma}_{11}^{-1} \in G_{0,h}(\mathbb{A}_f^p \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} F)$

is a neat element, where in this case $k \in K_{\Phi_{\beta'},h}$. On the other hand, q satisfies the equation $X^m = 1$ for some positive integer m, as it is a multiplication of a root of unity by [Lan13, Cor. 2.3.3.2] and the (-1)-graded piece of (4.19). This implies that $q \in Z_{G_{0,h}}(\mathbb{A}_f^p \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} F)$ again. Finally, by the argument of [Kis10, Prop. 3.6.4] and [KP18, Cor. 4.6.15] as above, we see that $q \in Z_{G_{0,h}}(\mathbb{A}_f^p \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} F) \cap \mathrm{Aut}(A_{\mathcal{Q}'})$, and this implies that $q \in Z_{G_{0,h},\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}(\mathcal{O}_{F,(p)})$. Up to replacing $\tilde{\gamma}_{11}$ with another lifting again, we can assume that the prime-to-p factor of q is trivial. Again, this implies that q acts on every point of $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}},h}$ trivially. □

Note that the action of the whole group $G^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})_1$ cannot be described by the twisting construction over integral models. But we have the following statement:

Lemma 4.26. *With the conventions in the proof above, if $\gamma \in Q_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})^+ \cap {}^{\gamma_\beta g_\beta g_\alpha} K_p$, then we can describe the action of γ as a (left) twisting action.*

Proof. It suffices to deal with Case (STB). Without loss of generality, we assume $\gamma_\beta = 1$, $g_\beta = 1$ and $g_\alpha = 1$. We show that the elements in $G(\mathbb{Q})^+ \cap K_p$ can be described by twisting. Write $G \cong (G_0/\ker(\pi^b) \times S_G)/Z'_G$ as in the last proof, where $S_G \subset Z_G$, and Z'_G is a finite group. By assumption, γ can be projected to $\overline{\gamma} \in G' := G/S_G(\mathbb{Q})$, and $\overline{\gamma}$ can be lifted to $\tilde{\gamma} \in G_0(F)$ for some finite Galois extension F over $\mathbb{Q}$.

Suppose that $K_p = \mathscr{G}_x(\mathbb{Z}_p)$ is a Bruhat-Tits stabilizer subgroup corresponding to some point x in the extended building $\mathcal{B}(G_{\mathbb{Q}_p}, \mathbb{Q}_p)$. The point x corresponds to a point y in the Bruhat-Tits building of $G^{\mathrm{der}}_{\mathbb{Q}_p}$, and y corresponds to a point y' in the Bruhat-Tits building of $G'_{\mathbb{Q}_p}$ and a point y_0 in the Bruhat-Tits building of $G_{0,\mathbb{Q}_p}$.

Then γ lies in $\mathscr{G}_{y'}(\mathbb{Z}_p)$ under the projection, where $\mathscr{G}_{y'}$ is the Bruhat-Tits stabilizer group scheme corresponding to y'. Let $F \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{Q}_p = \prod_i F_{v_i}$ for the places v_i of F over p. Then we can view γ in $\prod_i R_{\mathcal{O}_{F_{v_i}}/\mathbb{Z}_p} \mathscr{G}_{y',\mathcal{O}_{F_{v_i}}}(\mathbb{Z}_p)$. Moreover, $R_{\mathcal{O}_{F_{v_i}}/\mathbb{Z}_p} \mathscr{G}_{y',\mathcal{O}_{F_{v_i}}}$ is the Bruhat-Tits stabilizer group scheme corresponding to the image of y' in $\mathcal{B}(G'_{F_{v_i}}, F_{v_i}) \cong \mathcal{B}(R_{F_{v_i}/\mathbb{Q}_p} G'_{F_{v_i}}, \mathbb{Q}_p)$. We can also view $\tilde{\gamma} \in G_0(F)$ as an element in $R_{F\otimes_{\mathbb{Q}}\mathbb{Q}_p/\mathbb{Q}_p} G_0$. Since the map $R_{F\otimes_{\mathbb{Q}}\mathbb{Q}_p/\mathbb{Q}_p} G_0 \to R_{F\otimes_{\mathbb{Q}}\mathbb{Q}_p/\mathbb{Q}_p} G'$ is a central isogeny between reductive groups, $\tilde{\gamma} \in \prod_i R_{\mathcal{O}_{F_{v_i}}/\mathbb{Z}_p} \mathscr{G}_{y_0,\mathcal{O}_{F_{v_i}}}(\mathbb{Z}_p) \cap G_0(F) \cong \mathscr{G}_{y_0}(\mathbb{Z}_p \otimes \mathcal{O}_F) \cap G_0(F)$. Hence, $\tilde{\gamma}$ lies in $G_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}(\mathbb{Z}_p \otimes \mathcal{O}_F) \cap G_0(F) \subset G_{0,\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}}(\mathbb{Z}_{(p)} \otimes \mathcal{O}_F)$, as desired. □

When $(G_0, X_0) = (G, X_b)$ and when $\gamma_\beta = g_\alpha = 1$, we have reproved (and generalized) a result due to Madapusi.

Corollary 4.27 (cf. the proof of [MP19, Thm. 5.3.1])**.** *The quotient map*

$$\mathcal{S}_{K_\Phi,h} \to \Delta_{\Phi,K} \backslash \mathcal{S}_{K_\Phi,h}$$

is finite étale.

Remark 4.28. *Note that we show this without assumptions on $K_p = K_{0,p}$. In fact, Madapusi has already remarked in the proof of* loc. cit. *that one can use Kisin's theory of twisting abelian varieties to study the action of $\Delta_{\Phi,K}$, and has also remarked that one can drop the hyperspecial assumption added in* loc. cit. *by doing this.*

The lemma above also generalizes the argument in the proof of [KP18, Cor. 4.6.15]; in particular, we have shown the following result:

Proposition 4.29. *When P_0 is a normal subgroup of G_0 and when $ZP_\Phi = G$, Part 2 of Lemma 4.25 implies that the morphism $\mathcal{S}_{K_0^\alpha} \to \mathcal{S}_K$ induced by taking the quotient of $\Delta_{\alpha K}(G_0, G)$ is finite étale and that $\{\mathcal{S}_{K_p K^p}\}_{K^p}$ has finite étale transition maps. Taking inverse limits with finite étale transition maps, the quotient map $\mathcal{S}_{K_{0,p}^\alpha} \to \mathcal{S}_{K_p}$ induced by taking the quotient of $\Delta_{\alpha K_p}(G_0, G)$ is pro-finite étale.*

Now, we see that the tower associated with $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$ has the desired structure.

Proposition 4.30. *Under the conventions and assumptions above, we have the following statements for different cases:*

(1) In all cases, $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$ is a torus torsor over $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$ under $\mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$ (see the paragraph below Definition 1.48). Moreover, in Cases (HS) and (STB$_n$), $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$ is an abelian scheme torsor over $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi,h}$.

(2) In all cases, the action of $\Delta^{ZP,\circ}_{\Phi,K}$ on $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$ is trivial.

(3) In Case (HS), the inverse limit formed by $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_{\Phi,p}} := \varprojlim_{\widetilde{K}^p_\Phi} \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$ satisfies the extension property.

Proof. By [Pin90, 3.13] and Lemma 1.14, we know that $\mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi} \to \overline{\mathrm{Sh}}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$ is a torsor under $\mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$. By [MP19, Thm. 4.1.5 (4)], $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}}} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}}}$ is an $\mathbf{E}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}}}$-torsor. From the construction of $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$ as a quotient, we have a finite morphism $\coprod_{\beta\in I_\Phi} \mathbf{E}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}}} \times \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}}} \to \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi} \times_{\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}} \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$. From Lemma 4.25(2), we see that the target of this morphism is normal. This morphism factors as $\coprod_{\beta\in I_\Phi} \mathbf{E}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}}} \times \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}}} \to \mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi} \times \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi} \to \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi} \times_{\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}} \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$, and the last morphism $\mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi} \times \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi} \to \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi} \times_{\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}} \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$ is an isomorphism by Zariski's main theorem. Finally, since, over the fppf cover $\coprod_{\beta\in I_\Phi} \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}}} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$, $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$ admits a section, we conclude that it is an $\mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$-torsor. The claim for abelian scheme torsors is proved in a similar manner. By [MP19, Thm. 4.1.5 (1)], $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}}} \to \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}},h}$ is a torsor under some abelian scheme $\mathcal{A}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}}}$ over $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}},h}$. By [Pin90, 3.13] again, $\overline{\mathrm{Sh}}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi} \to \mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi,h}$ is a torsor under some abelian scheme $A_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$ over $\mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi,h}$, and $\overline{\mathrm{Sh}}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}}} \to \mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}},h}$ is a torsor under $A_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}}}$, where $A_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}}} := \mathcal{A}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}}} \times_{\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}},h}} \mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}},h}$ is an abelian scheme over $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}},h}$. By Lemma 4.25(2), $\coprod_{\beta\in I_\Phi} \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}}} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$ and $\coprod_{\beta\in I_\Phi} \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}},h} \to \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi,h}$ are finite étale surjective morphisms between normal schemes. Then the induced morphism $\coprod_{\beta\in I_\Phi} \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}}} \to \coprod_{\beta\in I_\Phi} \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}},h} \times_{\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi,h}} \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$ is finite étale and surjective. Let $\mathcal{K}$ be the schematic closure in $\mathcal{A} := \coprod_{\beta\in I_\Phi} \mathcal{A}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}}}$ of the kernel of $\coprod_{\beta\in I_\Phi} A_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}}} \to A_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$. Then $\mathcal{K}$ is finite over $\coprod_{\beta\in I_\Phi} \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}},h}$ as it is a closed subscheme in $\mathcal{A}[n]$ for some positive integer n. By Zariski's main theorem, the quotient of $\coprod_{\beta\in I_\Phi} \overline{S}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}}}$ by $\mathcal{K}$ is isomorphic to $\coprod_{\beta\in I_\Phi} \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}},h} \times_{\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi,h}} \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$. Hence, $\mathcal{K}$ is a finite étale group scheme over $\coprod_{\beta\in I_\Phi} \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}},h}$. We then have that $\mathcal{A}/\mathcal{K}$ is an abelian scheme over $\coprod_{\beta\in I_\Phi} \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}},h}$ extending $A_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$. By Lemma 4.25(2) again, $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$ is an abelian scheme torsor over $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi,h}$ since we have checked it over an étale cover $\coprod_{\beta\in I_\Phi} \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}},h}$ of $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi,h}$.

Now let us show Part 2. We argue as in [Pin90, 7.3] and the proof of Lemma 4.25(1). The projection of $\Delta^{ZP,\circ}_{\Phi,K}$ to $Q_\Phi/ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})$ is a neat arithmetic subgroup. By [Pin90, Thm. 6.19(a)] and Lemma 1.11, this projection is in a neat arithmetic subgroup in $P''_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})$, so it has to be in $ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})$, as desired.

Now assume that we are in Case (HS). By [Lov17, Lem. 2.1.3] and Proposition 1.23, we can and we will check the extension property over $\mathcal{O}^p := \mathcal{O}_{E^p} \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_{E_0}} \mathcal{O}_{E_{0,(v)}}$, where E^p is the maximal field extension of E' that is unramified at all primes dividing p. It follows from essentially the same argument as in [Kis17, E. 6]. By [MP19, A.3.5 and A.3.6], we have that, for any rational prime $l \neq p$ and any neat open compact subgroup $K^{p,l}_{\Phi_0} \subset P_{\Phi_0}(\mathbb{A}^{p,l}_f)$, $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0,p}K^{p,l}_{\Phi_0}}$ has the extension property. Part 3 will follow from [Lov17, Lem 2.1.5 and Lem. 2.1.4] and Lemma 4.25, if we show that the quotient of $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0,p}K^{p,l}_{\Phi_0},\mathcal{O}^p}$ by $\Delta_{K^{\beta,l}}$ factors through a finite group, where

$$\Delta_{K^{\beta,l}} := \ker(\mathscr{A}(P_0) \to \mathscr{A}(ZP_\Phi)/K^{\beta,l}),$$

$K^{\beta,l} := ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f) \cap {}^{\gamma_\beta g_\beta g_\alpha} K^l$ and $K^l = K_p K^{l,p}$ for some neat compact open $K^{l,p} \subset G(\mathbb{A}_f^{p,l})$.

Write $\mathscr{A}(P_0)$ as $P_0(\mathbb{A}_f) \cdot \mathscr{A}^\circ(P_0)$ and $\mathscr{A}(ZP_\Phi)$ as $ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f) \cdot \mathscr{A}^\circ(ZP_\Phi)$. Since

$$\ker(P_0(\mathbb{Q})^-_+ \backslash P_0(\mathbb{A}_f)/K_{\Phi_0,p} K^{p,l}_{\Phi_0} \to ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})^-_+ \backslash ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}_f)/K^{\beta,l})$$

is finite (since the kernel of $P_0 \to ZP_\Phi$ is finite by construction, one can see this by decomposing to l- and away-from-l places), and by Lemma 4.5, the quotient of $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0,p} K^{p,l}_{\Phi_0}, \mathcal{O}^p}$ by $\Delta_{K^{\beta,l}}$ indeed factors through a finite group. □

Construction 4.31. By Proposition 4.30, $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$ is an $\mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$-torsor. Let Σ be an admissible cone decomposition and $\sigma \in \Sigma(\Phi)$ such that $\sigma^\circ \subset \mathbf{P}^+_\Phi$. It makes sense to define

$$\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}(\Sigma) := \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi} \times^{\mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}} \mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}(\Sigma),$$

where $\mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}(\Sigma)$ is the affine torus embedding of $\mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$ defined by $\Sigma^+(\Phi)$,

$$\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}(\sigma) := \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi} \times^{\mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}} \mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}(\sigma),$$

and the σ-stratum of $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}(\sigma)$:

$$\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi,\sigma} := \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi} \times^{\mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}} \mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi,\sigma}.$$

Note that there is a canonical projection from $\mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$ to $\mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi,\sigma}$. □

Finally, let us explicitly check the following statement:

Proposition 4.32. *With the assumptions and constructions above, the isomorphism* $\mathrm{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)],K} \cong \Delta^{ZP,\circ}_{\Phi,K} \backslash \mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi,\sigma}$ *extends to*

$$\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)],K} \cong \Delta^{ZP,\circ}_{\Phi,K} \backslash \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi,\sigma}. \tag{4.20}$$

Moreover, this isomorphism extends to an isomorphism

$$(\mathcal{S}^\Sigma_K)^\wedge_{\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)],K}} \cong \Delta^{ZP,\circ}_{\Phi,K} \backslash (\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}(\sigma))^\wedge_{\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi,\sigma}}. \tag{4.21}$$

Since we assume that K is neat, the quotients of $\Delta^{ZP,\circ}_{\Phi,K}$ in the right-hand sides of (4.20) and (4.21) are isomorphic to $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi,\sigma}$ and $(\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}(\sigma))^\wedge_{\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi,\sigma}}$, respectively.

Proof. The last sentence follows from Proposition 4.30(2). Write the RHS of (4.20) as $\Delta^{ZP}_{\Phi,K} \backslash \Delta^{ZP}_{\Phi,K} \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi,\sigma} \cong G(\mathbb{Q})_+ \backslash G(\mathbb{Q})_+ \times^{\widetilde{\Delta}^{ZP}_{\Phi,K} \cap G(\mathbb{Q})_+} \Delta^{ZP}_{\Phi,K} \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi,\sigma} \cong G(\mathbb{Q})_+ \backslash G(\mathbb{Q})_+ \times^{\widetilde{\Delta}^{ZP,\circ}_{\Phi,K} \cap G(\mathbb{Q})_+} \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi,\sigma}$. We write the last

term as $G(\mathbb{Q})_+\backslash G(\mathbb{Q})_+\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi,\sigma}$. From the construction of $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
&G(\mathbb{Q})_+\backslash G(\mathbb{Q})_+\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi,\sigma}\\
&\cong G(\mathbb{Q})_+\backslash G(\mathbb{Q})_+ \times^{\widetilde{\Delta}^{ZP}_{\Phi,K}\cap G(\mathbb{Q})_+} \coprod_{\beta\in I_\Phi}\coprod_{[\sigma_\beta]\in[\sigma]_{ZP}} \gamma_\beta\cdot\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_\beta},\sigma_\beta}/\Delta_{K^\beta}(P_0,ZP_\Phi)\\
&\cong \coprod_{\overline{\beta}\in J_\Phi}\coprod_{[\sigma_{\beta'}]\in[\sigma]_{ZP}} G(\mathbb{Q})_+\backslash G(\mathbb{Q})_+\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}},\sigma_{\beta'}}\\
&\cong \coprod_{\alpha\in I_{G/G_0}}\coprod_{\pi(g_0^\alpha)\alpha\sim g^b}\coprod_{[\sigma_0^\alpha]\in[\sigma]_{ZP}} G(\mathbb{Q})_+\backslash G(\mathbb{Q})_+\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0^\alpha},\sigma_0^\alpha}\\
&\cong \coprod_{\alpha\in I_{G/G_0}}\coprod_{\pi(g_0^\alpha)\alpha\sim g^b}\coprod_{[\sigma_0^\alpha]\in[\sigma]_{ZP}} \Delta_{g_0^\alpha g_\alpha K}(P_0,G)\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0^\alpha},\sigma_0^\alpha}/\Delta_{g_0^\alpha g_\alpha K}(P_0,G)\\
&\cong \coprod_{\alpha\in I_{G/G_0}}\coprod_{\pi(g_0^\alpha)\alpha\sim g^b}\coprod_{[\sigma_0^\alpha]\in[\sigma]_{ZP}} (\Delta_{\alpha K}(G_0,G)\mathcal{Z}_{[(\Phi_0^\alpha,\sigma_0^\alpha)],K_0^\alpha})/\Delta_{\alpha K}(G_0,G)\\
&\cong \text{LHS}.
\end{aligned}$$

In the equations above, we write $\Phi_{\beta'}=\gamma_\beta\cdot\Phi_\beta$ and $\sigma_{\beta'}:=\gamma_\beta\cdot\sigma_\beta$. Write $G(\mathbb{Q})_+\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}},\sigma_{\beta'}}:=G(\mathbb{Q})_+\times^{\Delta_{K^\beta}(P_0,G)}\Delta_{K^\beta}(P_0,G)\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}},\sigma_{\beta'}}$, where $\Delta_{K^\beta}(P_0,G):=\ker(\mathscr{A}(P_0)\times^{P_0^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})^+}Q_0^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})^+\to\mathscr{A}(G)/^{\gamma_\beta g_\beta g_\alpha}K)$ (see the beginning of §4.2.7 for the definition of $Q_0^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})^+$). Similarly, we write $G(\mathbb{Q})_+\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0^\alpha},\sigma_0^\alpha}:=G(\mathbb{Q})_+\times^{\Delta_{g_0^\alpha g_\alpha K}(P_0,G)}\Delta_{g_0^\alpha g_\alpha K}(P_0,G)\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0^\alpha},\sigma_0^\alpha}$, where $\Delta_{g_0^\alpha g_\alpha K}(P_0,G):=\ker(\mathscr{A}(P_0)\times^{P_0^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})^+}Q_0^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})^+\to\mathscr{A}(G)/^{g_0^\alpha g_\alpha}K)$.

Let us explain the equations above: The second line comes from the definition. Any $(p,\gamma^{-1})\in\Delta_{K^\beta}(P_0,ZP_\Phi)$ is determined by the element γ that is liftable to $ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})_+/Z(\mathbb{Q})$ and to $\gamma^*\in ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})_+$. Then $\Delta_{K^\beta}(P_0,ZP_\Phi)\subset\Delta_{K^\beta}(P_0,G)$. We see the third line is isomorphic to

$$\coprod_{\overline{\beta}\in J_\Phi}\coprod_{[\sigma_{\beta'}]\in[\sigma]_{ZP}} G(\mathbb{Q})_+\backslash G(\mathbb{Q})_+(\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}},\sigma_{\beta'}}/\Delta_{K^\beta}(P_0,ZP_\Phi)).$$

Moreover, the stabilizer in $\widetilde{\Delta}^{ZP}_{\Phi,K}\cap G(\mathbb{Q})_+$ of an element in J_Φ is isomorphic to $\mathrm{Stab}_{G(\mathbb{Q})_+}(D_{\Phi_\beta})\cap\pi(P_0(\mathbb{A}_f))^{\gamma_\beta g_\beta g_\alpha}K$; the image of $\Delta_{K^\beta}(P_0,G)$, viewed as elements in $(p,\gamma)\in P_0(\mathbb{A}_f)\times G(\mathbb{Q})_+$, is surjective to this stabilizer. Hence, we have the isomorphism from the second line to the third line. The fourth line comes from the discussion in Lemma 4.18, and the fifth line is the definition. The isomorphism from the fifth line to the sixth line follows from the fact that $\Delta_{\Phi_0^\alpha,K_0^\alpha}$ maps to $\Delta_{g_0^\alpha g_\alpha K}(P_0,G)$ and the fact that $\Delta_{g_0^\alpha g_\alpha K}(P_0,G)$ is contained in $\Delta_{\alpha K}(G_0,G)$ via the map sending (h,γ) to $((g_0^\alpha)^{-1}hg_0^\alpha,\gamma)$; in addition, an element $((g_0^\alpha)^{-1}hg_0^\alpha,\gamma)\in\Delta_{\alpha K}(G_0,G)$ stabilizes $\mathcal{Z}_{[(\Phi_0^\alpha,\sigma_0^\alpha)]}$ if and only if it is in the image of $\Delta^\circ_{g_0^\alpha g_\alpha K}(P_0,G)=\Delta_{g_0^\alpha g_\alpha K}(P_0,ZP_\Phi)\subset\Delta_{g_0^\alpha g_\alpha K}(P_0,G)$.

Let us show the second isomorphism. Note that we have similar isomorphisms as above if we replace closed strata with the corresponding twisted affine torus embeddings. Hence, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
&\text{RHS}\\
&\cong \coprod_{\alpha\in I_{G/G_0}}\coprod_{\pi(g_0^\alpha)\alpha\sim g^b}\coprod_{[\sigma_0^\alpha]\in[\sigma]_{ZP}} (\Delta_{\alpha K}(G_0,G)(\mathcal{S}_{K_0^\alpha}(\sigma_0^\alpha))^\wedge_{\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0^\alpha},\sigma_0^\alpha}})/\Delta_{\alpha K}(G_0,G)\\
&\cong \coprod_{\alpha\in I_{G/G_0}}\coprod_{\pi(g_0^\alpha)\alpha\sim g^b}\coprod_{[\sigma_0^\alpha]\in[\sigma]_{ZP}} (\Delta_{\alpha K}(G_0,G)(\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma_0^\alpha}_{K_0^\alpha})^\wedge_{\mathcal{Z}_{[(\Phi_0^\alpha,\sigma_0^\alpha)],K_0^\alpha}})/\Delta_{\alpha K}(G_0,G)\\
&\cong \text{LHS}.
\end{aligned}$$

The third line to the last line requires that the actions of $\Delta_{\alpha_K}(G_0, G)$ on boundaries and on the compactification exist and are compatible, which follows from Lemma 4.10 and [MP19, Lem. A.3.4]. □

4.2.8. Assume that we are in Case (STB$_n$) or (HS). From $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi}(G, X_b)$, we can switch it to $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^a_\Phi} := \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^a_\Phi}(G, X_a)$ by multiplying the Galois action induced by c.

Construction 4.33. Let $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_{\Phi,p},\mathcal{O}'^{,ur}_{(v)}} := \varprojlim_{\widetilde{K}^p_\Phi \text{ neat open compact}} \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi,\mathcal{O}'^{,ur}_{(v)}}$. Similarly, define $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}_{\Phi,p},\mathcal{O}'^{,ur}_{(v)}}$ and $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_{\Phi,h,p},\mathcal{O}'^{,ur}_{(v)}}$.

Recall that $Z := Z_G$. Let c be the homomorphism $c : \mathbb{S} \to Z_{\mathbb{R}}$ defined as in §1.4.3. Then $(Z, \{c\})$ is a 0-dimensional Shimura datum. Let $r_{E',K_{Z,p}K^p_Z}(Z, \{c\})$ be the homomorphism $\mathrm{Gal}(\overline{E}'/E') \to \mathrm{Gal}(E'^{,ab}/E') \to Z(\mathbb{Q})\backslash Z(\mathbb{A}_f)/K_{Z,p}K^p_Z$ defined as in §1.1.2 describing the action of $\mathrm{Gal}(\overline{E}'/E')$ on $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{Z,p}K^p_Z,\overline{\mathbb{Q}}} \cong \pi_0(\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{Z,p}K^p_Z,\overline{\mathbb{Q}}}) \cong Z(\mathbb{Q})\backslash Z(\mathbb{A}_f)/K_{Z,p}K^p_Z$. Here we can take $K_{Z,p}$ as $K_p \cap Z(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ and take $K^p_Z \subset K^p \cap Z(\mathbb{A}^p_f)$. By Proposition 4.24, the left action of $Z(\mathbb{A}_f)$ on $\mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$ extends to an action on $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$, and $Z(\mathbb{Q})K_{Z,p}K^p_Z$ is in the kernel of this action since it is so over the generic fiber.

Then we can define a new Galois action as follows: Let $r_b : \mathrm{Gal}(E'^{,ab}/E') \times \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_{\Phi,p},\mathcal{O}'^{,ur}_{(v)}} \to \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_{\Phi,p},\mathcal{O}'^{,ur}_{(v)}}$ be the action of $\mathrm{Gal}(E'^{,ab}/E')$ on $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_{\Phi,p},\mathcal{O}'^{,ur}_{(v)}}$ which determines the descent datum of $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_{\Phi,p},\mathcal{O}'^{,ur}_{(v)}}$ from $\mathcal{O}'^{,ur}_{(v)}$ to $\mathcal{O}'_{(v)}$. Define $r_a : \mathrm{Gal}(E'^{,ab}/E') \times \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_{\Phi,p},\mathcal{O}'^{,ur}_{(v)}} \to \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_{\Phi,p},\mathcal{O}'^{,ur}_{(v)}}$ by sending each $\sigma \in \mathrm{Gal}(E'^{,ab}/E')$ to $r_a(\sigma) := r_{E',K_{Z,p}K^p_Z}(Z, \{c\})(\sigma) \circ r_b(\sigma) = r_b(\sigma) \circ r_{E',K_{Z,p}K^p_Z}(Z, \{c\})(\sigma)$. We can exchange the order since the left action of $Z(\mathbb{A}_f)$ is defined over $\mathcal{O}'_{(v)}$. Note that the descent datum factors through $\mathrm{Gal}(E^p/E')$ since the intersection of n quasi-parahoric subgroups in $G(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ still contains the parahoric subgroup of $Z(\mathbb{Q}_p)$.

The tower induced by the new descent datum determined by r_a is a model of $\mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}^a_{\Phi,p}} := \mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}^a_{\Phi,p}}(G, X_a)$ over $\mathcal{O}'_{(v)}$, we denote it by $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^a_{\Phi,p}}$ or $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^a_{\Phi,p}}(G, X_a)$. Similarly, we define the towers of $\mathcal{O}'_{(v)}$-schemes $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^a_{\Phi,p}}$ and $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^a_{\Phi,p},h}$ which are models of $\overline{\mathrm{Sh}}_{\widetilde{K}^a_{\Phi,p}}$ and $\mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}^a_{\Phi,p},h}$, respectively.

By étale descent of morphisms and since the schemes involved are normal and separated, we see that for any neat open compact $K^p \subset G(\mathbb{A}^p_f)$, there is also a tower of $\mathcal{O}'_{(v)}$-schemes $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^a_\Phi} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^a_\Phi} \to \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^a_\Phi,h}$. Also from étale descent, we know that this tower also satisfies Proposition 4.30 and Proposition 4.24. □

Remark 4.34. *It is possible to write the tower $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^i_{\Phi,p},\mathcal{O}'^{,ur}_{(v)}}$ in a similar form as* [KP18, Cor. 4.6.15]*, for $i = a, b$ and for every Φ. However, the complexity will increase when one wants to study the relation between the compactifications and the boundaries with this method. This partially explains why we chose to use a different strategy here to study compactifications.*

4.3. Main theorem on toroidal compactifications.

4.3.1. For the rest of this section, let us complete the main constructions.

Let us fix an open compact subgroup $K_{2,p} \subset G_2(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ and a neat open compact subgroup K^p_2 of $G_2(\mathbb{A}^p_f)$. Let Σ_2 be an admissible rational polyhedral cone decomposition of (G_2, X_2). By Proposition 1.35, Corollary 1.37 and Proposition 1.47, there is a neat open compact subgroup $K = K_pK^p$ of $G(\mathbb{A}_f)$ such that, $K_p \cap G_2(\mathbb{Q}_p) = K_{2,p}$, and such that $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_2} \to \mathrm{Sh}_K$ is an open and closed embedding; moreover, there is a refinement Σ'_2 of Σ_2 and a ZP-invariant admissible cone decomposition Σ associated with (G, X_a, K) and (G, X_b, K), such that Σ'_2 is induced by Σ, and such that the morphisms between toroidal compactifications, boundary mixed Shimura varieties and boundary strata from the ones associated with (G_2, X_2, K_2) to those associated with (G, X_a, K) are

all open and closed embeddings. For different cases (HS), (STB_n) and (DL), we choose (G_0, X_0), (G, X), g_α, $K = K_p K^p$, $(G^\ddagger, X^\ddagger)$, $K_0^\alpha = K_{0,p}^\alpha K_0^{\alpha,p}$, $K^{\ddagger,\alpha} = K_p^{\ddagger,\alpha} K^{\ddagger,\alpha,p}$, etc., according to the discussion at the beginning of §4.2. By Proposition 1.47, Σ can be and will be chosen such that Σ also induces Σ_0^α by pulling back under $\pi^b(g_\alpha)$, and such that good toroidal compactifications $\mathcal{S}_{K_0^\alpha}^{\Sigma_0^\alpha}$ associated with $(G_0, X_0, K_0^\alpha, \Sigma_0^\alpha)$ satisfying [MP19, Thm. 4.1.5] can be constructed.

Let us construct integral models of toroidal compactifications of (G, X_a) and (G_2, X_2).

Construction 4.35. Let Σ and Σ_0^α be cone decompositions chosen as mentioned in Construction 4.16 and at the beginning of §4.3.1. Let Φ_2 be a cusp label representative of (G_2, X_2) that maps to $\Phi \in \mathcal{CLR}(G, X_a)$ under π^a. By §1.4, we can view Φ as a cusp label representative of (G, X_b) in $\mathcal{CLR}(G, X_b)$.

Let us first treat cases (HS) and (STB_n).

We construct $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^a} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^a} \to \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^a,h}$ as in Construction 4.33. Since $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^a} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^a}$ is an $\mathbf{E}_{K_\Phi}$-torsor, we define $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^a}(\Sigma)$, $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^a}(\sigma)$ and $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^a,\sigma}$ as before. More precisely, let Σ be an admissible cone decomposition and $\sigma \in \Sigma(\Phi)$ such that $\sigma^\circ \subset \mathbf{P}_\Phi^+$. Define

$$\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^a}(\Sigma) := \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^a} \times^{\mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}} \mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}(\Sigma),$$

where $\mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}(\Sigma)$ is the affine torus embedding of $\mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$ defined by $\Sigma^+(\Phi)$,

$$\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^a}(\sigma) := \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^a} \times^{\mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}} \mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}(\sigma),$$

and the σ-stratum of $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^a}(\sigma)$:

$$\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^a,\sigma} := \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^a} \times^{\mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}} \mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi,\sigma}.$$

Let $\sigma_2 \in \Sigma_2'(\Phi_2)$ be the cone such that σ_2° maps to σ°. Let $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2}}(\sigma_2)$ be the normalization of $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^a}(\sigma)$ in $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_2}}(\sigma_2)$ via the composition of morphisms $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_2}}(\sigma_2) \to \mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^a}(\sigma) \hookrightarrow \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^a}(\sigma)$. We define $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2},\sigma_2}$, $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_2}}$ and $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2},h}$ similarly. Hence, this construction induces towers of schemes $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2}}(\sigma_2) \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_2}} \to \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2},h}$, and $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2},\sigma_2} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_2}} \to \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2},h}$. □

For all the cases, we can continue with the following construction:

Construction 4.36. Let $K_{2,p}$ be an open compact subgroup contained in $K_{2,p}' \subset G_2(\mathbb{Q}_p)$, where $K_{2,p}'$ is an intersection of n Bruhat-Tits stabilizer subgroups. Then $K_{2,p}'$ is contained in $K_p' \subset G(\mathbb{Q}_p)$, where K_p' is an intersection of n Bruhat-Tits stabilizer subgroups of $G(\mathbb{Q}_p)$. Set $K_2 := K_{2,p} K_2^p$ and $K' := K_p' K'^{,p}$ where $K_2^p \subset K'^{,p}$ are neat open compact.

(1) Let $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2}}$ (resp. $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_2}}$, and resp. $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2,h}}$) be the normalization of $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi'^{,a}}$ (resp. $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi'^{,a}}$ and resp. $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi'^{,a},h}$) in $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_2}}$ (resp. $\overline{\mathrm{Sh}}_{K_{\Phi_2}}$, and resp. $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_2,h}}$).

(2) Let $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^a}$ (resp. $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^a}$ and resp. $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^a,h}$) for (DL) be the normalization of $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi'^{,a}}$ (resp. $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi'^{,a}}$ and resp. $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi'^{,a},h}$) in (HS) or ($\mathrm{STB}_n$) case in $\mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^a}$ (resp. $\overline{\mathrm{Sh}}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^a}$ and resp. $\mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^a,h}$).

(3) Recall that F_{K_Z} is a number field such that every geometrically connected component of Sh_{K_Z} is defined over F_{K_Z}, where K_Z is an open compact subgroup of $Z(\mathbb{A}_f)$ contained in K and $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_Z} := \mathrm{Sh}_{K_Z}(Z, \{c\})$ (see §1.4.3). We denote $E'_{K_Z} := E' \cdot F_{K_Z}$ and choose F_{K_Z} such that E'_{K_Z}/E' is finite and Galois. Note that E'_{K_Z} can not be chosen to be unramified over E' at p in general. We can still find a F_{K_Z} so that E'_{K_Z} is unramified over E' at p if K_p contains the parahoric subgroup of $Z(\mathbb{Q}_p)$. Let $\mathcal{O}_{K_Z} := \mathcal{O}_{E'_{K_Z}} \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_{E'}} \mathcal{O}'_{(v)}$. Let $\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma_2'}_{K_2,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ be the normalization of $\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma}_{K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ in $\mathrm{Sh}^{\Sigma_2'}_{K_2,E'_{K_Z}}$ via the composition of morphisms $\mathrm{Sh}^{\Sigma_2'}_{K_2,E'_{K_Z}} \to \mathrm{Sh}^{\Sigma}_{K}(G, X_a)_{E'_{K_Z}} \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathrm{Sh}^{\Sigma}_{K}(G, X_b)_{E'_{K_Z}} \hookrightarrow \mathcal{S}^{\Sigma}_{K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$, where the last subscript $\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}$

denotes the normalized base change (i.e., the normalization of the base change) of $\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma}_{K}$ from $\mathcal{O}'_{(v)}$ to $\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}$. The middle isomorphism is from Corollary 1.44. Then $\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma'_2}_{K_2,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ is a normal algebraic space that is proper and flat over $\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}$ and is representable by a projective scheme if Σ is projective. Define $\mathcal{Z}_{[(\Phi_2,\sigma_2)],K_2,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ to be the normalization of the normalized base change $\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)],K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ in $\mathrm{Z}_{[(\Phi_2,\sigma_2)],K_2,E'_{K_Z}}$ via the composition of morphisms $\mathrm{Z}_{[(\Phi_2,\sigma_2)],K_2,E'_{K_Z}} \to \mathrm{Z}_{[ZP^a(\Phi,\sigma)],K,E'_{K_Z}} \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathrm{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)],K,E'_{K_Z}} \hookrightarrow \mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)],K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$. The middle isomorphism is also obtained from Corollary 1.44. Let $\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^a(\Phi,\sigma)],K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ be the normalization of $\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)],K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ in $\mathrm{Z}_{[ZP^a(\Phi,\sigma)],K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$, which is isomorphic to $\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)],K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$.

Convention 4.37. *Let X be a normal algebraic space over $\mathcal{O}'_{(v)}$. The symbol $X_{\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ always denotes the normalized base change of X from $\mathcal{O}'_{(v)}$ to $\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}$; these are the usual base changes if we can choose F_{K_Z} such that E'_{K_Z} is unramified over E' at p.*

Lemma 4.38. *With the construction above, if $\Phi_2 \xrightarrow{(\gamma,q)_{K_2}} \Phi'_2$ for $\Phi_2, \Phi'_2 \in \mathcal{CLR}(G_2, X_2)$, $\gamma \in G_2(\mathbb{Q})$ and $q \in G_2(\mathbb{A}_f)$, we obtain an isomorphism $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2}}(P_{\Phi_2}, D_{\Phi_2}) \to \mathcal{S}_{K'_{\Phi_2}}(P_{\Phi'_2}, D_{\Phi'_2})$ extending the one over the generic fiber (see* [MP19, 2.1.15]*). In particular, Δ_{Φ_2,K_2} acts equivariantly on the tower $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2}} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_2}} \to \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2},h}$, and the action of $\Delta^{\circ}_{\Phi_2,K_2}$ factors through a finite quotient.*

Proof. Combine Proposition 4.24, the construction above, and the following commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Phi_2 & \xrightarrow{(\gamma,q)_{K_2}} & \Phi'_2 \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \pi^a} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \pi^a} \\ \pi^a_*(\Phi_2) & \xrightarrow{(\gamma,q)_{K}} & \pi^a_*(\Phi'_2). \end{array}$$

The last claim is true since one can check this over the generic fiber and $\Delta^{\circ}_{\Phi_2,K_2}$ acts on the tower $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_2}} \to \overline{\mathrm{Sh}}_{K_{\Phi_2}} \to \mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_2},h}$ through a finite group. □

Let us state the main theorem of this paper.

Theorem 4.39. *The triple $(G_2, X_2, K_{2,p})$ can be regarded as one of the Cases (HS), (STB_n) and (DL) in §4.2 by fixing some $K'_{2,p}$ containing $K_{2,p}$, where $K'_{2,p}$ is a hyperspecial subgroup or an intersection of n Bruhat-Tits stabilizer subgroups containing $K_{2,p}$ as in Construction 4.36. Let K^p_2 be a neat open compact subgroup of $G_2(\mathbb{A}^p_f)$ and write $K_2 := K_{2,p}K^p_2$. Let Σ_2 be an admissible cone decomposition of (G_2, X_2, K_2). There is an admissible cone decomposition Σ'_2 refining Σ_2, which can be chosen to be smooth, projective, or both smooth and projective. Let $\mathcal{O}_2$ be $\mathcal{O}_{E_2,(v_2)}$ in Case (HS) and its deep-level case, and let $\mathcal{O}_2$ be $\mathcal{O}_{E_2,v_2}$ in Case (STB_n) and its deep-level case. With the constructions above, we have the following statements:*

(4.39.1) There is an integral model $\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma'_2}_{K_2}$ over $\mathcal{O}_2$ extending $\mathrm{Sh}^{\Sigma'_2}_{K_2}$ which is a normal algebraic space that is proper and flat over $\mathcal{O}_2$. For a suitable refinement Σ'_2, $\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma'_2}_{K_2}$ is representable by a normal scheme that is projective over $\mathcal{O}_2$.

(4.39.2) The compactification $\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma'_2}_{K_2}$ has a good stratification

$$\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma'_2}_{K_2} = \coprod_{\Upsilon_2 \in \mathrm{Cusp}_{K_2}(G_2,X_2,\Sigma'_2)} \mathcal{Z}_{\Upsilon_2,K_2}$$

such that each stratum $\mathcal{Z}_{\Upsilon_2,K_2}$ is a locally closed normal subscheme labeled by an $\Upsilon_2 = [(\Phi_2, \sigma_2)]$, which is flat over $\mathcal{O}_2$. Recall that there is a partial order "$\preceq$" on $\mathrm{Cusp}_{K_2}(G_2, X_2, \Sigma'_2)$ (see [MP19, 2.1.18] *and §1.3.3). The closure $\overline{\mathcal{Z}}_{\Upsilon_2,K_2}$ of $\mathcal{Z}_{\Upsilon_2,K_2}$ in $\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma'_2}_{K_2}$ satisfies $\overline{\mathcal{Z}}_{\Upsilon_2,K_2} =$*

$\coprod_{\Upsilon'_2 \preceq \Upsilon_2} \mathcal{Z}_{\Upsilon'_2,K_2}$. *In particular, there is a natural open embedding* $J^{\Sigma'_2} : \mathcal{S}_{K_2} \hookrightarrow \mathcal{S}^{\Sigma'_2}_{K_2}$ *making* $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}$ *an open dense subscheme of* $\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma'_2}_{K_2}$.

(4.39.3) *For each cusp label representative* Φ_2 *of* (G_2, X_2), *the scheme* $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2}}$ *is a normal scheme that is flat over* $\mathcal{O}_2$ *whose generic fiber is* $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_2},\mathcal{O}_2\otimes\mathbb{Q}}$. *There is a tower of normal* $\mathcal{O}_2$*-schemes*

$$\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2}} \xrightarrow{\mathbf{p}_1} \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_2}} \xrightarrow{\mathbf{p}_2} \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2},h}. \tag{4.22}$$

The first morphism $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2}} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_2}}$ *represents an* $\mathbf{E}_{K_{\Phi_2}}$*-torsor and the second morphism is proper. In particular, since* $\mathbf{p}_1$ *is an* $\mathbf{E}_{K_{\Phi_2}}$*-torsor, we can construct* $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2}}(\sigma_2)$ *as the twisted affine torus embedding of* $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2}}$ *over* $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_2}}$ *with respect to the affine torus embedding* $\mathbf{E}_{K_{\Phi_2}} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{E}_{K_{\Phi_2}}(\sigma_2)$, *and we can construct* $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2},\sigma_2}$ *as the* σ_2*-stratum of* $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2}}(\sigma_2)$. *Also, it makes sense to define* $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2}}(\Sigma'_2)$.

Moreover, let $\mathcal{S}^*_{K_{\Phi_2}}$ *(resp.* $\overline{\mathcal{S}}^*_{K_{\Phi_2}}$ *and resp.* $\mathcal{S}^*_{K_{\Phi_2},h}$*) be the quotient of* $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2}}$ *(resp.* $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_2}}$ *and resp.* $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2},h}$*) by* $\Delta^\circ_{\Phi_2,K_2}$. *Then* $\mathcal{S}^*_{K_{\Phi_2}} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}^*_{K_{\Phi_2}}$ *is also a torsor under a split torus.*

(4.39.4) *For any cusp label representative* Φ_2 *of* (G_2, X_2), *the group* $\Delta^\circ_{\Phi_2,K_2}$ *acts on* $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2},\sigma_2}$ *and* $\mathcal{S}_{K_\Phi}(\sigma_2)$ *through a finite quotient. We have an isomorphism* $\Delta^\circ_{\Phi_2,K_2}\backslash\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2},\sigma_2} \cong \mathcal{Z}_{[(\Phi_2,\sigma_2)],K_2}$, *where* $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2},\sigma_2} \hookrightarrow \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2}}(\sigma_2)$ *is the closed stratum of* σ_2. *The scheme* $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2}}(\sigma_2)$ *has a natural stratification defined by the cone decomposition* $\Sigma'_2(\Phi_2)$.

We have a strata-preserving isomorphism

$$\Delta^\circ_{\Phi_2,K_2}\backslash(\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2}}(\sigma_2))^\wedge_{\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2},\sigma_2}} \cong (\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma'_2}_{K_2})^\wedge_{\mathcal{Z}_{[(\Phi_2,\sigma_2)],K_2}}.$$

Moreover, let $\mathcal{S}^*_{K_{\Phi_2}}(\sigma_2)$ *(resp.* $\mathcal{S}^*_{K_{\Phi_2},\sigma_2}$*) be the quotient of* $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2}}(\sigma_2)$ *(resp.* $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2,\sigma_2}}$*) by* $\Delta^\circ_{\Phi_2,K_2}$. *We have a strata-preserving isomorphism*

$$\Delta^\circ_{\Phi_2,K_2}\backslash(\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2}}(\sigma_2))^\wedge_{\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2},\sigma_2}} \cong (\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma'_2}_{K_2})^\wedge_{\mathcal{Z}_{[(\Phi_2,\sigma_2)],K_2}} \cong (\mathcal{S}^*_{K_{\Phi_2}}(\sigma_2))^\wedge_{\mathcal{S}^*_{K_{\Phi_2},\sigma_2}}.$$

Here, "strata-preserving" has the following meaning: For any affine open formal subscheme $\mathrm{Spf}(A, I)$ *of* $(\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma'_2}_{K_2})^\wedge_{\mathcal{Z}_{[(\Phi_2,\sigma_2)],K_2}}$ *which canonically induces morphisms* $\mathsf{c}_1 : \mathrm{Spec}\, A \to \mathcal{S}^*_{K_{\Phi_2}}(\sigma_2)$ *and* $\mathsf{c}_2 : \mathrm{Spec}\, A \to \mathcal{S}^{\Sigma'_2}_{K_2}$, *the two stratifications on* $\mathrm{Spec}\, A$ *defined by the pullback of the stratification on* $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2}}(\sigma_2)$ *under* c_1 *and the pullback of the stratification on* $\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma'_2}_{K_2}$ *under* c_2 *coincide.*

(4.39.5) *In Case (HS), each*

$$\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2},p} := \varprojlim_{K^p_{\Phi_2}\ \text{neat open compact}} \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2},pK^p_{\Phi_2}}$$

is an inverse limit of schemes that are smooth over $\mathcal{O}_2$ *and has the extension property. In particular, the tower* $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2},p}$ *does not depend on the choices made at the beginning of §4.3.1.*

Remark 4.40.

- *Our construction works for any choice of* (G_0, X_0) *that satisfies Condition (3) in* [KP18, Lem. 4.6.22]*; therefore, if, for some* (G_2, X_2), *one can choose a* (G_0, X_0) *such that* $E_0 \subset E_2$, *then* $E' = E_2$, *and* $\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma'_2}_{K_2}$ *and* $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2}}$ *in the theorem are automatically defined over* $\mathrm{Spec}\, \mathcal{O}_{E_2,(v_2)}$.
- *The group* $\Delta^\circ_{\Phi_2,K_2}$ *and the action of it on* $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2}}$ *are not trivial for a general abelian-type Shimura datum* (G_2, X_2) *and a general* K_2. *Our result (4.39.3) shows that both* $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2}}$ *and*

$\mathcal{S}^*_{K_{\Phi_2}}$ *are torsors under split tori. Note that instead of* $\{\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2}}(\sigma_2)\}$, $\{\mathcal{S}^*_{K_{\Phi_2}}(\sigma_2)\}$ *is the collection of affine toric schemes attached to the toroidal embedding* $\mathcal{S}_{K_2} \hookrightarrow \mathcal{S}^{\Sigma'_2}_{K_2}$ *in the sense of* [KKMSD73, p.54, Def. 1].

- *One can also formulate and prove a refinement of (4.39.4) similar to* [LS18a, Prop. 2.1.3]. *Note that this refined assertion was used in* [LS18a] *and* [Mao25b] *to study the well-positionedness of some subschemes on compactifications of integral models of PEL- and Hodge-type Shimura varieties.*

Proof of Theorem 4.39: first reductions. It suffices to show all of the statements above over $\mathcal{O}'_{(v)}$. The statement (4.39.2) will be shown along the way in the proof of (4.39.1) and (4.39.4) (see below). For (4.39.3), it suffices to show that $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2}} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_2}}$ and $\mathcal{S}^*_{K_{\Phi_2}} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}^*_{K_{\Phi_2}}$ are torsors under $\mathbf{E}_{K_{\Phi_2}}$ and $\mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_{\Phi_2}}$, respectively; other claims in it follow from Construction 4.35, 4.36 and Lemma 4.38. □

4.3.2. *Proof of (4.39.3).* §4.3.2 and §4.3.3 are devoted to the proof of (4.39.3).

First, we need the following preparation.

Lemma 4.41 (cf. [MP19, Lem. 3.7.2] and [Lan16, Prop. 8.7])**.** *Let* $K_{0,p}$ *be an open compact subgroup contained in some intersection* $K'_{0,p} \subset G_0(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ *of* n *Bruhat-Tits stabilizer subgroups. Let* K_0^p *be a neat open compact subgroup in* $G_0(\mathbb{A}_f^p)$. *Let* $K_0 := K_{0,p}K_0^p$ *and* $K'_0 := K'_{0,p}K_0^p$. *Let* Φ_0 *be a cusp label representative of* (G_0, X_0) *mapping to* $\Phi^\ddagger \in \mathcal{CLR}(G^\ddagger, X^\ddagger)$. *Let* K_{Φ_0} *(resp.* K'_{Φ_0}*) be the intersection* ${}^{g_{\Phi_0}}K_0 \cap P_{\Phi_0}(\mathbb{A}_f)$ *(resp.* ${}^{g_{\Phi_0}}K'_0 \cap P_{\Phi_0}(\mathbb{A}_f)$*). As before, suppose that* $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0}}$ *is constructed from the relative normalization of* $\mathcal{S}_{K'_{\Phi_0}}$ *in* $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_0}}$, *and that* $\mathcal{S}_{K'_{\Phi_0}}$ *is constructed by choosing* $K_p^\ddagger \subset G^\ddagger(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ *and a Hodge embedding as in* (STB_n), *and by taking the relative normalization of* $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi^\ddagger}}$ *in* $\mathrm{Sh}_{K'_{\Phi_0}}$. *Then there is a finite flat cover* U *of* $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K'_{\Phi_0}}$ *and an* $\mathbf{E}_{K_{\Phi_0}}$*-torsor* $\mathcal{S}$ *over* U, *such that the pullback of the torsor* $\mathcal{S} \to U$ *to* $U' := U \times_{\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K'_{\Phi_0}}} \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_0}}$ *is isomorphic to the pullback of the torsor* $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0}} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_0}}$ *to the finite flat cover* U' *of the target.*

Proof. We combine [MP19, Lem. 3.7.2] with [MP19, Thm. 4.1.5]. Choose some neat open compact $K^{\ddagger,\prime} := K_p^{\ddagger,\prime}K^{\ddagger,\prime,p} \subset K^\ddagger$ containing K_0 such that $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_0}} \to \mathrm{Sh}_{K'_{\Phi^\ddagger}}$ is a closed embedding, where $K'_{\Phi^\ddagger} := P_{\Phi^\ddagger}(\mathbb{A}_f) \cap {}^{g_{\Phi^\ddagger}}K^{\ddagger,\prime}$. This can be achieved by Corollary 1.10 and Lemma 1.22. Then $\mathbf{E}_{K_{\Phi_0}} \to \mathbf{E}_{K'_{\Phi^\ddagger}}$ is a closed embedding. By [MP19, Thm. 4.1.5(4)], $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0}} \to \mathcal{S}_{K'_{\Phi^\ddagger}}$ is equivariant under $\mathbf{E}_{K_{\Phi_0}} \to \mathbf{E}_{K'_{\Phi^\ddagger}}$. By the proof of [MP19, Lem. 3.7.2], there is a finite flat cover $U^\ddagger$ of $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi^\ddagger}}$, a split torus $\mathbf{E}$ and an $\mathbf{E}$-torsor $\mathcal{S}^\ddagger$ over $U^\ddagger$ with an isogeny between split tori $\mathbf{E} \to \mathbf{E}_{K'_{\Phi^\ddagger}}$, such that the pullback of $\mathcal{S}^\ddagger \times^{\mathbf{E}} \mathbf{E}_{K'_{\Phi^\ddagger}} \to U^\ddagger$ to $U^{\ddagger,\prime} := \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K'_{\Phi^\ddagger}} \times_{\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi^\ddagger}}} U^\ddagger$ is isomorphic to the pullback of $\mathcal{S}_{K'_{\Phi^\ddagger}} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K'_{\Phi^\ddagger}}$ to $U^{\ddagger,\prime}$. There is a projection $\mathbf{S}_{K'_{\Phi^\ddagger}} \to \mathbf{S}_{K_{\Phi_0}}$ between character groups associated with $\mathbf{E}_{K'_{\Phi^\ddagger}}$ and $\mathbf{E}_{K_{\Phi_0}}$.

Let

$$U := U^\ddagger \times_{\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi^\ddagger}}} \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K'_{\Phi_0}},$$

and let

$$\mathcal{S}_1^\ddagger := \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi^\ddagger}} \times_{\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi^\ddagger}}} \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K'_{\Phi_0}}.$$

Moreover, let $\mathcal{S}_0^\ddagger$ be the pullback of the torsor $\mathcal{S}^\ddagger \times^{\mathbf{E}} \mathbf{E}_{K'_{\Phi^\ddagger}}$ over $U^\ddagger$ along $U \to U^\ddagger$.

Then there is a diagram of torsors

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathcal{S}_0^{\ddagger} \\ & & \downarrow \\ \mathcal{S}_{K'_{\Phi_0}} & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{S}_1^{\ddagger}, \end{array}$$

where the bottom one is equivariant under $\mathbf{E}_{K'_{\Phi_0}} \to \mathbf{E}_{K_{\Phi^{\ddagger}}}$ over $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K'_{\Phi_0}}$ (and the last map between tori can be chosen as an embedding by Corollary 1.10 and Lemma 1.22 again), and the vertical arrow is equivariant under $\mathbf{E}_{K'_{\Phi^{\ddagger}}} \to \mathbf{E}_{K_{\Phi^{\ddagger}}}$.

We now take the inverse image of the $\mathbf{E}_{K'_{\Phi_0}}$-torsor $\mathcal{S}_{K'_{\Phi_0}}$ in the $\mathbf{E}_{K'_{\Phi^{\ddagger}}}$-torsor $\mathcal{S}_0^{\ddagger}$ by pulling back under the vertical map in the displayed diagram. This is an $\mathbf{E}_{K_{\Phi_0}}$-torsor $\mathcal{S}$ over U.

Then the torsor $\mathcal{S} \to U$ is the desired one, as $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0}}$ is an $\mathbf{E}_{K_{\Phi_0}}$-torsor by [MP19, Thm. 4.1.5] and has an $\mathbf{E}_{K_{\Phi_0}}$-equivariant morphism to $\mathcal{S}$ by checking using the universal property of fiber products in the construction. □

Remark 4.42. *If there is another open compact subgroup $K''_{0,p} \subset G_0(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ such that $K_{0,p} \subset K''_{0,p} \subset K'_{0,p}$. Let $K'' := K''_{0,p}K_0^p$ and $K''_{\Phi_0} := {}^{g_{\Phi_0}}K''_0 \cap P_{\Phi_0}(\mathbb{A}_f)$. Then we can pull U back to $U'' := \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K''_{\Phi_0}}(P_{\Phi_0}, D_{\Phi_0}) \times_{\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K'_{\Phi_0}}} U$ and also pull the torsor $\mathcal{S}$ over U back to U''. We denote this pullback of $\mathcal{S}$ by $\mathcal{S}''$. Then Lemma 4.41 above implies that the pullback of $\mathcal{S}''$ to U' is isomorphic to the pullback of $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0}} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_0}}$ to the finite flat cover U'.*

4.3.3. Let us show the following lemma. The proof of it occupies all paragraphs below until Lemma 4.48.

Lemma 4.43. *The morphism $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^a_{\Phi}} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^a_{\Phi}}$ is an $\mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_{\Phi}}$-torsor. The assertion in (4.39.3) that $\mathcal{S}^*_{K_{\Phi_2}} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}^*_{K_{\Phi_2}}$ is a torsor under a split torus is true.*

By Proposition 1.35, we see that it suffices to show the statement for $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^a_{\Phi}} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^a_{\Phi}}$ since $\mathcal{S}^*_{K_{\Phi_2}} \cong \overline{\mathcal{S}}^*_{K_{\Phi_2}} \times_{\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^a_{\Phi}}} \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^a_{\Phi}}$ by our choice of K_pK^p satisfying the proposition.

Recall that we have already shown that $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^b_{\Phi}} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^b_{\Phi}}$ is an $\mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_{\Phi}}$-torsor for all cases in Part 1 of Proposition 4.30. As in Construction 4.35, we have proved that $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^a_{\Phi}} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^a_{\Phi}}$ is an $\mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_{\Phi}}$-torsor, when we can choose F_Z such that $\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}$ is unramified over $\mathcal{O}'_{(v)}$. This is the case when K_p contains the parahoric subgroup of $Z(\mathbb{Q}_p)$. For general K_p, we know from Construction 4.36 that $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^a_{\Phi},\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^a_{\Phi},\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ is an $\mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_{\Phi}}$-torsor.

Recall that we fixed some intersection of Bruhat-Tits stabilizer subgroups K'_p containing K_p.

Denote $K' := K'_pK^p$. Let $K^+_{Z,p} \subset Z_G(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ be the unique parahoric subgroup of $Z_G(\mathbb{Q}_p)$. Denote $K^+_p := K_pK^+_{Z,p}$ and $K^+ := K^+_pK^p$. Let $\widetilde{K}^+_{\Phi} := ZP_{\Phi}(\mathbb{A}_f) \cap g_{\Phi}K^+g_{\Phi}^{-1}$. Note that $\widetilde{K}^+_{\Phi}$ contains the parahoric subgroup of $Z_G(\mathbb{Q}_p)$. Then the scheme $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^{+,i}_{\Phi}} := \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^+_{\Phi}}(ZP^i_{\Phi}, ZP^i_{\Phi}(\mathbb{Q})D_{\Phi})$ obtained as in Construction 4.36 is a torsor over $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^{+,i}_{\Phi}} := \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^+_{\Phi}}(ZP^i_{\Phi}, ZP^i_{\Phi}(\mathbb{Q})D_{\Phi})$ under $\mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}^+_{\Phi}}$. Note that $\mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}^+_{\Phi}}$ is determined by the lattice $\mathbf{\Lambda}_{\widetilde{K}^+_{\Phi}}$, the projection to the second factor of $(Z_G(\mathbb{Q}) \times U_{\Phi}(\mathbb{Q})) \cap \widetilde{K}^+_{\Phi}$, and there is an isogeny $\mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_{\Phi}} \to \mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}^+_{\Phi}}$. We then have a finite map $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^a_{\Phi}} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^a_{\Phi}} \times_{\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^+_{\Phi}}} \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^+_{\Phi}}$ that is equivariant under $\mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_{\Phi}} \to \mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}^+_{\Phi}}$.

Recall that by construction we have a finite index $I_{ZP_{\Phi}/P_0,K}$ mapping to another finite index $I_{ZP_{\Phi}/P_0,K^+}$. Without loss of generality, we pick some e_{β} for $\beta \in I_{ZP_{\Phi}/P_0,K}$ mapping to $\beta_1 \in I_{ZP_{\Phi}/P_0,K^+}$, and let $e_{\beta} = e_{\beta_1}$.

Denote $\Delta^\beta := \Delta_{K^\beta}(P_0, ZP_\Phi)$ and $\Delta^{\beta_1} := \Delta_{K'^{,\beta_1}}(P_0, ZP_\Phi)$. The quotient $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,\beta} := \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}}}/\Delta^\beta$ (resp. $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,\beta} := \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}}}/\Delta^\beta$) is an open and closed subscheme of $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi}$ (resp. $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi}$). Similarly, the quotient $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^{+,b}_\Phi,\beta_1} := \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'_1}}}/\Delta^{\beta_1}$ (resp. $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^{+,b}_\Phi,\beta_1} := \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'_1}}}/\Delta^{\beta_1}$) is an open and closed subscheme of $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^{+,b}_\Phi}$. Then $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,\beta}$ (resp. $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,\beta}$) maps surjectively to $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^{+,b}_\Phi,\beta_1}$ (resp. $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^{+,b}_\Phi,\beta_1}$).

The action of Δ^{β_1} on $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'_1}}}$ factors through a finite quotient $\overline{H}_{\beta_1}$, and the action of the latter group is free by Lemma 4.25; denote by $\mathcal{K}_{\beta_1}$ the kernel of this action. Let $\Delta_1 := \Delta^\beta \cap \mathcal{K}_{\beta_1}$. Let $\Delta^1 := \Delta^\beta/\Delta_1$. Define $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_1 := \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}}}/\Delta_1$. Define $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_2 := \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'_1}}}/\Delta^1$.

Lemma 4.44. *There is a Cartesian commutative diagram*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \overline{\mathcal{S}}_1 & \xrightarrow{f_1} & \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'_1}}} \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle g_1} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle g_2} \\ \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,\beta} & \xrightarrow{f_2} & \overline{\mathcal{S}}_2, \end{array} \tag{4.23}$$

which fits into a commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & \overset{\text{can.}}{\frown} & & \\ \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}}} & \xrightarrow{h_1} & \overline{\mathcal{S}}_1 & \xrightarrow{f_1} & \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'_1}}} \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \pi^b} & \swarrow{\scriptstyle g_1} & & \swarrow{\scriptstyle g_2} & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \pi^b} \\ \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,\beta} & \xrightarrow{f_2} & \overline{\mathcal{S}}_2 & \xrightarrow{h_2} & \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^{+,b}_\Phi,\beta_1}. \\ & & \underset{\text{can.}}{\smile} & & \end{array} \tag{4.24}$$

The compositions of horizontal arrows of the diagram above are canonical transition maps induced by relative normalizations.

Proof. The compositions of finite surjective morphisms between normal schemes $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}}} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_1 \xrightarrow{g_1} \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,\beta}$ and $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'_1}}} \xrightarrow{g_2} \overline{\mathcal{S}}_2 \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K^{+,b}_\Phi,\beta_1}$ are finite étale. So g_1 and g_2 are finite étale. Moreover, (4.23) is Cartesian since g_1 and g_2 are locally finite free of the same degree by Lemma 4.25. □

By construction, Δ^{β_1} is generated by Δ^β and $\Delta^+ := \ker(\mathscr{A}(P_0) \to \mathscr{A}(ZP_\Phi)/K^+_{Z,p})$, and both Δ^β and Δ^+ are normal subgroups of Δ^{β_1}; Δ^+ is finite modulo $K_{\Phi_{\beta'_1}} \cap \Delta^+$ and satisfies the assumption in §3.4.2 (that $h\gamma^{-1}$ is trivial in $G_0^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{A}_f)$).

By Lemma 4.41 and Remark 4.42 above and by taking contracted products of $\mathbf{E}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}}}$-torsors along $\mathbf{E}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}}} \to \mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$, there is a finite flat cover $V(\beta_1)$ of $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}_{\Phi_{\beta'_1}}}$ and an $\mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$-torsor $\mathcal{T}(\beta_1)$ over $V(\beta_1)$, such that the pullback of the torsor $\mathcal{T}(\beta_1) \to V(\beta_1)$ to $V'(\beta) := \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}}} \times_{\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'_1}}}} V(\beta_1)$ is isomorphic to the pullback of $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}}} \times^{\mathbf{E}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}}}} \mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$ over $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}}}$ to $V'(\beta)$.

Let $V(\beta) := V(\beta_1) \times_{\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'_1}}},f_1} \overline{\mathcal{S}}_1$. Taking the quotient of Δ_1 and by Lemma 4.44 above, we have that the pullback of $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,\beta} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,\beta}$ along the finite flat cover $V(\beta) \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_1 \xrightarrow{g_1} \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,\beta}$ is isomorphic to the pullback of $\mathcal{T}(\beta_1) \to V(\beta_1)$ to $V(\beta)$. Moreover, we have $V(\beta) \times_{V(\beta_1)} \mathcal{T}(\beta_1) \cong \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,\beta} \times_{f_2,\overline{\mathcal{S}}_2} \mathcal{T}(\beta_1)$ by Lemma 4.44. (The morphism from $\mathcal{T}(\beta_1)$ to $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_2$ is given by $\mathcal{T}(\beta_1) \to V(\beta_1) \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'_1}}} \xrightarrow{g_2} \overline{\mathcal{S}}_2$.)

In conclusion, we have a canonical isomorphism

$$\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^b_{\Phi},\beta} \times_{\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^b_{\Phi},\beta}} V(\beta) \cong \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^b_{\Phi},\beta} \times_{f_2,\overline{\mathcal{S}}_2} \mathcal{T}(\beta_1).$$

This isomorphism is defined over $\mathcal{O}'_{(v)}$.

Lemma 4.45. *With the conventions above, there is a finite flat cover $V(\beta_1)$ over $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}_{\Phi_{\beta'_1}}}$ and an $\mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$-torsor $\mathcal{T}(\beta_1)$ over $V(\beta_1)$ such that the sequence $\mathcal{T}(\beta_1) \to V(\beta_1) \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}_{\Phi_{\beta'_1}}}$ is equivariant under the action of Δ^+.*

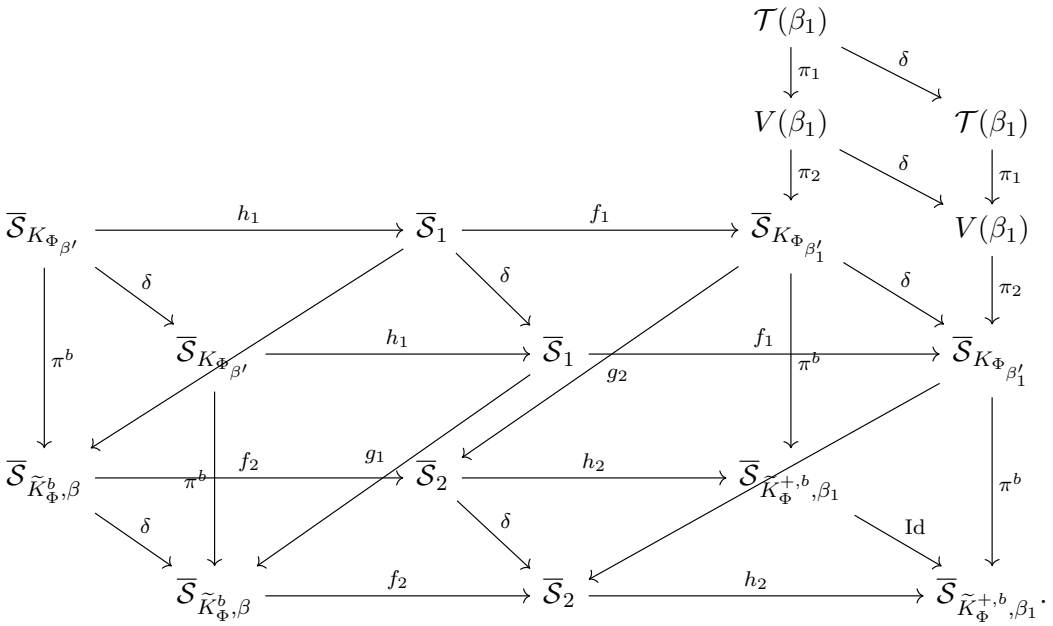
Proof. Since $\Delta^+ \subset \Delta^{\beta_1}$ satisfies the assumption in §3.4.2 and is finite modulo $K_{\Phi_{\beta'_1}} \cap \Delta^+$, we can fix a sufficiently large finite Galois extension F over $\mathbb{Q}$, and replace $(G^\ddagger, X^\ddagger)$ in Lemma 4.41 with (G^F, X^F). In the notation of §3.4.2, Δ^+ acts on the integral models $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi^F}} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi^F}} \to \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi^F},h}$ associated with the cusp label representative Φ^F of (G^F, X^F) and the universal 1-motive on $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi^F}}$. We now adopt the notation in Lemma 4.41. Suppose $\Phi_{\beta'_1}$ maps to Φ^F. By [MP19, Lem. 3.7.2], the finite flat cover $U^\ddagger$ over $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi^F}}$ is $\mathrm{Hom}(\frac{1}{n}Y_{\mathcal{Q}_{\Phi^F}}, A_{\mathcal{Q}_{\Phi^F}})$, where n is some positive integer and $Y_{\mathcal{Q}_{\Phi^F}}$ (resp. $A_{Q_{\Phi^F}}$) is the (-2)-graded piece (resp. (-1)-graded piece) of the universal 1-motive $\mathcal{Q}_{\Phi^F}$ over $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi^F}}$, and the torsor $\mathcal{S}_0^\ddagger$ is a quotient of $\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}^{\mathrm{symm}}(\frac{1}{n}Y_{\mathcal{Q}_{\Phi^F}}, \mathcal{G}^\natural_{\mathcal{Q}_{\Phi^F}})$ (see [MP19, 3.7.2.2]). Then, by Lemma 3.27, the sequence $\mathcal{S}_0^\ddagger \times^{\mathbf{E}_{K_{\Phi_0}}} \mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi} \to U^\ddagger \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi^F}}$ is equivariant under the action of Δ^+ after pulling back to $\mathcal{S}_{\Phi_{\beta'_1}}$. We now have the desired assertion. □

Now we can and we will assume that $\mathcal{T}(\beta_1) \to V(\beta_1)$ satisfies both Lemma 4.45 and Remark 4.42.

Lemma 4.46. *With the conventions above, the pullback of $V(\beta_1) \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'_1}}} \xrightarrow{\pi^b} \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^{+,b}_{\Phi},\beta_1}$ along the transition map $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^b_{\Phi},\beta} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^{+,b}_{\Phi},\beta_1}$ is a finite flat cover $U(\beta)$ of $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^b_{\Phi},\beta}$. The pullback of $\mathcal{T}(\beta_1)$ to V_β is canonically isomorphic to the pullback of $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^b_{\Phi},\beta}$ to $U(\beta)$.*

Proof. The first claim is immediate from construction. The diagram (4.24) is equivariant under any $\delta \in \Delta^+$. Combining this with Lemma 4.45, we have the following commutative diagram:

(4.25)



From now on, we will freely use the conventions appearing in (4.25). The quotient $\Delta_0 := \Delta^{\beta_1}/\Delta^{\beta} \cdot \mathcal{K}_{\beta_1}$ acts on $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_2$ freely. Since Δ^+ and Δ^β generate Δ^{β_1} and are normal subgroups, Δ_0 is a quotient of Δ^+. Hence, the fiber product $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,\beta} \times_{\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^{+,b}_\Phi,\beta_1}} \mathcal{T}(\beta_1)$ is isomorphic to a disjoint union

$$\coprod_{[\delta]\in\Delta_0} \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,\beta} \times_{f_2,\overline{\mathcal{S}}_2,[\delta]\circ g_2\circ\pi_2\circ\pi_1} \mathcal{T}(\beta_1).$$

Similarly, the fiber product $U(\beta) = \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,\beta} \times_{\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^{+,b}_\Phi,\beta_1}} V(\beta_1)$ is isomorphic to a disjoint union

$$\coprod_{[\delta]\in\Delta_0} \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,\beta} \times_{f_2,\overline{\mathcal{S}}_2,[\delta]\circ g_2\circ\pi_2} V(\beta_1).$$

From (4.25) and Lemma 4.44, we see that $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,\beta} \times_{\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^{+,b}_\Phi,\beta_1}} \mathcal{T}(\beta_1)$ is isomorphic to a disjoint union

$$\coprod_{\{\delta\}} \delta^*(\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,\beta} \times_{f_2,\overline{\mathcal{S}}_2} \mathcal{T}(\beta_1)) \cong \coprod_{\{\delta\}} \delta^*(\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,\beta} \times_{\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,\beta}} V(\beta)) \cong \coprod_{\{\delta\}} \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,\beta} \times_{\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,\beta}} \delta^* V(\beta),$$

for a complete set of representatives $\{\delta\}$ in Δ^+ of the quotient group $\Delta^{\beta_1}/\Delta^\beta \cdot \mathcal{K}_{\beta_1}$. For a different choice of representatives, the left-hand side of the displayed equation above remains unchanged since the composition of the map from $\mathcal{T}(\beta_1)$ to $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_2$ is always equal to $[\delta] \circ g_2 \circ \pi_2 \circ \pi_1$. We continue to compute

$$\coprod_{\{\delta\}} \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,\beta} \times_{\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,\beta}} \delta^* V(\beta) \cong \coprod_{\{\delta\}} \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,\beta} \times_{\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,\beta},[\delta]\circ g_1\circ f_1^*\pi_2} V(\beta).$$

By Lemma 4.44, the last expression is isomorphic to

$$\coprod_{[\delta]\in\Delta_0} \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,\beta} \times_{f_2\circ\mathbf{p}_1,\overline{\mathcal{S}}_2,[\delta]\circ g_2\circ\pi_2} V(\beta_1) \cong \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,\beta} \times_{\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,\beta}} U(\beta).$$

The second claim has been shown. □

Write $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi}$ (resp. $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi}$) as a disjoint union $\coprod_{\beta\in I_{ZP_\Phi/P_0,K}} \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,\beta}$ (resp. $\coprod_{\beta\in I_{ZP_\Phi/P_0,K}} \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,\beta}$). Let $\mathcal{U} := \coprod_{\beta\in I_{ZP_\Phi/P_0,K}} U(\beta)$, $\mathcal{V} := \coprod_{\beta_1\in I_{ZP_\Phi/P_0,K^+}} V(\beta_1)$ and $\mathcal{T} := \coprod_{\beta_1\in I_{ZP_\Phi/P_0,K^+}} \mathcal{T}(\beta_1)$.

Lemma 4.47. *From the constructions above, we have a finite flat cover $\mathcal{V}$ over $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^{+,b}_\Phi}$ and an $\mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$-torsor $\mathcal{T}$ over $\mathcal{V}$, such that the pullback of $\mathcal{V}$ along the transition map $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^{+,b}_\Phi}$ is $\mathcal{U}$ and such that there is an isomorphism of $\mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$-torsors*

$$\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi} \times_{\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi}} \mathcal{U} \cong \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi} \times_{\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^{+,b}_\Phi}} \mathcal{T}.$$

Proof. Combine Lemma 4.46 with the definitions above. Note that for distinct elements β and β^* in $I_{ZP_\Phi/P_0,K}$ mapping to the same $\beta_1 \in I_{ZP_\Phi/P_0,K^+}$, both $U(\beta)$ and $U(\beta^*)$ are the pullbacks of the same $V(\beta_1)$ by (4.25) again since $\beta^* \equiv \delta\beta$ in $I_{ZP_\Phi/P_0,K}$ for some $\delta \in \Delta^+$ lifting an element in $K^+_{Z,p}$. □

Proof of Lemma 4.43. By Lemma 4.47, we have

$$\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi} \times_{\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi}} \mathcal{U} \cong \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi} \times_{\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^{+,b}_\Phi}} \mathcal{T}, \tag{4.26}$$

and this isomorphism is equivariant under $K^+_{Z,p}$-action by (4.25), where $K^+_{Z,p}$ acts equivariantly on $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi}$ and trivially on $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^{+,b}_\Phi}$, and this induces $K^+_{Z,p}$-action on both sides of (4.26).

Let $\mathcal{U}^* := \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}} \times_{\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi}} \mathcal{U}$. Pulling back (4.26) along $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi}$, we have an isomorphism

$$\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}} \times_{\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}} \mathcal{U}^* \cong \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}} \times_{\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^{+,b}_\Phi}} \mathcal{T}.$$

Let $E'^{,ur}_{K_Z} := E'_{K_Z} \cap E^p$ and $\mathcal{O}^{ur}_{K_Z} := \mathcal{O}_{E'^{,ur}_{K_Z}} \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_{E'}} \mathcal{O}_{E',(v)}$. The $\mathrm{Gal}(E'_{K_Z}/E')$-action on the left-hand side is given by the descent datum of $\mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,E'_{K_Z}}$ from E'_{K_Z} to E', and it differs from the descent datum of $\mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}^a_\Phi,E'_{K_Z}}$ from E'_{K_Z} to E' by $r_{E',K_{Z,p}}$, where $r_{E',K_{Z,p}}$ assigns to any $\sigma \in \mathrm{Gal}(E'_{K_Z}/E')$ the multiplication of an element in $Z_G(\mathbb{Q})\backslash Z_G(\mathbb{A}_f)/K_{Z,p}$ on $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$. Since $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}} \cong \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^a_\Phi,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$, $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}} \cong \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^a_\Phi,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ and $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^{+,b}_\Phi,\mathcal{O}^{ur}_{K_Z}} \cong \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^{+,a}_\Phi,\mathcal{O}^{ur}_{K_Z}}$, by taking the $\mathrm{Gal}(E'_{K_Z}/E'^{,ur}_{K_Z})$-quotient of the right-hand side of

$$\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^a_\Phi,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}} \times_{\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^a_\Phi,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}} \mathcal{U}^* \cong \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^a_\Phi,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}} \times_{\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^{+,a}_\Phi,\mathcal{O}^{ur}_{K_Z}}} \mathcal{T}_{\mathcal{O}^{ur}_{K_Z}} \tag{4.27}$$

we see $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^a_\Phi,\mathcal{O}^{ur}_{K_Z}} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^a_\Phi,\mathcal{O}^{ur}_{K_Z}}$ is an fppf $\mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$-torsor. The desired result now follows since it has been shown that $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^a_\Phi}$ is an fppf $\mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$-torsor and $\mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$ is smooth. □

Lemma 4.48. *The statement (4.39.3) is true.*

Proof. It remains to show that $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2}} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_2}}$ is an $\mathbf{E}_{K_{\Phi_2}}$-torsor. For a fixed $K_{\Phi_2} = K_{\Phi_2,p}K^p_{\Phi_2}$, there is a neat open compact subgroup $K^{p,\uparrow}_\Phi$ of $ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}^p_f)$ such that $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_2}} \to \mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}_{\Phi,p}K^{p,\uparrow}_\Phi}(ZP^a_\Phi, ZP^a_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})D_\Phi)$ is an open and closed embedding by Lemma 1.22 and Proposition 1.35. Moreover, we can choose a sufficiently small $K^p \subset G(\mathbb{A}^p_f)$ containing $g^{-1}_{\Phi_2}K^{p,\uparrow}_\Phi g_{\Phi_2}$ such that $g_{\Phi_2}K^p g^{-1}_{\Phi_2} \cap ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{A}^p_f) = K^{p,\uparrow}_\Phi$. We can then deduce the desired result from the result for $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^a_\Phi}$: In fact, under this choice of K^p, $\mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}^a_\Phi} \to \overline{\mathrm{Sh}}_{\widetilde{K}^a_\Phi}$ is an $\mathbf{E}_{K_{\Phi_2}}$-torsor since $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_2}} \to \mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}_{\Phi,p}K^{p,\uparrow}_\Phi}(ZP^a_\Phi, ZP^a_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})D_\Phi)$ is a closed embedding. Then $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2}} \cong \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_2}} \times_{\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^a_\Phi}} \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^a_\Phi}$ by Zariski's main theorem. □

4.3.4. *End of the proof.*

Lemma 4.49. *The statements (4.39.1), (4.39.2) and (4.39.4) are true.*

Proof. From Proposition 2.48, exactly the same proof as Proposition 4.32 and Construction 4.36, we have that

$$\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^a(\Phi,\sigma)],K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}} \cong \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^a_\Phi,\sigma,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$$

and that

$$(\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^a_\Phi}(\sigma)_{\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}})^\wedge_{\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^a_\Phi,\sigma,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}} \cong (\mathcal{S}^\Sigma_{K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}})^\wedge_{\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^a(\Phi,\sigma)],K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}}. \tag{4.28}$$

By Zariski's main theorem, Lemma 1.42 and Corollary 1.44, we have $\Delta^\circ_{\Phi,K}\backslash\mathcal{S}_{K^a_\Phi,\sigma,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}} \cong \mathcal{Z}_{[(\Phi,\sigma)],K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ and $\coprod_{[(\Phi',\sigma')]\in[ZP^a(\Phi',\sigma')]} \mathcal{Z}_{[(\Phi',\sigma')],K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}} \cong \mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^a(\Phi,\sigma)],K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$. Taking the completion with respect to $\mathcal{Z}_{[(\Phi,\sigma)],K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ on both sides of (4.28), as we can check that

$$(\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^a_\Phi}(\sigma)_{\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}})^\wedge_{\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^a_\Phi,\sigma,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}} \cong \coprod_{[(\Phi',\sigma')]\in[ZP^a(\Phi',\sigma')]} \Delta^\circ_{\Phi',K}\backslash(\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi'}}(\sigma')_{\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}})^\wedge_{\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi'},\sigma',\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}},$$

we have

$$(\mathcal{S}^\Sigma_{K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}(G,X_a))^\wedge_{\mathcal{Z}_{[(\Phi,\sigma)],K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}} \cong \Delta^\circ_{\Phi,K}\backslash(\mathcal{S}_{K^a_\Phi}(\sigma)_{\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}})^\wedge_{\mathcal{S}_{K_\Phi,\sigma,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}}.$$

Since $\mathrm{Sh}^{\Sigma'_2}_{K_2}(G_2,X_2) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Sh}^\Sigma_K(G,X_a)$ is an open and closed embedding by Corollary 1.37, we see that

$$\Delta^\circ_{\Phi_2,K_2}\backslash(\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2}}(\sigma_2)_{\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}})^\wedge_{\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2},\sigma_2,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}} \cong (\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma'_2}_{K_2,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}})^\wedge_{\mathcal{Z}_{[(\Phi_2,\sigma_2)],K_2,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}}.$$

Applying (4.39.3), the action of $\mathrm{Gal}(E'_{K_Z}/E')$ on $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2},\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ naturally induces actions of $\mathrm{Gal}(E'_{K_Z}/E')$ on $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2},\sigma_2,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ and $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2}}(\sigma_2)_{\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$.

The actions of $\Delta^{\circ}_{\Phi_2,K_2}$ and $\mathrm{Gal}(E'_{K_Z}/E')$ commute with each other since it is so over the generic fiber. Finally, by [MP19, Lem. A.3.4], the action of $\mathrm{Gal}(E'_{K_Z}/E')$ on $\mathcal{S}_{K_2,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ extends to $\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma'_2}_{K_2,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$.

Define $\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma'_2}_{K_2}$ as the quotient of $\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma'_2}_{K_2,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ by $\mathrm{Gal}(E'_{K_Z}/E')$ (note that the quotient exists and is proper (resp. projective) over $\mathcal{O}'_{(v)}$ by [CLO12, Thm. 3.1.13] (resp. [Knu71, Ch. 4, Prop. 1.5]) again). Then $\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma'_2}_{K_2}$ satisfies (4.39.1).

Finally, taking the quotient by $\mathrm{Gal}(E'_{K_Z}/E')$ of the isomorphism above, let us show (4.39.4) holds and show (4.39.2) along the way. Taking Galois quotient induces a quasi-finite morphism $f_{\Upsilon_2}:\mathcal{Z}_{[(\Phi_2,\sigma_2)],K_2}\to\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma'_2}_{K_2}$ which is finite onto its image (which is inductively defined as remarked in Lemma 4.21). Denote by $[\mathcal{Z}_{\Upsilon_2}]$ the image of f_{Υ_2}. There is a structural morphism induced by canonical projection to the closed stratum of the torus embedding:

$$(\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma_2}_{K_2,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}})^{\wedge}_{\mathcal{Z}_{\Upsilon_2,K_2,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}}\cong(\mathcal{S}^{*}_{K_{\Phi_2},\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}(\sigma_2))^{\wedge}_{\mathcal{S}^{*}_{K_{\Phi_2},\sigma_2,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}}\twoheadrightarrow\mathcal{Z}_{\Upsilon_2,K_2,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}},$$

and the pre-composition of it with $\mathcal{Z}_{\Upsilon_2,K_2,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}\to(\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma'_2}_{K_2,\mathcal{O}_{F_Z}})^{\wedge}_{\mathcal{Z}_{\Upsilon_2,K_2,\mathcal{O}_{F_Z}}}$ is identity. Then taking Galois quotient induces an isomorphism f_{Υ_2}. In conclusion, we obtained a stratification of normal and flat subschemes for $\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma'_2}_{K_2}$ and also the assertion (4.39.4) over $\mathcal{O}'_{(v)}$. □

Lemma 4.50. *The statement (4.39.5) is true.*

Proof. It follows from Proposition 4.30 (3) and Construction 4.33 that the towers $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^a_{\Phi,p}}$, $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^a_{\Phi,p}}$ and $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^a_{\Phi,h,p}}$ over $\mathcal{O}'_{(v)}$ have the extension property. By Lemma 1.22, we see that $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2,p}}$ (resp. $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_2,p}}$ and resp. $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2,h,p}}$) is open and closed in $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^a_{\Phi,p}}$ (resp. $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^a_{\Phi,p}}$ and resp. $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^a_{\Phi,h,p}}$) when $\widetilde{K}^{a,p}_{\Phi}$ is sufficiently small. Once we have the statement over $\mathcal{O}'_{(v)}$, the descent data from $\mathcal{O}'_{(v)}$ to $\mathcal{O}_2$ will extend to the integral models. Thus, we have the statement over $\mathcal{O}_2$. □

In Case (HS) and its deeper levels, by the extension property (4.39.5) and [MP19, Lem. A.3.4] and since we have shown all statements over $\mathcal{O}'_{(v)}$, we then all results descend to $\mathcal{O}_2=\mathcal{O}_{E_2,(v_2)}$. In Case ($\mathrm{STB}_n$) and its deeper levels, by construction at the beginning of §4.2, for any place $v_2|p$ of E_2, we can find a place v' of E' over v_2 and find a place v of E_0 such that $v'|v|p$, and we can establish the results over $\mathcal{O}_2=\mathcal{O}_{E_2,v_2}$.

Now we have finished the proof of Theorem 4.39. □

4.3.5. Let us collect some consequences of Theorem 4.39.

Corollary 4.51. *With Theorem 4.39 and all constructions in this section, the following statements are true:*

1. *(See* [MP19, Cor. 4.1.7]*.) When G_2 is $\mathbb{Q}$-anisotropic (i.e. G_2 does not have proper parabolic subgroups over $\mathbb{Q}$, or equivalently, G_2 does not contain noncentral split torus), $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}$ is projective over $\mathcal{O}_2$. The converse is also true.*
2. *(See* [Lan16, Prop. 14.1 and Prop. 14.2]*.) Suppose that Σ'_2 is smooth. Let $\mathcal{P}$ be one of the following properties: (geometrically) reduced, (geometrically) normal, Cohen-Macaulay, (geometrically) (R_i) each one for $i\geq 0$, (S_i) each one for $i\geq 0$, (geometrically) regular. Then a fiber of $\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma'_2}_{K_2}\to\mathrm{Spec}\,\mathcal{O}_2$ satisfies the property $\mathcal{P}$ if and only if the corresponding fiber of $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}\to\mathrm{Spec}\,\mathcal{O}_2$ has the property $\mathcal{P}$. Moreover, $\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma'_2}_{K_2}$ is regular (resp. smooth over $\mathrm{Spec}\,\mathcal{O}_2$) if and only if $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}$ is regular (resp. smooth over $\mathrm{Spec}\,\mathcal{O}_2$).*

(3) *(See* [Lan16, Cor. 10.18 and Cor. 14.4]*.) The scheme* $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}$ *is fiberwise dense in* $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}^{\Sigma_2'}$*. If* $\mathcal{S}_{K_2} \to \operatorname{Spec} \mathcal{O}_2$ *has geometrically reduced fibers, so does* $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}^{\Sigma_2'} \to \operatorname{Spec} \mathcal{O}_2$*; in this case, the geometric fibers of the morphisms* $\mathcal{S}_{K_2} \to \operatorname{Spec} \mathcal{O}_2$ *and* $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}^{\Sigma_2'} \to \operatorname{Spec} \mathcal{O}_2$ *have the same number of connected components.*

Proof. The proof is almost identical to that of the references cited. If G_2 is $\mathbb{Q}$-anisotropic, there are no proper $\mathbb{Q}$-parabolic subgroups, and therefore there are no extra strata in toroidal compactifications by (4.39.2). Conversely, if $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}$ is proper, it is identical to any of its toroidal compactifications by Zariski's main theorem. Hence, it does not have extra strata in its compactifications and G_2^{ad} does not contain admissible $\mathbb{Q}$-parabolic subgroups. Since a proper admissible $\mathbb{Q}$-parabolic subgroup is a product of maximal proper $\mathbb{Q}$-parabolic subgroups in some $\mathbb{Q}$-simple factors of G_2^{ad} with the whole groups of other $\mathbb{Q}$-simple factors of G_2^{ad}, there are no proper $\mathbb{Q}$-parabolic subgroups contained in G_2^{ad} if there are no maximal ones. So part one is true.

Part two follows from exactly the same arguments as in [Lan16, Prop. 14.1 and 14.2]. Note that, with (4.39.3) and (4.39.4) in hand, one can replace $\vec{\Xi}_{\Phi_{\mathcal{H}},\delta_{\mathcal{H}}} \to \vec{C}_{\Phi_{\mathcal{H}},\delta_{\mathcal{H}}}$ and $\vec{\Xi}_{\Phi_{\mathcal{H}},\delta_{\mathcal{H}}}(\sigma) \to \vec{C}_{\Phi_{\mathcal{H}},\delta_{\mathcal{H}}}$ in the proof of *loc. cit.* with $\mathcal{S}^*_{K_{\Phi_2}} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}^*_{K_{\Phi_2}}$ and $\mathcal{S}^*_{K_{\Phi_2}}(\sigma_2) \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}^*_{K_{\Phi_2}}$.

It follows from (4.39.3) and (4.39.4) that $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}$ is fiberwise dense in $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}^{\Sigma_2'}$. Then the rest of the third part follows from [Sta24, Lem. 0E0N] and (4.39.1).

Note that for both the second and the third parts, we needed to use the fact that the isomorphisms in (4.39.4) preserve the open dense strata corresponding to $\mathcal{S}_{K_2} \subset \mathcal{S}_{K_2}^{\Sigma_2'}$ and $\mathcal{S}^*_{K_{\Phi_2}} \subset \mathcal{S}^*_{K_{\Phi_2}}(\sigma_2)$, and this fact follows from our quotient construction and from the corresponding fact in the Hodge-type case. □

Remark 4.52. *For the definition of being* $\mathbb{Q}$*-anisotropic, we follow* [Spr09, Prop. 16.2.2]*. This definition is equivalent to "being* $\mathbb{Q}$*-anisotropic modulo center" in many other references where a reductive group is called* $\mathbb{Q}$*-anisotropic if it does not contain any split* $\mathbb{Q}$*-torus.*

4.3.6. The following statements follow from a combination of the main results and the Artin approximation technique (and its generalizations).

The next proposition is a formal consequence of having a *strata-preserving* toroidal embedding.

Proposition 4.53. *(See* [LS18b, Prop. 2.2(9)] *and* [LS18a, Prop. 2.1.2(9)]*) Let* x *be a point of* $\mathcal{Z}_{[(\Phi_2,\sigma_2)],K_2} \cong \mathcal{S}^*_{K_{\Phi_2},\sigma_2}$*. There is an étale neighborhood* $\mathsf{e}_1 : \overline{U} \to \mathcal{S}_{K_2}^{\Sigma_2'}$ *of* x*, and an étale morphism* $\mathsf{e}_2 : \overline{U} \to \mathcal{S}^*_{K_{\Phi_2}}(\sigma_2)$*, such that the stratifications on* $\overline{U}$ *defined by pulling back those on* $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}^{\Sigma_2'}$ *and* $\mathcal{S}^*_{K_{\Phi_2}}(\sigma_2)$ *via* e_1 *and* e_2 *coincide. In particular, we have* $\mathsf{e}_1^{-1}(\mathcal{S}_{K_2}) = \mathsf{e}_2^{-1}(\mathcal{S}^*_{K_{\Phi_2}})$.

Proof. Let A be the local ring $\mathcal{O}_{\mathcal{S}^*_{K_{\Phi_2}}(\sigma_2),x}$ at x with Henselization denoted by A^h. Denote by $\widehat{A}$ the complete local ring of A^h at x. Let $\widetilde{A}$ be the finitely generated A^h-algebra generated by the local ring $\mathcal{O}_{\mathcal{S}_{K_2}^{\Sigma_2'},x}$ via the last isomorphism in (4.39.4). Then there is a sequence of inclusions $A \overset{i}{\hookrightarrow} A^h \overset{\alpha}{\hookrightarrow} \widetilde{A} \overset{\beta}{\hookrightarrow} \widehat{A}$. By Artin approximation [Art69, Thm. 1.10] (cf. [Lan13, Prop. 6.3.2.2]), for any integer $k > 0$, there is a section $\alpha_k : \widetilde{A} \to A^h$, such that $\alpha_k \circ \alpha = \mathrm{Id}$ and $\beta \circ \alpha \circ \alpha_k - \beta$ is trivial modulo $\mathfrak{m}_x^k$, where $\mathfrak{m}_x$ is the maximal ideal in $\widehat{A}$ corresponding to x. For $k \geq 2$, α_k defines a scheme $\overline{U}$ with étale morphisms e_1 and e_2 to $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}^{\Sigma_2'}$ and $\mathcal{S}^*_{K_{\Phi_2}}(\sigma_2)$ by [Art69, Cor. 2.6].

Now we modify the construction above to get strata-preserving $(\overline{U}, \mathsf{e}_1, \mathsf{e}_2)$. Note that using induction it is enough to show it for closures of strata. Let $\overline{\mathcal{M}}$ be the closure of a stratum $\mathcal{M}$ in $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}^{\Sigma_2'}$ which under the last isomorphism in (4.39.4), corresponds to $\overline{\mathcal{N}}$, the closure in $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2}}(\sigma_2)$ of a

stratum $\mathcal{N}$. Suppose that the pullback of $\overline{\mathcal{N}}$ to $\operatorname{Spec} A$ determines an ideal $I \subset A$ and the pullback of $\overline{\mathcal{M}}$ to $\operatorname{Spec} \widetilde{A}$ determines an ideal $J \subset \widetilde{A}$. We have $\beta \circ \alpha \circ i(I)\widehat{A} = \beta(J)\widehat{A}$. Since $\widehat{A}$ is Noetherian, choose a finite set of elements $\{x_t^{\mathcal{M}}\}_{t\in\Lambda_{\mathcal{M}}} \subset \widehat{A}$ such that $\beta(J) \subset \sum_{t\in\Lambda_{\mathcal{M}}} I\widetilde{A}x_t^{\mathcal{M}}$, and a finite set of $\{y_s^{\mathcal{M}}\}_{s\in\mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{M}}} \subset \widehat{A}$ such that $\beta \circ \alpha \circ i(I) \subset \sum_{s\in\mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{M}}} J\widetilde{A}y_s^{\mathcal{M}}$. Let $\widetilde{B}$ be the A^h-algebra generated by $\widetilde{A}$ and all $\{x_t^{\mathcal{M}}\}_{t\in\Lambda_{\mathcal{M}}}$ and $\{y_s^{\mathcal{M}}\}_{s\in\mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{M}}}$ running over all strata $\mathcal{M}$ of $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}^{\Sigma_2'}$. The algebra $\widetilde{B}$ is still finitely generated over A^h, and there is a sequence of inclusions $A \overset{i}{\hookrightarrow} A^h \overset{\widetilde{\alpha}}{\hookrightarrow} \widetilde{B} \overset{\widetilde{\beta}}{\hookrightarrow} \widehat{A}$. By Artin approximation as above, for any integer $k \geq 2$, there is a section $\widetilde{\alpha}_k : \widetilde{B} \to A^h$, such that $\widetilde{\alpha}_k \circ \widetilde{\alpha} = \mathrm{Id}$, $\widetilde{\beta} \circ \widetilde{\alpha} \circ \widetilde{\alpha}_k - \widetilde{\beta}$ is trivial modulo $\mathfrak{m}_x^k$, and $\alpha_k := \widetilde{\alpha}_k|_{\widetilde{A}}$ defines a scheme $\overline{U}$ with étale morphisms e_1 and e_2 to $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}^{\Sigma_2'}$ and $\mathcal{S}^*_{K_{\Phi_2}}(\sigma_2)$. Since for any $j \in J$, $(\beta \circ \alpha \circ \alpha_k - \beta)(j) \subset (\widetilde{\beta} \circ \widetilde{\alpha} \circ \widetilde{\alpha}_k - \widetilde{\beta})(\sum I\widetilde{A}x_t^{\mathcal{M}}) = \sum I(\widetilde{\beta} \circ \widetilde{\alpha} \circ \widetilde{\alpha}_k - \widetilde{\beta})(\widetilde{A}x_t^{\mathcal{M}}) \subset I\widehat{A}$ and $\alpha \circ \alpha_k \circ \alpha \circ i(I) = \alpha \circ i(I)$, we have $I\widehat{A} = \beta(J)\widehat{A} = \beta \circ \alpha \circ \alpha_k(J)\widehat{A}$, as desired. □

From Proposition 4.53 above, we see that

Corollary 4.54. *The complement of $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}$ in $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}^{\Sigma_2'}$ is a relative effective Cartier divisor.*

Corollary 4.55. *With the constructions and conventions above, after taking the normalized base change to $\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}$, $\mathcal{S}_{K_2,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}^{\Sigma_2'}$ is an open and closed subspace of $\mathcal{S}_{K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}^{\Sigma}(G, X_b)$, and $\mathcal{S}_{K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}^{\Sigma}(G, X_b)$, equipped with a log structure defined by the complement of $\mathcal{S}_{K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}(G, X_b)$ in $\mathcal{S}_{K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}^{\Sigma}(G, X_b)$, admits a finite Kummer étale cover of disjoint union of Hodge-type toroidal compactifications $\mathcal{S}_{K_0,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}^{\mathrm{TOR}} := \coprod_{\alpha\in I_{G/G_0}} \mathcal{S}_{K_0^\alpha,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}^{\Sigma_0^\alpha}$. The induced map between interiors $\coprod_{\alpha\in I_{G/G_0}} \mathcal{S}_{K_0^\alpha,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}} \to \mathcal{S}_{K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}(G, X_b)$ is finite étale.*

Proof. It remains to show that the morphism from $\mathcal{S}_{K_0,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}^{\mathrm{TOR}}$ to $\mathcal{S}_{K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}^{\Sigma}$ is Kummer étale. First, we apply the nested approximation theorem due to Teissier and Spivakovsky, see [Tei95, Cor. 2.10] and [Spi99, Thm. 11.5], to find compatible approximations of a morphism of completions. Let us explain the exact meanings of the symbols in *loc. cit.* specialized to our situation. The m in *loc. cit.* is 2 in our situation. Pick any point $x \in \mathcal{Z} := \mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)],K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ and let A_1 in *loc. cit.* be the Henselization of the local ring of $\mathcal{S}_{K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}^{\Sigma}$ at x. The pullback of $\mathcal{S}_{K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ to $\operatorname{Spec} A_1$ determines an ideal $I \subset A_1$. Let B_1 be the completion of A_1 with respect to the maximal ideal $\mathfrak{m}_x \subset A_1$ corresponding to x. The point x corresponds to a point x' in $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^b,\sigma,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$, and let $\mathcal{O}$ be the local ring of $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^b,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}(\sigma)$ at x'. The pullback of $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^b,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ to $\operatorname{Spec}\mathcal{O}$ determines an ideal $J \subset \mathcal{O}$. We have $JB_1 = IB_1$. Choose a finite set of elements $\{x_t\}_{t\in\Lambda}$ in B_1 such that $J \subset \sum_{t\in\Lambda} I\mathcal{O} \cdot x_t$ and a finite set of elements $\{y_s\}_{s\in\mathcal{I}}$ in B_1 such that $I \subset \sum_{s\in\mathcal{I}} J\mathcal{O} \cdot y_s$. Let C_1 be the finitely generated A_1-algebra generated by $\{x_t\}$ and $\{y_t\}$ and $\mathcal{O}$ via (4.21). Let A_2 (resp. B_2) be the algebra obtained by tensoring $\otimes_{\mathcal{O}_{\mathcal{S}_{K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}^{\Sigma}}} \mathcal{O}_{\mathcal{S}_{K_0,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}^{\mathrm{TOR}}}$ to A_1 (resp. B_1). Let C_2 be the finitely generated A_2-algebra generated by $\{x_t\}$, $\{y_s\}$ and a semi-local ring of the disjoint union of $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0^\alpha},\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}(\sigma_0^\alpha)$, corresponding to all cusp labels with cones mapping to $[ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)]$ (cf. (4.15)), at the inverse image of x in $\mathcal{S}_{K_0,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}^{\mathrm{TOR}}$. Since completion and Henselization commute with finite ring maps, we can apply *loc. cit.* to find compatible approximations. More precisely (cf. [Lan22, Cor. 3.8]), there is an étale neighborhood $\overline{U}$ of x and an étale morphism $\overline{U} \to \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^b,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}(\sigma)$ such that the preimage U in $\overline{U}$ of $\mathcal{S}_{K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ coincides with the preimage of $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^b,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$. Moreover, the étale morphisms $\overline{U} \to \mathcal{S}_{K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}^{\Sigma}$ and $\overline{U} \to \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^b,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}(\sigma)$ induce étale morphisms $\overline{U}_0 \to \mathcal{S}_{K_0,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}^{\mathrm{TOR}}$ and $\overline{U}_0 \to \coprod \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0^\alpha},\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}(\sigma_0^\alpha)$ by pulling back via $\mathcal{S}_{K_0,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}^{\mathrm{TOR}} \to \mathcal{S}_{K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}^{\Sigma}$ and $\coprod \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0^\alpha},\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}(\sigma_0^\alpha) \to \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^b,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}(\sigma)$, respectively. The two étale

morphisms obtained by pullback as before have the property that the preimages of $\coprod_{I_{G/G_0}} \mathcal{S}_{K_0^\alpha,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ and $\coprod \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0^\alpha},\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ coincide with the preimage U_0 of $U \subset \overline{U}$ via $\overline{U}_0 \to \overline{U}$.

Now, thanks to Proposition 4.29, it suffices to show that each $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0^\alpha}}(\sigma_0^\alpha) \to \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^b}(\sigma)$ is Kummer étale, where the log structures on the source and the target are defined by the torus embeddings. By Lemma 4.25 and Proposition 4.30, the morphism $\mathbf{E}_{K_{\Phi_0^\alpha}} \to \mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$ between tori induced by $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0^\alpha}} \to \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^b}$ is a prime-to-p isogeny. Since σ_0^α is induced by σ, the map $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0^\alpha}}(\sigma_0^\alpha) \to \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^b}(\sigma)$ is log étale and Kummer, as desired. □

4.3.7. The main result in §4.3.7 concerns when the proper morphism $\overline{\mathcal{S}}^*_{K_{\Phi_2}} \to \mathcal{S}^*_{K_{\Phi_2},h}$ is an abelian scheme torsor.

Consider (DL) of (STB_n). Suppose $K_{2,p} \subset K'_{2,p}$, where $K'_{2,p}$ is an intersection of n Bruhat-Tits stabilizer subgroups $K^i_{2,p} \subset G_2(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ for $1 \le i \le n$. Denote by $K^{i,\circ}_{2,p}$ the parahoric subgroups in $G_2(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ associated with $K^i_{2,p}$. **Assume** in §4.3.7 that

$$K^\circ_{2,p} := \cap_{i=1}^n K^{i,\circ}_{2,p} \subset K_{2,p} \subset K'_{2,p}. \tag{4.29}$$

Lemma 4.56 (See [Mao25a, Lem. 3.24 and Cor. 3.56])**.** *Assume that $(G_2, X_2) = (G_0, X_0)$. Let K_0^p be any neat open compact subgroup of $G_0(\mathbb{A}_f^p)$, g be any element in $G_0(\mathbb{A}_f)$ and $\Phi_0 \in \mathcal{CLR}(G_0, X_0)$. Under the assumption above, we have*

$$\overline{gK^\circ_{0,p}K_0^p g^{-1} \cap W_{\Phi_0}(\mathbb{A}_f)} = \overline{gK'_{0,p}K_0^p g^{-1} \cap W_{\Phi_0}(\mathbb{A}_f)},$$

where the "$-$" denotes the projection to $V_{\Phi_0}(\mathbb{A}_f) := W_{\Phi_0}(\mathbb{A}_f)/U_{\Phi_0}(\mathbb{A}_f)$.

Proof. In [Mao25a, Lem. 3.24], it is shown when $n = 1$ that $gK^\circ_{0,p}K_0^p g^{-1} \cap W_{\Phi_0}(\mathbb{A}_f) = gK'_{0,p}K_0^p g^{-1} \cap W_{\Phi_0}(\mathbb{A}_f)$. The rest of the lemma follows from taking the intersection and projection. □

We need the following technical lemma:

Lemma 4.57. *Fixing $K_{2,p}$, the construction of $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2}} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_2}} \to \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2},h}$ in Theorem 4.39 does not depend on the choice of $K_p \subset G(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ made at the beginning of §4.3.1.*

Under Assumption (4.29),

- *we can choose an open compact subgroup K_p such that, for any α, $\pi^{b,-1}({}^\alpha K_p)$ is an intersection of quasi-parahoric subgroups corresponding to the same points as ${}^\alpha K^i_{2,p}$'s in the Bruhat-Tits building of $G^{\mathrm{ad}}_{\mathbb{Q}_p}$;*
- *with this K_p, we can choose $\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}$ to be unramified over $\mathcal{O}'_{(v)}$.*

Proof. The first sentence follows from the construction that the integral models such as $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2}}$ are normalizations from the corresponding integral models in Case (STB_n).

We now construct a K_p to satisfy the first item. In Case (STB_n), K_p is chosen to be an intersection of Bruhat-Tits stabilizers that correspond to the same points as $K^i_{2,p}$'s in the Bruhat-Tits building of $G^{\mathrm{ad}}_{\mathbb{Q}_p}$. Under only Assumption (4.29), it is reduced to find such a K_p when $K_{2,p}$ is quasi-parahoric as one can take an intersection after this. When $K_{2,p}$ is quasi-parahoric, denote by $K_{0,p}$ the parahoric subgroup of $G_0(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ such that $K_{2,p}$ and $K_{0,p}$ correspond to the same point in the Bruhat-Tits building of $G^{\mathrm{ad}}_{\mathbb{Q}_p}$. Note that $K_p^\bullet := \pi^b(K_{0,p}) \cdot \pi^a(K_{2,p})$ is a compact group in $G(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ and $K_p^\bullet \cap G_2(\mathbb{Q}_p) = K_{2,p}$. We then find an open compact subgroup K_p in the Bruhat-Tits stabilizer subgroup of $G(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ corresponding to $K_{2,p}$ containing $K_p^\bullet$ such that $K_p \cap G_2(\mathbb{Q}_p) = K_{2,p}$. The preimage $\pi^{b,-1}(K_p)$ contains $K_{0,p}$ and is contained in the Bruhat-Tits stabilizer corresponding to $K_{0,p}$. Taking conjugates of g_α, we get the desired result.

We now explain the second item. Again, we assume that $K_{2,p}$ is quasi-parahoric first. Pick any point $x \in X_a \cong X_b \cong X^{\mathrm{ad}}$ and denote by μ_a (resp. μ_b) its associated Hodge cocharacter

regarded as a point on X_a (resp. X_b). By the proof of [KP18, Lem. 4.3.2], the image of $\mathcal{O}_{E'_{v'}}^{\times}$ under (4.7) induced by μ_a (resp. μ_b) is contained in $\pi^a(K_{2,p})$ (resp. $\pi^b(K_{0,p})$) up to a conjugation. As $\mu_a \cdot \mu_b^{-1}$ is central, the images of $\mathcal{O}_{E'_{v'}}^{\times}$ under (4.7) induced by μ_a and μ_b are contained in $\pi^a(K_{2,p})$ and $\pi^b(K_{0,p})$ respectively after the same conjugation, and the image of it under (4.7) induced by $\mu_a \cdot \mu_b^{-1}$ is contained in $K_p^{\bullet} \cap Z_G(\mathbb{Q}_p) \subset K_p \cap Z_G(\mathbb{Q}_p)$. By taking intersection, we have shown the second item. □

Remark 4.58. *When $p > 2$, we expect that one can also show the statement above using the machinery developed in Daniels-Youcis* [DY25] *and Kisin-Pappas-Zhou* [KPZ24]. *See, e.g.,* [DY25, Prop. 2.15 and Prop. 5.4].

Proposition 4.59. *Under Assumption (4.29), $\overline{\mathcal{S}}^*_{K_{\Phi_2}} \to \mathcal{S}^*_{K_{\Phi_2},h}$ is an abelian scheme torsor.*

Proof. Under the assumption, we can choose E'_{K_Z} unramified over E' at p by Lemma 4.57. Hence, by Part 2 of Proposition 4.30 it is enough to show the statement for $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi} \to \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,h}$. By [MP19, 2.1.10, Thm. 4.1.5(1)], Lemma 4.56 and Zariski's main theorem, all $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}}} \to \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_{\beta'}},h}$ used to construct $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi} \to \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,h}$ are abelian scheme torsors. We then employ the proof of Part 1 of Proposition 4.30 to obtain the desired result. □

5. Minimal compactifications of integral models of abelian type

In this section, we construct the minimal compactification $\mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K_2}$ of $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}$ along with the stratification on it. We still assume that $K_2 = K_{2,p}K_2^p$, where K_2^p is a neat open compact subgroup of $G_2(\mathbb{A}_f^p)$ and $K_{2,p}$ is an open compact subgroup of $G_2(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ and regard $(G_2, X_2, K_{2,p})$ as one of the Cases (HS), (STB_n) and (DL). To avoid overloaded notation, we assume $\Sigma_2 = \Sigma_2'$.

5.1. **Minimal compactifications of integral models of Hodge type.** Fix a Hodge-type Shimura datum (G_0, X_0) with an embedding $\iota : (G_0, X_0) \hookrightarrow (G^\ddagger, X^\ddagger)$. Recall that $E_0 = E(G_0, X_0)$, v is a place of E_0 over p, and all integral models related to (G_0, X_0) are defined over $\mathcal{O}_{E_0,(v)}$. Let us first briefly recall the construction of the minimal compactification $\mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K_0}$ for $\mathcal{S}_{K_0}$ (see [MP19, Sec. 5]). We then deduce a functoriality result analogous to Corollary 4.11 and Lemma 4.14 for minimal compactifications.

5.1.1. As explained in §2.1, the integral model $\mathcal{S}_{K_p^\ddagger K^{\ddagger,p}}$ of Siegel type is associated with a moduli problem $\mathbf{M}^{\mathrm{iso}}_{(V_\mathbb{Z},\psi_\mathbb{Z}),K_p^\ddagger K^{\ddagger,p}}$. Denote by $(\mathcal{A}^\ddagger, \lambda, [\varepsilon]_{K^{\ddagger,p}})$ the universal polarized abelian scheme with level structure on $\mathcal{S}_{K_p^\ddagger K^{\ddagger,p}}$. Denote the *Hodge invertible sheaf* associated with $\mathcal{A}^\ddagger$ by $\omega_{\mathcal{A}^\ddagger/\mathcal{S}_{K^\ddagger}} := (\wedge^{\mathrm{top}}\underline{\mathrm{Lie}}_{\mathcal{A}^\ddagger/\mathcal{S}_{K^\ddagger}})^{\otimes -1}$; the pullback $\omega_{K_0} := \iota^*\omega_{\mathcal{A}^\ddagger/\mathcal{S}_{K^\ddagger}}$ of it to $\mathcal{S}_{K_0}$ is called a Hodge invertible sheaf on $\mathcal{S}_{K_0}$. Then $\omega_{\mathcal{A}^\ddagger/\mathcal{S}_{K^\ddagger}}$ extends to an invertible sheaf $\omega^{\mathrm{tor}}_{K^\ddagger} := (\wedge^{\mathrm{top}}\underline{\mathrm{Lie}}_{\mathcal{G}^\ddagger/\mathcal{S}_{K^\ddagger}})^{\otimes -1}$, where $\mathcal{G}^\ddagger$ is the degenerating semi-abelian scheme over $\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma^\ddagger}_{K^\ddagger}$ extending $\mathcal{A}^\ddagger$; the pullback of it to $\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma_0}_{K_0}$ via $\iota : \mathcal{S}^{\Sigma_0}_{K_0} \to \mathcal{S}^{\Sigma^\ddagger}_{K^\ddagger}$ is an invertible sheaf extending ω_{K_0}, denoted by $\omega^{\mathrm{tor}}_{K_0}$.

Construction 5.1 ([MP19, Sec. 5.2])**.** For a sufficiently large integer k_0, the tensor power $\omega^{\mathrm{tor},\otimes k_0}_{K_0}$ is generated by its global sections. Then there is a morphism $\int_{K_0} : \mathcal{S}^{\Sigma_0}_{K_0} \to \mathbb{P}^M$ defined by the global sections of $\omega^{\mathrm{tor},\otimes k_0}_{K_0}$. The minimal compactification of $\mathcal{S}_{K_0}$ is defined to be

$$\mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K_0} := \mathrm{Proj}(\bigoplus_{k=0}^{\infty}\Gamma(\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma_0}_{K_0}, \omega^{\mathrm{tor},\otimes k}_{K_0})) \cong \mathrm{Proj}(\bigoplus_{k=0}^{\infty}\Gamma(\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma_0}_{K_0}, \omega^{\mathrm{tor},\otimes k_0 k}_{K_0})) \cong \underline{\mathrm{Spec}}_{\mathbb{P}^M}\int_{K_0,*}\mathcal{O}_{\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma_0}_{K_0}}.$$

Then there is a proper morphism

$$\oint_{K_0}^{\Sigma_0} : \mathcal{S}^{\Sigma_0}_{K_0} \longrightarrow \mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K_0}$$

and a finite morphism

$$\overline{\oint}_{K_0} : \mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K_0} \longrightarrow \mathbb{P}^M.$$

By general properties of Stein factorizations (see, e.g., [Sta24, Thm. 0A1B]), we have that $\oint^{\Sigma_0}_{K_0}$ is proper and surjective, the fibers of $\oint^{\Sigma_0}_{K_0}$ are geometrically connected and $\oint^{\Sigma_0,\sharp}_{K_0} : \mathcal{O}_{\mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K_0}} \to \oint^{\Sigma_0}_{K_0,*}\mathcal{O}_{\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma_0}_{K_0}}$ is an isomorphism. Moreover, this construction is independent of the choice of Σ_0. □

Theorem 5.2 ([MP19, Thm. 5.2.11]; cf. [FC90, Thm. V.2.5] and [Lan13, Thm. 7.2.4.1])**.** *With the conventions and constructions above, there is a natural stratification on $\mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K_0}$ consisting of locally closed normal subschemes that are flat over $\mathcal{O}_{E_0,(v)}$, that is, $\mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K_0} = \coprod_{[\Phi_0]\in\mathrm{Cusp}_{K_0}(G_0,X_0)}\mathcal{Z}_{[\Phi_0],K_0}$. The strata are labeled by equivalence classes in $\mathrm{Cusp}_{K_0}(G_0, X_0)$; each $\mathcal{Z}_{[\Phi_0],K_0}$ is naturally isomorphic to $\Delta_{\Phi_0,K_0}\backslash\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0},h}$. A stratum $\mathcal{Z}_{[\Phi_0'],K_0}$ lies in the closure of $\mathcal{Z}_{[\Phi_0],K_0}$ if and only if $[\Phi_0]' \preceq [\Phi_0]$.*

Moreover, the morphism $\oint^{\Sigma_0}_{K_0}$ is compatible with stratifications in the following sense: The restriction of $\oint^{\Sigma_0}_{K_0}$ to each $\mathcal{Z}_{[(\Phi_0,\sigma_0)],K_0}$ is the natural projection $\mathcal{Z}_{[(\Phi_0,\sigma_0)],K_0} \cong \Delta^\circ_{\Phi_0,K_0}\backslash\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0},\sigma_0} \to \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0},h} \to \Delta_{\Phi_0,K_0}\backslash\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0},h} \cong \mathcal{Z}_{[\Phi_0],K_0}$; the inverse image of each $\mathcal{Z}_{[\Phi_0],K_0}$ under $\oint^{\Sigma_0}_{K_0}$ is $\coprod_{\Upsilon_0\in\mathrm{Cusp}_{K_0}(G_0,X_0)\mapsto[\Phi_0]}\mathcal{Z}_{\Upsilon_0,K_0}$.

The Hodge invertible sheaf ω_{K_0} extends to an ample invertible sheaf $\omega_{K_0}^{\min}$ on $\mathcal{S}_{K_0}^{\min}$ such that $\oint_{K_0}^{\Sigma_0,*}\omega_{K_0}^{\min}\cong\omega_{K_0}^{\mathrm{tor}}$.

For normalized base change, we have

Proposition 5.3. *Let F be any finite field extension of E_0. Let $\mathcal{S}_{K_0,\mathcal{O}_F}^{\min}$ be the normalization of the base change $\mathcal{S}_{K_0}^{\min}\otimes_{\mathcal{O}_{E,(v)}}\mathcal{O}_{E_0,(v)}\otimes_{\mathcal{O}_{E_0}}\mathcal{O}_F$. Then $\mathcal{S}_{K_0,\mathcal{O}_F}^{\min}$ is constructed as*

$$\mathrm{Proj}(\bigoplus_{k=0}^{\infty}\Gamma(\mathcal{S}_{K_0,\mathcal{O}_F}^{\Sigma_0},\omega_{K_0,\mathcal{O}_F}^{\mathrm{tor},\otimes k}))$$

where $\mathcal{S}_{K_0,\mathcal{O}_F}^{\Sigma_0}$ denotes the normalized base change of $\mathcal{S}_{K_0}^{\Sigma_0}$ to $\mathcal{O}_{E_0,(v)}\otimes_{\mathcal{O}_{E_0}}\mathcal{O}_F$ and $\omega_{K_0,\mathcal{O}_F}^{\mathrm{tor}}$ denotes the pullback of $\omega_{K_0}^{\mathrm{tor}}$ to $\mathcal{S}_{K_0,\mathcal{O}_F}^{\Sigma_0}$. Moreover, the properties in Theorem 5.2 are also true for $\mathcal{S}_{K_0,\mathcal{O}_F}^{\min}$, with all strata replaced with normalized base change to $\mathcal{O}_{E_0,(v)}\otimes_{\mathcal{O}_{E_0}}\mathcal{O}_F$.

Proof. Repeat the construction in [MP19, Sec. 5]. Note that one can also use the argument in Proposition 2.48 with [MP19, Cor. 5.2.8] instead of [MP19, Thm. 4.1.5 (4)] as an input. □

5.1.2. Let (G_0,X_0) be any Shimura datum. The canonical sheaf ϖ_0 of $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_0}(G_0,X_0)$ extends to an ample invertible sheaf $\varpi_0^{\min}$ on $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_0}^{\min}$ and an invertible sheaf ϖ_0^{tor} on $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_0}^{\Sigma_0}$, which is locally defined as in [Pin90, 5.26]. In fact, $\varpi_0^{\mathrm{tor}}=\wedge^{\mathrm{top}}\Omega^1_{\mathrm{Sh}_{K_0}^{\Sigma_0}/\operatorname{Spec}E_0}(\log D)$, the sheaf of meromorphic differential forms with top degree and logarithmic poles along the boundary divisor, and ϖ_0^{tor} is isomorphic to the pullback of $\varpi_0^{\min}$ along the natural projection $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_0}^{\Sigma_0}\to\mathrm{Sh}_{K_0}^{\min}$ (see [Mum77, Prop. 3.4(b)]). Moreover, by a similar construction as in 5.1, there is a natural isomorphism $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_0}^{\min}\cong\mathrm{Proj}\bigoplus_{k=0}^{\infty}\Gamma(\mathrm{Sh}_{K_0}^{\Sigma_0},\varpi_0^{\mathrm{tor},\otimes k})$ (see [Pin90, 8.2] and [MP19, Thm. 5.2.11 (5)]; see also the proof of [Lan12, Thm. 5.1.1]). In particular, the natural projection $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_0}^{\Sigma_0}\to\mathrm{Sh}_{K_0}^{\min}$ is proper, surjective and of connected geometric fibers by general properties of Stein factorization again.

The adjoint Shimura datum $(G^{\mathrm{ad}},X^{\mathrm{ad}})$ admits a decomposition $(G^{\mathrm{ad}},X^{\mathrm{ad}})=\prod_{i=1}^k(G^i,X^i)$, where G_i are $\mathbb{Q}$-simple factors of G^{ad}. Choose suitable neat open compact subgroups $K^i\subset G^i(\mathbb{A}_f)$ such that there is a (finite étale) morphism $\pi_{\mathrm{ad}}:\mathrm{Sh}_{K_0}(G_0,X_0)\to\prod_{i=1}^k\mathrm{Sh}_{K^i}(G^i,X^i)$. Denote by ϖ_i the canonical sheaf of $\mathrm{Sh}_{K^i}(G^i,X^i)$.

Now resume the assumptions in §5.1.1 that (G_0,X_0) is of Hodge type.

It is explained in [Lan12, Thm. 5.1.1] that, for all PEL-type $(G^\ddagger,X^\ddagger)$, the construction of $\mathrm{Sh}_{K^\ddagger}^{\min}$ as above using the extension of the canonical sheaf with log poles on $\mathrm{Sh}_{K^\ddagger}^{\Sigma^\ddagger}\backslash\mathrm{Sh}_{K^\ddagger}$ coincides with the generic fiber of $\mathcal{S}_{K^\ddagger}^{\min}$ constructed as in [Lan13] using the extension of the Hodge invertible sheaf. Hence, there is a natural finite morphism $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_0}^{\min}\to\mathcal{S}_{K^\ddagger}^{\min}$ defined as post-composing the natural morphism $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_0}^{\min}\to\mathrm{Sh}_{K^\ddagger}^{\min}$ with the natural embedding $\mathrm{Sh}_{K^\ddagger}^{\min}\hookrightarrow\mathcal{S}_{K^\ddagger}^{\min}$.

The following property follows directly from ι and Construction 5.1 itself; in other words, it can be shown without knowing the main theorem [MP19, Thm. 5.2.11] or its proof:

Proposition 5.4. *With the conventions above, there are positive integers N and N_i for $1\le i\le k$ such that $\pi_{\mathrm{ad}}^*(\boxtimes_{i=1}^k(\varpi_i^{\otimes N_i}))\cong\omega_{K_0,\mathbb{Q}}^{\otimes N}$.*

Moreover, we can also construct $\mathcal{S}_{K_0}^{\min}$ as the normalization in Sh_{K_0}, $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_0}^{\Sigma_0}$ or $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_0}^{\min}$ of the minimal compactification $\mathcal{S}_{K^\ddagger}^{\min}$ of $\mathcal{S}_{K^\ddagger}$ constructed in [FC90, V.2] and [Lan13, 7.2.3], and construct $\oint_{K_0}^{\Sigma_0}$ as the morphism induced by the normalization in Sh_{K_0} of the morphism $\oint_{K^\ddagger}^{\Sigma^\ddagger}:\mathcal{S}_{K^\ddagger}^{\Sigma^\ddagger}\to\mathcal{S}_{K^\ddagger}^{\min}$. In particular, the generic fiber of $\mathcal{S}_{K_0}^{\min}$ is $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_0}^{\min}$.

Proof. The first assertion follows from the fifth paragraph of the proof of [LS18c, Prop. 2.4].

Let us show the second paragraph. Indeed, the morphism $\oint_{K_0}^{\Sigma_0}$ in Construction 5.1 is induced by the normalization in $\mathcal{S}_{K_0}^{\Sigma_0}$ of $\mathcal{S}_{K^\ddagger}^{\min}$; in other words, $\mathcal{S}_{K_0}^{\min}$ is the normalization in $\mathcal{S}_{K_0}^{\Sigma_0}$ of $\mathcal{S}_{K^\ddagger}^{\min}$: To see this, denote this normalization by $\mathcal{S}_1^{\min}$. The normalization induces a Stein factorization of $\oint_{K^\ddagger}^{\Sigma^\ddagger} \circ \iota$,

$$\mathcal{S}_{K_0}^{\Sigma_0} \xrightarrow{\pi_2} \mathcal{S}_1^{\min} \xrightarrow{\pi_1} \mathcal{S}_{K^\ddagger}^{\min}.$$

Since $\pi_2^*\pi_1^*\omega_{K^\ddagger}^{\min} \cong \iota^* \oint_{K^\ddagger}^{\Sigma^\ddagger,*} \omega_{K^\ddagger}^{\min}$, we have

$$\operatorname{Proj} \bigoplus_{k=0}^{\infty} \Gamma(\mathcal{S}_{K_0}^{\Sigma_0}, \omega_{K_0}^{\mathrm{tor},\otimes k}) \cong \operatorname{Proj} \bigoplus_{k=0}^{\infty} \Gamma(\mathcal{S}_1^{\min}, (\pi_1^*\omega_{K^\ddagger}^{\min})^{\otimes k}) \cong \mathcal{S}_1^{\min}.$$

The first isomorphism is due to the projection formula and the second one holds because π_1 is finite and therefore $\pi_1^*\omega_{K^\ddagger}^{\min}$ is ample.

Then the normalization in Sh_{K_0} of $\mathcal{S}_{K^\ddagger}^{\min}$ has a finite birational morphism to $\mathcal{S}_{K_0}^{\min}$ and is isomorphic to $\mathcal{S}_{K_0}^{\min}$ by Zariski's main theorem. Similarly, by functoriality of relative normalizations and Zariski's main theorem, $\mathcal{S}_{K_0}^{\min}$ is also isomorphic to the normalization in $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_0}^{\Sigma_0}$ or $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_0}^{\min}$ of $\mathcal{S}_{K^\ddagger}^{\min}$. □

5.1.3. Now we resume with the notation and conventions in §1.4.4 and §4.2. Fix any $\gamma \in G_0^{\mathrm{ad}}(\mathbb{Q})_1$. Recall that by Lemma 4.14 (cf. Lemma 4.10), there is a morphism $\gamma : \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0^\alpha},h} \to \mathcal{S}_{\gamma K_{\Phi_0^\alpha},h} = \mathcal{S}_{K_{\gamma\Phi_0^\alpha},h}$ extending the conjugation $\gamma : \mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_0^\alpha},h} \to \mathrm{Sh}_{\gamma K_{\Phi_0^\alpha},h}$ defined over the generic fiber.

As in §4.2.3, we choose a Hodge embedding $\iota^\gamma : (G_0, X_0) \hookrightarrow (G^{\ddagger,\gamma}, X^{\ddagger,\gamma})$. Define $\mathcal{S}_{\gamma K_0}^{\min} := \mathcal{S}_{\gamma K_0}^{\min}(G_0, X_0)$ to be the normalization in $\mathrm{Sh}_{\gamma K_0}(G_0, X_0)$ of $\mathcal{S}_{K^{\ddagger,\gamma}}(G^{\ddagger,\gamma}, X^{\ddagger,\gamma})$ (see the notation there).

Lemma 5.5. *The morphisms $\gamma : \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0^\alpha},h} \to \mathcal{S}_{\gamma K_{\Phi_0^\alpha},h}$ for integral models of Hodge-type Shimura varieties induce morphisms $\gamma : \mathcal{Z}_{[\Phi_0^\alpha],K_0^\alpha} \to \mathcal{Z}_{[\gamma\Phi_0^\alpha],\gamma K_0^\alpha}$ between strata of $\mathcal{S}_{K_0^\alpha}^{\min}$ and $\mathcal{S}_{\gamma K_0^\alpha}^{\min}$. These morphisms between strata and the morphism $\gamma : \mathrm{Sh}_{K_0}^{\min} \to \mathrm{Sh}_{\gamma K_0}^{\min}$ induced by conjugation of γ (see* [Pin90, 12.3]*) together (uniquely) induce a morphism between integral models of minimal compactifications $\gamma : \mathcal{S}_{K_0}^{\min} \to \mathcal{S}_{\gamma K_0}^{\min}$. In particular, the construction of $\mathcal{S}_{K_0}^{\min}$ and $\mathcal{S}_{\gamma K_0}^{\min}$ is independent of the choice of Hodge embedding as in* (STB_n).

Proof. For the first sentence, we can use [MP19, Thm. 5.2.11(4)] and check that $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_0^\alpha},h} \to \Delta_{\gamma\Phi_0^\alpha,\gamma K_0} \backslash \mathrm{Sh}_{\gamma K_{\Phi_0^\alpha},h}$ factors through $\Delta_{\Phi_0^\alpha,K_0} \backslash \mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_0^\alpha},h}$ and that $\gamma\Delta_{\Phi_0^\alpha,K}\gamma^{-1} = \Delta_{\gamma\Phi_0^\alpha,\gamma K}$. The second sentence follows from [MP19, Lem. A.3.4] (note that the proof of *loc. cit.* only used the condition that there are morphisms between strata that are compatible with a morphism over the generic fiber for the whole space). The third sentence also follows from [MP19, Lem. A.3.4] and Lemma 4.14. □

5.2. **Construction of minimal compactifications.** Our construction for minimal compactifications is similar to the method in §4.2 and §4.3 for toroidal compactifications. We will freely use the notation there.

5.2.1. We first begin with the construction of $\mathcal{S}_K^{\min}(G, X_b)$.

Construction 5.6. Since $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_0^\alpha}(G_0, X_0)$ is open dense in $\mathcal{S}_{K_0^\alpha}^{\min}(G_0, X_0)$, as Lemma 4.17, $\Delta_{\alpha K}(G_0, G)$ acts on $\mathcal{S}_{K_0^\alpha}^{\min}(G_0, X_0)$ through a finite group. Let

$$\mathcal{S}_K^{\min}(G, X_b) := \coprod_{\alpha \in I_{G/G_0}} \mathcal{S}_{K_0^\alpha}^{\min}(G_0, X_0)/\Delta_{\alpha K}(G_0, G). \tag{5.1}$$

The existence of $\Delta_{\alpha K}(G_0,G)$-action on $\mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K_0^\alpha}(G_0,X_0)$ follows from Lemma 5.5 above and [MP19, Prop. 5.2.13]. Since $\mathrm{Sh}_K(G,X_b)=\coprod_{\alpha\in I_{G/G_0}}\mathrm{Sh}_{K_0^\alpha}(G_0,X_0)/\Delta_{\alpha K}(G_0,G)$ and since the finite surjective morphism $\coprod_{\alpha\in I_{G/G_0}}\mathrm{Sh}^{\min}_{K_0^\alpha}(G_0,X_0)\to\mathrm{Sh}^{\min}_K(G,X_b)$ factors through a finite surjective morphism

$$\mathrm{Sh}^{\min}_{K_0^\alpha}(G_0,X_0)/\Delta_{\alpha K}(G_0,G)\to\mathrm{Sh}^{\min}_K(G,X_b),$$

the generic fiber of $\mathcal{S}^{\min}_K(G,X_b)$ is $\mathrm{Sh}^{\min}_K(G,X_b)$ by Zariski's main theorem. By construction and [Knu71, Ch. 4, Prop. 1.5], $\mathcal{S}^{\min}_K(G,X_b)$ is a normal scheme which is flat and projective over $\mathcal{O}'_{(v)}$.□

5.2.2. As in §4.3, the subscript $\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}$ denotes normalized base change to $\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}$. The diagram formed by taking quotient of $\Delta_{\alpha K}(G_0,G)$

$$\begin{array}{ccc}\coprod_{I_{G/G_0}}\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma_0^\alpha}_{K_0^\alpha,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}} & \xrightarrow{\coprod\not\phi^{\Sigma_0^\alpha}_{K_0^\alpha,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}} & \coprod_{I_{G/G_0}}\mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K_0^\alpha,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}\\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle\pi^b} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle\pi^b}\\ \mathcal{S}^{\Sigma}_{K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}} & \dashrightarrow{\scriptstyle\not\phi^{\Sigma}_{K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}} & \mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}\end{array}\tag{5.2}$$

induces a morphism $\not\phi^{\Sigma}_{K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}:\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma}_{K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}\to\mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$. (Again we can check the actions of $\Delta_{\alpha K}(G_0,G)$ on both source and target in the first row are compatible as they all contain a dense subscheme $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_0^\alpha}$.) This morphism is proper and surjective since both source and target are proper over $\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}$ and since all solid arrows in (5.2) are surjective.

Lemma 5.7. *The normalization of $\mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ in $\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma}_{K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ is $\mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ itself. The morphism $\not\phi^{\Sigma}_{K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ has geometrically connected fibers.*

Proof. Let $\mathcal{S}'$ be the normalization of $\mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ in $\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma}_{K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$. Taking Stein factorization commutes with flat base change; combing with the discussion in the first prargraph of §5.1.2, we check over generic fiber that the induced finite map $\mathcal{S}'\to\mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ is birational. We then have the conclusion by Zariski's main theorem and [Sta24, Thm. 0A1B]. □

5.2.3. Fix any index $\alpha\in I_{G/G_0}$. Suppose that $(\Phi_0^\alpha,\sigma_0^\alpha)$ maps to (Φ,σ) as before.

Denote by $\not\phi_{[(\Phi_0^\alpha,\sigma_0^\alpha)],K_0^\alpha}$ the restriction $\not\phi^{\Sigma_0^\alpha}_{K_0^\alpha}|_{\mathcal{Z}_{[(\Phi_0^\alpha,\sigma_0^\alpha)],K_0^\alpha}}$. Similar conventions will be applied to restrictions to other strata or their (normalized) base changes.

By Theorem 5.2 and (5.2), the image of $\pi^{b,-1}(\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)],K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}})=$

$$\coprod_{\alpha\in I_{G/G_0}}\coprod_{\pi^b(g_0^\alpha)\alpha\sim g^b}\coprod_{[\sigma_0^\alpha]\in[\sigma]_{ZP}}(\Delta_{\alpha K}(G_0,G)\mathcal{Z}_{[(\Phi_0^\alpha,\sigma_0^\alpha)],K_0^\alpha,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}})$$

under $\coprod\not\phi^{\Sigma_0^\alpha}_{K_0^\alpha,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ is

$$\coprod_{\alpha\in I_{G/G_0}}\coprod_{\pi^b(g_0^\alpha)\alpha\sim g^b}(\Delta_{\alpha K}(G_0,G)\mathcal{Z}_{[\Phi_0^\alpha],K_0^\alpha,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}).$$

Construction 5.8. From the paragraph above, it makes sense to define

$$\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi)],K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}\cong\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^a(\Phi)],K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}:=\coprod_{\alpha\in I_{G/G_0}}\coprod_{\pi^b(g_0^\alpha)\alpha\sim g^b}(\Delta_{\alpha K}(G_0,G)\mathcal{Z}_{[\Phi_0^\alpha],K_0^\alpha,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}})/\Delta_{\alpha K}(G_0,G).$$

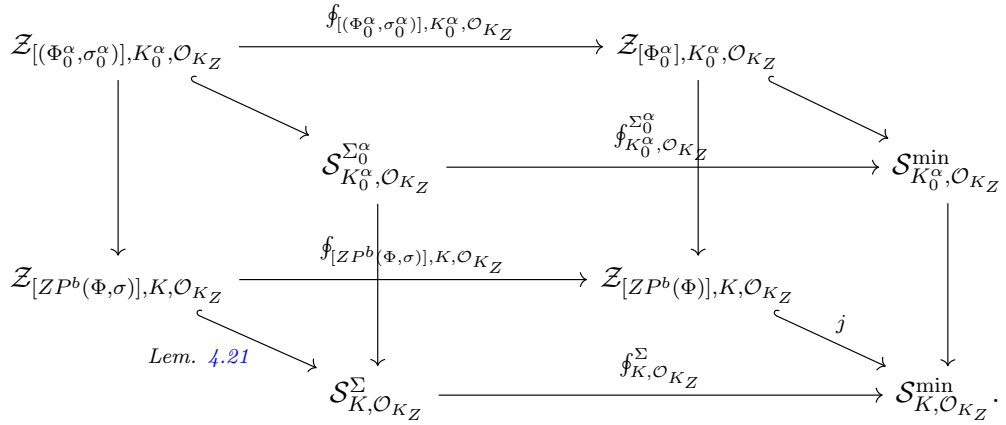
Define $\not\phi_{[ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)],K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ to be the projection induced by the restriction $\not\phi_{[(\Phi_0^\alpha,\sigma_0^\alpha)],K_0^\alpha,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$.

Lemma 5.9. *The following statements about $\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi)],K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ are true:*

(1) The generic fiber of the scheme above is $\mathrm{Z}_{[ZP^a(\Phi)],K,E'_{K_Z}}\cong\mathrm{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi)],K,E'_{K_Z}}$.

(2) It is a locally closed normal flat subscheme of $\mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ *fitting into the commutative diagram*

(5.3)



Proof. The first statement follows from Proposition 4.19 and Corollary 1.44. The scheme $\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi)],K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ is normal and is flat over $\mathcal{O}'_{(v)}$ by construction. The bottom square is induced by quotient construction, so (5.3) is commutative. We now show j is an embedding. Denote the image of j by $[\mathcal{Z}_\Phi]$; it is a locally closed subscheme by induction on the dimension of strata. Moreover, $j : \mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi)],K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}} \to [\mathcal{Z}_\Phi]$ is finite, surjective and a bijection on geometric points by construction. From [MP19, Cor. 5.2.8], we see that for any geometric point $\bar{y}$ on $\mathcal{Z}_{[\Phi_0^\alpha],K_0^\alpha,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$, there is a structural morphism $(\mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K_0^\alpha,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}})^\wedge_{\bar{y}} \to (\mathcal{Z}_{[\Phi_0^\alpha],K_0^\alpha,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}})^\wedge_{\bar{y}}$ whose pre-composition with the morphism $(\mathcal{Z}_{[\Phi_0^\alpha],K_0^\alpha,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}})^\wedge_{\bar{y}} \to (\mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K_0^\alpha,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}})^\wedge_{\bar{y}}$ induced by the embedding $\mathcal{Z}_{[\Phi_0^\alpha],K_0^\alpha,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}} \to \mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K_0^\alpha,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ is an identity.

For any geometric point $\bar{x}$ on $\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi)],K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ mapping to $[\bar{x}]$ on $[\mathcal{Z}_\Phi]$, we have a sequence (cf. Lemma 4.21)

$$(\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi)],K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}})^\wedge_{\bar{x}} \to (\mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}})^\wedge_{[\bar{x}]} \to (\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi)],K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}})^\wedge_{\bar{x}}$$

who factors through $([\mathcal{Z}_\Phi])^\wedge_{[\bar{x}]}$ with composition an identity. This forces j to be an embedding. □

From the proof above, we have

Lemma 5.10. *For any* $\bar{x} \in \mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)],K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}(\overline{\mathbb{F}}_p)$*, the homomorphism*

$$\widehat{\mathcal{O}}_{\mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}},\bar{x}} \to \widehat{\mathcal{O}}_{\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi)],K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}},\bar{x}}$$

between complete local rings induced by the embedding $\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)],K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}} \hookrightarrow \mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ *admits a section*

$$\widehat{\mathcal{O}}_{\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi)],K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}},\bar{x}} \to \widehat{\mathcal{O}}_{\mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}},\bar{x}}$$

such that the pre-composition of the homomorphism with the section is an identity.

Recall that we constructed

$$\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,h} := \coprod_{\beta\in I_\Phi} \gamma_\beta \cdot \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_\beta},h}/\Delta_{K^\beta}(P_0, ZP_\Phi)$$

in Construction 4.23.

Lemma 5.11. *There is an isomorphism* $\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi)],K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}} \cong \Delta^{ZP}_{\Phi,K}\backslash\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,h,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$.

Proof. This follows from the same proof as Proposition 4.32. □

Then $\phi_{[ZP^b(\Phi,\sigma)],K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ is identified with the canonical projection $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,\sigma,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}} \to \Delta^{ZP}_{\Phi,K}\backslash\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,h,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ by density and the corresponding result in characteristic zero theory.

5.2.4. Since $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^a_\Phi,h,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}} \cong \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,h,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$, $\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^a(\Phi)],K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}} \cong \mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi)],K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ and $\mathcal{S}^\Sigma_K(G,X_a)_{\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}} \cong \mathcal{S}^\Sigma_K(G,X_b)_{\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$, let $\mathcal{S}^{\min}_K(G,X_a)_{\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}} := \mathcal{S}^{\min}_K(G,X_b)_{\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$.

From the Galois action of $\mathrm{Gal}(E'_{K_Z}/E')$ on strata with subscript b, we can obtain the action of it for corresponding strata with subscript a as follows: Let $r_b : \mathrm{Gal}(E'_{K_Z}/E') \times \mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi)],K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}} \to \mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi)],K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ be the action of $\mathrm{Gal}(E'_{K_Z}/E')$ on $\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi)],K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ which determines the descent datum of $\mathrm{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi)],K,E'_{K_Z}}$ from E'_{K_Z} to E'. Define $r_a : \mathrm{Gal}(E'_{K_Z}/E') \times \mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi)],K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}} \to \mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^a(\Phi)],K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ by sending each $\sigma \in \mathrm{Gal}(E'_{K_Z}/E')$ to $r_a(\sigma) := r_{E',K_{Z,p}}(Z,\{c\})(\sigma) \circ r_b(\sigma) = r_b(\sigma) \circ r_{E',K_{Z,p}}(Z,\{c\})(\sigma)$. Note that we can do this since the action of $Z(\mathbb{A}_f)$ is well defined by Proposition 4.24 and Lemma 5.11. By [MP19, Lem. A.3.4], there is an action of $Z(\mathbb{A}_f)$ on $\mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ extending the Hecke action on $\mathrm{Sh}^{\min}_K$ and the strata $\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi)],K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$. Note that, to run the proof in [MP19, Lem. A.3.4], one only needs the condition that there are morphisms between strata that are compatible with a morphism over the generic fiber for the whole $\mathrm{Sh}^{\min}_K$.

We now do the quotient of $\mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ and $\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi)],K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ by $\mathrm{Gal}(E'_{K_Z}/E')$ via r_a.

Construction 5.12. Let $\mathcal{S}^{\min}_K(G,X_a)$ (resp. $\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^a(\Phi)],K}$) be the quotient of $\mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$ (resp. $\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^b(\Phi)],K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}}$) by $\mathrm{Gal}(E'_{K_Z}/E')$ via r_a. Then $\mathcal{S}^{\min}_K(G,X_a)$ is normal and is projective (see [Knu71, Ch. 4, Prop. 1.5]) and flat over $\mathcal{O}'_{(v)}$, and $\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^a(\Phi)],K}$ is normal and is flat over $\mathcal{O}'_{(v)}$.

Proposition 5.13. *Taking the quotient by* $\mathrm{Gal}(E'_{K_Z}/E')$ *via* r_a *induces a proper morphism* $\oint^\Sigma_K : \mathcal{S}^\Sigma_K(G,X_a) \to \mathcal{S}^{\min}_K(G,X_a)$ *with geometrically connected fibers. The normal scheme* $\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^a(\Phi)],K}$ *is a locally closed subscheme of* $\mathcal{S}^{\min}_K(G,X_a)$.

The restriction $\oint_{[ZP^a(\Phi)],K}$ *of* $\oint^\Sigma_K$ *to* $\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^a(\Phi,\sigma)],K}$ *is isomorphic to the natural projection* $\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^a(\Phi,\sigma)],K} \cong \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^a_\Phi,\sigma} \to \Delta^{ZP}_{\Phi,K} \backslash \mathcal{S}_{K_\Phi,h} \cong \mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^a(\Phi)],K}$.

Proof. Since this is still doing a quotient, all arguments will be similar to what we have seen. To show $\oint^\Sigma_K$ has geometrically connected fibers, we let $\mathcal{S}''$ be the normalization in $\mathcal{S}^\Sigma_K(G,X_a)$ of $\mathcal{S}^{\min}_K(G,X_a)$. But the induced morphism $\mathcal{S}'' \to \mathcal{S}^{\min}_K(G,X_a)$ between normal schemes is finite and birational. We have the conclusion by Zariski's main theorem and [Sta24, Thm. 0A1B].

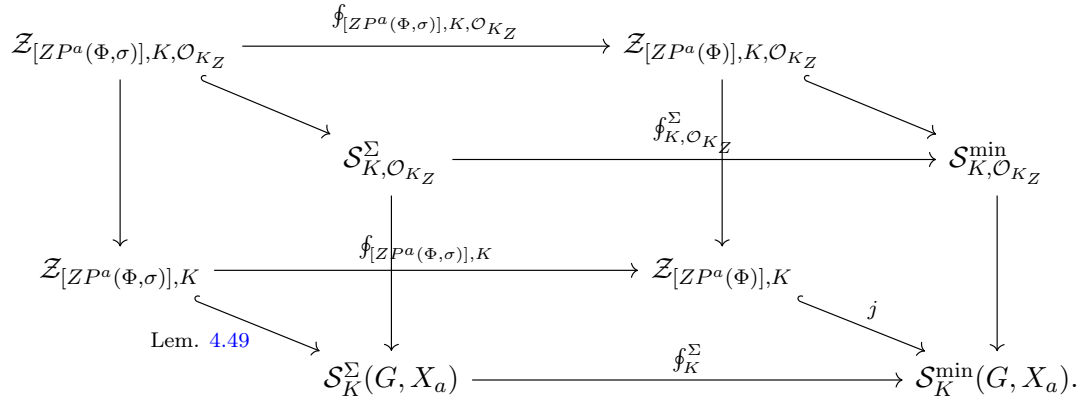
The quotient process induces a quasi-finite birational morphism $j : \mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^a(\Phi)],K} \to \mathcal{S}^{\min}_K(G,X_a)$ which is a bijection over geometric points onto its image $[\mathcal{Z}'']$. By induction on the dimension of strata, this image $[\mathcal{Z}'']$ is locally closed in $\mathcal{S}^{\min}_K(G,X_a)$. To show that j is an embedding, we again reduce the question to studying complete local rings at geometric points. By Lemma 5.10, for any geometric point $\bar{z} \in \mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^a(\Phi)],K}(\overline{\mathbb{F}}_p)$ mapping to $[\bar{z}] \in \mathcal{S}^{\min}_K(G,X_a)(\overline{\mathbb{F}}_p)$, the homomorphism between complete local rings induced by j

$$\widehat{\mathcal{O}}_{\mathcal{S}^{\min}_K(G,X_a),[\bar{z}]} \cong (\widehat{\mathcal{O}}_{\mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}},[\bar{z}]})^{\mathrm{Gal}(E'_{K_Z}/E')} \to \widehat{\mathcal{O}}_{\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^a(\Phi)],K},\bar{z}}$$

admits a section $\widehat{\mathcal{O}}_{\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^a(\Phi)],K,\bar{z}}} \to \widehat{\mathcal{O}}_{\mathcal{S}^{\min}_K(G,X_a),[\bar{z}]}$. This forces $\widehat{\mathcal{O}}_{\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^a(\Phi)],K},\bar{z}} \to \widehat{\mathcal{O}}_{[\mathcal{Z}''],[\bar{z}]}$ to be an isomorphism. Here $\widehat{\mathcal{O}}_{\mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K,\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}},[\bar{z}]}$ denotes the complete semi-local ring at the inverse image of $[\bar{z}]$ under the quotient map.

The second paragraph follows from the following diagram, which is commutative since it is so over the generic fiber:

(5.4)



□

5.2.5. Recall that by Corollary 1.37 and our construction, K is chosen such that $\mathrm{Sh}^{\min}_{K_2}(G_2,X_2)\to \mathrm{Sh}^{\min}_{K}(G,X_a)$ and $\mathrm{Z}_{[\Phi_2],K_2}\to \mathrm{Z}_{[\Phi],K}$ are open and closed embeddings for each $\Phi_2\mapsto\Phi$.

Construction 5.14. As the final step, construct $\mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K_2}(G_2,X_2)$ as the normalization of $\mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K}(G,X_a)$ in $\mathrm{Sh}^{\min}_{K_2}$, and construct $\mathcal{Z}_{[\Phi_2],K_2}$ as the normalization of $\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^a(\Phi)],K}$ in $\mathrm{Z}_{[\Phi_2],K_2}$.

5.3. **Main theorem on minimal compactifications.** Let us now summarize the main theorem:

Theorem 5.15. *With the conventions in Theorem 4.39, there is a normal scheme $\mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K_2}$ that is projective and flat over $\mathcal{O}_2$, which satisfies the following properties:*

(5.15.1) The scheme $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}$ is an open dense subscheme of $\mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K_2}$ with a natural open embedding $J^{\min}:\mathcal{S}_{K_2}\hookrightarrow\mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K_2}$.

(5.15.2) The compactification $\mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K_2}$ has a stratification of locally closed normal subschemes

$$\mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K_2}=\coprod_{[\Phi_2]\in \mathrm{Cusp}_{K_2}(G_2,X_2)}\mathcal{Z}_{[\Phi_2],K_2},$$

such that, for each $[\Phi_2]$, $\mathcal{Z}_{[\Phi_2],K_2}$ is flat over $\mathcal{O}_2$ extending the stratum $\mathrm{Z}_{[\Phi_2],K_2}$ defined in Pink's theory. The closure $\overline{\mathcal{Z}}_{[\Phi_2],K_2}$ of $\mathcal{Z}_{[\Phi_2],K_2}$ in $\mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K_2}$ satisfies $\overline{\mathcal{Z}}_{[\Phi_2],K_2}=\coprod_{[\Phi_2']\preceq[\Phi_2]}\mathcal{Z}_{[\Phi_2'],K_2}$.

(5.15.3) There is a proper surjective morphism

$$\oint^{\Sigma_2}_{K_2}:\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma_2}_{K_2}\longrightarrow\mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K_2}$$

with geometrically connected fibers such that $\oint_{K_2}\circ J^{\Sigma_2}=J^{\min}$. The morphism $\oint^{\Sigma_2}_{K_2}$ is compatible with stratifications on the source and the target in the sense that

$$\oint^{\Sigma_2,-1}_{K_2}(\mathcal{Z}_{[\Phi_2],K_2})=\coprod_{\Upsilon_2\in\mathrm{Cusp}_{K_2}(G_2,X_2,\Sigma_2)\mapsto[\Phi_2]}\mathcal{Z}_{\Upsilon_2,K_2}.$$

(5.15.4) For each $[\Phi_2]$, $\mathcal{Z}_{[\Phi_2],K_2}$ is isomorphic to $\Delta_{\Phi_2,K_2}\backslash\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2},h}$. The restriction of $\oint^{\Sigma_2}_{K_2}$ to any stratum $\mathcal{Z}_{\Upsilon_2,K_2}$ of $\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma_2}_{K_2}$ labeled by $\Upsilon_2=[(\Phi_2,\sigma_2)]$ is the natural projection (see (4.22) for conventions)

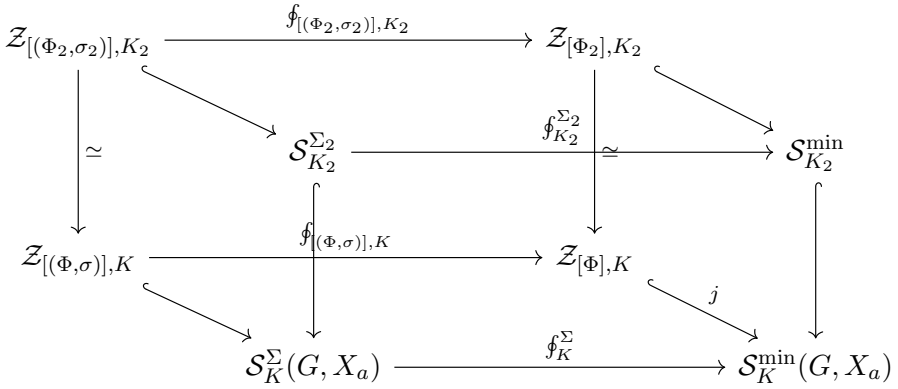
$$\mathcal{Z}_{\Upsilon,K_2}\cong\Delta^{\circ}_{\Phi_2,K_2}\backslash\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2},\sigma_2}\xrightarrow{\mathbf{p}_2\circ\mathbf{p}_1}\Delta^{\circ}_{\Phi_2,K_2}\backslash\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2},h}\to\Delta_{\Phi_2,K_2}\backslash\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2},h}\cong\mathcal{Z}_{[\Phi_2],K_2}.$$

Proof. It suffices to show all statements above over $\mathcal{O}'_{(v)}$. Let $\mathcal{Z}_{[\Phi],K}$ be the normalization of $\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^a(\Phi)],K}$ in $\mathrm{Z}_{[\Phi],K}$. By Corollary 1.44, $\mathcal{Z}_{[\Phi],K}$ is an open and closed subscheme of $\mathcal{Z}_{[ZP^a(\Phi)],K}$. By construction, $\mathcal{Z}_{[\Phi_2],K_2} \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathcal{Z}_{[\Phi],K}$, and $\mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K_2} \hookrightarrow \mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K}$ is an open and closed embedding. So $\mathcal{Z}_{[\Phi_2],K_2}$ is a locally closed normal subscheme of $\mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K_2}$ and is flat over $\mathcal{O}'_{(v)}$ for each $[\Phi_2]$. So (5.15.1) is proved.

It follows from Proposition 1.41, Proposition 5.13 and Zariski's main theorem that $\Delta_{\Phi_2,K_2}\backslash\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2},h} \cong \mathcal{Z}_{[\Phi_2],K_2}$.

The morphism $\oint^{\Sigma_2}_{K_2}$ and its restriction $\oint_{[(\Phi_2,\sigma)],K_2}$ to $\mathcal{Z}_{[\Phi_2,\sigma_2],K_2}$ is given by the following diagram

(5.5)



by pulling back the bottom square along $\mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K_2} \hookrightarrow \mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K}(G,X_a)$. Then (5.15.3) and (5.15.4) follow. For (5.15.2), it remains to show the statement about the closure of a stratum. But this follows from (5.15.3) and (4.39.2). □

5.4. **Pink's formula.** We show Pink's formula when $K_{2,p}$ is an intersection of n quasi-parahoric subgroups.

5.4.1. It is not hard to verify the following statements.

Lemma 5.16. *Under Assumption (4.29), the natural quotient $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^a_\Phi,h} \to \Delta^{ZP}_{\Phi,K}\backslash\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^a_\Phi,h}$ is finite étale.*

Proof. By assumption and Lemma 4.57, it suffices to prove the statement for $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,h} \to \Delta^{ZP}_{\Phi,K}\backslash\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,h}$. This follows from Part 3 of Lemma 4.25, together with the fact that

$$\Delta^{ZP}_{\Phi,K}\backslash\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^b_\Phi,h} \cong \coprod_{\alpha\in I_{G/G_0}} \coprod_{\pi(g_0^\alpha)\alpha\sim g^b} \Delta_{g_0^\alpha g_\alpha K}(P_{\Phi_0^\alpha},G)\backslash\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0^\alpha},h}$$

from the proof of Proposition 4.32 (or Lemma 5.11). □

We immediately obtain that

Lemma 5.17 (cf. [LS18a, Assumption 4.3.1])**.** *Under Assumption (4.29), $\overline{\mathcal{S}}^*_{K_{\Phi_2}} \to \mathcal{S}^*_{K_{\Phi_2},h}$ is an abelian scheme torsor and $\mathcal{S}^*_{K_{\Phi_2},h} \to \Delta_{\Phi_2,K_2}\backslash\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2},h}$ is finite étale.*

Proof. This follows from Lemma 5.16 and Proposition 4.59. □

Now we convert the left action of Δ_{Φ_2,K_2} on $\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2},h}$ and $\mathcal{S}^*_{K_{\Phi_2},h}$ to a right action to match the conventions in [Pin92]. Following [Pin92, 3.7.4], denote

$$H_{\Phi_2,K_2} := g_{\Phi_2}K_2g_{\Phi_2}^{-1} \cap \mathrm{Stab}_{Q_{\Phi_2}(\mathbb{Q})}(D_{\Phi_2,h})P_{\Phi_2}(\mathbb{A}_f),$$

$$H^C_{\Phi_2,K_2} := g_{\Phi_2}K_2g_{\Phi_2}^{-1} \cap \mathrm{Cent}_{Q_{\Phi_2}(\mathbb{Q})}(D_{\Phi_2,h})W_{\Phi_2}(\mathbb{A}_f),$$

and

$$K_{W,\Phi_2} := g_{\Phi_2}K_2g_{\Phi_2}^{-1} \cap W_{\Phi_2}(\mathbb{A}_f).$$

Recall that any representative $(h,\gamma)\in P_{\Phi_2}(\mathbb{A}_f)\times \mathrm{Stab}_{Q_{\Phi_2}(\mathbb{Q})}(D_{\Phi_2})$ of Δ_{Φ_2,K_2} acts on $\mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_2}}\to \overline{\mathrm{Sh}}_{K_{\Phi_2}}\to \mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_2},h}$ by the left multiplication of γ, which is equivalent to the left conjugation of γ followed by the right action of h; converting it to a right action means a right conjugation of γ^{-1} followed by the right action of h. For any $(\gamma^{-1},h)\in \mathrm{Stab}_{Q_{\Phi_2}(\mathbb{Q})}(D_{\Phi_2})\times P_{\Phi_2}(\mathbb{A}_f)$ such that $\gamma^{-1}h\in H_{\Phi_2,K_2}$, we define a right action of this pair given by the converted right action we just mentioned. It is easy to verify that for any $p\in P_{\Phi_2}(\mathbb{Q})=\mathrm{Stab}_{Q_{\Phi_2}(\mathbb{Q})}(D_{\Phi_2})\cap P_{\Phi_2}(\mathbb{A}_f)$, the action of $(\gamma^{-1}p^{-1},ph)$ is equal to that of (γ^{-1},h). Hence, the left action of Δ_{Φ_2,K_2} is equivalent to the right action of $H_{\Phi_2,K_2}/K_{\Phi_2}$.

5.4.2. Now we state Pink's formula for general abelian-type Shimura varieties. Note that, since the assumption [Pin92, 3.1.5] that the connected center of G_2 is an extension of a split $\mathbb{Q}$-torus and a compact-type torus is not true for some abelian type Shimura data that are not of Hodge type, the formulation is slightly different from those in [Pin92] and [LS18a].

For any connected algebraic group H over $\mathbb{Q}$, define H^c to be the $\mathbb{Q}$-group formed by the quotient of H by $Z_{ac}(H)$, where $Z_{ac}(H)$ is the minimal $\mathbb{Q}$-subgroup in the connected multiplicative center $Z(H)^\circ$ of H such that $Z(H)^\circ/Z_{ac}(H)$ has equal $\mathbb{Q}$-rank and $\mathbb{R}$-rank. (Here, the subscript "ac" means "anti-cuspidal".) As remarked in [KSZ21, footnote p.34], if we assume that H is reductive and splits over a CM field, the definition coincides with that in [Mil90, Ch. III].

By [Del79] and [KSZ21, 1.5.8.2], we know that

$$\mathrm{Gal}(\mathrm{Sh}(G_2,X_2)/\mathrm{Sh}_{K_2}(G_2,X_2))\cong \frac{K_2}{Z_{G_2}(\mathbb{Q})^-\cap K_2},$$

where $Z_{G_2}(\mathbb{Q})^-\cap K_2$ is trivial when K_2 is neat and Z_{G_2} is isogenous to a product of $\mathbb{Q}$-split tori and compact-type tori.

We check if the Hecke actions away from p are finite étale:

Lemma 5.18. *For all cases and for $?=*$ or $\emptyset$, consider prime-to-p Hecke actions on $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}$, $\mathcal{S}^?_{K_{\Phi_2}}$, $\overline{\mathcal{S}}^?_{K_{\Phi_2}}$ and $\mathcal{S}^?_{K_{\Phi_2},h}$. More precisely, for any normal open compact subgroup $K_2^{p,\prime}\subset K_2^p$, denote by $K_{\Phi_2}^{p,\prime}:=P_{\Phi_2}(\mathbb{A}_f^p)\cap g_{\Phi_2}K_2^{p,\prime}g_{\Phi_2}^{-1}$ a normal subgroup of K_{Φ_2}. We have the following statements:*

1. *If $K_{2,p}$ satisfies Assumption (4.29), the natural morphisms $\mathcal{S}_{K_{2,p}K_2^{p,\prime}}\to\mathcal{S}_{K_{2,p}K_2^p}$, $\mathcal{S}^?_{K_{\Phi_2,p}K_{\Phi_2}^{p,\prime}}\to\mathcal{S}^?_{K_{\Phi_2,p}K_{\Phi_2}^p}$, $\overline{\mathcal{S}}^?_{K_{\Phi_2,p}K_{\Phi_2}^{p,\prime}}\to\overline{\mathcal{S}}^?_{K_{\Phi_2,p}K_{\Phi_2}^p}$ and $\mathcal{S}^?_{K_{\Phi_2,p}K_{\Phi_2}^{p,\prime},h}\to\mathcal{S}^?_{K_{\Phi_2,p}K_{\Phi_2}^p,h}$ are all finite étale for any neat open compact subgroup K_2^p and $K_{\Phi_2}^p$.*
2. *In general, the statement above holds for sufficiently small K_2^p and $K_{\Phi_2}^p$.*

Proof. As in the proof of Lemma 4.48, by adjusting prime-to-p level group, it is enough to show the statement for $?=*$, and this is further reduced to the statement for $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^a}$, $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^a}$ and $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^a,h}$.

Write $\widetilde{K}_\Phi^a$ as $\widetilde{K}_{\Phi,p}^a\widetilde{K}_\Phi^{a,p}$. If $K_{2,p}$ satisfies (4.29), by Lemma 4.57, the first part follows directly from Lemma 4.25 by reducing to the related statement about $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^b}$.

Now we show the second part. Denote $\widetilde{K}_{\Phi,p}^+:=ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{Q}_p)\cap g_\Phi K_p^+ g_\Phi^{-1}$ where K_p^+ is defined in §4.3.3 above. Let $\widetilde{K}_\Phi^{a,p,\prime}$ be a normal open compact subgroup of $\widetilde{K}_\Phi^{a,p}$. Pick any $g^p\in\widetilde{K}_\Phi^{a,p}$ such that the action of it on $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi^{a,\prime}}:=\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_{\Phi,p}^a\widetilde{K}_\Phi^{a,p,\prime}}$ is not free on every geometric point. By Lemma 4.25, the Hecke action of $g^p\in\widetilde{K}_\Phi^{a,p}$ on $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}_{\Phi,p}^{+,a}\widetilde{K}_\Phi^{a,p,\prime}}$ is not free if and only if its action on $\mathrm{Sh}_{\widetilde{K}_{\Phi,p}^{+,a}\widetilde{K}_\Phi^{a,p,\prime}}$ is trivial. Writing $\widetilde{K}_{\Phi,p}^{+,a}\widetilde{K}_\Phi^{a,p,\prime}=:\widetilde{K}_\Phi^{+,a,\prime}$, the last condition is equivalent to $g^p\in\mathrm{Cent}_{ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi)\widetilde{K}_\Phi^{+,a,\prime}$. Replacing g^p with a multiplication of it by an element in $\widetilde{K}_\Phi^{a,p,\prime}$, assume that $g^p\in\mathrm{Cent}_{ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi)\widetilde{K}_{\Phi,p}^{+,a}$. Then g^p comes from an element $c\in\mathrm{Cent}_{ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi)$ and $c\in\mathrm{Cent}_{ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi)\cap\widetilde{K}_\Phi^{+,a}=\mathrm{Cent}_{ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi)\cap\widetilde{K}_\Phi^aK_{Z,p}^+$. That is, the prime-to-$p$ part of c, viewed as an $\mathbb{A}_f^p$-point, is equal to g^p.

Recall that $\mathrm{Cent}_{ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi)$ is multiplicative and recall Chevalley's theorem [Che51, Thm. 1]. We have that

$$\mathrm{Cent}_{ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi)\cap \widetilde{K}^a_\Phi K^+_{Z,p} = \mathrm{Cent}_{ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi)\cap \widetilde{K}^a_\Phi$$

when $\widetilde{K}^{a,p}_\Phi$ is sufficiently small. Choose such a sufficiently small $\widetilde{K}^{a,p}_\Phi$, we have that the action of g^p is trivial on all geometric points of $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^{a,\prime}_\Phi}$.

The proof for $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{K^a_\Phi}$ and $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^a_\Phi,h}$ is exactly the same as above. □

Fix a prime number $\ell \neq p$. Denote by $\mathcal{G}(K_2)_l$ the quotient

$$\frac{K_2}{(K_2\cap G_2(\mathbb{A}^l_f))(Z_{G_2}(\mathbb{Q})^-\cap K_2)};$$

this is a profinite group with a natural homomorphism to $G^c_2(\mathbb{Q}_l)$. Let ξ be a continuous representation of $\mathcal{G}(K_2)_l$ on a finite-dimensional $\overline{\mathbb{Q}}_l$-vector space V_ξ. By [KSZ21, 1.5.2] (see also [LS18c, Lem. 3.6] and [HT01, III. 2]), there is a lisse $\overline{\mathbb{Q}}_l$-sheaf $\mathcal{V}_\xi$ on $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}$ associated with V_ξ.

Now assume that ξ is an algebraic $\overline{\mathbb{Q}}_l$-representation of G^c_2 on a finite-dimensional $\overline{\mathbb{Q}}_l$-vector space V_ξ, then ξ induces a continuous representation $\mathcal{G}(K_2)_l \to G^c_2(\mathbb{Q}_l) \xrightarrow{\xi} \mathrm{GL}(V_\xi)$, which we abusively denote by ξ. We attach a lisse $\overline{\mathbb{Q}}_l$-sheaf $\mathcal{V}_\xi$ to V_ξ as in the last paragraph.

On the other hand, the group $H^C_{\Phi_2,K_2}$ is by definition the kernel of the right action of H_{Φ_2,K_2} on $\mathrm{Sh}_{\Phi_2,h} := \varprojlim_{K_2} \mathrm{Sh}_{K_{\Phi_2},h}$. There is a continuous representation of H_{Φ_2,K_2} on V_ξ induced by

$$\xi_{\Phi_2} : H_{\Phi_2,K_2} \hookrightarrow g_{\Phi_2}K_2g^{-1}_{\Phi_2} \xrightarrow[\sim]{g^{-1}_{\Phi_2}(\cdot)g_{\Phi_2}} K_2 \hookrightarrow G_2(\mathbb{A}_f) \to G^c_2(\mathbb{Q}_l) \xrightarrow{\xi} \mathrm{GL}(V_\xi).$$

Viewing V_ξ as a H_{Φ_2,K_2}-representation, it makes sense to define the following object

$$V^\natural_{\xi,\Phi_2,K_2} := R\mathrm{Inv}(H^C_{\Phi_2,K_2}, R\mathrm{Inv}(\mathrm{Lie}\, W_{\Phi_2}(\mathbb{Q}_l), V_\xi))$$

in the derived category of bounded complexes of finite-dimensional $\overline{\mathbb{Q}}_l$-vector spaces with $H_{\Phi_2,K_2}/H^C_{\Phi_2,K_2}$-actions. By Part 1 of Lemma 5.18, we can and will denote by $\mathcal{V}_{\xi,\Phi_2,K_2}$ the lisse $\overline{\mathbb{Q}}_l$-sheaf on $\mathcal{Z}_{\Phi_2,K_2}$ associated with the $H_{\Phi_2,K_2}/H^C_{\Phi_2,K_2}$-representation $V^\natural_{\xi,\Phi_2,K_2}$.

From Theorem 5.15, we have a diagram

$$\mathcal{S}_{K_2} \xhookrightarrow{J^{\min}} \mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K_2} \xhookleftarrow{i_{[\Phi_2],K_2}} \mathcal{Z}_{[\Phi_2],K_2}.$$

Proposition 5.19 (Pink; cf. [Pin92, Thm. 4.2.1] and [LS18a, Thm. 4.3.10])**.** *Under Assumption (4.29), for any algebraic representation ξ of G^c_2 on a finite-dimensional $\overline{\mathbb{Q}}_l$-vector space V_ξ, we have*

$$i^*_{[\Phi_2],K_2}RJ^{\min}_*\mathcal{V}_\xi \cong \mathcal{V}^\natural_{\xi,\Phi_2,K_2}. \tag{5.6}$$

Proof. Pink's formula (5.6) can be shown by the same argument in [Pin92, 4.3-4.7] with the geometric input developed in this article, and we will explain it for the convenience of the readers.

There is a finite extension F_l of $\mathbb{Q}_l$ and an $\mathcal{O}_{F_l}$-lattice $W_\xi \subset V_\xi$ that is stable under $\mathcal{G}(K_2)_l$ such that we can write V_ξ as $\overline{\mathbb{Q}}_l \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_{F_l}} \varprojlim_n W_\xi/l^nW_\xi$ and $V_{\xi,n} := W_\xi/l^nW_\xi$ are continuous $\mathbb{Z}/l^n\mathbb{Z}$-representations of $\mathcal{G}(K_2)_l$. Let $\mathcal{V}_{\xi,n}$ be the $\mathbb{Z}/l^n\mathbb{Z}$-sheaf on $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}$ attached to $V_{\xi,n}$. Let $\mathcal{Z}^{\mathrm{tor}}_{[\Phi_2],K_2}$ be the preimage $\not\phi^{\Sigma_2,-1}_{K_2}(\mathcal{Z}_{[\Phi_2],K_2})$. There is a commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
\mathcal{S}_{K_2} & \xhookrightarrow{J^{\Sigma_2}} & \mathcal{S}^{\Sigma_2}_{K_2} & \xhookleftarrow{i^{\mathrm{tor}}_{[\Phi_2],K_2}} & \mathcal{Z}^{\mathrm{tor}}_{[\Phi_2],K_2} \\
& \searrow^{J^{\min}} & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \not\phi^{\Sigma_2}_{K_2}} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \not\phi^{\Sigma_2}_{K_2}} \\
& & \mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K_2} & \xhookleftarrow{i_{[\Phi_2],K_2}} & \mathcal{Z}_{[\Phi_2],K_2}.
\end{array}$$

By Theorem (5.15.3), $\oint_{K_2}^{\Sigma_2}$ is proper. By proper base change, there is a canonical isomorphism

$$i^*_{[\Phi_2],K_2} RJ^{\min}_* \mathcal{V}_{\xi,n} \cong R \oint_{K_{2,*}}^{\Sigma_2} i^{\mathrm{tor},*}_{[\Phi_2],K_2} RJ^{\Sigma_2}_* \mathcal{V}_{\xi,n}.$$

The argument in [Pin92, Prop. 4.4.3] still works thanks to [Pin92, 2.7] and Proposition 4.53. We deduce a canonical isomorphism

$$R \oint_{K_{2,*}}^{\Sigma_2} i^{\mathrm{tor},*}_{[\Phi_2],K_2} RJ^{\Sigma_2}_* \mathcal{V}_{\xi,n} \cong R \oint_{K_{2,*}}^{\Sigma_2} R\mathrm{Inv}(H_{\Phi_2,K_2}, V_{\xi,n} \otimes \varinjlim_{U_l} \phi_{U_l,*}\mathbb{Z}),$$

where $U_l \subset G_2(\mathbb{Q}_l)$ runs over a cofinal system of sufficiently small open compact subgroups of $G_2(\mathbb{Q}_l)$ such that $K_2^p \cap G_2(\mathbb{A}_f^{p,l}) U_l \subset K_2^p$, and $\phi_{U_l} : \mathcal{Z}^{\mathrm{tor}}_{[\Phi_2],K_{2,p}K_2^{p,l}U_l} \to \mathcal{Z}^{\mathrm{tor}}_{[\Phi_2],K_2}$ is the natural transition map.

The $\mathcal{S}^*_{K_{\Phi_2}} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}^*_{K_{\Phi_2}} \to \mathcal{S}^*_{K_{\Phi_2},h} \to \Delta_{\Phi_2,K_2} \backslash \mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_2},h}$ in our convention corresponds to $\Xi \to C \to C^{\mathrm{st}} \to \mathsf{Z}$ in the conventions of [LS18a, Sec. 4.3]; all terms and morphisms in this sequence satisfy [LS18a, Prop. 2.1.2 and Assumption 4.3.1(4)] by Theorem 4.39, Theorem 5.15 and Lemma 5.17. Note that [LS18a, Lem. 4.3.2] follows from characteristic zero theory, Lemma 5.17 and [FC90, I. Prop. 2.7]. Together with Part 1 of Lemma 5.18, the argument in [Pin92, 4.6 and 4.7] works. We deduce that $R \oint_{K_{2,*}}^{\Sigma_2} R\mathrm{Inv}(H_{\Phi_2,K_2}, V_{\xi,n} \otimes \varinjlim_{U_l} \phi_{U_l,*}\mathbb{Z})$ is isomorphic to the complex of $\mathbb{Z}/l^n\mathbb{Z}$-sheaves on $\mathcal{Z}_{[\Phi_2],K_2}$ in the derived category associated with $R\mathrm{Inv}(H^C_{\Phi_2,K_2}, V_{\xi,n})$. We now have that $i^*_{[\Phi_2],K_2} RJ^{\min}_* \mathcal{V}_\xi$ is isomorphic to the complex of $\overline{\mathbb{Q}}_l$-sheaves on $\mathcal{Z}_{[\Phi_2],K_2}$ in the derived category associated with $R\mathrm{Inv}(H^C_{\Phi_2,K_2}, V_\xi)$. Finally, we obtain (5.6) by the proof in [Pin92, 5.2 and 5.3]. □

5.5. **Nearby cycles.** This subsection is to generalize [LS18c, Thm. 4.1] to the abelian-type case. As the readers will see, the proof requires essentially nothing but (a generalization of) the qualitative descriptions of good compactifications stated there.

Remark 5.20. *Unlike the Case (Ab) in* [LS18c] *which only deals with a "crude" construction of minimal compactifications for integral models in* [KP18]*, the proof presented here works for all integral models constructed in this paper without technical assumptions on G_2 and the level at p.*

Proposition 5.21 (Lan-Stroh; cf. [LS18c, Thm. 4.1 and Cor. 4.6])**.** *Fix a prime $l \neq p$. Let $\mathcal{V}$ be either a lisse $\overline{\mathbb{Q}}_l$-sheaf associated with an algebraic representation ξ of G_2^c on a finite-dimensional $\overline{\mathbb{Q}}_l$-vector space V_ξ, or a finite $\mathbb{Z}_l$-module equipped with an action of an open compact subgroup $G_2^c(\mathbb{Z}_l)$ of $G_2^c(\mathbb{Q}_l)$. Denote by η (resp. s) the generic (resp. special) point of the base ring of the integral model $\mathcal{S}_{K_2}$ and denote the corresponding geometric point by adding "$-$".*

In all cases (HS), (STB$_n$) and (DL), assume that the projection of K_2 into $G_2^c(\mathbb{Q}_l)$ factors through $G_2^c(\mathbb{Z}_l)$. Then there are natural isomorphisms induced by adjunctions that are equivariant under the actions of the absolute Galois group $\mathrm{Gal}(\overline{\eta}/\eta)$*:*

$$R\Psi_{\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma_2}_{K_2}} RJ^{\Sigma_2}_{\eta,*} \mathcal{V} \xrightarrow{\sim} RJ^{\Sigma_2}_{\overline{s},*} R\Psi_{\mathcal{S}_{K_2}} \mathcal{V}, \tag{5.7}$$

$$J^{\Sigma_2}_{\overline{s},!} R\Psi_{\mathcal{S}_{K_2}} \mathcal{V} \xrightarrow{\sim} R\Psi_{\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma_2}_{K_2}} J^{\Sigma_2}_{\eta,!} \mathcal{V}, \tag{5.8}$$

$$R\Gamma_{et}(\mathrm{Sh}_{K_2,\overline{\eta}}, \mathcal{V}) \xrightarrow{\sim} R\Gamma_{et}(\mathcal{S}_{K_2,\overline{s}}, R\Psi_{\mathcal{S}_{K_2}} \mathcal{V}), \tag{5.9}$$

and

$$R\Gamma_{et,c}(\mathcal{S}_{K_2,\overline{s}}, R\Psi_{\mathcal{S}_{K_2}} \mathcal{V}) \xrightarrow{\sim} R\Gamma_{et,c}(\mathrm{Sh}_{K_2,\overline{\eta}}, \mathcal{V}). \tag{5.10}$$

In the equations above, "$R\Psi$" denotes nearby cycles (see [DK73, Exp. XIII]*).*

Proof. The last two isomorphisms (5.9) and (5.10) follow from the first two (5.7) and (5.8) and the proper base change. (Alternatively, when $K_{2,p}$ is parahoric, we can choose $\mathcal{O}_{K_Z}$ so that the normalized base changes in Corollary 4.55 are base changes by Lemma 4.57. Then one can also use the Hochschild-Serre spectral sequence and Corollary 4.55 to show (5.9) and (5.10) as in the proof of [LS18c, Cor. 4.6].)

We show the first two isomorphisms. The proof is almost identical to that in [LS18c] given the established geometric inputs in this paper. We will repeat it and highlight the difference.

It suffices to assume that $\mathcal{V}$ is associated with a finite $\mathbb{Z}/l^n\mathbb{Z}$-module Λ_n. We first choose a prime-to-p level $K_2^{p,\prime}$ such that $K_2^{p,\prime}$ acts trivially on Λ_n. By Lemma 5.22, we can choose suitable $K_2^{p,\prime}$ to further make the transition maps in Lemma 5.18 (1) finite étale. Then the argument in [LS18c, Prop. 5.1 and Prop. 5.3] still works as summarized below.

Denote the base ring by $\mathcal{O}$ until the end of this proof. We now fix a point x in a stratum $\mathcal{Z}_\sigma := \mathcal{Z}_{[(\Phi_2,\sigma_2)],K_2}$. For simplicity, write $\sigma := \sigma_2$. We know that $\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma_2}_{K_2}$ is étale locally isomorphic to $C' \times_{\mathcal{O}} \mathbf{E}$ by Lemma 5.22 below, and that we can reduce the problem to $C' \times_{\mathcal{O}} \mathbf{E}$ by assuming that $\mathcal{V} := \mathcal{V}_E \boxtimes \underline{\mathbb{Z}/l^n\mathbb{Z}}$ for an étale $\mathbb{Z}/l^n\mathbb{Z}$-module $\mathcal{V}_E$ over $\mathbf{E}$ that is trivialized over $\mathbf{E}'$ and a constant sheaf $\underline{\mathbb{Z}/l^n\mathbb{Z}}$ over C'. (We first have a constant sheaf $\underline{\Lambda_n}$ on $\mathcal{S}^*_{K_{\Phi_2,p}K^{p,\prime}_{\Phi_2}}$ and pull it back to $C' \times_{\mathcal{O}} \mathbf{E}'$, and we then descend it to $C' \times_{\mathcal{O}} \mathbf{E}$ with the given $(K_2^p \cap (Z_{G_2} \times U_{\Phi_2})(\mathbb{A}_f^p))$-action.)

Note that if the coefficient we are considering is already trivial itself, we do not need the reduction step in the last two paragraphs and can directly reduce the problem to the problem over $C \times_{\mathcal{O}} \mathbf{E}$ for trivial coefficients.

Now the argument in [LS18c, pp.18-19] gets through verbatim, and it shows that

$$R\Psi_{C' \times_{\mathcal{O}} \mathbf{E}(\sigma)} Rj_{\eta,*}\mathcal{V} \xrightarrow{\sim} Rj_{\bar{s},*} R\Psi_{C' \times_{\mathcal{O}} \mathbf{E}} \mathcal{V}$$

and that

$$j_{\bar{s},!} R\Psi_{C' \times_{\mathcal{O}} \mathbf{E}} \mathcal{V} \xrightarrow{\sim} R\Psi_{C' \times_{\mathcal{O}} \mathbf{E}(\sigma)} j_{\eta,!}\mathcal{V}$$

for $j : C' \times_{\mathcal{O}} \mathbf{E} \hookrightarrow C' \times_{\mathcal{O}} \mathbf{E}(\sigma)$. We now have the desired isomorphisms. □

Lemma 5.22. *Assume that $\mathcal{V}$ is associated with a finite $\mathbb{Z}/l^n\mathbb{Z}$-module Λ_n. Suppose that a neat open compact subgroup $K_2^{p,\prime\prime} \subset K_2^p$ acts trivially on Λ_n via $K_2^p \to \mathcal{G}(K_2)_l \to G_2^c(\mathbb{Q}_l)$.*

(1) We can choose a prime-to-p level $K_2^{p,\prime}$ such that $K_2^{p,\prime}$ acts trivially on Λ_n and the transition maps in Lemma 5.18 (1) are finite étale.

(2) Fix any cusp label $[(\Phi_2, \sigma_2)]$. Under the choice in the first item, we have the following commutative diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{S}^*_{K_{\Phi_2,p}K^{p,\prime}_{\Phi_2}} & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{S}^*_{K_{\Phi_2,p}K^{p}_{\Phi_2}} \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathbf{E}'} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathbf{E}} \\ C' := \overline{\mathcal{S}}^*_{K_{\Phi_2,p}K^{p,\prime}_{\Phi_2}} & \longrightarrow & C := \overline{\mathcal{S}}^*_{K_{\Phi_2,p}K^{p}_{\Phi_2}}. \end{array} \tag{5.11}$$

The horizontal maps are finite étale, the vertical maps are torsors under split tori $\mathbf{E}'$ and $\mathbf{E}$, respectively, and the diagram is equivariant under a finite étale isogeny between the tori $\mathbf{E}' \to \mathbf{E}$.

Proof. We adopt the notation in the proof of Lemma 5.18. We reduce to the case where $(G_2, X_2) = (G, X_a)$. We see from the proof there that, if we replace $K^{p,\prime}$ with $K^{p,\prime} \cdot (Z_G(\mathbb{Q}) \cap K^+_{Z,p}K)^p$ (where $(-)^p$ denotes viewing $\mathbb{Q}$-points as $\mathbb{A}_f^p$-points), then $\mathcal{S}_{K'} \to \mathcal{S}_K$ is finite étale. By the proof of [Pin90, Cor. 4.10] and since $\mathrm{Cent}_{ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi) \cap \widetilde{K}^{+,a}_\Phi$ is neat, we have that $\mathrm{Cent}_{ZP_\Phi(\mathbb{Q})}(D_\Phi) \cap \widetilde{K}^{+,a}_\Phi \subset Z_G(\mathbb{Q}) \cap \widetilde{K}^{+,a}_\Phi \subset Z_G(\mathbb{Q}) \cap K^+_{Z,p}K$. From the proof of Lemma 5.18, the transition maps $\mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^{a,\prime}_\Phi} \to \mathcal{S}_{\widetilde{K}^a_\Phi}$ and $\overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^{a,\prime}_\Phi} \to \overline{\mathcal{S}}_{\widetilde{K}^a_\Phi}$ are finite étale if we replace $K^{p,\prime}$ with $K^{p,\prime} \cdot (Z_G(\mathbb{Q}) \cap K^+_{Z,p}K)^p$. Since the action

of K^p on Λ_n factors through $G^c(\mathbb{Q}_l)$ and the projection of $Z_G(\mathbb{Q}) \cap K^+_{Z,p}K$ to $G^c(\mathbb{Q}_l)$ is trivial, we have shown the first item. The second item follows from the first one and Theorem 4.39. □

The corollaries for intersection cohomology now also hold for all cases (HS), (STB_n) and (DL) by proper base change and by the proof of [LS18b, Thm. 5.26].

Corollary 5.23. *Let $\mathcal{V}$ be a lisse $\overline{\mathbb{Q}}_l$-sheaf, or an $\mathbb{F}_l$- or $\overline{\mathbb{F}}_l$-sheaf. We have, in all cases, the following natural isomorphisms that are equivariant under the actions of* $\mathrm{Gal}(\overline{\eta}/\eta)$*:*

$$R\Psi_{\mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K_2}} RJ^{\min}_{\eta,*}\mathcal{V} \xrightarrow{\sim} RJ^{\min}_{\bar{s},*} R\Psi_{\mathcal{S}_{K_2}}\mathcal{V}, \tag{5.12}$$

$$J^{\min}_{\bar{s},!} R\Psi_{\mathcal{S}_{K_2}}\mathcal{V} \xrightarrow{\sim} R\Psi_{\mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K_2}} J^{\min}_{\eta,!}\mathcal{V}, \tag{5.13}$$

and

$$R\Psi_{\mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K_2}} J^{\min}_{,\eta,!*}\mathcal{V}[d] \xrightarrow{\sim} J^{\min}_{\bar{s},!*} R\Psi_{\mathcal{S}_{K_2}}\mathcal{V}[d]. \tag{5.14}$$

5.5.1. *Remarks on future projects.* Now we have established a good compactification theory in which $\mathfrak{f}^{\Sigma_2}_{K_2} : \mathcal{S}^{\Sigma_2}_{K_2} \to \mathcal{S}^{\min}_{K_2}$ has the desired properties as in [LS18b, Prop. 2.2] and [LS18a, Prop. 2.1.2]. In some future projects, we plan to study some aspects that have not been addressed in this paper.

Remark 5.24. *In a forthcoming joint work with Shengkai Mao, we will study the extension of p-adic shtukas to toroidal compactifications, where a framework generalizing* [PR24] *to show the well-positionedness of many types of strata on the special fibers of Shimura varieties, and to describe the uniqueness and functoriality of integral models of toroidal compactifications is pursued.*

Remark 5.25. *Unlike Hodge-type Shimura varieties, a general abelian-type Shimura variety does not automatically have a "Hodge invertible sheaf" determined by the pullback of some universal abelian variety under a Hodge embedding. Hence, this requires a more systematic treatment which is different from that in* [MP19, Sec. 5].

We plan to study the extension of canonical sheaves and "Hodge invertible sheaves" to integral models of minimal compactifications, as well as the construction of Fourier-Jacobi expansions. In addition, we also want to extend the main theorems of this paper to more general setups such as allowing all projective cone decompositions for (G_2, X_2, K_2) and constructing toroidal compactifications as normalized blow-ups.

Appendix A. Comparison with PEL-type cusp labels

Let us review Lan's definition of (PEL-type) cusp labels and its relation, in the case of PEL-type Shimura varieties, with the definition of cusp labels introduced in [Pin90] and [MP19], and summarized in §1.1.4. See [Lan13], [Lan12] and the appendix of [Wan15].

A.1. **PEL-type Shimura varieties.** Let us fix a PEL-type $\mathcal{O}$-lattice $\mathcal{D} := (V_{\mathbb{Z}}, \psi_{\mathbb{Z}}, h_0)$ as defined in [Lan13, Def. 1.2.1.3], where $\mathcal{O}$ is an order of a finite semisimple $\mathbb{Q}$-algebra with a positive involution $*$, $V_{\mathbb{Z}}$ is a $\mathbb{Z}$-module with $\mathcal{O}$-action, $\psi_{\mathbb{Z}}$ is an alternating pairing of $V_{\mathbb{Z}}$ such that $\psi_{\mathbb{Z}}(x, by) = \psi_{\mathbb{Z}}(b^*x, y)$ and h_0 is a Hodge cocharacter $h_0 : \mathbb{C} \longrightarrow \mathrm{End}_{\mathcal{O}\otimes\mathbb{R}} V_{\mathbb{R}}$. Fix a *good prime* p as defined in [Lan13, Def. 1.4.1.1].

Let $G_{\mathbb{Z}}$ be the similitude group over $\mathbb{Z}$ defined by assigning any $\mathbb{Z}$-algebra R a group $G_{\mathbb{Z}}(R) := \{(g, r) \in \mathrm{GL}_{\mathcal{O}\otimes R}(V_R) \times \mathbb{G}_m(R) | \psi_R(gx, gy) = r\psi_R(x, y), x, y \in V_R\}$. Let $r := \nu(g)$, the map ν is the similitude character of $G_{\mathbb{Z}}$. We have $G_{\mathbb{Q}} := G_{\mathbb{Z}} \otimes \mathbb{Q}$ is quasi-split and unramified at p since $\mathcal{O} \otimes \mathbb{Q}$ is unramified at p by assumption.

Let X be a $G(\mathbb{R})$-orbit of h_0. Then we form a pair $(G_{\mathbb{Q}}, X)$. Note that $G_{\mathbb{Q}}$ is not connected in general when $G_{\mathbb{Q}}^{\mathrm{ad}}$ has simple factors of type D, and $G_{\mathbb{Q}}^{\mathrm{ad}}$ might have compact $\mathbb{Q}$-simple factors; however, we can abusively call such a pair $(G_{\mathbb{Q}}, X)$ a **PEL-type Shimura datum**. Define the **PEL-type Shimura variety with level** K by the double coset

$$\mathrm{Sh}_K(G_{\mathbb{Q}}, X)(\mathbb{C}) := G(\mathbb{Q})\backslash X \times G(\mathbb{A}_f)/K.$$

The complex orbifold $\mathrm{Sh}_K(G_{\mathbb{Q}}, X)(\mathbb{C})$ is canonically the analytification of a smooth quasi-projective algebraic variety $\mathrm{Sh}_{K,\mathbb{C}}$ over $\mathbb{C}$ if K is neat.

Assume that $K = K_p K^p$ where $K_p = G_{\mathbb{Z}}(\mathbb{Z}_p)$ is the stabilizer of $V_{\mathbb{Z}_p}$ in $G(\mathbb{Q}_p)$ and $K^p \subset G_{\mathbb{Z}}(\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^p)$ is a neat open compact subgroup. Those assumptions imply that K stabilizes $V_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}}$. Let $\square$ be $\emptyset$ or $\{p\}$.

Let us denote by $\mathbf{M}_{\mathcal{D},K^\square}$ the **PEL-type moduli problem** defined as in [Lan13, Def. 1.4.1.4] by the PEL-type $\mathcal{O}$-lattice $\mathcal{D}$ and the level $K^\square$; if K is neat, $\mathbf{M}_{\mathcal{D},K^\square}$ is representable by a smooth and quasi-projective scheme over $\mathrm{Spec}\,\mathcal{O}_{F_0,(\square)}$, where F_0 is the reflex field of $\mathcal{D}$. For any locally Noetherian and connected scheme S over $\mathrm{Spec}\,\mathcal{O}_{F_0,(\square)}$, the objects in $\mathbf{M}_{\mathcal{D},K^\square}(S)$ consists of the tuples $(\mathcal{A}_S, \lambda_S, i_S, [\varepsilon_S]_{K^\square})$, where $\mathcal{A}_S$ is an abelian scheme over S with a prime-to-$\square$ polarization λ_S and an endomorphism structure $i_S : \mathcal{O} \longrightarrow \mathrm{End}_S(\mathcal{A}_S)$, and where $[\varepsilon_S]_{K^\square}$ is an (integral) $K^\square$-level structure; the Lie algebra $\underline{\mathrm{Lie}}_{\mathcal{A}_S/S}$ satisfies the determinantal condition given by $\mathcal{D}$. Denote by $(\mathcal{A}, \lambda, i, [\varepsilon]_{K^p})$ the universal family over $\mathbf{M}_{\mathcal{D},K^\square}$.

On the other hand, the variation of Hodge structures defines a holomorphic family $(\mathcal{A}_{\mathrm{hol}}, \lambda_{\mathrm{hol}}, i_{\mathrm{hol}}, [\varepsilon_{\mathrm{hol}}]_K)$ over $\mathrm{Sh}_K(\mathbb{C})$. This holomorphic family descends to an algebraic family over $\mathrm{Sh}_{K,\mathbb{C}}$:

Proposition A.1 ([Lan12, p.16])**.** *There is a canonical open and closed embedding $i : \mathrm{Sh}_{K,\mathbb{C}} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{M}_{\mathcal{D},K,\mathbb{C}}$, such that the holomorphic family $(\mathcal{A}_{\mathrm{hol}}, \lambda_{\mathrm{hol}}, i_{\mathrm{hol}}, [\varepsilon_{\mathrm{hol}}]_K)$ over $\mathrm{Sh}_K(\mathbb{C})$ is canonically isomorphic to the analytification of the pullback of the universal family $(\mathcal{A}, \lambda, i, [\varepsilon]_K)$ defined over $\mathbf{M}_{\mathcal{D},K,\mathbb{C}}$ by the representability of moduli problem.*

A.2. **PEL-type cusp labels.**

Definition A.2 ([Lan13, Def. 5.4.1.9 and Def. 5.4.2.4]; see also [Wan15, A.4])**.** *A **(PEL-type) cusp label** of $\mathbf{M}_{\mathcal{D},K^\square}$ is denoted by $[(Z_{K^\square}, \Phi_{K^\square}, \delta_{K^\square})]$, which is an equivalence class of $K^\square$-orbits of tuples of the form (Z, Φ, δ), where:*

- *$Z = \{Z_i\}_{i=-2}^0$ is an admissible and fully symplectic (ascending) filtration on $V_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}$. We denote by Gr_i^Z the graded pieces defined by Z, for $i = 0, -1, -2$ (see [Lan13, Def. 1.2.6.6 and Def. 5.2.7.1]);*
- *A torus argument $\Phi = (X, Y, \phi, \varphi_{-2}, \varphi_0)$: X and Y are $\mathbb{Z}$-lattices with $\mathcal{O}$-action, $\phi : Y \hookrightarrow X$ is an $\mathcal{O}$-equivariant embedding with finite cokernel, $\varphi_{-2} : \mathrm{Gr}_{-2}^Z \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathrm{Hom}(X \otimes \widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square, \widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square(1))$ and*

$\varphi_0 : \mathrm{Gr}_0^Z \xrightarrow{\sim} Y \otimes \widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square$. The pairing $\langle -,-\rangle_{20}$ induced by Z and $\psi_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}$ on $\mathrm{Gr}_{-2}^Z \times \mathrm{Gr}_0^Z$ coincides with the pullback of the pairing $\langle -,-\rangle_\phi$ induced by ϕ under $\varphi_{-2} \times \varphi_0$;

- *δ is an $\mathcal{O}$-equivariant splitting $\delta : \bigoplus_{i=-2}^{0} \mathrm{Gr}_i^Z \xrightarrow{\sim} V_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}$.*

Two orbits $(Z_{K^\square}, \Phi_{K^\square}, \delta_{K^\square})$ and $(Z'_{K^\square}, \Phi'_{K^\square}, \delta'_{K^\square})$ are equivalent if $Z_{K^\square} = Z'_{K^\square}$ and there is a pair of $\mathcal{O}$-equivariant isomorphisms $(\gamma_X : X' \xrightarrow{\sim} X, \gamma_Y : Y \xrightarrow{\sim} Y')$ sending $\Phi_{K^\square}$ to $\Phi'_{K^\square}$ in the sense of [Lan13, Def. 5.4.2.2].

*The orbit $(Z_{K^\square}, \Phi_{K^\square}, \delta_{K^\square})$ itself is called a **(PEL-type) cusp label representative** of the cusp label $[(Z_{K^\square}, \Phi_{K^\square}, \delta_{K^\square})]$.*

Denote $V := V_{\mathbb{Z}} \otimes \mathbb{Q}$. By [Lan12, Lem. 3.1.1], there is a bijection between admissible $\mathbb{Q}$-parabolic subgroups of $G_{\mathbb{Q}}$ and non-trivial minimal admissible symplectic filtrations $W = \{W_i\}_{i=-2}^{0}$ on V; such filtrations are completely determined by their maximal isotropic graded pieces Gr_{-2}^W.

Let $\mathscr{L} := (Q, g)$ be a pair of an admissible $\mathbb{Q}$-parabolic subgroup Q and an element $g \in G(\mathbb{A}_f)$. Denote by W the filtration on V determined by Q. Following [Lan12, p.21], one can associate a PEL-type cusp label with $\mathscr{L} = (Q, g)$:

- $Z_i^{(g)} := g^{-1}(gV_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square} \cap W_i \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{A}_f^\square) = V_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square} \cap g^{-1}(W_i \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{A}_f^\square)$. Then $Z_\bullet^{(g)}$ is actually a filtration defined by $g^{-1}Qg$. Let $W_i^{(g)} := g^{-1}(gV_{\mathbb{Z}} \cap (W_i \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{A}_f^\square))$.
- Let $V_{\mathbb{Z}}^{(g)} := gV_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}} \cap V_{\mathbb{Z}}$. Let $F_i^{(g)} := V_{\mathbb{Z}}^{(g)} \cap W_i$. Then $X^{(g)} := \mathrm{Hom}(\mathrm{Gr}_{-2}^{F^{(g)}}, \mathbb{Z}(1))$ and $Y^{(g)} := \mathrm{Gr}_0^{F^{(g)}}$. Note that $V_{\mathbb{Z}}^{(g)}$ is equipped with a symplectic pairing: $\psi_{\mathbb{Z}}^{(g)} : V_{\mathbb{Z}}^{(g)} \times V_{\mathbb{Z}}^{(g)} \to \mathbb{Z}(1)$, which is defined by $r^{-1}\psi$, where r is the unique $r \in \mathbb{Q}_{>0}^\times$ such that $r \cdot u = \nu(g)$ for some $u \in \widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\times$.
- $\phi^{(g)} : Y^{(g)} \hookrightarrow X^{(g)}$ is induced by the symplectic pairing $\psi_{\mathbb{Z}}^{(g)}$; $\varphi_{-2}^{(g)}$ is defined by $\mathrm{Gr}_{-2}^{Z^{(g)}} \xrightarrow{u^{-1}\circ \mathrm{Gr}(g)} \mathrm{Gr}_{-2}^{F^{(g)}} \otimes \widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathrm{Hom}(X^{(g)} \otimes \widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square, \widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square(1))$ and $\varphi_0^{(g)}$ is defined by $\mathrm{Gr}_0^{Z^{(g)}} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Gr}(g)} \mathrm{Gr}_0^{F^{(g)}} \otimes \widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square \xrightarrow{\sim} Y^{(g)} \otimes \widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square$.
- $\delta^{(g)}$ is any $\mathcal{O}$-equivariant splitting $\delta^{(g)} : \bigoplus \mathrm{Gr}_i^{Z^{(g)}} \xrightarrow{\sim} V_{\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}^\square}$.

Denote by $(Z_{K^\square}^{(g)}, \Phi_{K^\square}^{(g)}, \delta_{K^\square}^{(g)})$ the $K^\square$-orbit of $(Z^{(g)}, \Phi^{(g)}, \delta^{(g)})$, and this orbit is a cusp label representative. Then we have constructed a map $\mathrm{CL}^\square$, which maps any $\mathscr{L} = (Q, g)$ to $\Psi_{\mathscr{L}} := [(Z_{K^\square}^{(g)}, \Phi_{K^\square}^{(g)}, \delta_{K^\square}^{(g)})]$.

Now we fix an admissible $\mathbb{Q}$-parabolic subgroup Q. Define a normal $\mathbb{Q}$-subgroup $\widetilde{P}_Q$ of Q as, for any $\mathbb{Q}$-algebra R,

$$\widetilde{P}_Q(R) := \{g \in Q(R) |\ g|_{\mathrm{Gr}_0^W} = \mathrm{Id} \text{ and } g|_{\mathrm{Gr}_{-2}^W} = \nu(g)\mathrm{Id}\}.$$

When $(G_{\mathbb{Q}}, X)$ is of Siegel type, we have $\widetilde{P}_Q = P_Q$ by [Pin90, 4.25]; in general, $P_Q \neq \widetilde{P}_Q$ since there might be compact factors in $\widetilde{P}_Q$ even in the type A case.

For $\square = \emptyset$ or $\{p\}$, define

$$I_{\mathrm{PEL}}^\square(Q) := Q(\mathbb{Q})\widetilde{P}_Q(\mathbb{A}_f^\square)\backslash G(\mathbb{A}_f^\square)/K^\square.$$

Let $G_l := Q/\widetilde{P}_Q$. Let $\widetilde{P}_{Q,h}$ (resp. Q_h) be the Levi quotient of $\widetilde{P}_Q$ (resp. Q). Then in the PEL-type case, there is a natural exact sequence

$$1 \to \widetilde{P}_{Q,h} \to Q_h \to G_l \to 1 \tag{A.1}$$

and $G_l \cong \mathrm{GL}(\mathrm{Gr}_0^W) \times \mathrm{GL}(\mathrm{Gr}_{-2}^W)$.

From now on, we **assume** that $G_{\mathbb{Q}}$ is connected, that is, $G_{\mathbb{Q}}^{\mathrm{ad}}$ (or equivalently, $\mathcal{O} \otimes \mathbb{Q}$) has no simple factors of type D.

Lemma A.3. *Under the assumption above, every PEL-type cusp label representative comes from a* $\mathrm{CL}^p(Q,g)=\mathrm{CL}(Q,g)$ *of some admissible* $\mathbb{Q}$*-parabolic subgroup* Q *and some* $g\in G(\mathbb{A}_f)$.

Proof. This is [Wan15, Lem. A.4.6 and Prop. A.5.9]. □

Lemma A.4. *Under the assumption above, the map*

$$G(\mathbb{A}_f)\to \mathrm{CL}(Q,-)$$

factors through a bijection $I_{\mathrm{PEL}}(Q)\xrightarrow{\sim}\mathrm{CL}(Q,-)$.

If $\widetilde{P}_Q=P_Q$, *we have* $I_{\mathrm{PEL}}(Q)\cong I(Q)$; *this is the case when* $(G_{\mathbb{Q}},X)$ *is of Siegel type by* [Pin90, 4.25]. *Moreover, in this case, there is a bijection between the set of PEL-type cusp labels and the set of cusp labels defined by* [Pin90] *and* [MP19].

Proof. It remains to show the first statement (see [HLTT16, B.3] for a specific case). Firstly, the map $G(\mathbb{A}_f)\to\mathrm{CL}(Q,-)$ sending g to $\mathrm{CL}(Q,g)$ factors through $I_{\mathrm{PEL}}(Q)$: for any $p\in\widetilde{P}_Q(\mathbb{A}_f)$, $Z^{(pg)}=Z^{(g)}$ by the definition above and $\Phi^{(pg)}=\Phi^{(g)}$ by (A.1); $q\in Q(\mathbb{Q})$ gives a pair of $\mathcal{O}$-equivariant isomorphisms (γ_X,γ_Y). Secondly, assume that, for some $h\in G(\mathbb{A}_f)$, $\mathrm{CL}(Q,g)=\mathrm{CL}(Q,hg)$. Then up to replacing h with $hgkg^{-1}$ for some $k\in K$, we have $Z^{(hg)}=Z^{(g)}$ so $h\in Q(\mathbb{A}_f)$. Moreover, there is a pair of $\mathcal{O}$-equivariant isomorphisms (γ_X,γ_Y) sending $\Phi_K^{(g)}$ to $\Phi_K^{(hg)}$. Then $h\in Q(\mathbb{A}_f)$ projects to $G_l(\mathbb{Q})$ via (A.1) by the construction of $X^{(g)}$ and $Y^{(g)}$. The remaining part of the statement follows from the fact that $Q_h\cong\widetilde{P}_{Q,h}\times G_l$ in the PEL-type case and Lemma A.3 above. □

Appendix B. Isogenies

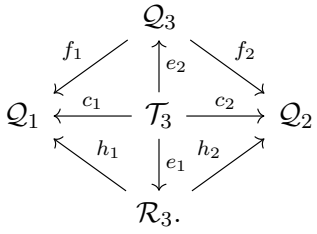
Let $\square$ be a set of prime numbers, which is still $\{p\}$ or $\emptyset$ in this appendix.

B.1. **Quasi-isogenies.** Let $\mathcal{C}$ be the category of abelian schemes over S, or the category of 1-motives over S. Recall that we have defined isogenies for 1-motives; see Definition 2.12. Then it is also possible to define $\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}^\times$-isogenies for 1-motives.

Definition B.1. *Let* $\mathcal{Q}_1$ *and* $\mathcal{Q}_2$ *be two objects in* $\mathcal{C}$. *Let* $f:\mathcal{Q}_1\to\mathcal{Q}_2$ *be an isogeny. Since* $\ker f$ *is finite flat over* S, *the rank of* $\ker f$ *is locally constant in both cases. We say* f *is a* ***prime-to-*$\square$ *isogeny*** *if the rank of* $\ker f$ *over any connected component of* S *is prime to* $\square$.

A $\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}^\times$-isogeny g *from* $\mathcal{Q}_1$ *to* $\mathcal{Q}_2$ *is represented by a tuple* $(f_1,f_2,\mathcal{Q}_3)$ *consisting of a* $\mathcal{Q}_3\in\mathrm{Ob}\,\mathcal{C}$ *and two prime-to-*$\square$ *isogenies* $f_1:\mathcal{Q}_3\to\mathcal{Q}_1$ *and* $f_2:\mathcal{Q}_3\to\mathcal{Q}_2$, *such that,* g *is the diagram* $g:\mathcal{Q}_1\xleftarrow{f_1}\mathcal{Q}_3\xrightarrow{f_2}\mathcal{Q}_2$. *If* $f_1=[n]$, *we denote* $g:=\frac{1}{n}f_2$. *Any two tuples* $(f_1,f_2,\mathcal{Q}_3)$ *and* $(h_1,h_2,\mathcal{R}_3)$ *are equivalent if there is another tuple* $(c_1,c_2,\mathcal{T}_3)$ *such that* c_1 *and* c_2 *are prime-to-*$\square$ *isogenies, and there are prime-to-*$\square$ *isogenies* $e_1:\mathcal{T}_3\to\mathcal{R}_3$ *and* $e_2:\mathcal{T}_3\to\mathcal{Q}_3$, *which fit into the following commutative diagram:*

(B.1)



By Lemma 2.13 in the case of 1*-motives, for any tuple* $(f_1,f_2,\mathcal{Q}_3)$ *representing* g, *there is a tuple* $([N],g_2,\mathcal{Q}_1)$, *for some* $(N,\square)=1$ *and some prime-to-*$\square$ g_2, *that is equivalent to* $(f_1,f_2,\mathcal{Q}_3)$.

The ***composition*** *of two* $\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}^\times$*-isogenies* $f=([N_1],f_1,\mathcal{Q}_1):\mathcal{Q}_1\to\mathcal{Q}_2$ *and* $g=([N_2],g_1,\mathcal{Q}_2):\mathcal{Q}_2\to\mathcal{Q}_3$ *is represented by* $g\circ f=([N_1N_2],g_1\circ f_1):\mathcal{Q}_1\to\mathcal{Q}_3$.

By Lemma 2.13, for any $\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}^{\times}$-isogeny between 1-motives $f : \mathcal{Q}_1 \to \mathcal{Q}_2$, there is a prime-to-$\square$ isogeny $g : \mathcal{Q}_2 \to \mathcal{Q}_1$ and a prime-to-$\square$ positive integer M such that $f \circ g = [M]$ and $g \circ f = [M]$. Hence, we define the $\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}^{\times}$-isogeny $f^{-1} := \frac{1}{M} g$ to be the **inverse** of f. For the case of abelian schemes, see, e.g., [Lan13, Sec. 1.3.1].

In the categorical language, let T be the set of arrows consisting of arrows consisting of prime-to-$\square$ isogenies in $\mathrm{Mor}(\mathcal{C})$; alternatively, we can let T be the set of arrows consisting of all $[N]$, for $N > 0$ and $(N, \square) = 1$. Then the *isogeny category* is defined to be the localization $\mathcal{C}^{\square} := T^{-1}\mathcal{C}$.

B.2. **Polarizations.**

B.2.1. Let S be a $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$-scheme. Let $\mathcal{Q}$ be a 1-motive over S. Denote by $[\mathcal{Q}]$ the fppf sheaf representing $\mathcal{Q}$ up to $\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}^{\times}$-isogenies.

For any $f \in \underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}}([\mathcal{Q}])$, f naturally induces an automorphism $f^{\vee} \in \underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}}([\mathcal{Q}^{\vee}])$ by the definition of Cartier dual and dual abelian schemes.

Then there is a canonical isomorphism:

$$\begin{aligned} \underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}}([\mathcal{Q}]) &\xrightarrow{\sim} \underline{\mathrm{Aut}}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}}([\mathcal{Q}^{\vee}]); \\ f &\mapsto f^{\bigstar} := (f^{\vee})^{-1}. \end{aligned} \tag{B.2}$$

We say a polarization $\boldsymbol{\lambda} : \mathcal{Q} \to \mathcal{Q}^{\vee}$ is **prime-to-$\square$** if it is a prime-to-$\square$ isogeny. We say that a $\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}^{\times}$-isogeny $\boldsymbol{\lambda} : \mathcal{Q} \to \mathcal{Q}^{\vee}$ is a **$\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}^{\times}$-polarization** if $N\boldsymbol{\lambda}$ is a prime-to-$\square$ polarization for some positive prime-to-$\square$ integer N.

B.2.2. Let $\mathcal{B}$ be another 1-motive over a $\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}$-scheme S. Suppose that there is a prime-to-$\square$ isogeny $f : \mathcal{Q} \to \mathcal{B}$. For any $\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}$-algebra R and $z \in \mathrm{End}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}}([\mathcal{Q}])(R)$, f induces an endomorphism $z' := f \circ z \circ f^{-1} \in \mathrm{End}_{\mathbb{Z}_{(\square)}}([\mathcal{B}])(R)$. We will use the notation in §3.3.

Lemma B.2. *There is a unique homomorphism $f_N^{\tilde{\gamma},\prime} : \mathcal{B}^{\mathcal{O}_F} \longrightarrow (\mathcal{B}^{\mathcal{O}_F})^{\oplus|\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})|-1}$ such that the diagram*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{Q}^{\mathcal{O}_F} & \xrightarrow{\qquad f \qquad} & \mathcal{B}^{\mathcal{O}_F} \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle f_N^{\tilde{\gamma}}} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle f_N^{\tilde{\gamma},\prime}} \\ (\mathcal{Q}^{\mathcal{O}_F})^{\oplus|\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})|-1} & \xrightarrow{f^{\oplus|\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})|-1}} & (\mathcal{B}^{\mathcal{O}_F})^{\oplus|\mathrm{Gal}(F/\mathbb{Q})|-1} \end{array} \tag{B.3}$$

commutes. The diagram above induces a prime-to-p isogeny $f^{\tilde{\gamma}} : \mathcal{Q}^{\tilde{\gamma}} \longrightarrow \mathcal{B}^{\tilde{\gamma}}$. The isogeny $f^{\tilde{\gamma}}$ does not depend on N.

Proposition B.3 (cf.[KP18, Lem. 4.4.8])**.** *With the setting in Lemma B.2, there is a commutative diagram of isomorphisms between fppf sheaves*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{Q}^{\tilde{\gamma}} \otimes \mathcal{O}_{F,(p)} & \xrightarrow[\sim]{f^{\tilde{\gamma}}} & \mathcal{B}^{\tilde{\gamma}} \otimes \mathcal{O}_{F,(p)} \\ \downarrow\wr & & \downarrow\wr \\ \mathcal{Q} \otimes \mathcal{O}_{F,(p)} & \xrightarrow[\sim]{f} & \mathcal{B} \otimes \mathcal{O}_{F,(p)}. \end{array} \tag{B.4}$$

Proof. This follows directly from Lemma B.2. □

List of symbols in the first two sections

$\mathcal{CLR}(G,X)$		13
$\mathrm{Cusp}_K(G,X)$		14
$\mathrm{Cusp}_K(G,X,\Sigma)$		21
$\mathrm{Cusp}_K^{ZP}(G,X)$		26
$\mathrm{Cusp}_K^{ZP}(G,X,\Sigma)$		26
$\Delta_{\Phi_i,K}$		19
$\Delta^{\circ}_{\Phi,K}$		21
$\Delta^{ZP}_{\Phi,K}$		27
$\Delta^{ZP,\circ}_{\Phi,K}$		27
D_Φ		13
E_0		37
E_2		37
E^c		31
$\mathbf{E}_{K_\Phi}$		21
$\widetilde{E}_{K_Z}$		35
E^p		24
E'		37
$\mathbf{E}_{\widetilde{K}_\Phi}$		38
$\widetilde{E}$		31
F_{K_Z}		31
(G_0,X_0)	Hodge-type datum	39
$(G^\ddagger,X^\ddagger)$	Siegel-type datum	39
H_0		12
$\hbar$		11
H^c		139
$h(g^\ddagger)$		55
I_{G/G_0}		36
$I(Q)$		14
$\mathbf{\Lambda}_{K_\Phi}$		21
$m(\Phi)$		25
$\nu_{G^\ddagger}$		15
Φ	a cusp label representative	12
$\mathbf{P}_\Phi$		21
P_Φ	Pink's P_1 and Madapusi's Q_Φ	12
$\mathbf{P}^+_\Phi$		13
$\mathcal{Q}$	1-motives	41
Q_Φ	Pink's Q and Madapusi's P_Φ	12
(P_Φ,D_Φ)	rational boundary component	13
$r(g^\ddagger)$		55
$\mathrm{Sh}_{K^\ddagger}$		41
$\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi}(\sigma)$		23
$\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi}(\Sigma)$		23
$\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi,F}$		13
$\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi,h,F}$		13
$\mathrm{Sh}_{K_\Phi,\sigma}$		23
$\sim_{ZP}$		26
$\mathcal{S}_{K_0}$		67
$\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma_0}_{K_0}$		69
$\mathcal{S}_{K^\ddagger}$		41
$\mathcal{S}^{\Sigma^\ddagger}_{K^\ddagger}$		69
$\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi_0}}$		67
$\mathcal{S}_{K_{\Phi^\ddagger}}$		67
$\mathbf{S}^\vee_{K_\Phi}$	cocharacter group	21
$\overline{\mathrm{Sh}}_{K_\Phi,F}$		13
τ		12
U_Φ	Pink's U_1 and Madapusi's W_Φ	12
u_x^Q		12
$V_{\mathbb{Z}}$		39
W_Φ	Pink's W_1 and Madapusi's U_Φ	12
$\mathcal{Z}_{\Upsilon,K}$		68
$\mathrm{Z}_{[\Phi],K}$		20
$\mathrm{Z}_{[\Phi_i],K}(\mathbb{C})$		19
$\mathrm{Z}_{\Upsilon,K}$		23
ZP_Φ		25
$[ZP(\Phi)]$		27
$[ZP(\Phi,\sigma)]$		27

References

[ABD+63] M. Artin, J.-E. Bertin, M. Demazure, A. Grothendieck, P. Gabriel, M. Raynaud, and J.-P. Serre, *Schémas en groupes*, Séminaire de Géométrie Algébrique de l'Institut des Hautes Études Scientifiques, Institut des Hautes Études Scientifiques, Paris, 1963/1966.

[ABV05] F. Andreatta and L. Barbieri-Viale, *Crystalline realizations of 1-motives*, Math. Ann. **331** (2005), no. 1, 111–172. MR2107442

[AK18] Z. Amir-Khosravi, *Serre's tensor construction and moduli of abelian schemes*, Manuscripta Math. **156** (2018), no. 3-4, 409–456. MR3811797

[AMRT10] A. Ash, D. Mumford, M. Rapoport, and Y.-S. Tai, *Smooth compactifications of locally symmetric varieties*, Second, Cambridge Mathematical Library, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 2010. With the collaboration of Peter Scholze. MR2590897

[Art69] M. Artin, *Algebraic approximation of structures over complete local rings*, Inst. Hautes Études Sci. Publ. Math. **36** (1969), 23–58. MR268188

[BB66] W. L. Baily and A. Borel, *Compactification of arithmetic quotients of bounded symmetric domains*, Ann. of Math. (2) **84** (1966), 442–528. MR216035

[Ber09] A. Bertapelle, *Deligne's duality for de Rham realizations of 1-motives*, Math. Nachr. **282** (2009), no. 12, 1637–1655. MR2588827

[BLR90] S. Bosch, W. Lütkebohmert, and M. Raynaud, *Néron models*, Ergebnisse der Mathematik und ihrer Grenzgebiete (3) [Results in Mathematics and Related Areas (3)], vol. 21, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1990. MR1045822

[Bor72] A. Borel, *Some metric properties of arithmetic quotients of symmetric spaces and an extension theorem*, J. Differential Geometry **6** (1972), 543–560. MR338456

[BT84] F. Bruhat and J. Tits, *Groupes réductifs sur un corps local. II. Schémas en groupes. Existence d'une donnée radicielle valuée*, Inst. Hautes Études Sci. Publ. Math. **60** (1984), 197–376. MR756316

[Che51] C. Chevalley, *Deux théorèmes d'arithmétique*, J. Math. Soc. Japan **3** (1951), 36–44. MR44570

[CLO12] B. Conrad, M. Lieblich, and M. Olsson, *Nagata compactification for algebraic spaces*, J. Inst. Math. Jussieu **11** (2012), no. 4, 747–814. MR2979821

[Del71a] P. Deligne, *Théorie de Hodge. II*, Inst. Hautes Études Sci. Publ. Math. **40** (1971), 5–57. MR498551

[Del71b] ———, *Travaux de Shimura*, Séminaire Bourbaki, 23ème année (1970/1971), 1971, pp. Exp. No. 389, pp. 123–165. MR498581

[Del74] ———, *Théorie de Hodge. III*, Inst. Hautes Études Sci. Publ. Math. **44** (1974), 5–77. MR498552

[Del77] ———, *Cohomologie étale*, Lecture Notes in Mathematics, vol. 569, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1977. Séminaire de géométrie algébrique du Bois-Marie SGA $4\frac{1}{2}$. MR463174

[Del79] ———, *Variétés de Shimura: interprétation modulaire, et techniques de construction de modèles canoniques*, Automorphic forms, representations and L-functions (Proc. Sympos. Pure Math., Oregon State Univ., Corvallis, Ore., 1977), Part 2, 1979, pp. 247–289. MR546620

[DK73] P. Deligne and N. Katz, *Groupes de monodromie en géométrie algébrique. II*, Lecture Notes in Mathematics, Vol 340, Springer-Verlag, 1973. Séminaire de Géométrie Algébrique du Bois-Marie 1967–1969 (SGA 7, II).

[DvHKZ24] P. Daniels, P. van Hoften, D. Kim, and M. Zhang, *On a conjecture of Pappas and Rapoport*, 2024.

[DY25] P. Daniels and A. Youcis, *Canonical integral models for Shimura varieties of abelian type*, Forum Math. Sigma **13** (2025), Paper No. e69. MR4888034

[FC90] G. Faltings and C.-L. Chai, *Degeneration of abelian varieties*, Ergebnisse der Mathematik und ihrer Grenzgebiete (3) [Results in Mathematics and Related Areas (3)], vol. 22, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1990. With an appendix by David Mumford. MR1083353

[GD64] A. Grothendieck and J. Dieudonné, *Éléments de géométrie algébrique IV*, Publications Mathématiques, vol. 20, 24, 28, 32, Institute des Hautes Études Scientifiques., Unknown Month 1964.

[GRR72] A. Grothendieck, M. Raynaud, and D. S. Rim, *Groupes de monodromie en géométrie algébrique. I*, Lecture Notes in Mathematics, Vol. 288, Springer-Verlag, 1972. Séminaire de Géométrie Algébrique du Bois-Marie 1967–1969 (SGA 7 I).

[Har89] M. Harris, *Functorial properties of toroidal compactifications of locally symmetric varieties*, Proc. London Math. Soc. (3) **59** (1989), no. 1, 1–22. MR997249

[HLTT16] M. Harris, K.-W. Lan, R. Taylor, and J. Thorne, *On the rigid cohomology of certain Shimura varieties*, Res. Math. Sci. **3** (2016), Paper No. 37, 308. MR3565594

[HT01] M. Harris and R. Taylor, *The geometry and cohomology of some simple Shimura varieties*, Annals of Mathematics Studies, vol. 151, Princeton University Press, Princeton, NJ, 2001. With an appendix by Vladimir G. Berkovich. MR1876802

[Kis10] M. Kisin, *Integral models for Shimura varieties of abelian type*, J. Amer. Math. Soc. **23** (2010), no. 4, 967–1012. MR2669706

[Kis17] ———, *Mod p points on Shimura varieties of abelian type*, J. Amer. Math. Soc. **30** (2017), no. 3, 819–914. MR3630089

[KKMSD73] G. Kempf, F. Knudsen, D. Mumford, and B. Saint-Donat, *Toroidal embeddings. I*, Lecture Notes in Mathematics, vol. Vol. 339, Springer-Verlag, Berlin-New York, 1973. MR335518

[KM85] N. M. Katz and B. Mazur, *Arithmetic moduli of elliptic curves*, Annals of Mathematics Studies, vol. 108, Princeton University Press, Princeton, NJ, 1985. MR772569

[KM97] S. Keel and S. Mori, *Quotients by groupoids*, Ann. of Math. (2) **145** (1997), no. 1, 193–213. MR1432041

[KMP16] W. Kim and K. Madapusi Pera, *2-adic integral canonical models*, Forum Math. Sigma **4** (2016), Paper No. e28, 34. MR3569319

[Knu71] D. Knutson, *Algebraic spaces*, Lecture Notes in Mathematics, vol. Vol. 203, Springer-Verlag, Berlin-New York, 1971. MR302647

[Kot92] R. E. Kottwitz, *Points on some Shimura varieties over finite fields*, J. Amer. Math. Soc. **5** (1992), no. 2, 373–444. MR1124982

[KP18] M. Kisin and G. Pappas, *Integral models of Shimura varieties with parahoric level structure*, Publ. Math. Inst. Hautes Études Sci. **128** (2018), 121–218. MR3905466

[KP23] T. Kaletha and G. Prasad, *Bruhat-Tits theory—a new approach*, New Mathematical Monographs, vol. 44, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 2023. MR4520154

[KPZ24] M. Kisin, G. Pappas, and R. Zhou, *Integral models of shimura varieties with parahoric level structure, II*, 2024.

[KSZ21] M. Kisin, S. W. Shin, and Y. Zhu, *The stable trace formula for Shimura varieties of abelian type*, 2021.

[KZ21] M. Kisin and R. Zhou, *Independence of ℓ for Frobenius conjugacy classes attached to abelian varieties*, 2021. Link.

[Lan00] E. Landvogt, *Some functorial properties of the Bruhat-Tits building*, J. Reine Angew. Math. **518** (2000), 213–241. MR1739403

[Lan12] K.-W. Lan, *Comparison between analytic and algebraic constructions of toroidal compactifications of PEL-type Shimura varieties*, J. Reine Angew. Math. **664** (2012), 163–228. MR2980135

[Lan13] ———, *Arithmetic compactifications of PEL-type Shimura varieties*, London Mathematical Society Monographs Series, vol. 36, Princeton University Press, Princeton, NJ, 2013. Link. MR3186092

[Lan16] ———, *Compactifications of PEL-type Shimura varieties in ramified characteristics*, Forum Math. Sigma **4** (2016), Paper No. e1, 98. MR3482277

[Lan17] ———, *Integral models of toroidal compactifications with projective cone decompositions*, Int. Math. Res. Not. IMRN **11** (2017), 3237–3280. MR3693649

[Lan22] ———, *Closed immersions of toroidal compactifications of Shimura varieties*, Math. Res. Lett. **29** (2022), no. 2, 487–527. MR4492226

[Lov17] T. Lovering, *Integral canonical models for automorphic vector bundles of abelian type*, Algebra Number Theory **11** (2017), no. 8, 1837–1890. MR3720933

[LS18a] K.-W. Lan and B. Stroh, *Compactifications of subschemes of integral models of Shimura varieties*, Forum Math. Sigma **6** (2018), Paper No. e18, 105. MR3859178

[LS18b] ———, *Nearby cycles of automorphic étale sheaves*, Compos. Math. **154** (2018), no. 1, 80–119. MR3719245

[LS18c] ———, *Nearby cycles of automorphic étale sheaves, II*, Cohomology of arithmetic groups, 2018, pp. 83–106. MR3848816

[Mao25a] S. Mao, *Boundary structures of integral models of Hodge-type Shimura varieties* (2025).

[Mao25b] ———, *Compactifications of subschemes of integral models of Hodge-type Shimura varieties with parahoric level structures*, 2025.

[MB85] L. Moret-Bailly, *Pinceaux de variétés abéliennes*, Astérisque **129** (1985), 266. MR797982

[MB89] ———, *Groupes de Picard et problèmes de Skolem. I, II*, Ann. Sci. École Norm. Sup. (4) **22** (1989), no. 2, 161–179, 181–194. MR1005158

[Mil05] J. S. Milne, *Introduction to Shimura varieties*, Harmonic analysis, the trace formula, and Shimura varieties, 2005, pp. 265–378. MR2192012

[Mil90] ———, *Canonical models of (mixed) Shimura varieties and automorphic vector bundles*, Automorphic forms, Shimura varieties, and L-functions, Vol. I (Ann Arbor, MI, 1988), 1990, pp. 283–414. MR1044823

[Mil92] ———, *The points on a Shimura variety modulo a prime of good reduction*, The zeta functions of Picard modular surfaces, 1992, pp. 151–253. MR1155229

[MP19] K. Madapusi Pera, *Toroidal compactifications of integral models of Shimura varieties of Hodge type*, Ann. Sci. Éc. Norm. Supér. (4) **52** (2019), no. 2, 393–514. MR3948111

[MRM74] D. Mumford, C. P. Ramanujam, and J. I. Manin, *Abelian varieties*, Vol. 5, Oxford university press, Oxford, 1974.
[Mum72] D. Mumford, *An analytic construction of degenerating abelian varieties over complete rings*, Compositio Math. **24** (1972), 239–272. MR352106
[Mum77] ———, *Hirzebruch's proportionality theorem in the noncompact case*, Invent. Math. **42** (1977), 239–272. MR471627
[Mum91] ———, *Tata lectures on theta. III*, Progress in Mathematics, vol. 97, Birkhäuser Boston, Inc., Boston, MA, 1991. With the collaboration of Madhav Nori and Peter Norman. MR1116553
[Oor66] F. Oort, *Commutative group schemes*, Lecture Notes in Mathematics, vol. 15, Springer-Verlag, Berlin-New York, 1966. MR0213365
[Pin90] R. Pink, *Arithmetical compactification of mixed Shimura varieties*, Bonner Mathematische Schriften [Bonn Mathematical Publications], vol. 209, Universität Bonn, Mathematisches Institut, Bonn, 1990. Dissertation, Rheinische Friedrich-Wilhelms-Universität Bonn, Bonn, 1989. MR1128753
[Pin92] ———, *On l-adic sheaves on Shimura varieties and their higher direct images in the Baily-Borel compactification*, Math. Ann. **292** (1992), no. 2, 197–240. MR1149032
[PR24] G. Pappas and M. Rapoport, *p-adic shtukas and the theory of global and local Shimura varieties*, Camb. J. Math. **12** (2024), no. 1, 1–164. MR4701491
[PR94] V. Platonov and A. Rapinchuk, *Algebraic groups and number theory*, Pure and Applied Mathematics, vol. 139, Academic Press, Inc., Boston, MA, 1994. Translated from the 1991 Russian original by Rachel Rowen. MR1278263
[PY06] G. Prasad and J.-K. Yu, *On quasi-reductive group schemes*, J. Algebraic Geom. **15** (2006), no. 3, 507–549. With an appendix by Brian Conrad. MR2219847
[Ray94] M. Raynaud, *1-motifs et monodromie géométrique*, Astérisque **223** (1994), 295–319. Périodes p-adiques (Bures-sur-Yvette, 1988). MR1293976
[Spi99] M. Spivakovsky, *A new proof of D. Popescu's theorem on smoothing of ring homomorphisms*, J. Amer. Math. Soc. **12** (1999), no. 2, 381–444. MR1647069
[Spr09] T. A. Springer, *Linear algebraic groups*, second, Modern Birkhäuser Classics, Birkhäuser Boston, Inc., Boston, MA, 2009. MR2458469
[Sta24] The Stacks project authors, *The stacks project*, 2024. https://stacks.math.columbia.edu.
[Str10] B. Stroh, *Compactification de variétés de Siegel aux places de mauvaise réduction*, Bull. Soc. Math. France **138** (2010), no. 2, 259–315. MR2679041
[Tei95] B. Teissier, *Résultats récents sur l'approximation des morphismes en algèbre commutative (d'après André, Artin, Popescu et Spivakovsky)*, 1995, pp. Exp. No. 784, 4, 259–282. Séminaire Bourbaki, Vol. 1993/94. MR1321650
[Wan15] X. Wan, *Families of nearly ordinary Eisenstein series on unitary groups*, Algebra Number Theory **9** (2015), no. 9, 1955–2054. With an appendix by K.-W. Lan. MR3435811

BICMR, Peking University, Beijing 100871, China
Email address: wuph@pku.edu.cn